MANIPULATIVE THERAPY IN REHABILITATION OF THE LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM

Third Edition

KAREL LEWIT

PHYSIOTHERAPY

MANIPULATIVE THERAPY IN REHABILITATION OF THE LOCOMOTOR SYSTEM Third Edition

KAREL LEWIT

When first published in 1985, this book was readily welcomed by both students and practitioners of physical medicine. It was the first full English-language introduction to the work of a world authority in the field; it remains unique, but its success has prompted some revision. Completely revised for the third edition, this book continues to offer a thought-provoking account of musculoskeletal disorders which will deepen the understanding of all therapists.

Additional features for the third edition:

- **reviews the current literature**
- **new material on soft tissue techniques, mobilization, relaxation**
- **new clinical data covering pelvic injuries and whiplash injury to the neck**
- **new functional approach**
- **it will retain the useful section on self-mobilization techniques**
- **the use of many radiographs and line illustrations gives the text greater clarity**

This text continues to be an essential purchase for physiotherapists, osteopaths, chiropractors, orthopaedic physicians and all those interested in musculoskeletal medicine.

Karel Lewit MD, DSc, Professor, Charles University: Consultant to the Central Railway Health Institute, Prague

BUTTERWORTH HEINEMANN

http://www.bh.com

ISBN 0-7506-2964-9

9 780750 629645

Manipulative Therapy in Rehabilitation of the Locomotor System

Spinal manipulation, according to Hippocrates. Reduction of the vertebrae by traction and windlass, and a man standing on the patient's back, from a commentary on Hippocrates by Apollonius of Kition. (Reproduced by kind permission of the Biblioteca Medicea Laurenziana, Florence.)

Manipulative Therapy in Rehabilitation of the Locomotor System

Third edition

Karel Lewit, MD, DSc, Professor, Charles University;
Consultant to the Central Railway Health Institute, Prague

BUTTERWORTH
HEINEMANN

OXFORD AUCKLAND BOSTON JOHANNESBURG MELBOURNE NEW DELHI

Dedicated to my wife

Butterworth-Heincmann
Linacre House, Jordan Hill, Oxford OX2 8DP
225 Wildwood Avenue, Woburn, MA 0180-2041
A division of Reed Educational and Professional Publishing Ltd

A member of the Reed Elsevier pic group

First published 1985
Reprinted 1987, 1988
Second edition 1991
Reprinted 1996, 1997
Third edition 1999

British Library Cataloguing in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

Library of Congress Cataloguing in Publication Data
A catalogue record for this book is available from the Library of Congress
ISBN 0 7506 2964 9

Printed and bound in Great Britain

Contents

Preface

This book is the updated English version (not a mere translation) of a textbook that appeared successively in Czech (1966, 1975 and 1990), in German (1973, 1977, 1978, 1983, 1991 and 1997), in Bulgarian (1981), in Dutch (1981), in Polish (1984), in Swedish in 1990 and in Russian in 1995. This English version is shorter, more concise and includes the latest techniques.

This book was conceived at a time when the lack of proper textbooks on impaired function of the motor system was a major obstacle to teaching. Now there are a good many manuals dealing with techniques of manipulation, remedial exercise, massage, and so forth, all aspects of the subject which are dealt with in detail in this publication. However, the role of manipulation is limited to passive mobility of the spinal column and the extremity joints; an important part of this book deals with soft tissues and muscles including active mobility. I would also emphasize that this is a textbook and not a manual of techniques: the latter deals with individual techniques, while my purpose is to show that it can be disastrous to confine one's interest in this manner and to remain unaware of both the broader context of treatment and of the possible alternatives. From this point of view the content of the body of the book (Chapters 3–10) becomes clear. There are chapters on functional anatomy, the diagnosis and treatment of disturbed locomotor system function, including indications of appropriate treatment and the place of manipulation, and finally a long chapter on the clinical aspects of impaired function of the locomotor system, opening up a new branch of clinical medicine.

To put my subject in its widest context, I thought it appropriate to begin the book by discussing the major role played by impaired function in the vast majority of patients suffering from pain arising in the locomotor system. This type of pain is altogether the most frequent from which patients suffer, and the first two (theoretical) chapters of this book are mainly concerned with the origin of this pain. It is traditionally associated with rheumatism, but unfortunately rheumatologists are insufficiently aware of locomotor function and leave this field largely to neurologists and orthopaedic surgeons. I believe that the specialty which is principally concerned with impaired function and its restoration to normal is rehabilitation medicine, a term that includes physical therapy, and it is in this framework that the future of manipulation lies. This will continue to be the case until, one day, a new specialty is established, one which deals with the whole of the locomotor system and in particular with its function. Ideally, it should be called 'Musculoskeletal Medicine'.

Acknowledgements

This English version would have been impossible without the devoted care and critical help of my English wife. Next to her, my greatest debt is to my friend John Ebbetts, OBE, MRCS, LRCP, for his scrupulous revision of the whole text, his advice on terminology, and his most valuable comments. At the same time it is a pleasure to thank the publishers, not only for the opportunity they have provided, but also for forcing me to greater conciseness and brevity.

The book in this form is the result of more than 45 years' consistent work in the field of painful disorders stemming from impaired locomotor function. To have been able to devote myself to this I am indebted first to the late Professor Henner, at whose Neurological Clinic I was encouraged to break new ground in an unorthodox direction. I owe thanks in particular to my first teacher both in neuroradiology and in scientific research, Professor Jirout, whose friendship I cherish to this day. My second great tutor was Professor Starý. To Professor Macek I owe the opportunity to teach systematically at the Postgraduate Medical Institute for many years. Further progress in my work I owe to my closest collaborators, Professor Janda and Dr Véle, with whom I still enjoy fruitful cooperation. Nor should K. Stein be omitted, the author of most of the techniques of remedial exercise given here. The late Professor J. Wolf gave me valuable scientific guidance.

I owe much, too, to friends and teachers in other countries: Dr G. Gutmann, Dr H.-D. Wolff and the late Dr F. Biedermann of Germany, Professor Krauss of Germany, Dr Alan Stoddard of England, Professor F. Kaltenborn of Norway, and in particular Dr F. Gaymans of Holland. It is a special pleasure to acknowledge my debt to many of those it has been my good fortune to teach, and particularly to Dr L. Zbojan from Slovakia, to the late Dr Kubis and to Dr Sachse of Germany; the latter gave me valuable help with the German editions of the book. Dr M. Berger of Austria also contributed much to my research with his technical vision and inventiveness.

Great progress in recent years is due to American colleagues: Professor D. G. Simons, co-author of the famous *Trigger Point Manual*, and my friends of the College of Osteopathic Medicine, Michigan State University, in particular Professor P. E. Greenman, DO, F. Mitchell Jr, DO, and R. Ward, DO.

Many technical details and subtleties I owe to physiotherapists who have been my closest aids for the past decades, in particular H. Hermachová, V. Verchozinová, X. Balcárková and V. Raíplíkova.

To have been able to continue my work I owe thanks to the Central Railway Health Institute in Prague, in particular to the successive directors, Dr Vostatek and Dr Okres, and for many of the best illustrations in this book I have to thank Dr Stejskal and his X-ray laboratory at the Institute and lately T. Sereghy of the Neurological Clinic where I am at present a consultant.

This brings me to pay special tribute to my illustrators, to Gerda Istler for her drawings and to J. Cmíral for his photography.

Karel Lewit

1

Introduction

Pain – especially in the locomotor system – is a curse mankind has always suffered. It has been the commonest reason for his calls for help, answered by a bewildering multitude of diverse treatments. To the orthodox the cure, it seems, can often be 'left to nature', sometimes assisted by rest in bed and the mixed blessing of pharmacotherapy, but there are many other methods (all sincerely held by some to be singularly effective) that belong mainly, although not exclusively, to the realm of physical therapy. These include local anaesthesia and needling, massage, electrotherapy, manipulation, local cold or hot applications, more recently the laser and the magnet, remedial exercise, hypnotherapy, counter-irritative poultices and even leeches. All of these are used for more or less the same type of disorder, and we may ask if any one of them should be preferred, especially since in practice we very often find that the therapist uses the method he or she knows best.

The common feature of all these methods is that they act reflexly, that is they act on sensory receptors – usually in the region where the pain is felt or, even better, where it originates – to produce a reflex response. They may thus be termed 'methods of reflex therapy'. Assuming the reflex nature of the action of this type of treatment, we may then ask which receptors are acted upon and which structures are subserved by those receptors. As nervous control is based largely on reflex action, precise information about where, how and why we should apply one or the other method may be very useful and give us better insight into the various methods, as well as more reliable practical results. As these methods are most frequently applied in painful conditions, it may be useful to begin with the reflex response to nociceptive (painful) stimulation.

Any localized painful stimulation will act in the segment to which the stimulated structure belongs. In this segment there is usually a hyperalgesic zone in the skin, muscle spasm (trigger point TrP), painful periosteal points, movement restriction of the spinal segment and (perhaps) some dysfunction of a visceral organ (Figure 1.1). This provides a means both of recognizing clinically which of these changes is present and of using some of the methods available either upon the skin, the muscles (periosteal points), the spinal segment or the visceral organ involved. We may also try to find out which of these structures is the source of the painful stimulus, in which structure the changes are more intense, and so on.

However, these reflex changes are not confined to a single segment. A visceral disturbance is accompanied by viscerovisceral reflexes: for example, pain in the region of the gall bladder causes anorexia; pain in the region of the heart, a sense of oppression,

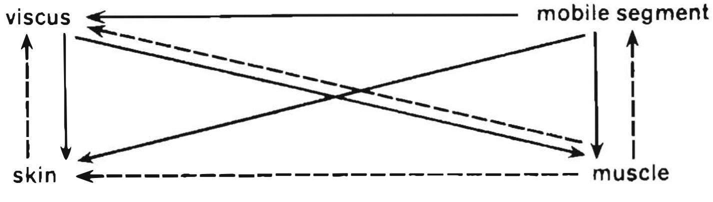


Figure 1.1 Reflex relations within the segment

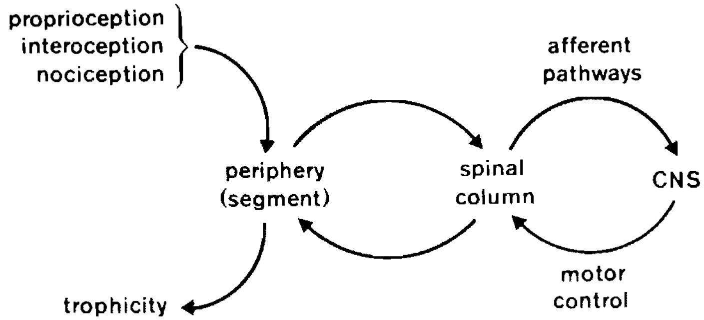


Figure 1.2 Afferent and efferent connections between the periphery and central nervous system

etc. These suprasegmental reflexes are most prominent in the locomotor system: acute segmental pain in the lumbar region causes spasm of the whole lumbar erector spinae; any local movement restriction in the spinal column acts upon distant segments, causing what may be called a chain reaction. Any serious painful disorder at the periphery will also cause a central response: the motor pattern will change in order to spare the painful structure. In this way altered motor patterns may be formed which can become permanent and so persist after the painful lesion has disappeared (Figure 1.2).

It is useful to note that at all these levels there are both somatic and autonomic responses to painful afferents. The somatic response consists mainly of muscle spasm (TrPs, tension) or muscular inhibition and, at the central level, of a changed motor pattern. The autonomic response is much more varied: it is manifested by the appearance of hyperalgesic zones and pain spots, by a vasomotor reaction (mainly vasoconstriction in the relevant segment) and, at the central level, may affect respiration, the cardiovascular or the digestive system. These central effects are understandable, for pain is also a stress factor.

Once we know the source of nociceptive stimulation, for example movement restriction of a spinal motor segment, and can assess its severity, then the intensity of these reflex responses may give us relevant information about the reaction of the patient to this type of stimulation, particularly in that segment. The subjective assessment of pain allows us to correlate the nociceptive stimulation, the reflex reaction and the (central, psychological) susceptibility of the patient to pain.

This schematic outline shows some possible lines of action to take in painful disorders, using the same orderly approach a neurologist would employ in disorders of mobility. This approach is essential if we are to act specifically, that is if we are to know why, when and where we should use one or other of the methods we call reflex therapy. Precisely for this reason we must first determine clinically the source of pain as well as the reflex reactions in the segment and at the suprasegmental and central levels. I believe that the key to this difficult task lies in the function of the locomotor system and its possible disturbance. As this constitutes one of the main themes of this book, I shall do no more in this introduction than point out that the locomotor system is by far the most frequent source of pain in an organism. This is readily understandable, because not only does the locomotor system constitute about three-quarters of the body weight, but even more important it is under the control of our will – at the mercy of our whims – and has no other way of protecting itself against misuse other than by causing pain. This further implies that pain warns us mainly against harmful functioning, and it is disturbance of function that is the most common cause of pain originating in the locomotor system. Movement restriction (blockage) at the segmental level and disturbed motor patterns at the central level may serve as examples. It is therefore no coincidence that pain of any origin (for example, visceral pain) as a rule gives muscular trigger points in the relevant segment and is usually felt in the locomotor system (for example the heart causes pain in the left arm and shoulder, the gall bladder causes pain in the shoulder-blade, etc.).

Thus specific therapy can be effectively applied only on the basis of a sound knowledge of the function of the locomotor system, and this constitutes one of the most important and difficult topics in this book.

Obviously, the means of therapy must vary according to the structure upon which we wish to act. There is certainly a great variety of methods available to us if we want to act on a hyperalgesic skin zone, as skin receptors may be reached by most types of physical therapy (massage, electrotherapy, needling or even simple skin stretching). Muscles in tension may be treated by massage, and more effectively by post-isometric relaxation, by warmth or by infiltration. Periosteal points may be reached by soft tissue techniques, deep massage, by needling, or, if they are the insertion points of muscles, by post-isometric relaxation of the muscle. The most suitable treatment for joint or spinal segment movement restriction is manipulation; that for disturbed motor patterns is remedial exercise.

Furthermore, we must decide which of the affected structures is the most important and which less so; which is likely to be primary and which secondary. The severity of the change may be significant. Even at the segmental level, however, there is a sort of hierarchy: there may be a primary visceral disorder and there may be blockage of a spinal segment. Changes in muscle can be secondary and in the skin this is the rule. But in the locomotor system itself, and in the spinal column, there are regions of greater and of lesser importance, regions in which a primary lesion occurs more readily than in others. It is vital to recognize those faulty central motor patterns which, if significant, will cause relapses at the periphery. In this connection psychological factors play a major part, as motor patterns are to a certain degree expressions of the state of mind: anxiety, depression and an inability to relax will greatly influence motor patterns; no less important is the subject's psychological attitude to pain, as it is the most frequent symptom in our patients.

In addition to the importance of the changes diagnosed, there is also a practical or technical aspect to be considered, as not all of the methods used are equally effective or 'economical'. Thus needling of a periosteal pain spot (or infiltration) is usually more economical than periosteal massage (deep friction), but wherever possible it is preferable to use post-isometric relaxation of the muscle (if the periosteal point is a point of muscle insertion) or soft tissue techniques because they are painless and the patient can usually be taught to do it himself. The attractiveness of manipulation techniques lies mainly in the fact that they are effective and not time consuming.

We can see from this that the choice of treatment is very broad. We can decide which to use by diagnosing each lesion in turn, and from this make what Gutmann (1975) calls the *pathogenetische Aktualitätsdiagnose*, the diagnosis of the lesion that is the most important link in the chain of pathology at a given moment. We must do this, otherwise we may, for example, apply a method which acts on skin receptors when there are no signs of a hyperalgesic zone, act on a muscle when there is no change in tension, manipulate a spinal segment with normal mobility, or give remedial exercise for normal movement patterns. Such very varied methods of treatment should be applied only after full clinical examination and analysis, and with careful testing of the results of treatment. We must act in a systematic fashion and, as we would do when making a neurological examination, start at the peripheral level and work up to the central, applying treatment according to our findings.

At times, however, the results fall far below what we might expect from our premises. One of the chief reasons why this happens in this type of therapy is the presence of a lesion which causes intense nociceptive stimulation and so dominates the clinical picture without the patient being aware of it. The German literature uses the term *Storungsfeld*, focus of disturbance. This is frequently an old scar after injury or operation, often a tonsillectomy scar. This focus-scar is usually tender on examination, with pain spots, and surrounded by a hyperalgesic zone. If the 'normal' therapy fails, the existence of such a scar acting like a 'saboteur' must be considered; treatment by local anaesthesia or simply by needling the pain spots or stretching the scar tissue by soft-tissue techniques can be most rewarding. Another reason for poor results in patients treated for pain may be undiagnosed masked depression, which must then be treated as such.

Disturbed function of the locomotor system, together with the reflex changes it produces, may aptly be called the 'functional pathology of the locomotor system'. In this connection the unfortunate but frequent use of the term 'functional' as a synonym or euphemism for 'psychological' is most regrettable – it implies a grave underestimation of the importance of function and changes of function consequent on pathological changes. In rehabilitation we are primarily concerned with the restoration of impaired function even in those conditions where there is underlying structural pathology. This is understandable because structural lesions necessarily produce disturbances of function. Indeed, so fundamental is the distinction between morphological lesions and function, that it can aptly be compared to that between computer hard- and software.

The greatest obstacle to the practical application of these apparently simple principles is a general lack of clinical understanding of functional disorders of the locomotor system or even of their reflex manifestations, which are, in fact, the most typical clinical manifestations of pain. The lesions that are the most frequent, as well as being the object of manipulative therapy, are those affecting the spinal column; the term vertebrogenic lesion is often used to describe them, but this is now believed to be not quite appropriate: vertebrogenic disorders also include such pathological states as ankylosing spondylitis, osteoporosis, tumours, etc., while our main concern is with disturbed function. However, function is not confined to the spinal column but involves muscles, nervous control and very frequently the extremities. It is therefore more appropriate to speak of disturbed function of the locomotor system, rather than of vertebrogenic disturbance.

What is the present place of reflex therapy? This question is as difficult to answer as the question of the place of pharmacotherapy. Whereas pharmacotherapy has developed into an exact and sophisticated science, methods of reflex (physical) therapy have for the most part remained empirical, with largely overlapping and even chaotic indications. From what has already been said it is possible to formulate one important principle: we do not prescribe treatment for a particular disease, but for those changes that are of pathogenic significance in the disease. If, for example, headache is due to muscular tension alone, then muscular relaxation by whatever may be the most effective method is the correct treatment. However, if this muscular tension is due to blockage of a motor segment of the cervical spine, manipulation will be more suitable; if faulty posture is the cause, remedial exercise may be the answer. However, the great advantages of this type of therapy over pharmacotherapy are that (1) the mainly physiological methods used cause a minimum of side-effects if properly applied, and (2) as most methods of reflex therapy act immediately, their effectiveness can be checked at once.

It is worth saying a few words here about the role of pharmacotherapy in those lesions that mainly affect the functioning of the locomotor system. It would be difficult to conceive of a drug that could restore a specific motor function, but drugs may alleviate spasm, influence pain and damp down some of the reflex reactions involved, and thus facilitate the restoration of function. Additionally, they are of course necessary for the treatment of depression and anxiety symptoms.

To sum up, neither the clinical diagnosis nor our findings in themselves suffice as the basis for deciding the most appropriate therapy. Only an analysis of pathogenesis enables us to determine the lesion that is the most important at a given moment. After treatment the patient must be re-examined to gauge any immediate effect, and from this we can see at once whether our hypothesis about the pathology was correct and can adjust treatment accordingly. If treatment has been effective, then at the next examination the picture should have changed and again we have to determine which lesion has become the most important. Thus therapy is never a monotonous routine; at the same time it is always verifiable, which encourages the therapist to take an objective scientific approach.

Manipulative therapy, which is one of the most effective and important of the various methods of reflex therapy, is concerned with impaired function of the locomotor system. Because we can define its purpose (treatment of blockage) it serves to show that methods of reflex therapy are more effective if we know exactly on which type of lesion they act, and that they are improperly used if this is not known. This is fundamental to our approach, and it should be applied to all other methods of reflex therapy.

History

It might be as well to say something of the history of manipulative therapy in order to explain the anomalous position it holds in present-day medicine. I will also consider its prospects and take the opportunity to warn against some of the worst pitfalls.

It seems that some forms of manipulative therapy are as old as the history of mankind, and it was, and is to this day, part of folk healing in Europe and elsewhere. However, it is noteworthy that the father of European medicine, Hippocrates, saw 'rhachiotherapy' as one of the cornerstones of medicine, on a par with surgery and drug therapy. According to Waerland (1950), Hippocrates repeatedly pointed out the importance of knowing all about the spinal column, since so many disorders are related to it. Hippocrates is quoted as saying that manipulation of the spinal column was an old art, and that he thought highly of those who first discovered its importance and who would follow him in furthering the art of natural healing. Writing about articulations, Hippocrates described 'pararthremata', similar to slight dislocation or subluxation, in which the vertebrae are only slightly shifted, and went on to say that the 'eyes and hands of the experienced physician should not miss anything which could be helpful in adjusting the shifted vertebra without harming the patient . . . if treatment is performed *lege artis*, the patient can come to no harm'.

There are numerous relief carvings and other illustrations showing manipulative therapy and traction as performed in classical antiquity (see Frontispiece). The patient was usually prone on a specially constructed table while traction was applied to both the head and the feet. The physician then dealt with a specific vertebra. Galen, too, knew that nerves originated from the spinal column and could be damaged at this site, as we see from the description of his treatment of the philosopher Pausanius. But while treatment with herbs developed into modern pharmacotherapy, and surgery became the field of specialized practitioners, manipulation remained unchanged throughout the centuries. In England the layman performing manipulations was a 'bonesetter'; in France he was 'le raboteur'.

The first important school teaching manipulation on a professional basis in modern times was the osteopathic school founded by Andrew Still (born 1828); he served as a surgeon in the American Civil War and then worked as a general practitioner. He founded his school in Kirksville in 1897, and trained lay manipulators. Initially, courses at the school lasted for 2 years, but later the curriculum was extended to 4 years, in line with medical schools, and is now the same length as that of study in university faculties of medicine. For a long time osteopathic schools were private institutions, but in recent years Colleges of Osteopathic Medicine have been established at some American universities, the first being that of the Michigan State University at East Lansing. In addition to osteopathic techniques, these colleges give full medical training and graduates are recognized in most of the states of the USA as DO (doctor of osteopathy) by the state administration; this entitles them to carry on medical practice.

Soon after Still founded his osteopathic school, a grocer (D. D. Palmer) founded a school of 'chiropractic'. Born in 1845, he founded his Palmer College of Chiropractic in 1905; his son B. J. Palmer wrote that it was a 'business' where chiropractors were trained. At first the courses were very short indeed – only a fortnight – but the fee was 500 dollars! By 1911 courses lasted 1 year, and now American chiropractic schools also give their students a 4-year course of training.

There are to this day some differences between osteopaths and chiropractors. The former have full medical training plus manipulation training, and are entitled to work not only as general practitioners but also as gynaecologists, surgeons, eye specialists, etc. In this way they have become part of the medical profession and the majority devote themselves little, if at all, to manipulative therapy. Those, however, who remain faithful to their original identity are something of an elite among manipulating physicians. They rely much less on high-velocity thrust techniques than chiropractors do to this day, preferring mobilization and soft-tissue techniques, active ('muscle energy') techniques, with a common aim or denominator: to obtain myofascial release.

The rift between chiropractic and the medical profession has been crossed only gradually. To quote a typical example: 'Chiropractic flourishes where ignorance prevails. Chiropractic will disappear because its time has come. Chiropractic defies logic and common sense. Testimonials are but hypnotic multiples of zero in an empty vacuum . . .' (Angrist, 1973).

Today chiropractors, too, have a full medical curriculum enabling them to make diagnoses, yet their students are taught neither pharmacotherapy nor surgery. In fact, between 1966 and 1980 the American Medical Association (AMA) and affiliated Medical Societies forbade their members to cooperate with chiropractors. A group of chiropractors took the matter to court, charging 'illegal conspiracy', and won their case in 1987: the AMA is now obliged by law to allow cooperation between doctors and chiropractors. It should be noted, however, that in the past the chiropractors themselves showed little interest in such cooperation. Nevertheless, for some time now the younger generation of chiropractors not only have been willing to cooperate with the medical profession, but have been encouraged to refer patients to specialists when advisable. Chiropractic colleges now teach and undertake research on a modern scientific basis, are consistently overcoming their cherished ideology, and limit their activities to problems of the locomotor system considering themselves specialists of the 'neuro-musculo-skeletal system'.

The fact that chiropractors are taught neither pharmacotherapy nor surgery results in much greater adherence to manipulative therapy, so that manipulation is used far more by chiropractors than by osteopaths. As previously stated, the former certainly rely more on thrust techniques; however, they also prescribe remedial exercise and dieting, and use soft-tissue techniques. Colleges are now being set up in Europe and in Japan; although the chiropractors are, perhaps, less sophisticated, they form the most active and numerous body of manipulating physicians.

The development of modern medicine in Europe, in particular, has shown that an uncompromisingly negative attitude to manipulation is not shared by the whole of the medical profession. The discovery of the mechanical role of disc prolapse in root syndromes made doctors aware of the possibilities of traction and even of other methods of mechanical treatment, including manipulation. In this way a somewhat paradoxical situation developed: while the osteopaths and chiropractors, who were regarded by the medical profession as quacks, were elaborating sophisticated manipulation techniques, qualified doctors began to use very crude methods of manipulation, even employing anaesthesia.

It is no coincidence that the first medical men who devoted themselves to the art of manipulation were Europeans. One of the first was a Swiss doctor, Naegeli, who used very effective traction manipulation on the cervical spine, which was particularly effective in the treatment of headache. His book *Nervenleiden und Nervenschmerzen* (1903, republished 1954, 1979) makes good reading to this day. The most important pioneer of medical manipulation, however, was J. A. Mennell (1952, 1964), an outspoken protagonist of osteopathic techniques which he also taught, mainly to physiotherapists. It is in a way paradoxical that his famous disciple Cyriax, whose *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine* (1977, 1978) remains the classic textbook for clinical assessment of motor function, did not follow his predecessor in developing these techniques further.

This gap was later filled by Stoddard, a DO who also graduated in medicine and whose *Manual of Osteopathic Technique* remains the classic in its field (Stoddard, 1961). The London College of Osteopathy (now the London College of Osteopathic Medicine) was the first institution where osteopathic techniques were taught to qualified doctors, originally by osteopaths. Graduates of this College have played an important part in the development of manipulative medicine throughout Europe and particularly in France, where Maigne is the most prominent. Working under De Seze he succeeded in giving courses in manipulation at the Medical Faculty of the University of Paris, attended by medical practitioners (mainly specialists in physical medicine) but not by physiotherapists.

At the same time, i.e. shortly after 1945, a group of German doctors became interested in manipulation, mainly under the influence of American-trained chiropractors (Illi, Peper and Sandberg). Unlike Maigne, these were mainly doctors in private practice; in the early fifties two groups were formed with the aim of promoting and teaching manipulation (exclusively to doctors): the MWE [(Gesellschaft) für manuelle Wirbelsäulen- und Extremitätentherapie] headed by Sell and the FAC (Forschungs- und Arbeitsgemeinschaft für Chirotherapie) with Biedermann, Cramer, Gutmann and H.-D. Wolff. Unlike France and Great Britain, where courses for doctors lasted months or even a year, in Germany doctors were given weekly courses at intervals, arranged in a series of at first 4 and later 8 separate weeks. With this system it has been possible to teach manipulation techniques to far more doctors in Germany, and also in Switzerland, Austria, Holland and Scandinavia: their numbers run into hundreds. Meanwhile the two German groups united to found the German Association of Manual Medicine, and similar associations have been formed in other countries.

Unlike the USA, where manipulation developed outside the medical profession and aroused a predominantly hostile reaction which is only slowly being overcome, in many countries of Western Europe important groups of medical men have promoted the idea that manipulation should be performed by qualified doctors only. With the exception of Maigne in France they have not, however, succeeded in adding manipulative techniques to the medical curriculum at universities and teaching hospitals. They thus belong to what we may call 'unofficial' trends in medicine; manipulation remains rather an 'outsider's' method, despite the support of some renowned German professors (Nonnenbruch, Gutzeit, Zuckschwerdt, Junghanns, Schuler and others). In spite of this reluctant attitude of the universities, doctors who qualify in courses outside the universities are remunerated for manipulation by health insurance companies.

The development of manipulative medicine in some of the former socialist countries has followed different lines. The first country where manipulation was used and taught on a large scale was Czechoslovakia, where the model that was created has since been adopted by former East Germany, Bulgaria, Poland and Hungary. For obvious reasons a rift between lay and professional medicine, or between an 'outsider' and an 'official' school of thought, was not likely to develop in an exclusively State-run medical service. Professor Henner encouraged the interest of some members of his staff at the Neurological

broad field of rehabilitation of the locomotor system, and in the potential of 'unconventional' methods, among them manipulation. Švehla, Obrda, Starý, Miřatský, Jirout and the present author, and later Janda and Véle, worked on these lines. Here the impulse came from one of the most prominent university hospitals in the country, and it is in Czechoslovakia (at present in the Czech Republic and Slovakia) that major team-work in research in this field is continuously in progress.

Once the effectiveness and economy of manipulative medicine was recognized, the Czechoslovak Ministry of Health decided to incorporate it in the curriculum of the Institutes of Postgraduate Training which run refresher courses for specialists in all fields of medicine. Doctors are thus trained in each of the fields, the 'teachers' receiving additional preparation. Teaching began in Czechoslovakia in 1961, and on the same lines in East Germany in 1965 (three courses of 2 weeks each, at 6-month intervals).

There is another striking feature of the development of manipulative medicine in Czechoslovakia – it remains closely bound up with rehabilitation of the locomotor system, in particular with techniques of remedial exercise. As the simpler chiropractic techniques based exclusively on high-velocity thrusts were gradually superseded by gentler osteopathic techniques, and as these were in turn greatly improved in the 1980s by the addition of neuromuscular facilitation and inhibition techniques, it became obvious that team-work by qualified doctors together with trained physiotherapists was a practical necessity for maximum effectiveness. Therefore, with the exception of high-velocity thrusts, manipulative techniques are now being taught ever more widely to physiotherapists who work with doctors.

During the 1980s great interest in manipulative therapy also appeared in the former Soviet Union. Colleagues from Czechoslovakia, the GDR and Bulgaria have taught there, and systematic training has been established in several cities under the aegis of medical postgraduate institutions. Symposia on manipulative therapy were held there in 1986 and 1990 and a teacher's course in 1991.

As in other fields of medicine, doctors in different countries who were interested in manipulation began to work together. The first international meeting took place in Switzerland in 1958. At the next meeting, in Nice in 1962, it was decided to form an international body; this came about in 1965, when the International Federation of Manual Medicine

(FIMM) was founded in London, with Terrier of Switzerland as the first President. At present there are 21 national associations affiliated to FIMM, mainly from Europe and Australia. However, cooperation with American osteopaths has been growing since 1977, when the Fifth Congress of FIMM was held in Copenhagen.

The harmful effects of leaving manipulation entirely in the hands of non-medical practitioners were only too obvious and, naturally enough, doctors interested in manipulative therapy on the Continent strove to keep the monopoly for the profession. They have only been partially successful in getting manipulative techniques accepted by the profession as a whole, so that they could be taught in medical faculties and teaching hospitals. Very often manipulation has remained an outsider's method, although there are leading universities where it is taught and countries where it is recognized as a part of postgraduate medical specialization, with a view to creating a more comprehensive medical service. As manipulation concerns mainly the locomotor system, such a service is most appropriately accommodated within specialities such as Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation. The vast number of patients who can be effectively treated by these methods makes it imperative that such a service should be organized on the basis of team-work between doctors and physiotherapists.

The alternative which at present prevails in the USA and Canada is represented by osteopaths and chiropractors; they are specialists of the locomotor system, increasingly familiar with techniques of physiotherapy and rehabilitation. They have an increasingly sound medical background and are prepared to cooperate with the medical profession.

Indeed, the Danish Chiropractor's Association presented the following resolution (1995): '. . . it is inappropriate to refer to the chiropractic profession as an alternative profession and to refer to chiropractic as an alternative therapy, and the member associations of the World Federation of Chiropractic should take all appropriate steps that officers, members and staff act on such a manner as a mainstream profession, the services of which are integral to a successful, modern health care system.' In the *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics* (1995) there is an article entitled 'Integration of chiropractic into managed care in a multidisciplinary setting' written by an MD (Medical Director, San Francisco Spine Institute). The author suggests that 'These new managed care organizations are using triage organizations to get patients to the most appropriate level of care as rapidly as possible. The chiropractor is a very appropriate triage individual and also a very appropriate subspecialist for early referral for many conditions'. The author concludes that 'it is time for the chiropractor to expand his tools and take more responsibility for the whole patient and how he functions in our society'.

2

Theoretical considerations

Morphological aspects

Chapter 1 showed clearly that manipulation and most of the methods of reflex therapy are used in a vast number of cases of pain in the locomotor system, including back pain, even though the cause and therefore the therapy remain controversial. For a long time these pains were generally considered to be of inflammatory origin, for the simple reason that this aetiology could best explain the main symptom, the pain itself. For the same reason they were sometimes called 'rheumatic pains'. The many terms ending in '-itis' bear witness to this attitude (spondylitis, arthritis, radiculitis, neuritis, fibrositis, myositis, panniculitis, etc.) as does 'soft-tissue rheumatism'. However, as inflammation is a well-defined pathological condition, it has to be proved, or disproved, by the objective methods of pathological anatomy, and this in the long run was fatal for the inflammation theory: it had to be abandoned for lack of evidence.

Pathological anatomy and 'pathology *in vivo*' (X-rays) generously compensated clinicians for the loss of this simple theory by demonstrating in abundance what are called 'degenerative changes'. Instead of terms ending in '-itis' we were then offered spondylosis, arthrosis, 'discopathy' and the like. There were apparently even theoretical reasons for degeneration, in particular of the disc: its vascularization is reduced early in the ontogenesis and its water content decreases rather rapidly during the first three decades of life (from 90% to 70%). According to Schmorl and Junghanns (1953), 60% of women and 80% of men show evidence of degenerative changes at 50 while by the age of 70 the figure is 95% for both sexes. No wonder that under the dominating influence of the pathological anatomist the term 'degenerative disease' is frequently heard.

It is, however, the very abundance of what are called 'degenerative changes' that makes it difficult to define their relation to pain. Degenerative changes increase with age, but back pain, in particular, occurs most often between the fourth and sixth decade, to become less common in old age. Not only do we find subjects in perfect health but showing considerable degenerative changes: a person with these changes and severe pain may recover completely from the latter, whereas his degenerative changes continue to increase with advancing age. On the other hand, there can be severe pain symptoms in young patients with no degenerative changes at all. Even more important, the significance of what are known as degenerative changes appears to be very ill defined. On the one hand there are destructive lesions in extremity joints, e.g. coxarthrosis and gonarthrosis, the great clinical significance of which nobody will doubt. On the other hand there are changes that probably correspond to what may be called inevitable 'wear and tear'; then again there may be merely a compensatory process, or adaptation, as in scoliosis and hypermobility. In spondylolisthesis a large osteophyte may give the spinal column better stability than an orthopaedic operation. Changes resulting from trauma can be very similar to what is otherwise termed degenerative. One should therefore ask specifically in each case of degenerative change whether this change is relevant or not; it is ill advised to draw clinical conclusions from the mere existence of degenerative changes in a radiograph.

There is, however, some correlation between degenerative change and disc prolapse which may be of clinical importance, for, with a few exceptions, prolapse occurs mainly in discs already showing some degenerative change. The discovery that disc prolapse could cause root syndromes was undoubtedly a landmark: it made the medical public aware of the importance of the spinal column and of the possibility of mechanical disturbance there. On the other hand, the striking success of surgical treatment meant that for some time disc lesions and disc prolapse were held responsible for almost every disturbance related to the spinal column. The reasoning was straightforward: if root compression in the lower lumbar region was found to be due to disc prolapse, then lumbago that occurs before root compression is likely to have the same cause. If root compression in the lumbar region is due to the disc the same should apply to the cervical spine and, by analogy, to neck pain; and as neck pain is frequently associated with headache, root compression may even be the cause of cervical headache. 'Discopathy' was the fashionable word then, not vertebrogenic nor spondylogenic disease.

Surgical practice soon corrected this view, though by default. Although disc surgery became a routine procedure for lumbar root syndromes, it remained the exception in simple lumbago, as well as in cervical root syndromes, and is practically never used in the treatment of pain in the neck or other non-radicular cervical syndromes. Nor can disc prolapse be the only cause of root syndromes in the lumbar region: in operation statistics no disc herniation is found in about 10% of the cases; the large majority of root syndromes resolve without operation, and this is true even of cases with typical findings at myelography. If in such cases the radiograph is repeated after clinical recovery (and the myelography is made with non-resorbable contrast oil), it has repeatedly been found that the disc prolapse remains unchanged, just as it was at the time of maximum pain. It was, however, shown in many, but not in al

longer found at computed tomography after the patient is free from pain. On the other hand, if disc prolapse is found, especially in subjects without root syndromes, it can be considered irrelevant.

Reviewing those morphological changes that are usually related to back pain and associated conditions, we can readily see that they do not explain the complaints of the vast majority of our patients. This is also the reason why this type of patient is sometimes vaguely described as suffering from 'idiopathic back pain' or just 'pain without any pathology' or even 'without any diagnosis' ('non-specific back pain'; Jayson, 1970); in view of the numerical importance of this group of patients this is little to the credit of clinical medicine.

Theoretical implications of manipulation

If manipulative treatment is successful it usually produces immediate relief of pain. We may therefore infer that an understanding of how manipulation works will give us some clues as to what causes pain in the locomotor system when there is no definite pathology.

The first, naive explanation of manipulative therapy was 'repositioning', and therefore something like a dislocation or 'subluxation' had to be assumed. This 'theory' was long held by chiropractors; Still must have believed in it, as did Hippocrates, and probably all lay manipulators down the ages – just 'putting right something that was out of place'. In fact, if a patient with an acute wry neck or lumbago, unable to straighten up, is successfully manipulated so that he immediately stands erect, it is little wonder that something like 'repositioning' seemed the likely explanation. The reason why this theory has been abandoned by physicians, as well as by modern osteopaths and even chiropractors, is that with few exceptions neither dislocation ('malalignment', 'subluxation') nor repositioning ('adjustment') after manipulation can be proved. One of the merits of routine radiography is that the subluxation theory has had to be abandoned for lack of evidence.

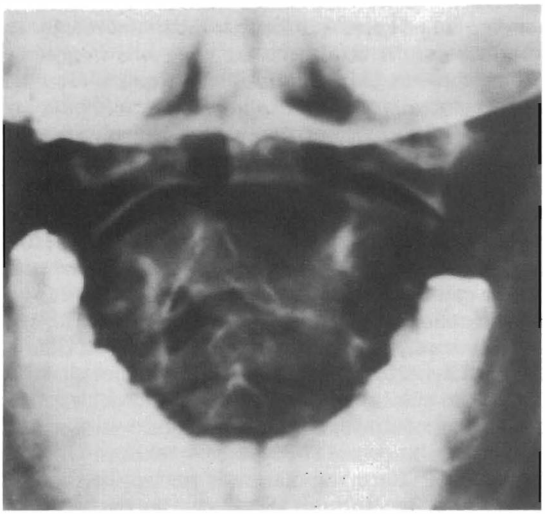
Recently it has been shown by M. Berger (personal communication) that on cineradiography of the cervical spine there is hysteresis if the head moves to an extreme position and back, so that it need not return to the same neutral position (Figure 2.1*a*,*b*). Jirout (1979) has shown the same effect for synkinesis in the sagittal plane after side-bending, to the effect that the relative height of the spinous processes was not the same before and after side-bending in a neutral position. In other words, there is no absolute neutral position.

The flaw in this 'reposition' theory is that it implies manipulation of a vertebra which is displaced, i.e. in a certain direction, whereas in reality we only restore movement between two vertebrae, as is explained later. Technically, this is quite a different proposition. In fact, as there is no absolute neutral position, we can assume that vertebrae always return to the required neutral position if they can move freely.

Fascination with the disc also provided an explanation for the effect of manipulation (Stoddard, 1961; Maigne, 1968; Cyriax, 1977), although it is difficult to see how manipulation could achieve repositioning of a prolapse the exact position of which cannot be known. The great weakness of this approach is that manipulation is not applied to the spinal column only: it is also effective in the treatment of extremity joints, and particularly so at the craniocervical junction, on the ribs and at the sacroiliac joint, where there is no question of discs. Clinical experience also shows quite clearly that manipulation is most effective in conditions where we do not expect to find disc lesions, and less effective in true disc prolapse.

The sophisticated diagnostic techniques developed by the osteopaths have provided what we believe to be relevant clinical evidence of how manipulation really works: we apply manipulation where we find signs of movement restriction, whether in an extremity joint, a rib, or a vertebral movement segment, and if manipulation is successful, mobility is always restored. In other words, manipulation does not achieve a change of structure, as Still thought, but normalization of function. This is even true in cases of wry neck or acute lumbago: the crooked position of the neck or the back in such cases is itself physiological, and it is only the fact that the patient is fixed in this position (head rotation plus inclination in wry neck) that is pathological. Manipulation merely frees mobility and thus enables the patient to return to the neutral position. In this, wry neck and lumbago are the exception to the rule; in the vast majority of cases movement restriction is found where joints are in the neutral position and there is difficulty in proceeding through the whole range of movement.

(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 2.1 (*a*) In this X-ray of the upper cervical spine in neutral position, C2 is slightly rotated to the left with the spinous process deviating to the right. (*b*) In the same neutral position there is marked rotation with deviation of the same spinous process; the subject had held his head in maximum left rotation before returning to the neutral position (reverse or false 'reposition')

Functional aspects

The most important theoretical inference from clinical experience with manipulation can be formulated thus: if one applies manipulation only after adequate clinical examination of mobility and is careful to re-examine after treatment, then one regularly finds that successful manipulation achieves normalization of restricted motor function, and that this goes hand in hand with relief of symptoms. This theoretical inference should then logically be valid not only for passive mobility, but also for active muscle function. We owe to Janda (1967) the proof that this is true in particular for faulty motor patterns (motor stereotypes) producing overstrain in the motor system. This is in keeping with the simple observation that excessive strain causes symptoms, whatever the cause of the strain.

In addition to active motor patterns, there is another important function, disturbance of which frequently causes symptoms: this is body statics. In fact, in modern society static overstrain may be at least as frequent as faulty mobility, and again we find that correction of faulty statics frequently brings relief. Thus, manipulation pioneered our involvement with faulty functioning of the locomotor system and with its normalization, as we shall see throughout this book. Indeed, faulty function alone is the cause of frequent symptoms; this can be shown in children. Morphological changes, on the other hand, do not exclude changes in function. This is particularly true for disc lesions and may explain spontaneous recovery and recovery after conservative treatment (including manipulation). This is of great importance for rehabilitation in traumatology, where our primary aim is to improve function despite morphological changes, in order to achieve compensation.

As will be shown later, function and its disturbances are rarely confined to one site or structure, and therefore diagnosis must take in the locomotor system as a whole. The term 'vertebrogenic' or 'spondylogenic' is thus no longer appropriate, as even in back pain we must take into account muscle function and its nervous control as well as the function of the pelvis and the extremities. As 'vertebrogenic' diseases or lesions include such well-defined pathological conditions as ankylosing spondylitis or osteoporosis, the decisive criterion for the application of manipulation and other measures aimed at restoring function is whether the patient's complaint is due (mainly or exclusively) to changes of function, or to changes of structure (pathology).

This is a more difficult matter than it may seem: it requires a systematic assessment and a technique of examination that has not yet been formulated. It is the great weakness of manipulative therapy, remedial exercise, etc. – methods concerned with improving the functioning of the motor system – that they have been, and for the most part still are, mainly concerned with therapy and far too little with clinical diagnosis of the conditions they are supposed to remedy. This is perhaps the main reason for the paradox that in many fields of medicine the importance of changes in function is now well recognized, whereas in the motor system, where function is paramount, this fundamental aspect is rarely considered. However, the functioning of the locomotor system is extremely complex, as we shall see, and diagnosis of disturbed function is a highly sophisticated proceeding carried out, as it were, in a clinical no man's land. There is an additional disadvantage in that it can be investigated only by clinical methods, for the most part, and these are at present regarded as 'subjective', whereas 'modern' research puts its faith mainly in the laboratory.

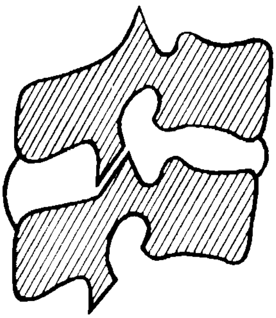


Figure 2.2 The mobile segment (after Junghanns, 1955)

The clinical phenomenon of segmental movement restriction

We may now turn back to the intervertebral motor segment and disturbances in its functioning (Figure 2.2). These consist of (1) hypermobility and (2) movement restriction; obviously, manipulative therapy is concerned only with the latter. The principal (clinical) characteristics are of the utmost importance; they include changes in quantity as well as in quality, of which the former – taking the form of restricted mobility – is certainly the more straightforward. It is easily diagnosed in an extremity joint, whereas diagnosis of restriction is much more difficult in a single motor segment of the spinal column. Changes in quality are therefore of great diagnostic value. They take the form of increased resistance during movement (Stoddard's 'binding'): the most striking change is probably the lack of springing in the end-position of a restricted joint or motor segment; in a normal joint the extreme position is never reached abruptly, and a slight increase of pressure increases the range of movement. There is no absolute limit. In a joint with restricted mobility, this springing or giving way has been lost and we abruptly encounter a barrier. This has given rise to the term 'blocking', or blockage, and is, perhaps, the most easily diagnosed sign.

In the osteopathic literature the barrier concept is further elucidated: motion never reaches the 'anatomical barrier' of bone, joint capsule or ligament. Active motion has a somewhat smaller range than passive, which is normally limited by an elastic barrier. In cases of movement restriction we encounter a 'restrictive barrier' limiting the range of movement; this barrier also differs in quality, being abrupt, with no spring. The restrictive barrier may even change the neutral position of a joint. In the direction of the pathological barrier, 'binding' may be found on motion palpation. It should be pointed out that although the barrier concept is most frequently applied to joints, it may also be used with respect to soft tissues and muscles (Figure 2.3). It should always be borne in mind that the barrier has a protective function.

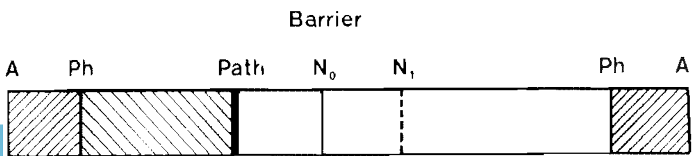


Figure 2.3 The barrier phenomenon: the anatomical, physiological and pathological barriers

The physiological barrier which is most important from the practical point of view is the most ill defined. In the osteopathic glossary (1997) it is the limit of active motion. Not only is this definition useless for soft tissues; it cannot be used for the mostly passive examination of joints, including joint play.

According to the latest chiropractic publication (1995) this barrier is reached at the very end of passive motion. This definition, again, is most unfortunate, because both (thrust) manipulation and mobilization are carried out after reaching ('engaging') this barrier. This necessarily produces the stretch reflex which, however, is incompatible with good relaxation and spontaneous release. For an optimum gentle technique we have to reach the barrier by the patient relaxing, the resistance of a joint in neutral range being practically nil. This is equally true for joint play, where springing is most important for both diagnosis and treatment. There is, indeed, very little springing at the end of the passive range of movement. The same goes for release at the barrier, which, again, requires maximum relaxation.

This is quite as true for soft tissues as for joints. In addition, good palpation is mandatory for diagnosis and for sensing release: the sense of palpation is, however, greatly diminished whenever more than very slight force is used. Latimer *et al.* (1998) showed that increased pressure produced increased stiffness of the lumbar spine.

For all these reasons the correct definition of the physiological barrier is the point where the first resistance at passive motion is met. This depends, of course, on the experience of the examiner and is a hallmark of his skill. It is very probably related to the neutral zone of Panjabi.

Joint play and movement restriction

There are two types of passive mobility that are affected by movement restriction (blocking): the first is 'functional movement', i.e. movement carried out by the subject; joint play is passive movement, which cannot be carried out by the subject and comprises a translatory (sliding) movement of one joint surface against the other, or even rotation, and also distraction (Figure 2.4). Thus we can actively flex, extend or side-bend a finger, whereas passively it may be shifted against the metacarpal in any direction, rotated, or distracted by axial pull. These movements are not only felt, but can be demonstrated radiographically (including distraction, Figure 2.4). Joint play is by no means of academic interest only: its practical clinical importance lies in that (1) it shows blockage at a stage when functional mobility is still normal, which is particularly valuable if we use springing techniques; and (2), as is well illustrated by Mennell's diagram (Figure 2.5), these shifting movements as well as distraction are a most effective and gentle way of restoring normal mobility (Figure 2.6). It can thus be clinically inferred that normal joint play is the prerequisite of normal joint movement; its disturbance can be likened to a drawer that has stuck, and needs to be eased out.

Movement restriction and reflex changes

Blockage in an articulation and particularly in a vertebral motor segment goes hand in hand with reflex changes mainly in the same spinal segment. These affect the dermatome as well as the muscles, etc. The whole complex of these changes is also called 'somatic dysfunction' (Greenman, 1989) and is characterized by asymmetry, abnormal range of motion and soft tissue abnormality. Korr (1975) coined the term 'segmental facilitation'. In movement restriction, muscular tension or spasm is most important because it may fix the joint and may be a very significant factor causing restriction; this can readily be seen from a positive straight leg raising test. The same goes for the typical antalgesic posture in root syndromes, when anteflexion and side-bending of the whole lumbar spine prevent any attempt by the patient to straighten up.

To quote Korr (1975), who has devoted most of his work to the implications of manipulative merapy: 'While usually thinking of muscles as the motors of the body, producing motion by their contraction, it is important to remember that the same contractile forces are also used to oppose motion . . . It is therefore proposed that it is in its capacity as a brake that a muscle may become a major and highly variable impediment to mobility of a lesioned "joint"'. After giving a thorough explanation of the role of the muscle spindle and the gamma system, Korr goes on: 'The high gain hypothesis is consistent with, and offers an explanation for, the steeply rising resistance to motion ("bind") in one direction . . . They [the muscles] would also be provoked into stronger and stronger contraction by the exaggerated spindle discharges as motions that tend to lengthen the affected muscles occur'. To put it briefly, the phenomena found clinically in movement restriction might be explained not by the structure that is usually held responsible for passive mobility, i.e. the joint, but by the organ of active movement, the muscle. That is why osteopaths do not use the term 'blockage' for movement restriction but, in order not to commit themselves, speak of 'osteopathic lesions', or more recently of 'somatic dysfunction' (Greenman, 1978).

The role of shortened muscles in movement

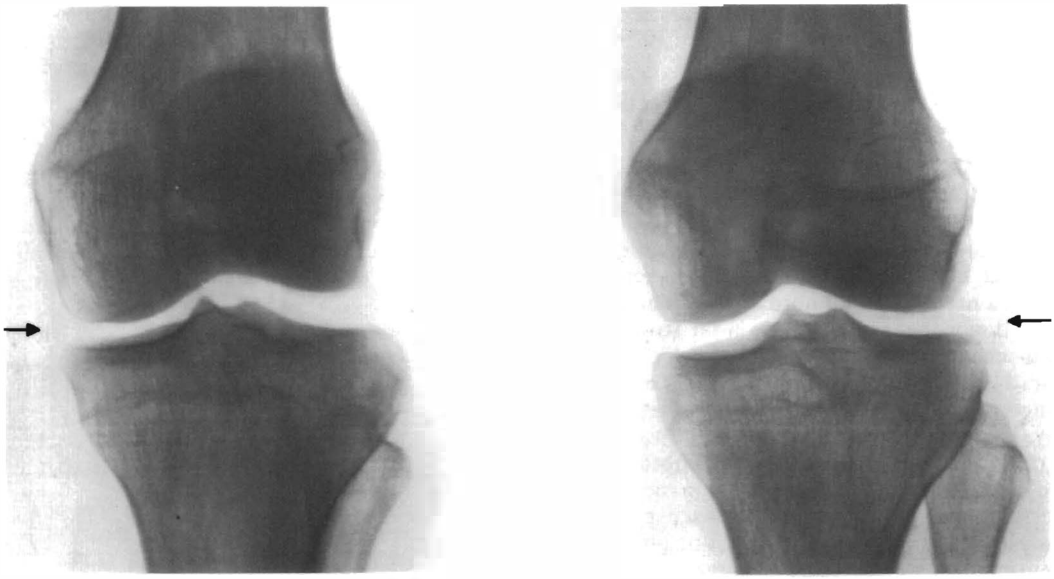
(*a*) (*b*)

restriction has been demonstrated by Janda (1967). Muscle relaxation techniques are widely used in order to mobilize joints. The question must therefore be put: what is the role of the joint in passive movement restriction?

Blockage as an articular phenomenon

The simplistic view that passive movement is entirely or mainly an articular phenomenon should be abandoned. In fact, as Korr has shown, most clinical phenomena by which we recognize movement restriction in a joint or vertebral motor segment might be explained by muscle activity induced by the muscle proprioceptors and the gamma system. What evidence remains to show that the joint has a role of any importance?

There is one obvious weakness in the purely 'muscular' theory: it does not explain what stimulates the receptors; in other words, if muscle activity is a reflex response, which nobody doubts, where does the stimulus come from? The purely empirical techniques of manipulation are based on joint anatomy. It is surprising that osteopaths, who are the originators of most of these very carefully worked out and exactly taught techniques, appear



(*c*) (*d*)

Figure 2.4 (*a, b*) Distraction of the metacarpophalangeal joint; (*c, d*) medial and lateral gapping of the knee joint, visualized by X-ray

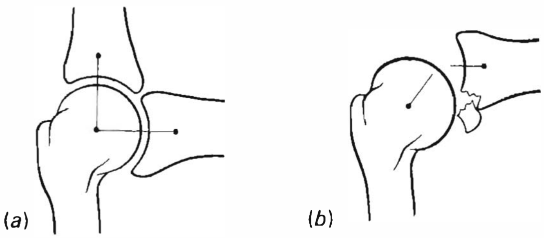


Figure 2.5 Importance of joint play. (*a*) Gliding movement is essential for joint function; if gliding is disturbed (*b*) forceful movement may injure the joint (Mennell, 1964)

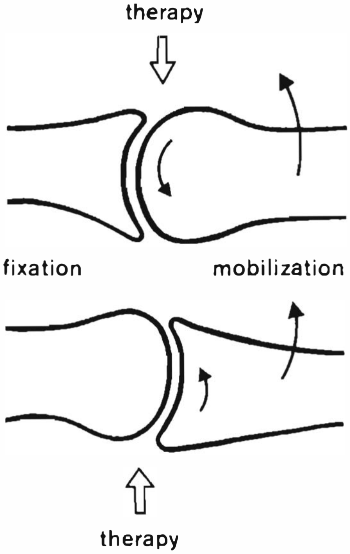


Figure 2.6 The direction of gliding movement and joint mobilization, showing how this depends on whether the proximal or distal partner is concave or convex (After Kaltenborn, 1976)

very little aware of their theoretical implications. More indirect evidence lies in the importance of joint play as a prerequisite of normal joint function: there is no doubt that muscles have a far stronger, direct influence on functional movement, which is in fact induced by muscles and can for the same reason be inhibited by muscles, than on the movements of joint play. If, therefore, the muscular factor was the decisive one, functional movement would be affected first, and not joint play. We know, however, that the reverse is the case. Further evidence comes from analysis of the high-velocity thrust techniques producing gapping of the joint surfaces, together with a popping sound, or 'click'. There are distraction high-velocity thrusts which cause hardly any distension of the muscles, the joint remaining in the neutral position, and the click itself is certainly an articular phenomenon. But there is even direct evidence:

1. There are three joints that are not moved by muscles, nor can their movement be opposed by them: these are the sacroiliac, the acromioclavicular and the tibiofibular joints. Yet these joints show typical signs of blockage and their treatment by passive mobilization is particularly effective.
2. In order to prove (or disprove) the role of the articulation we undertook the following experiment: in 10 patients the cervical spine was examined before operation (mainly abdominal surgery) and re-examined under anaesthesia with myorelaxants and intubation with artificial respiration. In all cases movement restriction remained unchanged and was even more easily recognizable during narcosis, as the patient was completely relaxed.

Possible mechanism of joint blockage and manipulation

The importance of the experiment just referred to lies not only in proving that movement restriction, too, is an articular phenomenon, but also in that it proved that we have to deal with a mechanical obstacle in the joint. It was Emminger (1967) who first suggested that such an obstacle might be attributed to the meniscoids previously described by

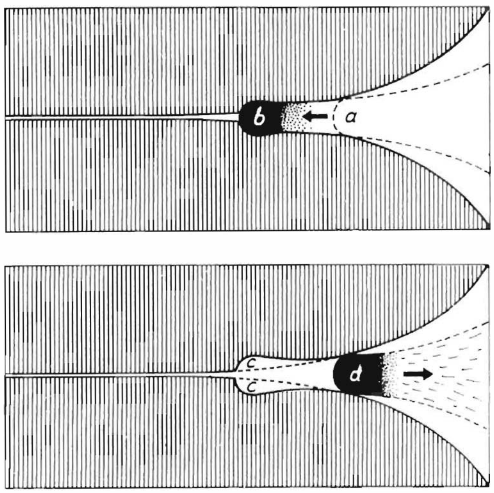


Figure 2.7 Entrapment of a meniscoid at the edge of a joint space, according to the joint blockage theory of Wolf (1975). Top, the meniscoid normally lying in position (*a*) has moved between the joint facets and its hard edge has impinged; (*b*) bottom, it has returned to normal position after treatment. A groove (*c–d*) remains for a short time, but being flat it offers only minor resistance to slipping back

Töndury (1948) in intervertebral joints, and later found by Kos (1968) even in extremity joints; the meniscoids may get caught between the moving joint facets. Indeed, most joints have very incongruous facets and smooth mobility is possible only if some additional tissue can fill the redundant space. To do this the meniscoid must move freely between the joint facets, and may meet with difficulties. Kos and Wolf (1972) have further elaborated this theory, showing why the mechanism is easily disturbed: (1) the meniscoid has a soft base and a hard edge, which cannot easily be compressed and (2) joint cartilage is hard and elastic only if the force that acts on it does so rapidly. If, however, we subject the cartilage to constant pressure, it adapts to the material exerting that pressure as though it were fluid. If, therefore, the meniscoid is caught between the gliding surfaces of the joint facets, the hard edge produces a cavity in the cartilage and is trapped in it (Figure 2.7).

The implications for the theory of manipulation are clear: if we separate the joint facets by high-velocity thrust techniques, the meniscoid can slip out. Figure 2.7 shows that the trapped edge of the meniscoid has only a very slight resistance to overcome, consisting of two very shallow grooves that open smoothly into the wedge-shaped space between the cartilage surfaces. In repetitive mobilization a back-and-forth movement takes place, meeting greater resistance in the direction of incarceration than in that of liberation. After the last resistance has been gradually overcome, the meniscoid slips back into its original position. Figure 2.8 also illustrates how resistance becomes less with each movement that increases the space between the dotted lines.

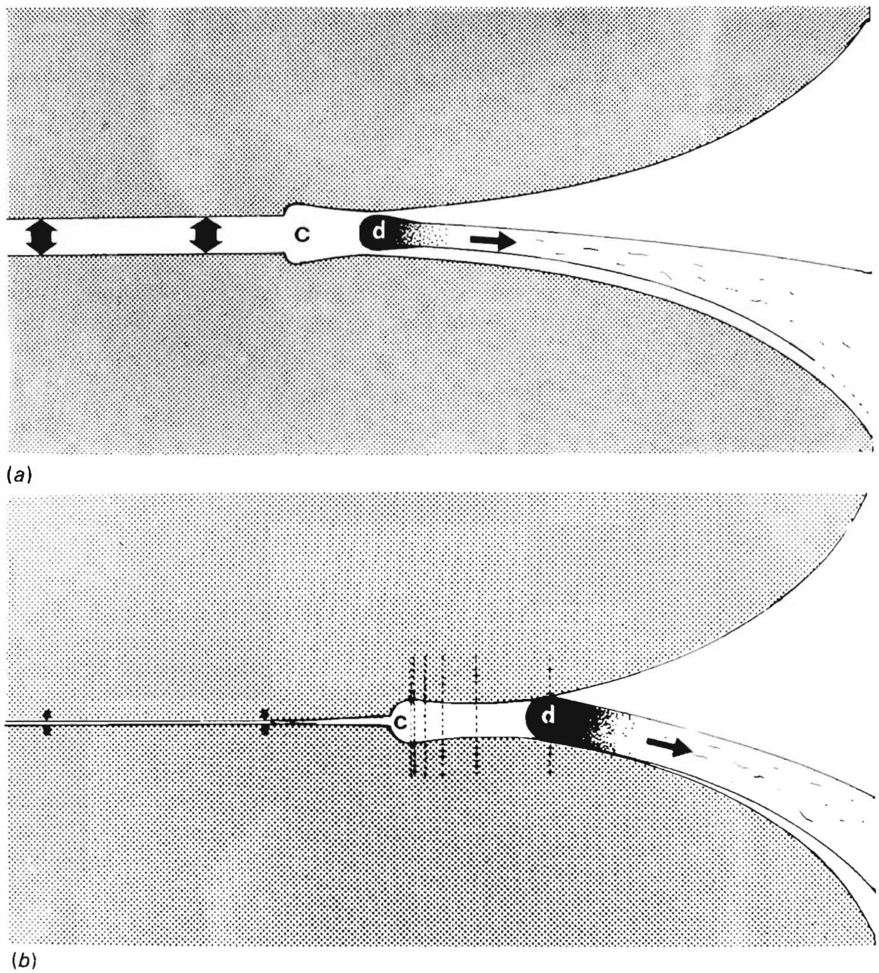


Figure 2.8 The effect of therapy. (*a*) Gapping of the joint by high-velocity thrust, making it possible for the meniscoid to slip back. (*b*) Repetitive mobilization enabling the meniscoid to move back into its original position, first by small degrees and then more rapidly

The effect of manipulation

The effect of successful manipulation is twofold: (1) it restores mobility, including joint play; (2) it has a very intense reflex effect upon all structures where changes have been found before manipulation. This is most striking in the musculature, where increased tension (spasm) is followed by hypotonia, but the skin in the corresponding dermatomes, too, is more easily folded and more easily stretched. Frequently, there are also palpable changes at periosteal points. In all these structures tissue tension diminishes. The effect is not, however, limited only to one segment: according to the importance of the vertebral motor segment concerned, or the joint, the effect spreads to neighbouring motor segments or even to distant ones, as we shall see later. There is, however, a difference between mobilization techniques (and soft tissue manipulation) and thrust manipulation: whereas the former normalizes the pathological barrier, the latter breaks it, causing (temporary) hypermobility.

This difference has been shown by Mierau *et al.* (1988); they examined by X-ray the effect of traction on a metacarpophalangeal joint, before and after a traction thrust producing a 'click'. Thrust manipulation clearly increases the effect of traction using the same amount of force, thus revealing hypermobility. This is also borne out by Roston and Wheeler-Haines' experiment showing in kilograms the sudden decrease in resistance to traction at the moment the click occurs, owing to laxity (see Figures 2.10 and 2.11). All these changes can, and should, be assessed clinically, and can also be demonstrated by physiological methods (see Figures 2.9–2.13, 4.32).

Probable causes of blockage in vertebral motor segments

Faulty movement patterns

Movement restriction of the slightest degree (mere stiffness) is a trivial phenomenon: sitting or working for a long period in an unfavourable position, or getting up in the morning, we sense a need to stretch and move, i.e. to overcome these slight forms of blockage. In a similar way we experience discomfort when doing strenuous physical work or holding an unfavourable position which can result in pain if it goes on for too long; taking a rest for a while may relieve all symptoms. The transition from what could be considered as physiological and is easily corrected by appropriate movement or rest, to incipient dysfunction thus becomes apparent.

Earlier I pointed out the effect of blockage of one motor segment on the neighbouring or even distant parts of the spinal column. In fact, blockage in one segment can be caused by blockage in another that has altered the functioning of the spinal column as a whole. This is an important feature of disturbed function in the locomotor system: it rarely remains localized to one region or one structure. The most

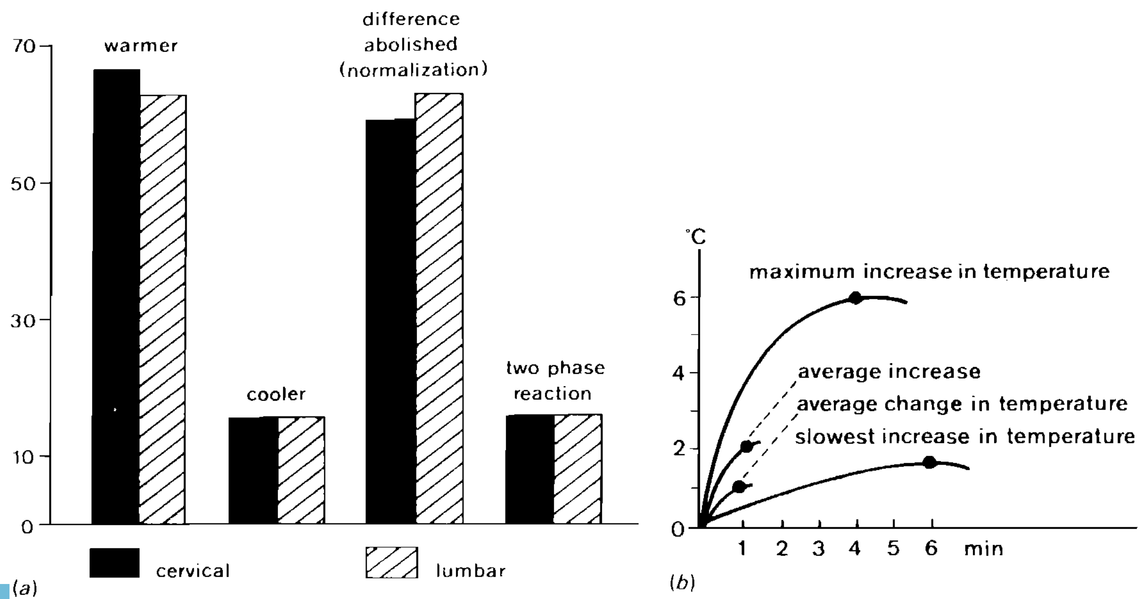


Figure 2.9 Changes in skin temperature after traction therapy in root syndromes. (*a*) The statistics for various types of reaction. (*b*) The course of the reaction expressed as a curve

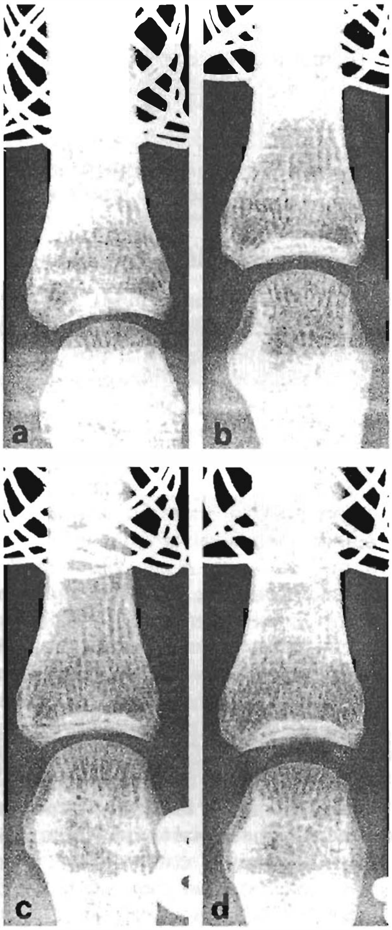


Figure 2.10 Distraction of a metacarpophalangeal joint; above before, below after a thrust (into traction)

important factor in spinal and locomotor function is obviously the musculature and its nervous control. This control is expressed by motor patterns and posture, formed in a highly characteristic way in every individual. As Janda (1967) has shown, there is a certain balance between various muscle groups (see p. 26) that move joints or vertebral motor segments, and if this balance is disturbed the normal functioning of the joint suffers.

Modern civilization brings with it very one-sided, forced movements, causing muscular imbalance, and this is no less true of posture – in fact, one of the characteristic features of modern life is lack of movement accompanying static or postural overstrain. Therefore the first and most frequent cause of blockage is a faulty movement pattern due to muscular imbalance, and postural overstrain.

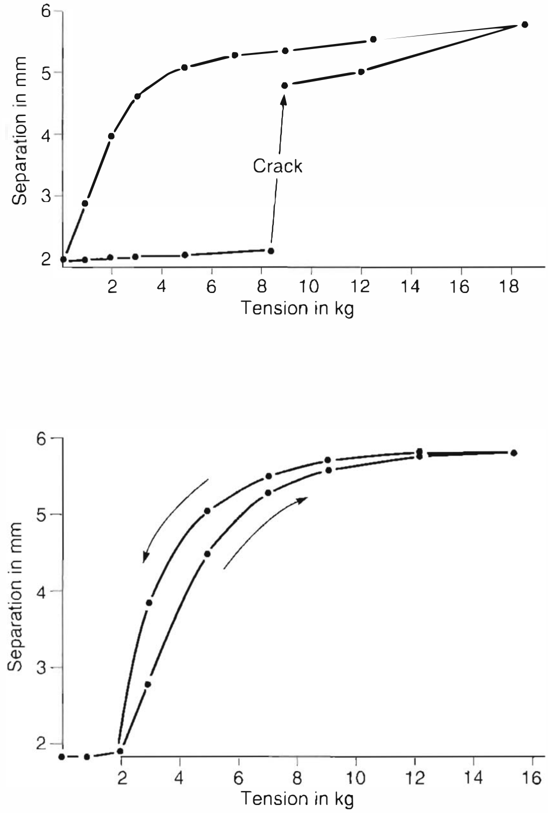


Figure 2.11 The effect of the 'click' produced by distraction of a metacarpophalangeal joint, according to Roston and Wheeler-Haines (1947)

Trauma

The second cause of disturbed locomotor function is trauma. It is important to point out that there are borderline cases between trauma and overstrain due to a great variety of causes, because it is not always easy to say what is and what is not an injury for the spinal column. Usually trauma is defined as an exogenous force acting on the body for a short time and capable of damaging structure or function. Even under normal conditions the forces acting on the spinal column are considerable. If these forces are suddenly increased because of sharp, ill-balanced movement, the line between the two groups of causes appears to be rather arbitrarily drawn.

Reflex action

Blockage may be of reflex origin due to changes in a segment. As stated in Chapter 1, the spinal column is involved in disease wherever it occurs in the organism. Visceral disease causing nociceptive stimuli is followed by reflex spasm in the relevant segment

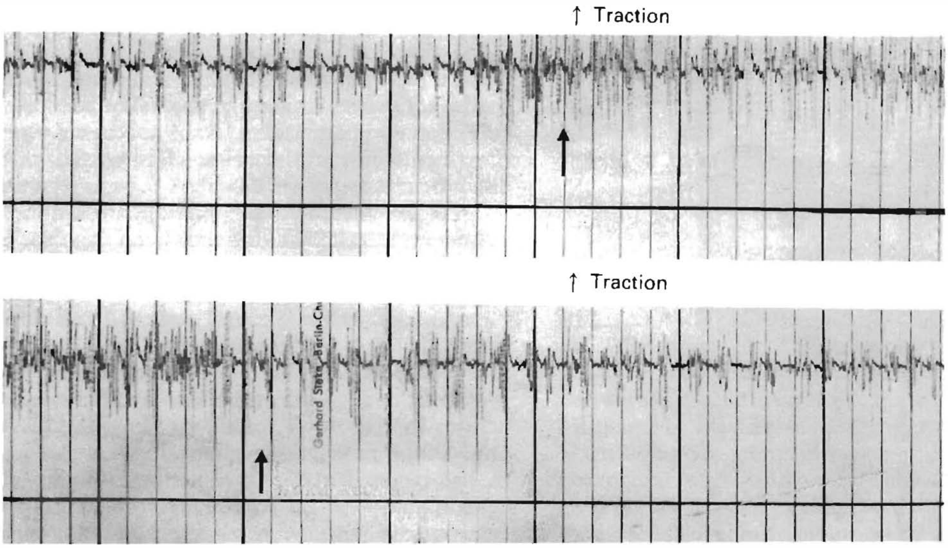


Figure 2.12 Electromyogram showing an increase in muscle activity (force) in the triceps brachia during cervical traction

(muscular defence) and in particular in the deep layers of the erector spinae muscle. This is likely to fix the vertebral motor segment as well as to interfere with normal mobility of the trunk. If such a spasm is of sufficiently long duration, blockage is likely to occur. Hansen and Schliack (1962) describe characteristic scoliosis in visceral disease. As is shown in Chapter 7 (p. 282), we recognize a number of characteristic 'spinal patterns' in visceral disease, showing that there are certain pathogenetic rules. A striking feature of this type of blockage is its recurrence if the internal disease relapses or exacerbates. In fact, we seem to know more about visceral influence upon the spinal column than about the influence of the spinal column on visceral disease.

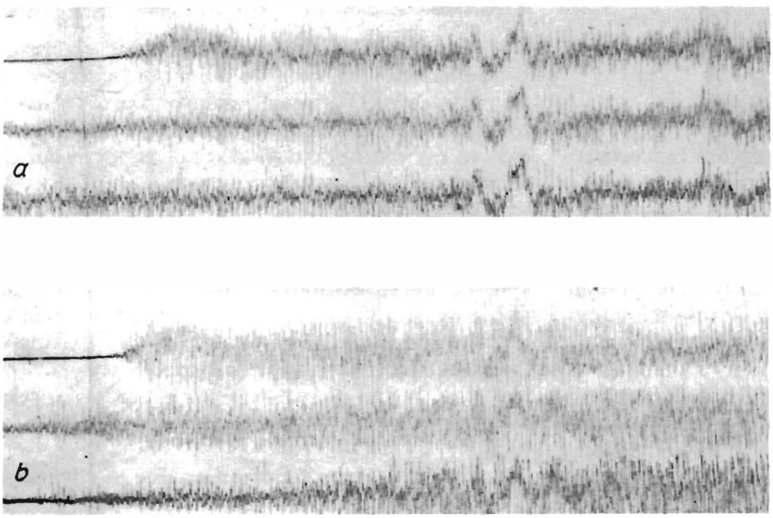


Figure 2.13 Electromyogram taken from three leads in a C8 root syndrome (*a*) before and (*b*) after cervical (thrust) manipulation

The spinal column and its function

Three types of function performed by the spine appear to be particularly pertinent:

1. Giving support and protection.
2. Being the motor axis of the body.
3. Maintaining equilibrium (body statics).

Motor and protective function

Obviously, there is an inherent antinomy between the first two basic functions; as Gutmann (1981) put it: 'The spinal column should be as mobile as possible and as firm as necessary'. If we consider the remarkable mobility of the craniocervical junction in all planes and its relation to the vital centres of the medulla, we can see the complexity of the question. It is easily understood that if motor function is disturbed, this also affects the protective function of the spine. Faulty functioning causes tension, which is a stimulus for the receptors producing muscle spasm, which in turn may interfere with nerve structures originating in the spinal column; hypermobility may be a strain even for the structures inside the vertebral canal.

The role of balance – the spinal column as a functional unit

The role of the spinal column in the maintenance of balance is usually underrated. Its importance here is largely due to the role of the craniocervical junction, the site of the deep neck reflexes. It is important to remember that under normal conditions the labyrinth is not necessary for the maintenance of equilibrium, whereas proprioception is. Thus, it is no coincidence that vertigo and dizziness are very frequently of cervical origin (see Chapter 7) and can be effectively treated by manipulation, whereas auditory disturbances are not as a rule related to cervical lesions, although the labyrinth and the cochlea are supplied by the vertebral artery and the vertebral nerve. There is strong evidence that the great importance of the craniocervical junction for equilibrium lies in the proprioceptors originating in this region. Not only are there important papers in the physiological literature (McCouch *et al.*, 1951; Frederickson *et al.*, 1976) demonstrating the importance of afferents from spinal proprioceptors but there is also direct clinical evidence of cervical nystagmus provided by authors using Greiner's chair. This chair rotates the experimental subject (patient) rhythmically from right to left and back again, while the head remains fixed, in this way stimulating exclusively the cervical proprioceptors while the labyrinth and the eyes are protected from stimulation (Greiner *et al.*, 1967; Moser, 1974; Simon *et al.*, 1975; Norré *et al.*, 1976).

However important the craniocervical junction, proprioceptors are active throughout the spinal column, as Komendantov (1945) has shown in rabbits: on side-bending of the trunk with the head fixed, the eyes move in the opposite direction from the trunk. On side-bending of the head and trunk in opposite directions, neck and trunk reflexes compete, and as a rule the neck reflexes are the stronger. The degree of side-bending also plays a part, however, and these reflexes apparently enable the animal to keep the visual field constant during locomotion; they are therefore very fast: changes in the activity of the eye muscles were registered at a rate as high as 200 side-bends per minute.

I have quoted these experiments in some detail because they show how rapidly certain changes in one part of the body axis are felt at the far end of the body. In man, with his vertical axis, the position of the head is held constant by the plane of the eyes (the visual field), and every change in the position of the pelvis as he walks must immediately be compensated if equilibrium is not to suffer. This is clearly seen if the subject is told to mark time before an X-ray screen. Any disturbance of even a single motor segment may, therefore, cause important changes throughout the vertebral column. Ushio *et al.* (1973) have shown the deleterious effect of lumbago on vertiginous patients and by laboratory methods have proved the beneficial effect of immobilization of the lumbar spine. In the author's experience dysfunction of the feet, too, can compromise equilibrium.

In a group of 106 random patients without vertigo examined on two scales over 5 months, 50 patients in whom the weight distribution showed a difference of 5 kg or over, also had (a) a positive Hautant's test in at least one head position, and (b) movement restriction in the craniocervical junction 49 times; there were only 5 patients without any restriction. Of the 56 patients with a difference in weight distribution of up to 4 kg, only 5 had a positive Hautant's test; there was movement restriction in the craniocervical junction 24 times, and normal conditions 41 times (Lewit, 1988). Interestingly, the same effect on balance can be produced by dysfunction of the temporomandibular joint and of the masticatory muscles, including the submandibular muscles.

Not all vertebral segments have the same importance for the functioning of the spinal column, however, and for the motor system as a whole. We therefore speak of 'key segments' or 'key regions'. These are mostly transition areas where the function of the spinal column changes: the two ends of the column, the craniocervical (1) and the lumbosacral (2); and then the cervicothoracic (3) and the thoracolumbar (4) junctions; we should add (5) the feet.

1. The craniocervical junction shows extensive mobility in all three planes and balances the

heavy head on the fragile cervical spine. Physiologically, this is the site of the tonic neck reflexes, and influences muscle tone throughout the postural trunk musculature. If function here is disturbed, there is most frequently hypertonus of the postural muscles, disturbances of equilibrium and locomotor deficit which has to be compensated by the cervical spine. This is most important for rotation, as only the atlantoaxial joint is ideally adapted for rotation, and the rest of the cervical spine is thus forced to take over a function for which it is poorly fitted. The temporomandibular joint with the masticatory muscles and the digastricus are closely related to the craniocervical junction.
2. The lumbosacroiliac junction forms the base of the spinal column and therefore determines body statics. At the same time it transmits movement from the legs to the spinal column and acts as a shock absorber.
3. The cervicothoracic junction is the region in which the most mobile section of the spinal column is joined to the relatively rigid thoracic spine and where the powerful muscles of the upper extremities and shoulder girdle insert.
4. The great strain on the thoracolumbar junction is well seen in the transition vertebra T12 where the upper apophyseal joints retain the thoracic pattern whereas the lower joints have the lumbar pattern, i.e. where one type of function changes abruptly to another. If during walking the pelvis tilts from one side to the other, the lumbar spine side-bends so that the vertex of the scoliotic curve lies at the level of L3, the thoracolumbar junction remaining in line with the sacrum; this too, can be seen if the subject marks time before an X-ray screen. Disturbance of function causes intense spasm not only of back muscles, but in particular of the psoas muscle (Kubis, 1969), the quadratus lumborum, the thoracolumbar erector spinae and even the straight abdominals, because this transitional region unlike the other three, connects two very mobile sections of the spinal column. Immobilization of this junction therefore makes severe muscular spasm necessary.
5. In humans the feet are the base of body statics and gait; at the same time they are the source of the most powerful proprioceptive, exteroceptive and nociceptive imputs, comparable to our sensory organs.

In view of their importance and their great vulnerability, these key regions are usually the place where the spinal column suffers first, as can best be observed in children. Disturbance of function at such points jeopardizes the functioning of the spinal column (and the motor system) as a whole, causing secondary lesions. Such a disturbance should never be overlooked even if the symptoms are manifest at the other end of the spinal column, or even in the extremities. To leave such a lesion untreated is risking therapeutic failure and relapse.

The importance of nervous control

The spinal column could not act as a functional unit unless all its reactions were coordinated by muscles under nerve control. The role of movement patterns and their disturbance has already been stressed, as this is the most significant cause of blockage in a vertebral motor segment. Janda (1978) has shown that the quality of movement patterns varies from one individual to another, and this goes hand in hand with varying susceptibility to vertebrogenic disturbance. On the other hand, any disturbance of function in a single motor segment will have its repercussions throughout the body axis and must be compensated. Here again, nervous control plays a decisive part. This is no less the case with pain, once the lesion becomes painful, for it is the nervous system that determines how intensely the segment will react, and where the threshold of pain lies. In other words, it is the nervous system that determines whether disturbed function will manifest itself clinically. If reaction to nociceptive stimulus is intense, disturbed function in one motor segment will produce an antalgesic response and alter the normal motor pattern, hence producing fixation of a change in function.

Control by the nervous system thus has two aspects: it subserves normal function by the maintenance of correct motor patterns, and it compensates disturbed function. On the other hand, an intense and chronic painful stimulus disturbs normal motor patterns and may then cause altered, pathological motor patterns to become fixed, thus perpetuating the disease process.

It is, therefore, no coincidence that disturbed function of the motor system is more likely to be found in subjects with labile nervous regulation, who are as a rule psychologically labile as well. In this connection it is of interest that Starý (1970) and Figar (1970) were able to show that patients with severe radicular syndromes very easily formed conditioned reflexes to additional pain stimuli, and that these reflexes were more difficult to extinguish than in healthy controls. Furthermore, Kunc *et al.* (1955) showed that the mental condition of patients plays a major part in recovery after disc operation. Gutzeit (1951) found that a prominent psychological factor is characteristic for vertebrogenic pain patients. Šráček and Škrabal (1975) compared two types of mental patients: 50 cases of neurosis with signs of anxiety and depression, and 25 schizophrenics with low emotivity. Blockage, most frequently in the cervical spine, was absent in only five neurotic patients, but was not found in 16 schizophrenic patients. The segment most frequently affected was the atlanto-occipital; the difference was significant at the $P=0.01$ level.

Again, observations by Janda (1978) are of great relevance: in patients with poor motor patterns, inclined to imbalance of the muscle groups, he found (1) minor neurological disturbances which he termed 'microspasticity', in which movements were not fully coordinated and appeared clumsy; (2) slight sensory impairment, in particular of proprioception; (3) worse adaptation to stress situations as a result of poorly coordinated behaviour. All this corresponds to a (relatively) new clinical entity, minimal brain dysfunction, which is found in 10–15% of the child population. Janda compared the somatic and psychological findings in these children with the findings in adult patients who had very unfavourable motor patterns that produced relapsing vertebrogenic disorders, and concluded that such children become those patients who present themselves in adult life with the principal symptom of pain, because of small neurological changes which do not disappear during adolescence but instead take the form of disturbed function of the motor system, with resulting pain.

Nevertheless, however important motor imbalance may be, it is not identical to impaired joint function or blockage of a vertebral motor segment. Such lesions do appear even in subjects with perfect motor patterns, whereas they may be missing in patients with severe neurological disease. In 1420 patients with disseminated sclerosis, Schaltenbrand (1938) found 22.3% to be suffering from backache. In our experience backache is the rule in Parkinson's disease, understandably in view of the muscle rigidity in this condition. However, no matter how severe the neurological disorder, it is not tantamount to pain due to disturbance of a specific function of the motor system and the vertebral column, such as increased or (more frequently) restricted mobility of a joint or spinal motor segment.

Disturbance of function (blockage) in childhood

From what has been said it follows that disturbances of function may (1) by themselves cause symptoms and (2) appear much sooner than structural (morphological) changes. For this reason I have been particularly interested in disturbances of function in childhood. Schön (1956) and later Gutmann and Wolff (1959) have shown that clinical symptoms as well as changes in function visible in cineradiographic studies appear about 10 years earlier than degenerative changes.

The most typical vertebrogenic lesion in children is acute wry neck. Although it is a self-limiting condition, traction and mobilization techniques, if well applied, should give immediate relief. This is particularly true for the new neuromuscular techniques.

The most numerous child patients, presenting a real problem, are those who suffer from headache, the cervical spine being one of the most frequent causative sites. This is true of various types of headache, including migraine. In a group of 30 children suffering from non-migrainous headache, manipulation gave excellent results, with only two failures, while in a group of 27 children suffering from migraine there were three failures, and excellent results in 24 cases. These findings were confirmed by Kabátníková and Kabátník (1966). A particularly important type of headache in children, known as 'school headache', formerly believed to be of psychological origin, was proved by Gutmann (1968) to be due to head anteflexion during school hours, when patients were bent over horizontal desks. This was confirmed by Lewit and Kuncová (1971). One clinical manifestation of disturbed function in the lumbosacral region is dysmenorrhoea or algomenorrhoea with negative gynaecological findings in young girls, frequently starting at the menarche. Pain is usually felt in the low back and in the abdomen. Not only is this type of pain amenable to manipulative treatment; it is frequently the first sign of disturbed function in the lumbosacral region in women.

True lumbago is much less frequent in childhood, but there exist rare cases of true disc herniation as early as puberty. With the exception of acute wry neck, disturbance of function in the spinal column manifests itself indirectly, for the most part as headache, and in young girls as algomenorrhoea.

For this reason I was interested to see how frequently disturbances of function could be found in children of different age groups. The most striking phenomenon found especially frequently in children and adolescents is pelvic distortion which is dealt with in later chapters. I found it in 11 of 80 children (14–41 months old) examined in creches, in 81 out of 181 children (aged 3–6 years) in nursery school and in 199 out of 459 schoolchildren between the ages of 9 and 15. Statistical evaluation showed no significant difference between the incidence in boys and girls. From nursery school age onwards, pelvic distortion is found in about one-third to one-half of the children. In contrast, I found movement restriction in the cervical spine (mainly at the craniocervical junction) in none of the infants in creches, in only eight out of 181 nursery-school children, and in 73 out of 459 schoolchildren over the age of 9 years.

These investigations date from 30 years ago, when the technique of examination for the upper cervical spine was much less sophisticated than it is today. Our current clinical experience, using subtler techniques, has shown that pelvic distortion in children goes hand in hand with blockage, mainly at the atlanto-occipital joint, and also that after manipulation of this joint, pelvic distortion disappears. In 1982 I therefore examined a group of 75 nursery-school children (aged 3–6 years) and found pelvic distortion in 24, of whom 23 had movement restriction at the atlanto-occipital joint! In 12 of these manipulation was carried out (atlas-occiput); the pelvic distortion disappeared simultaneously. There is thus good reason to believe that most of the children in whom we found pelvic distortion 30 years ago also suffered from blockage at the craniocervical junction. Some scoliotic deformity was found in 175 of the 459 schoolchildren then examined, in 15 out of the 181 nursery-school children, and in only one of the 80 children in creches.

The primary importance of the craniocervical junction is in keeping with important observations by Kubis, confirmed in 1093 new-born babies by Seifert (1975). Postural neck reflexes can be examined in the newborn: on turning the head to one side, the pelvis turns to the opposite side if the craniocervical junction functions normally. It was abnormal in 298 of the 1093 examined. In 58 per cent of this group, using the normal techniques, Seifert diagnosed blockage at the craniocervical junction, between the ages of 4 and 9 months. Another important group of children of all ages who showed blockage mainly of the atlanto-occipital joint are those with relapsing or chronic tonsillitis: in a group of 76 such cases examined and followed up by Lewit and Abrahamovič (1976), 70 (92 per cent) had movement restriction at the craniocervical junction, mainly at the C0–C1 level.

In order to establish whether these findings in children are fortuitous or fairly constant, a group of children who started school attendance in 1960 were systematically followed up for 8 years; half the number showing some impaired function were treated, and the other half left as controls. In addition to the spinal column, the extremities and particularly the musculature were thoroughly tested. The results are given in Figure 2.14, the most important finding being that, with few exceptions, changes in the function of the pelvis and of the craniocervical region remained constant if not treated. On the other hand, there were only a few relapses after treatment.

From this it follows that changes in the functioning of the spinal column and the locomotor system cause symptoms far more frequently than is generally assumed, even in children. Much more frequently, however, these lesions are clinically latent. Pelvic distortion plus upper cervical lesions are found in more than a third of all schoolchildren. Muscular imbalance is even more frequent, although less constant. It can further be inferred that:

1. Disturbance of function appears much earlier in the locomotor system than do degenerative morphological changes.

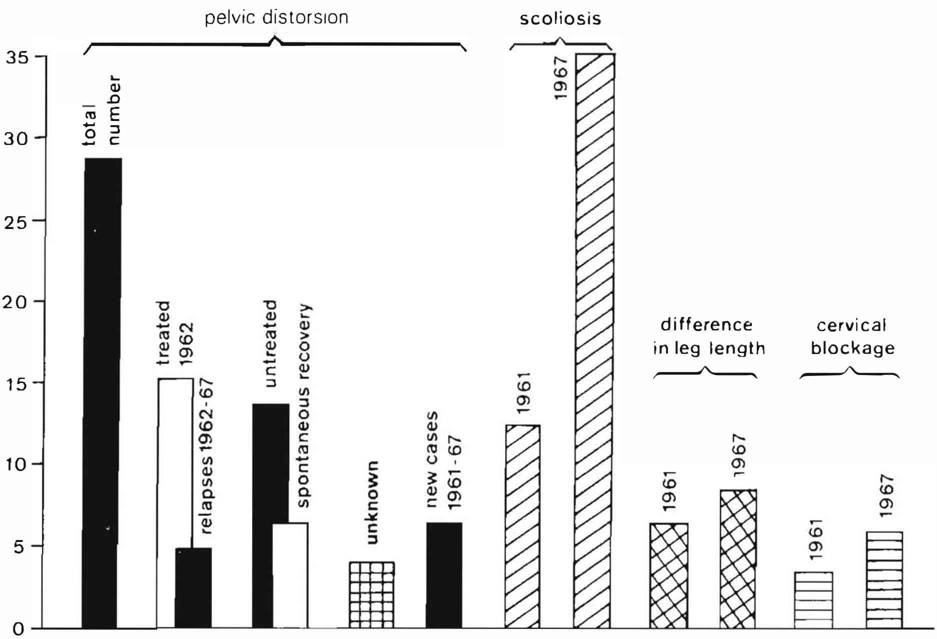


Figure 2.14 Follow-up studies over 6 years of 72 schoolchildren of the same age, covering incidence of pelvic torsion, scoliosis, difference in leg length and cervical blockage

2. This disturbance, alone, can cause symptoms without structural changes.

Possible consequences of blockage in the vertebral motor segment

If blockage occurs in the spinal column of a child or an adolescent, at first sight the consequences may seem relatively insignificant: there may be some transitory pain, as in wry neck, but in the spine, unlike the extremity joints, function is readily compensated by neighbouring or even distant motor segments, and the lesion remains masked for a very long time. There is, however, a price to be paid for that compensation: increased demands on the compensating structures, with possible dysfunction. A good example is head rotation when there is blockage between atlas and axis. Although the joints between the atlas and the axis are admirably suited to rotation, the rest of the cervical spine is not. Therefore head rotation carried out with a blocked atlas–axis movement can be deemed a dysfunction, and even more so when the restricted movement is not symmetrical. Quite obviously, movement restriction in one segment produces hypermobility in another, and in general, as we have seen, the consequences of dysfunction will be most marked if function is disturbed in key regions.

Osteophytes are the typical consequence of long-lasting overstrain, nor is blockage without consequences, for, as we well know, much of the little-vascularized tissue of cartilage and discs depends on movement for its nutrition. Radiology supplies ample evidence of regular osteophyte formation in the motor segment adjacent to a congenital block. Functional blockage in ante- and retroflexion, as seen radiographically, is as a rule accompanied by degenerative changes – narrowing of the disc – in the restricted segment, and by osteophytes in the neighbouring hypermobile segment (Jirout, 1956). Müller (1960) has shown that this hypermobile segment eventually becomes blocked, and the process spreads to neighbouring segments. This is understandable, for osteophytes are ring shaped and have a stabilizing function, as can best be seen in stabilized spondylolisthesis.

Degenerative changes in themselves need not produce manifest clinical symptoms. They do, however, make the spinal column more susceptible to further damage. It is again disturbed function that establishes itself more easily in a structure already marked by degenerative changes; in other words, if function remains compensated in a spinal column with degenerative changes, as a rule no symptoms will arise. Such a spinal column, however, is more liable to decompensation. That is why, for instance, the sequelae of trauma are usually more severe in structures with degenerative changes. Indeed, quite frequently what are called degenerative changes are in reality an attempt to compensate dysfunction. They are then testimony to previous damage. One important complication of degeneration can be disc prolapse, but here again we find a complicated relationship between structural change and altered function: we know that even disc prolapse may be compatible with absence of symptoms, and it may be a disturbance of function on top of that which makes the lesion manifest. On the other hand, restoring correct function in a blocked joint, for example, may produce compensation.

That altered function may be important in nerve compression (entrapment syndromes) we have seen in the carpal tunnel syndrome (see p. 267), particularly in the initial stages. On thorough examination we regularly find increased resistance to joint play of the carpal bones. When joint play is restored, the symptoms disappear at this stage. In other words, only if there is free mobility between the bones forming the tunnel can the walls adapt themselves to the contents of the tunnel under varying conditions of strain and movement. We should not forget that part of the wall of the intevertebral canal where root compression occurs is also the apophyseal joint.

Figure 2.15 summarizes the mechanical factors in the pathogenesis of blockage.

The significance of disturbed movement patterns (stereotypes)

I consider disturbed movement patterns as the most important single cause of blockage, and remedial exercise is then the therapy of choice. Remedial exercise is widely recommended in painful vertebrogenic conditions, but what is meant by the term is much less clear, since we are not dealing here with obvious paresis, deformity or well-defined locomotor lesion (with the exception of blockage, where self-treatment exercises can be taught to the patient).

We have Janda (1975) to thank for shedding light on this problem. The main object of remedial exercise in disturbed function of the locomotor system is the correction of faulty patterning (faulty locomotor stereotypes), i.e. faulty coordination of muscle function due to disturbed central nervous control. Unfortunately for the systematically minded, movement patterns are highly individual motor programmes, formed by each subject in the course of his life on the basis of chains of unconditioned and acquired (conditioned) reflexes. There is therefore great variability, and the limits of the norm are very broad. In fact, the way each individual moves is so characteristic that we can recognize him by his gait, his gestures, the way he writes, and so on.

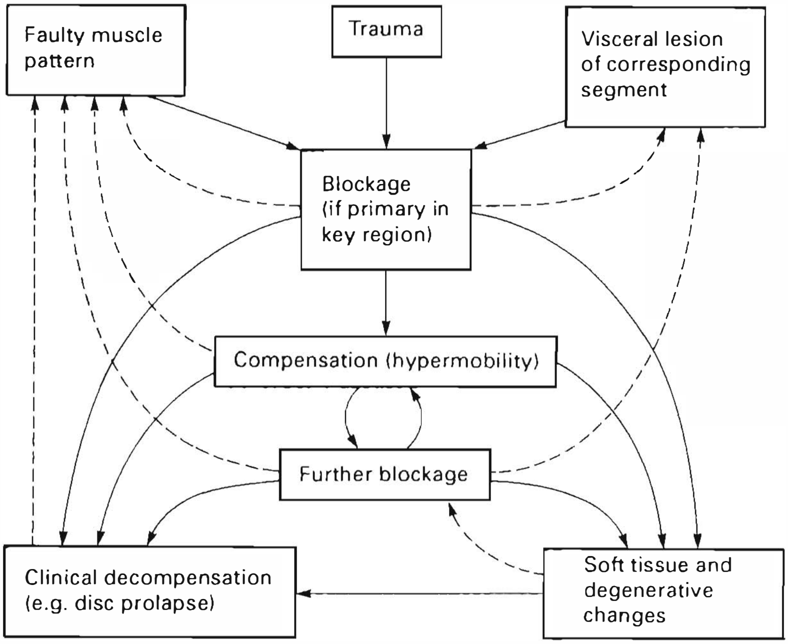


Figure 2.15 Pathogenesis: probable causes and consequences of blockage

Ideally, locomotor patterns should allow movement to be as economical as possible, i.e. to consume the smallest possible quantity of energy.

Here, as in many other situations, it is abnormality that provides the relevant clues: even a layman will recognize an awkward performance, which more often than not is tantamount to an uneconomical one. The layman will often be able to correct what he sees – for instance, sports trainers do so during their work.

In patients with chronic vertebrogenic pain and awkward movements, Janda (1972) applied the classic muscle test to individual muscles. This revealed two significant facts. First, the simple test movements believed to be characteristic for a specific muscle group are more often than not patterns in which a greater number of muscles take part than is commonly thought. Examining hip extension by polyelectromyography, Janda showed that hip extension is not only a test for the gluteus maximus muscle, but that the prime movers in hip extension are the hamstrings, and that in addition to these two muscle groups the lumbar erector spinae also takes part. The characteristic disturbance of hip extension is decreased and belated activity of the gluteus maximus (Figure 2.16). We have now learned to recognize clinically which muscles take part in simple test movements, thus using the test to assess not only muscle weakness, but also quality of performance. This quality may be considerably altered without much change in force; the strength of hip extension with the aid of the hamstrings and the erector spinae may remain normal, while the pattern is greatly changed, with important consequences for locomotor function, as we shall see later.

Secondly, testing these simple movements, a surprisingly constant pattern emerged. Certain muscles always showed a tendency to lesser activity (weakness) and hypotonia, whereas others tended to hyperactivity, increased tension and even tautness, which caused a typical motor imbalance. This is so characteristic that we can now determine syndromes that are of clinical importance. They are characteristic for individual patients: in some cases there is a preponderance of weakness, flabbiness going hand in hand with hypermobility, whereas in others tautness with increased muscle tension prevails. It is thus possible to draw up useful lists of muscles (muscle groups) that show a tendency to hyperactivity, and of those that tend to inhibition (Table 2.1).

This difference in the behaviour of muscles can be seen under various clinical conditions and is particularly characteristic in common painful states: in a painful hip it is always the flexors and adductors that are tense and the glutei weak; in shoulder pain the pectoralis and subscapularis are taut whereas the supraspinati, infraspinati and deltoids are weak; in chronic painful conditions of the knee the vasti are weak, the rectus femoris remaining like a tight band.

Conditions are very similar in fatigue: again the same type of muscle will be inhibited and frequently superseded by muscles with a tendency to hyper-

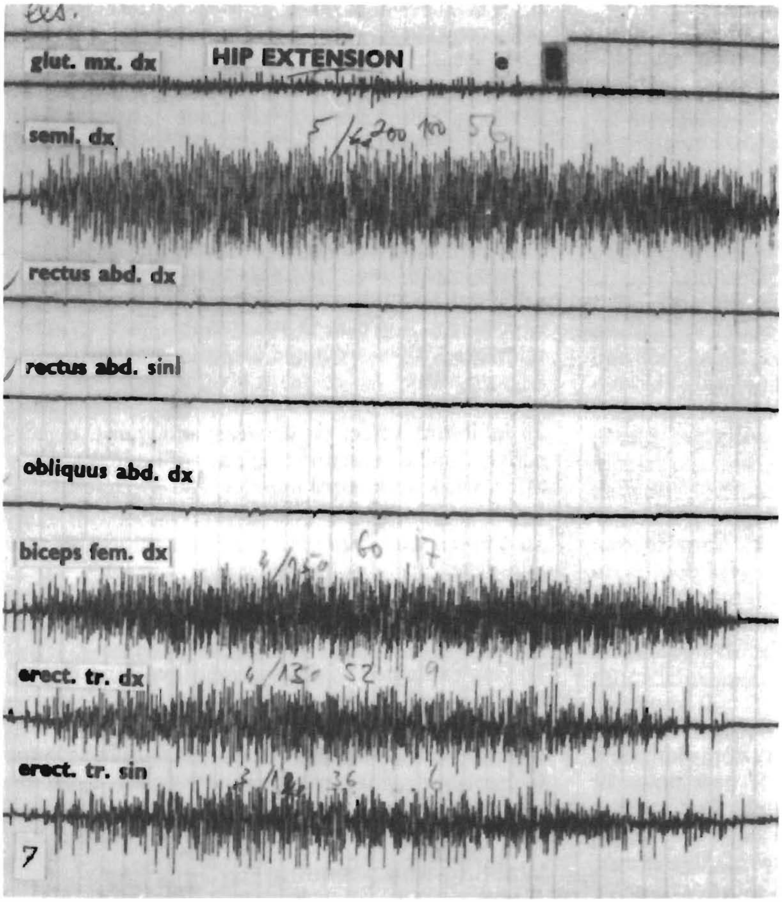


Figure 2.16 Electromyogram of right hip extension: the right gluteus maximus is brought into action late and little; marked activity in the hamstrings on the right and the erectores spinae on both sides; inhibition of the right gluteus maximus (From V. Janda, personal communication)

activity and tautness. On closer scrutiny we find that muscles with a tendency to inhibition are those that are also inhibited (flabby) in upper motor neuron lesions, while those with a tendency to hyperactivity become spastic. Neurologically, the typical imbalance in faulty movement patterns, enhanced by pain and fatigue, may be interpreted as 'microspasticity'.

Those muscles with a tendency to inhibition are called by Janda 'predominantly phasic', while he calls muscles with a tendency to hyperactivity 'predominantly postural'. These terms, which are still provisional, indicate that the real physiological basis for the difference, which is clinically very striking, is not yet known. Without going too deeply into the question here, it should be stressed that these groups do not correspond to the types of muscle fibre distinguished by modern neurophysiology, histology and biochemistry. Clinical diagnosis and therapy are dealt with in the relevant chapters. It is important to point out, however, that trigger points may occur in both types of muscle, one type being painfully tense, the other painfully flabby (inhibited). In both, however, these trigger points are effectively treated by post-isometric relaxation.

Examination of simple movements by applying the muscle test is only our first step; our habitual movements are individually acquired patterns or stereotypes with a degree of plasticity, so that they are capable of being trained. However, this training is very tiring, particularly at first, the fatigue seeming out of all proportion to the energy required for the movement for which the subject is being trained. This is true even for healthy subjects, and all the more so for the sick; it is something that must never be forgotten in planning remedial exercise (rehabilitation).

Table 2.1 Muscle groups that show a tendency to hyperactivity or inhibition

Hyperactivity	*Inhibition*
On the dorsal aspect of the body	
Triceps surae	Gluteal muscles
Hamstrings	Trapezius (lower part)
Lumbar section of the erector spinae	Serratus lateralis
	Supra- and infraspinati
Quadratus lumborum	Deltoid
Middle and upper trapezius	
Levator scapulae	
On the ventral aspect of the body	
Thigh adductors	Tibialis anterior
Rectus femoris	Extensors of the toes
Tensor fasciae latae	Peronei
Iliopsoas	Vasti
Pectorales	Rectus abdominis
Subscapulares	Deep neck flexors
Scalenes	Digastricus
Sternocleidomastoids	
Masticatory	
On the arms	
Flexors	Extensors

The concept of patterning is a very important one, and can change our view of the difference between agonists and antagonists quite decisively. For example, the hamstrings and the quadriceps can be considered as antagonists if we are thinking of the simple movement of knee flexion. However, the movement of walking is much more complex than simple bending and stretching of the knee; during walking both these muscles have to contract and to coordinate as stabilizers of the knee. This is equally true of the abdominal and back muscles, and of the flexors and extensors of the neck. In fact, in well-coordinated straightening up from a stooping position it is the abdominal muscles that have the decisive role. It is, therefore, a grave mistake in remedial exercise to train these muscles simply according to the results of the muscle test, and not with regard to their function in the vital stereotype concerned.

In training correct movement patterns it is important to remember that they function like a 'programme' that can be readily facilitated or triggered if the correct afferent impulses are employed. For extremity movements, most receptors are on the periphery, i.e. the fingers and toes. To facilitate walking it is important for the patient to think about lifting his big toe; he will then automatically dorsiflex the foot, and bend the knee and hip. Similarly, flexion of the fingers will trigger flexion in the elbow and shoulder. What the fingers and toes are for the extremities, the eyes are for the trunk: looking up facilitates straightening of the body, looking down facilitates stooping, while looking to the side facilitates rotation or inhibits movement in the opposite direction. Furthermore, as straightening of the body is connected with inhalation, and stooping with exhalation, it is enough for the patient to look up to facilitate inhalation and inhibit exhalation, and vice versa. This, as we shall see, plays a crucial part in the modern neuromuscular techniques most useful for mobilization.

Returning to the question of imbalance of muscle groups, with the predominantly phasic muscles inhibited and the predominantly postural muscles over-active, it is easy to see that this must seriously interfere with coordinated locomotor patterns. This is particularly so as in many instances they are antagonists, the hyperactive muscle therefore having an inhibitory effect on its weak antagonist. Hyperactive lumbar erectores spinae will unfavourably affect weak abdominal muscles, and hyperactive hip flexors will influence weak glutei.

The pathogenic mechanism of disturbed movement patterns

Having explained what movement patterns are and how they can be disturbed by imbalance of specific muscle groups, I now trace the mechanisms by which disturbances of the most important muscle patterns (stereotypes) will have a deleterious effect on the locomotor system.

Walking and standing

Here the most important imbalance is between weak gluteal muscles with hyperactive hip flexors, and hyperactive lumbar erectores spinae with weak abdominal muscles. In standing we see increased pelvic tilt and a protruding abdomen.

The pathogenic mechanism is this: standing places an increased load on the lumbar spine, as even while standing at ease there is hyperactivity of the back muscles; when walking, hip extension is not performed by the inhibited glutei maximi, but by the lumbar erectores spinae, causing hyperlordosis instead of extension of the hip joint – that is, there is increased strain on the lumbar spine, due to hypermobility in the sagittal plane. This is greatly enhanced by the weak glutei medii; when the patient stands on one leg these muscles stabilize the pelvis in the coronal plane; if these muscles are weak, there is increased swaying of the pelvis, causing lumbar hypermobility in the coronal plane.

Straightening up from a stooping position (weight lifting)

If the trunk is imagined as a straight lever during weight lifting and the L5–S1 disc as the fulcrum, forces acting on it of up to about 1000 kPa have been calculated (Matthiasch, 1956; Morris, 1973). Such a force would crush the disc. Nachemson (1959) measured intradiscal pressure in various positions of the body and found that the maximum pressure during weight lifting was about 275% of that in the upright position, i.e. it was 340 kPa.

The reason (according to Gracovetsky, 1988) lies in the role of the lumbodorsal fascia to which not only the back muscles attach but also the glutei and indirectly the hamstrings as well, and from which the spinal column is 'suspended' so that leverage is eliminated. This may be further enhanced by the coordinated activity of the abdominal muscles which help the thorax to approach the supporting pelvis.

Lifting the arms

Here the decisive factor is correct fixation of the shoulder girdle; this is the function of the upper part of the trapezius muscle and the levator scapulae from above, and of the lower part of the trapezius muscle and the serratus lateralis from below, the first two muscles being attached to the cervical spine and the last two to the thoracic spine.

The muscular imbalance found here is weakness of the lower part of the trapezius and serratus lateralis, with hyperactivity of the upper part of the trapezius and of the levator scapulae, resulting in overstrain of the cervical spine.

Weight carrying

Here the position of the shoulder joint is crucial: if the shoulder of the weight-bearing arm is behind the line of gravity of the body, the shoulder girdle is fixed in such a way that very little or no weight is borne by the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle (the upper part of the trapezius and the levator scapulae). If the shoulder is drawn forward, on the other hand, weight is immediately transmitted to the upper fixators and to the cervical spine, which then carries the brunt. The muscular imbalance causing this situation is a hyperactive pectoralis muscle, in particular its subclavicular part and the pectoralis minor, and a weak lower trapezius and perhaps the rhomboids.

This same imbalance also causes a forward-drawn position of the head, resulting not only in overstrain of the cervical spine as a whole, but even in compensatory hyperlordosis at the craniocervical junction, producing relapsing lesions in that region.

These are some of the most obviously pathogenic examples of faulty movement patterns due to muscular imbalance. The most important locomotor stereotype and therefore the most pathogenic disturbance, however, is faulty breathing.

The role of respiration in locomotor disturbance

Thinking of breathing, one naturally has in mind the respiratory system. Yet it is the locomotor system that makes the lungs work, and the locomotor system that has to coordinate the specific respiratory movements with the rest of the body's locomotor activity. This task is so complex that it would be a miracle if disturbances did not occur.

It is widely held that muscular activity is facilitated during inhalation and inhibited during exhalation, but this is an oversimplification. The abdominal muscles may be activated by exhalation, especially exhalation against resistance. I have already mentioned the close connection between looking up, inhalation and straightening of the body, and between looking down, exhalation and stooping. This, however, applies only to the cervical and lumbar spine (which are decisive in view of their great mobility) and less to the thoracic spine. Here it is maximum inhalation that facilitates flexion in a kyphotic position and maximum exhalation that facilitates extension in a lordotic position, i.e. the thoracic extensor spinae contracts, and this to such an extent that deep inhalation is probably the most effective method of mobilizing the thoracic spine into flexion, and maximum exhalation most effective for extension.

The most surprising effect of inhalation and exhalation, however, is the alternating facilitation and inhibition of individual segments of the spinal column during side-bending, discovered by Gaymans (1980). It can be regularly shown that during side-bending resistance increases in the cervical as well as in the thoracic spine in the even segments (occiput–atlas, C2, etc., and again in T2, T4, etc.) during inhalation; during exhalation we obtain a mobilizing effect in these segments. Conversely, resistance increases in the odd segments (C1, C3, T3, T5, etc.) during exhalation, while we obtain mobilization during inhalation. There is a 'neutral' zone between C7 and T2. An important feature of the atlas–occiput segment is that here inhalation increases resistance not only against side-bending but in all directions, whereas exhalation facilitates mobility. This effect is most marked at the craniocervical junction and decreases in a caudal direction; in particular, the mobilizing effect of inhalation (in the odd segments) diminishes in the lower thoracic region.

A well-known yet no less striking phenomenon, is that we breathe in and hold our breath in situations in which maximum muscle activity is desired, for instance when delivering a blow, lifting a heavy weight, or sprinting; that is, when oxygen consumption can be expected to be very high. If we have not time to take a breath, as when we are forced to brake suddenly while driving, we hold our breath without breathing in.

Morris *et al.* (1961) showed that the spinal column is supported by the diaphragm, the abdominal cavity being a fluid-filled space and therefore not compressible so long as the abdominal muscles and the muscles of the perineum are contracted; in fact Morris (1973) showed electromyographic activity of the abdominal muscles during weight lifting (Figure 2.17). Skládal *et al.* (1970) made the important observation that the diaphragm contracts when the patient stands on his toes, and rightly interpreted this as a postural reaction. Indeed, we stand on our toes as a start reaction before running, jumping, etc. He therefore rightly described the diaphragm as a 'respiratory muscle with a postural function' and the abdominal muscles as 'postural muscles with a respiratory function'. The significance of holding the breath during maximum muscle activity (the Valsalva manoeuvre) lies in the fact that postural stability is achieved at the cost of the vital function of respiration, which is (momentarily) sacrificed to it. A significant but frequently neglected role is also played by the pelvic diaphragm.

Obviously, the postural role of respiration is not confined to Valsalva's manoeuvre, and persists in all phases of respiration so long as we are in the vertical position. This is most obvious during exhalation: all respiration against resistance activates the abdominal muscles, and the shouts of judo wrestlers and ski jumpers are examples.

The situation is more complicated during inhalation; the clue to what happens must be sought in the fact that the thorax widens in the horizontal plane as we breathe in. Anatomists like to explain this phenomenon by the activity of the external oblique intercostal muscles, but a more significant factor is the contraction of the muscular diaphragm, which lifts the lower ribs as long as the central tendon is supported by counterpressure from the abdominal muscles (Campbell *et al.* 1970; Kapandji, 1974). This is borne out by the activity of the abdominal muscles during inhalation in the erect position (Campbell *et al.*, 1970; Basmajian, 1978). This is the only explanation of the widening of the thorax from below, a phenomenon which is an important criterion of correct respiration (Parow, 1953; Gaymans, 1980).

It can therefore be concluded that respiration guarantees postural stability in all its phases; this can be considerably enhanced by Valsalva's manoeuvre, but only if the stereotype of respiration is that described by Parow (1953) and Gaymans (1980): the thorax widening from below, from the waistline; it must not be lifted. The shoulders are relaxed, the clavicles and upper ribs are not lifted but rotate slightly to allow widening of the thorax. It is this type of respiration that has a strong mobilizing effect on the spinal column (Gaymans respiration type A).

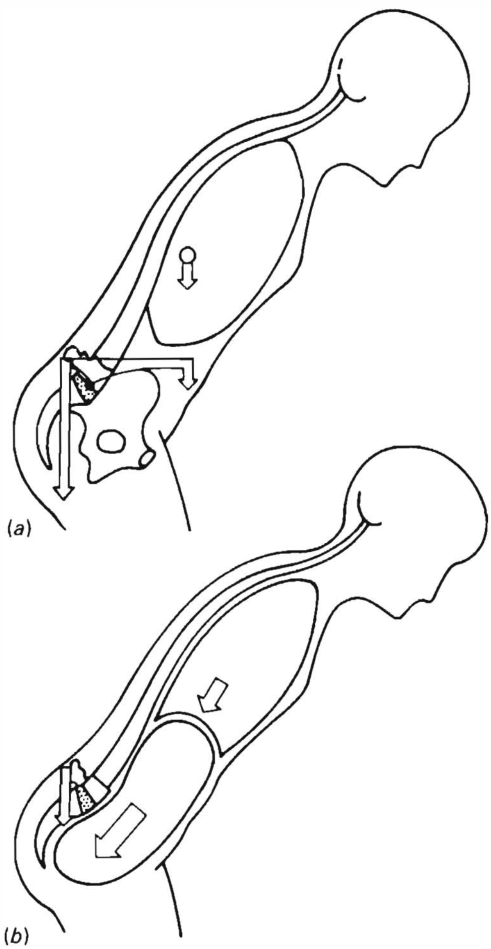


Figure 2.17 Loading of the lumbosacral junction without (*a*) and with (*b*) the support of the abdominal wall (From Kapandji, 1974. Reproduced by kind permission of author and publishers)

If, however, the subject is supine or on all fours, no postural reaction is required; pure abdominal respiration is then physiological, the abdomen bulging, its wall completely relaxed. Under these conditions the thorax need not widen at all (Gaymans type B).

The close relationship between respiration and the motor system is shown in what may be called 'respiratory synkinesis', i.e. a certain type of movement is linked either with inhalation or with exhalation. One such example is the Gaymans effect during side-bending, described above. Another example is the close link between trunk and head extension and inhalation, and between flexion and exhalation. Because, under physiological conditions, trunk (head) extension goes hand in hand with looking up, and flexion with looking down, in itself looking up facilitates inhalation, looking down exhalation, and vice versa. Trunk rotation in the upright (sitting) position, from neutral position to the side, is linked with inhalation and can be inhibited by exhalation. Resistance against traction of the neck increases during inhalation and disappears during exhalation; in the lumbar spine, on the other hand, resistance (prone) against traction increases during exhalation and ceases during inhalation. There is even a link between inhalation and opening the mouth, and between exhalation and closing the mouth. It is evident that these natural reactions can be very usefully applied for mobilization.

What are the relevant mechanisms of disturbance of respiration patterns? The first is insufficient or no activity in the abdominal muscles, the spinal column thus losing the support of the diaphragm. The second mechanism is insufficient widening of the thorax during inhalation and, in particular, the patient's inability to breathe into the posterior wall of the thorax even when prone, although no blockage has been found in the thoracic spine. The thoracic spine shows no respiratory wave. In such cases we find relapsing movement restriction of the thoracic spine owing to the absence of the mobilizing effect of respiration.

The most important respirational fault is lifting the thorax with auxiliary cervical muscles instead of widening it in the horizontal plane. Not only is this type of breathing ineffective from the point of view of ventilation, but it also overstrains the cervical musculature and the cervical spine (see Figure 4.76), causing recurrent cervical syndromes. When this fault is slight, it is demonstrable only if the patient is asked to take a deep breath. When it is severe, the faulty position of the thorax during inhalation and the absence of abdominal respiration are evident even at rest in the erect position; in very severe cases it can be seen in a supine patient. In some cases the fault is asymmetrical, one shoulder being raised higher than the other, causing unilateral cervical lesions. In extreme cases the abdominal wall protrudes during exhalation and is drawn in during inhalation ('paradoxical respiration').

The immense importance of faulty movement patterns for pathogenesis should now be clear. Things are all the more serious because modern industrialized civilization encourages this imbalance between predominantly phasic and predominantly postural muscles in favour of the latter; while mobility is increasingly limited, the locomotor system is overburdened by ever more static performance.

The practical consequences of faulty movement patterns are shown in the chapters on diagnosis and therapy, and training techniques suggested. The patient can often be trained adequately to correct the predominating fault in a relatively short time, resulting in permanent relief. However, it is also important to be aware of certain limitations (Janda, 1978).

The significance of constitutional hypermobility

The importance of movement restriction (blockage) and of short muscles restricting mobility has been dealt with. The experienced clinician, however, is well aware that hypermobility is frequently an even more difficult problem, with considerable significance for pathogenesis. Where this problem concerns disturbed function of the locomotor system we owe a major contribution to Sachse (1969). He distinguishes the following:

1. Local pathological hypermobility, which may be primary or secondary (compensatory, in the vicinity of a restricted joint); the latter is particularly characteristic of the spinal column.
2. Pathological generalized hypermobility, frequent in certain congenital and neurological conditions.
3. Constitutional hypermobility, which is most important from our point of view. In itself it is a variant of the norm, but under conditions of mainly static strain its pathogenic importance becomes evident. Overall mobility is greatest in childhood and decreases with age, being generally greater in women than in men.

There are conditions in which hypermobility may even be an advantage, for instance in certain sports, in gymnastics, etc. and in employment where mobility is a requirement. It is accompanied by decreased stability, however, and as in most occupations today static posture predominates, these individuals are less able to adapt to static overstrain. As ligamentous laxity is usually accompanied by weakness of the postural muscles, the consequence is overstrain, resulting in pain. Some jobs are particularly unsuitable for such patients: they should not be dentists, for instance, or telephonists, or have to spend long periods bent over a desk or a machine. In some very pronounced cases there is a condition of general instability, a lack of coordination which can be interpreted as a type of 'minimal brain dysfunction'.

In this connection Janda's observations concerning minimal brain damage seem relevant (see p. 21). After reviewing 100 cases he distinguishes three types. The first is 'microspasticity', showing mild signs of first motor neuron lesion which can be asymmetrical. The second is characterized by hypotonicity, asymmetrical tendon reflexes and signs of hypermobility with a tendency to instability and restlessness, corresponding to severe hypermobility as described by Sachse. The third type is characterized by changes in sensibility, in particular of proprioception, giving the impression of awkwardness which becomes more evident with eyes closed.

The significance of soft tissues

Anyone who treats dysfunction of the motor system and has learned the techniques of joint manipulation should by now be fully aware of the decisive role of muscle function. However, there is much less awareness of the role of soft tissue, in particular of the connective tissue and of fascia. The possible role scars can play throughout the connective tissue is widely ignored. This is partly due to lack of scientific knowledge about these tissues and of lack of clinical methods of diagnosis.

Clinical diagnosis has to rely on palpation which is inadequately taught. Thinking of tonus we are more inclined to think of muscles, although the overlying skin and connective tissue may greatly modify it. However there are no norms nor scientific data available.

It seems obvious that the soft tissues surrounding the motor system must adapt to all its changes of shape during movement and postural function. All its layers including the skin have to stretch and shorten and to shift one against the other, so as to adapt smoothly to every change. This is by no means an easy task or function and it would be a miracle if disturbance would not be common in so very complex a structure. However, no norms of stretch or shift of different layers have been established nor do we know what causes changes. These can be considerable. Comparing symmetrical areas of skin for example by stretching or folding, shifting skin against the underlying muscle or all the soft tissues against bony structures (the 'tight–loose' complex of Ward) enables us to establish important clinical facts.

Numerous methods of massage deal with soft tissues; indeed, soft tissue techniques and massage are very often referred to as almost identical. However, there is very little precise diagnosis at the basis of these techniques and hence little specificity. The decisive step in this field is the consistent application of the *barrier phenomenon.*

Whenever we stretch skin or any other structure there is a free range of movement (stretch or shift) where little or no resistance is met, until we take up the slack or reach the barrier, just as in joints. Here, too, the barrier can be normal, i.e. gradual and well sprung or restrictive and abrupt – pathological. We can localize exactly the pathological barrier, i.e. the area of change, the direction in which stretch and, in particular, shift is restricted. If we then engage the barrier, we wait until we obtain release and thus normal conditions. As this is based on exact diagnosis and the result is predictable, this could aptly be called 'soft tissue manipulation'. Its effects can be striking indeed: restoring mobility of the soft tissues (fascias) at the neck for instance can increase the range of motion just as after joint manipulation.

How can we explain such effects? It was said at the beginning that all movement performed by the motor system implies stretch and/or shift of the soft tissues surrounding it. Yet soft tissues, as the term implies, are not like a straightjacket and would not simply impair motion mechanically. It is certainly a reflex effect due to tethering, as is most clearly shown by the effect of 'active' scars, that is scars which do not move freely, which show 'adhesions', i.e. increased resistance to stretch, shifting and folding (pinching). In most of these tissues, and especially in the skin, there are many receptors producing reflex effects.

The reflex factor in the pathogenesis of pain in disturbed function

In the preceding paragraphs I have tried to show the importance of disturbed function in the locomotor system and the spinal column. Nevertheless, disturbed function in itself is not identical with clinical disease. Indeed, the patient does not as a rule seek medical advice, nor does he complain because of disturbed mobility, but because he feels pain in the back, or in the head, the extremities, or even perhaps the viscera. On the other hand, there are people with disturbed functioning of the locomotor system who are not particularly conscious of pain and who do not consider themselves ill. In fact, disturbance of locomotor function is only the nociceptive stimulus acting on the nervous system, and it is the reaction of the nervous system that now plays the decisive part. The question that now arises is: in what way can disturbed function produce nociceptive stimulation and pain?

Before presenting an explanation I should stress that it is not the purpose of this book to deal with the theoretical aspects of the physiology of pain; nevertheless, some pertinent theoretical conclusions should be drawn from clinical observation. As I have already pointed out, observation before and after manipulation has given us important clues, for not only does clinical examination show that mobility is improved after manipulation, it reveals that tension has disappeared from affected muscles, and even from other tissues. It is interesting to note that the same effect on tension can be observed after local anaesthesia, needling, massage, etc., if pain has been relieved. In fact, it seems that the muscular trigger-point (TrP) which is characterized by increased tension also expresses pain.

Apparently pain subsides if harmful functioning is corrected. If we are forced to maintain an uncomfortable position for long, we feel discomfort at first, but after a time we are forced by pain to change that position. The same is true of dynamic work that exceeds our strength: the moment we desist, pain diminishes and will soon subside. The common denominator in all this is the close correlation between tension and pain in the locomotor system. This is particularly evident in post-isometric muscle relaxation with its immediate analgesic effect not only in the muscle itself, but also in its attachments (see Chapter 6).

Any harmful or disturbed functioning is bound to create tension: blockage, whenever the patient tries to move in the restricted direction; hypermobility due to excessive movement; uncomfortable position resulting in static overstrain, etc. This makes good sense, and is in keeping with the biological role of pain as a warning sign of impending danger – warning of the onset of harmful functioning. As the locomotor system is controlled by our will, it is ours to damage as we wish, and has no way of protecting itself other than by causing pain. If pain were merely the consequence of morphological change it would not have this significant role. In this way the voluntary activity of the locomotor system is kept within due bounds by pain. The locomotor system is, thus, by far the most frequent source of pain in the human organism, nor is it mere coincidence that referred pain from other organs or systems is, as a rule, perceived in parts of the locomotor system.

The close connection between physical and mental factors can also be inferred: pain itself is both a physical and a psychological phenomenon. The same is true of relaxation: it would be difficult to imagine psychological relaxation without relaxed muscles. This should be borne in mind when dealing with patients suffering from pain in the locomotor system.

What is the reaction to nociceptive stimuli due to disturbed function? First, the changes in the segment, which we have already mentioned. This reaction may be of lesser or greater intensity, which is of great clinical significance: it allows us to correlate the degree of changed function to the reflex changes, and in this way to establish the patient's lability or stability. It is by no means only a matter of autonomic functions, as is frequently thought, but also concerns muscle spasm or muscle inhibition, etc. There may be considerable differences between individual patients, but reactions may also change considerably in the same individual. If, for instance, acute vertebrogenic pain has been provoked by a draught, it cannot be due to the cold air alone, for in such patients we find acute blockage in at least one segment, with severe muscle spasm. This blockage is clinically latent, but produces a hyperalgesic zone in the segment. The cold draught striking this hyperalgesic zone is an additional stimulus which intensifies the patient's reaction and causes severe muscle spasm which makes the lesion manifest.

Thus there is no need to explain pain by mechanical irritation of nervous structures, as is frequently suggested, under the obvious influence of the root-compression model. It would, indeed, be a peculiar concept of the nervous system (a system dealing with information) that would have it reacting, as a rule, not to stimulation of its receptors but to mechanical damage to its own structures. Referred pain from the viscera and TrPs can serve as an example, as can the experimental infiltration of hypertonic saline solution into ligamentous structures of the spinal column, which was first performed by Kellgren (1939) and confirmed by Hockaday and Whitty (1967), Pitha and Drobný (1972) and Feinstein *et al.* (1954).

Just as in these experiments, pain arising from deep structures (joints, ligaments, etc.) frequently radiates in the segment and is accompanied by changes in skin sensitivity (hyperalgesic zones), sometimes with dysaesthesia, muscle spasm, etc., thus imitating radicular pain. Brügger (1960, 1962) therefore called it 'pseudoradicular'. As muscular spasm is a prominent feature with concomitant pain in tendons and insertions as well as in fasciae, the term 'myofascial pain' ('tendomyosis') is frequently used. In the German literature the term 'reflex syndrome' is preferred at present.

This brings us to 'soft tissue changes', which are the object of 'soft tissue techniques' or even of 'soft tissue manipulation'. So far we have dealt with these changes (hyperalgesic zones – HAZ – in the skin or connective tissue, and even muscle spasm) mainly in terms of 'reflex changes'. This is justified, as a rule, in the acute stage of joint movement restriction, because immediate normalization of HAZ and relief of muscle spasm (trigger points) is frequently achieved after joint manipulation. However, in the later stages, changes in soft tissue, in particular in the deep layer of fasciae and muscles, tend to become chronic; shortened, these tissues then cause movement restriction. This is what Russian authors mean by the 'dystrophic stage' (Veselovski and Popelyanski, 1982; Popelyanski, 1984). As in joints, we encounter a restrictive barrier when stretching or shifting these fasciae, and consequently have to overcome it in order to obtain release. When this is achieved, even at this stage, changes usually considered morphological may turn out to be reversible, i.e. functional. There is, indeed, a trophic function under the control of the autonomic nervous system so that dystrophy can also be a result of dysfunction.

I have dwelt most upon the segmental reaction as this can most readily be examined clinically. However, it should not be forgotten that, whatever this reaction, it is perceived as pain only if it passes the threshold of pain perception which is under central nervous control. On examination, indeed, we very frequently find changes in many segments, of which patients are entirely unaware.

Impaired function, as we have seen, is closely connected to the reflex changes typical for nociceptive stimulation. They therefore constitute an entity that we propose to term 'functional pathology of the motor system'.

Such is the distrust and lack of knowledge of the way the motor system functions, that 'functional pathology' is viewed as a sort of subterfuge, or as an attempt to 'explain away' clinical phenomena, while the 'true pathology' is not yet known. Yet what other explanation is there for the fact that not only symptoms but also mobility, muscle tension and autonomic phenomena may be restored to clinical normality immediately after mobilization of a restricted joint, after relaxation of a muscle with a trigger point, or after stretching of a shortened fascia? How could such immediate effect be explained if there were, indeed, morphological changes? The situation can be compared to the working of a car: the engine may not work because of a faulty ball bearing or a burst cylinder (morphological change), but it may not work because, although the structure is intact, the ignition is out of order, or the carburettor needs adjusting; after a simple adjustment, the car functions normally again.

One of the reasons why the medical profession is so slow in realizing that dysfunction is the most frequent cause of pain in the locomotor system is that the evidence is based on clinical findings, and this is rejected as 'subjective'. This is also the reason why clinical examination and clinical science are increasingly underrated. We have already seen that the 'puzzle of pain' in the locomotor system, i.e. the fact that pain is closely related to tension, while decreased tension goes along with relief of pain, is unfortunately based mainly on clinical evidence; the answer to the 'puzzle' lies literally in our (palpating) hands. Pain receptors are found precisely in those structures where tension is produced: in attachments of tendons, ligaments, in joint capsules, muscles and meningeal sheaths. In reality, the most fundamental distinction between different painful conditions of the locomotor system is that between conditions attributable to pathomorphological changes and those caused by dysfunction, a distinction already described as comparable to that between hardware and software; here differential diagnosis is essential. Yet even in pain and disease attributable to morphological changes, improvement (and thus also diagnosis) of disturbed function may be of great clinical importance to the patient and is, indeed, the typical object of rehabilitation medicine.

Radicular pain

After showing that pain in the motor system is due to nociceptive stimulation of pain receptors, what is our explanation of pain in cases of true mechanical root compression such as disc prolapse? First, it should be pointed out that nerve compression alone causes paresis and anaesthesia, but no pain. What is then the most likely mechanism by which, for example, disc prolapse causes pain? Quite obviously, disc prolapse cannot impinge on the nerve root before acting on the dura and the dural sheaths. It is precisely these structures that are richly supplied with pain receptors, and we should be aware that at every movement of the legs and trunk the dural sheaths are being rubbed over the prolapse. It should not be forgotten that Lasegue's sign indicates meningeal involvement. This is in keeping with the effect of epidural anaesthesia in disc lesions.

Another clinical observation also indicates that pain is primarily due to stimulation of pain receptors, even if there are clear neurological signs of nerve root involvement. Černý (1948) registered the radiating pain in patients with radicular syndromes, using autodermography of the pain, and found that this was more exact and reliable in dermatome localization than the typical neurological signs, in particular more so than hypoaesthesia. This is because a nerve root does not contain fibres from one segment only, but transitory fibres from neighbouring segments are usually also present. This is not only a fact well known to anatomists: it explains the overlap thanks to which radicotomy is not, as a rule, followed by hypoaesthesia in the corresponding segments. This rule, however, is only partially valid: there are frequent exceptions. Hanraets (1959) explained it as follows. During operation he frequently found that nerve roots vary considerably in thickness: if a root is very thick on one side its neighbour is likely to be much thinner, because the transitory fibres belonging to this neighbouring segment can be very numerous; in the thin (neighbouring segment) root, transitory fibres are consequently very few, or may be absent altogether. Conditions on the other side may be quite different: for example, if the L5 root is thick on the right, this need not be so on the left. If a very thin root is compressed or cut, there will be very little or no sensory change, but if a very thick root is involved there will be hardly any transitory fibres in the neighbouring root or roots; hence, there will be marked hypoaesthesia and some dysaesthesia originating in the transitory fibres, which will affect neighbouring dermatomes as well and produce some changes of sensitivity in them. When Hanraets (1959) stimulated such a thick root during operation, his patients also felt dysaesthesia in the neighbouring dermatomes. Hence, a nerve root is not necessarily mono-segmental! Starý and I found something very similar (Starý and Lewit, 1958) after radicotomy in patients operated on for root syndrome, in whom no disc prolapse was found (there was a time when radicotomy was carried out in such cases). Most of these patients had few complaints, if any, but there were some in whom permanent hypoaesthesia followed, and was resented. Here, apparently, a thick root with most of the transitory fibres of the neighbouring segments had been cut.

Referred pain coming from receptors, however (i.e. from dural sheaths), is felt in one segment only and therefore radiates only in the dermatome corresponding exactly to the compressed root. In other words, what we call a radicular syndrome is a combination of pain originating from pain receptors with irradiation in the segment, and of neurological signs of root compression (hypoaesthesia, dysaesthesia and paresis).

There is yet another very interesting feature that shows the role of the functional component: this is the frequent immediate improvement of muscle strength in weak muscles and even of tendon reflexes (see Figures 2.12 and 2.13) after manipulation. This agrees with the electromyographical findings of Drechsler (1970) and Hanák *et al.* (1970), showing that, in true radicular syndromes with clinical signs of muscle weakness, nerve conduction velocity may be normal. This may be interpreted as mere reflex inhibition. Drechsler insisted that the clinical prognosis was worse in those radicular syndromes in which he found decreased conduction velocity.

The term 'vertebrogenic'

After terms such as 'degenerative disease' and 'discopathy' had been abandoned, the non-committal term 'vertebrogenic' seemed useful and has been widely adopted. I have already touched on its shortcomings: it includes structural disease of the spinal column but does not cover changes in the functioning of the locomotor system outside the spinal column. However, in the sense that the spinal column is used as a *pars pro toto*, the term is acceptable. So long as it is used for back pain and (closely) related disorders, it is hardly controversial; it became, and still is, controversial when applied to disorders, mainly pain, usually ascribed to internal organs. This controversy became particularly heated because of some of the therapeutic consequences of manipulation.

There is little room for controversy if our present knowledge about referred and radiating pain is taken into account. Melzack and Wall (1965) and Milne *et al.* (1981) have shown that nociceptive stimuli from all structures in a segment converge to cells in the lamina V of the basal spinal nucleus. This, of course, also applies to pain coming from receptors in the joint capsules of apophyseal intervertebral joints as well as from internal organs. It is, therefore, easy to see that the locomotor system can readily simulate visceral pain, and vice versa, and that this constitutes an important aspect to be taken into account in differential diagnosis. If this is clear, the therapeutic consequences should not cause much controversy.

Yet, as will be seen in further chapters, vertebrovisceral relations are more complex, and for this reason some circumspection is desirable when using the term 'vertebrogenic'. There are many disorders that are caused by more than one factor, and the spinal column may be only one of several factors causing a pathological condition. In such a case it could be better to speak of disease with a vertebrogenic factor, rather than vertebrogenic disease. A typical instance is migraine: we should reserve the term vertebrogenic for those conditions in which the spinal column (the locomotor system) is the sole or decisive factor, as in the cervicocranial syndrome.

However, as Junghanns (1957) has pointed out, the role of the vertebrogenic factor may change in the course of a single disorder. It may trigger the disease process, but once this has started it may develop independently. Gutzeit (1953) very aptly characterized the spinal column according to its various roles in the pathogenesis of some diseases, as 'initiator, provoker, multiplier, localizer'.

Conclusions

1. Morphological changes cannot explain the great majority of pains arising from the locomotor system. These changes may, however, play the part of a *locus minoris resistentiae*.
2. By far the most frequent cause of pain is disturbed function. This may concern passive mobility (joints), muscle activity (TrPs and movement patterns), or body statics. Manipulative treatment is directed to movement restriction of joints or motor segments of the spinal column – blockage.
3. The most important cause of blockage is overstrain caused by faulty movement patterns or body statics, trauma or visceral disease. It is frequently found even in early childhood.
4. Its consequences are disturbed function, hypermobility and again blockage in the neighbouring, or even in more distant, parts of the locomotor system. Ultimately, by disturbed function or compensatory hypermobility, they cause degenerative changes.
5. The locomotor system and the spinal column act as a functional unit which adapts itself to and compensates for disturbed function, so that equilibrium is always maintained.
6. Changes of mechanical function alone do not cause clinical symptoms (pain). They constitute, however, the nociceptive stimulus which produces reflex changes in the segment (muscle spasm, hyperalgesic zones, etc.). If these are of sufficient intensity to pass the pain threshold, pain is felt.

The most likely nociceptive stimulus is increased tension.

7. Pain in the locomotor system is therefore a warning sign of harmful functioning which should be corrected in time before it causes permanent damage. It is probably the most frequent type of pain throughout the organism.
8. If the patient is able to describe and localize the pain, and we find some of the typical reflex changes in a corresponding area and have excluded gross pathology, then it is our task to find the disturbance of function that is the most likely cause. Undiagnosed impairment of motor function is – in our view – the most frequent type of pain without a specific diagnosis, and treatment of the pain as such, without a thorough clinical understanding of the functioning of the locomotor system, is courting failure.
9. The complex of changes in function of the locomotor system and the resulting reflex changes constitute what may be called the 'functional pathology of the motor system'.

3

Functional anatomy and radiography of the spinal column

Without a good understanding of functional anatomy as presented by X-rays, it is almost impossible to understand impaired function and therefore to interpret correctly what we have felt with our hands during examination. It is, of course, not the purpose of this chapter to deal with anatomy in detail, but to present those features that are essential for an understanding both of the way in which function may be impaired, and of the mechanisms involved.

Basically X-ray diagnosis of the spinal column serves three purposes: (1) diagnosis of changes in structure, (2) assessment of locomotor function (kinematics) and (3) assesment of static function (spinal curvature, position of individual vertebrae).

Diagnosis of structural changes

Classic X-ray diagnosis is concerned mainly with changes in structure, and this type of diagnosis is essential in order to avoid serious error; methods aimed at correcting function are out of place in cases where the underlying condition is structural pathology. Our special interest in this field, however, lies in such changes of structure as may have a direct influence on function, such as various anomalies, in particular in the shape of joints, asymmetry of the vertebrae, spinal curvature, etc. Not only is the shape or deformity of some vertebrae the cause of asymmetrical function (e.g. in scoliosis), but it can itself be the result of asymmetrical function (e.g. rotation of the lower cervical spine owing to dominance of one hemisphere and asymmetrical loading of the upper extremities, as Jirout (1980) has shown). Diagnosis of structural change can be found in the classic textbooks both of anatomy and of radiology, and therefore need not be dealt with in detail here.

Diagnosis of disturbed function (mobility studies)

The X-ray examination of disturbed function involves examination of the spinal column in various, usually extreme, positions such as ante- and retroflexion (extension), side-bending or even rotation. This type of examination undoubtedly provides some direct information about mobility; as a routine examination, however, it is very time consuming and uneconomical and its practical value is thus limited to complicated cases where special information is required, or to cases involving litigation. It is advisable to use X-ray examination in clinically relevant positions, e.g. in retroflexion in cases of vertigo caused by bending the head back. Doctors familiar with manual diagnosis of disturbed function are accustomed to assessing mobility by clinical examination; nevertheless X-ray examination of mobility is extremely important for research purposes, as it gives insight into the mechanisms underlying mobility and its disturbance, an insight no other method can provide.

Diagnosis of disturbed static function (spinal curvature and 'malalignment')

Mobility is what is usually meant by 'spinal function', yet static function is no less important, and X-rays of the spinal column with the patient standing or sitting (taken under standard conditions) can, and should, be evaluated for static function. As is shown in more detail below, spinal curvature should be such as not to upset balance. This goes not only for the sagittal but also for the coronal plane, in which every obliquity (e.g. in walking) produces a scoliotic curvature with the corresponding rotation. Curvature may be smooth, or less so; in certain segments there may be a sharp bend (scoliotic, kyphotic, lordotic) or even some rotation or shift ('offset').

The importance of these signs of malalignment is highly controversial, especially in view of the discredited subluxation theory. The controversy is fuelled by the doubtful importance of asymmetry, as, in fact, asymmetry is the rule rather than the exception. Yet Jirout (1978) has shown that although asymmetry of the position of the atlas in relation to the axis is the rule, its incidence increases with age. This is equally true for the asymmetrical shape of the spinous processes. He concluded that this is probably the result of asymmetrical pull due to the dominance of one cerebral hemisphere.

From this it appears reasonable to deduce that asymmetry and irregularity of 'alignment', while not in themselves pathological, can be the expression of asymmetry or anomaly in function. If, for example, the axis is rotated in neutral position, not only will it rotate asymmetrically during side-bending, but the rest of the cervical spine will follow suit (see p. 65). Without jumping to conclusions, marked asymmetry or 'malalignment' in the X-ray picture should be correlated to the clinical findings. Marked irregularity of the relative position of vertebrae in the X-ray can be regarded as a warning signal that there may also be some functional anomaly or at least susceptibility to disturbed function.

One obvious advantage of the examination of static function is its economy: only two X-rays are required, the anteroposterior (AP) view and the side view. Standard conditions must be adhered to. As individual posture is highly characteristic, i.e. constant, comparable pictures can be expected on repetition. Gutmann and Velé (1978) have very aptly summed up the importance of static function: 'The dominating principle of the spinal column is body statics'. All other functions are subordinate to the requirements of upright posture on two legs. Loss of mobility and painful impingement of nerve roots is preferred to sacrifice of the erect posture.

Technical requirements

The X-ray should be taken in a position that corresponds to the patient's natural posture, either standing or sitting (with the exception of the AP view of the cervical spine, which is taken with the patient supine). There should, therefore, be no artificial correction of the patient's posture. Distortion must be avoided and focusing must be scrupulous to obtain clear pictures that can be used successively for comparison. To achieve this, some correction is unavoidable, for instance to prevent distortion or tilt, but the natural posture must be registered. It is also essential to visualize a sufficiently long section of the spinal column to make it possible to assess posture. To determine the position of the cervical spine, the base of the skull must be visible, as well as the whole of the cervical

to assess the shape of the lumbar spine we need to see at least the thoracolumbar junction, the ilia, the pubic symphysis and both hip joints on a single AP picture. This gives a sufficient number of landmarks by which to assess correct focusing and to compare successive pictures if a standard technique is used.

The ideal method for X-ray examination of the spinal column is to show the whole column on a single picture. An AP and a lateral view with the patient standing are required: the only condition to be observed for the AP view is that both feet must be placed symmetrically in relation to the X-ray screen, and that the patient be requested to distribute his weight equally between his two feet, keeping his legs straight. In the lateral view, the feet should be placed so that the ankles are about a finger's breadth behind the vertical to the floor, from the mid-point of the horizontal edge of the cassette; the head should be neither bent to the side nor rotated, the patient fixing some object at eye-level in order to avoid anteflexion or retroflexion of the head; the patient holds his arms crossed over the chest and his hands on his shoulders.

X-ray of the lumbar spine and the pelvis

The patient must be standing if X-ray pictures that can be evaluated for static function are to be obtained. He is therefore placed before the X-ray screen as when pictures are taken of the whole spinal column. To acquire information about the statics of the spinal column as a whole, a device described by Gutmann (1970) is used, in which a plumb-line indicates the vertical line from the head. A line which corresponds to the centre of the screen is drawn on the floor: for the AP view the patient places one foot symmetrically on each side of the line. A movable plumb-line of metal wire is attached to the screen. The screen is first raised to the level of the patient's occiput and the metal wire moved to a point corresponding to the outer occipital protuberance. In this way the plumb-line shows the head position. The screen is then adjusted to the height required to take a picture of the lumbar spine and the pelvis (with the central beam and the centre of the screen roughly at the height of the navel). The wire should now be taped to the lower edge of the screen and the patient leans against the screen so as not to blur the picture (Figure 3.1).

For the lateral view the patient puts his feet as described for the X-ray of the whole spine: the screen with the plumb-line is raised to the level of the head in order to place the plumb-line at a point corresponding to the outer meatus acousticus, and

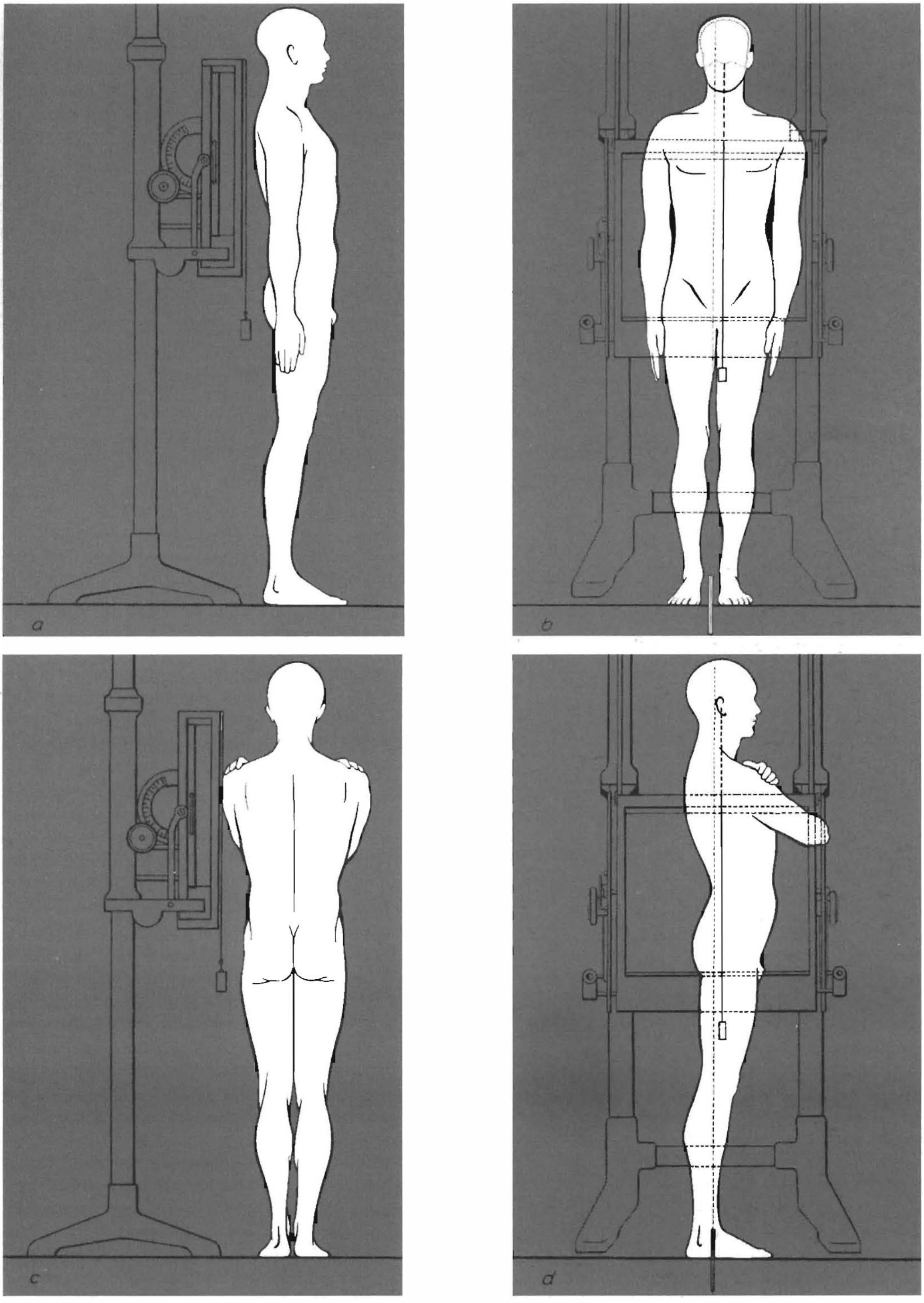


Figure 3.1 X-ray technique of the lumbar spine with the patient standing. (*a*) Positioning of the moveable plumb-line; (*b*) the device prepared for X-ray, AP view; (*c*) positioning of plumb-line; (*d*) the device prepared for X-ray, lateral view (After Gutmann, 1970)

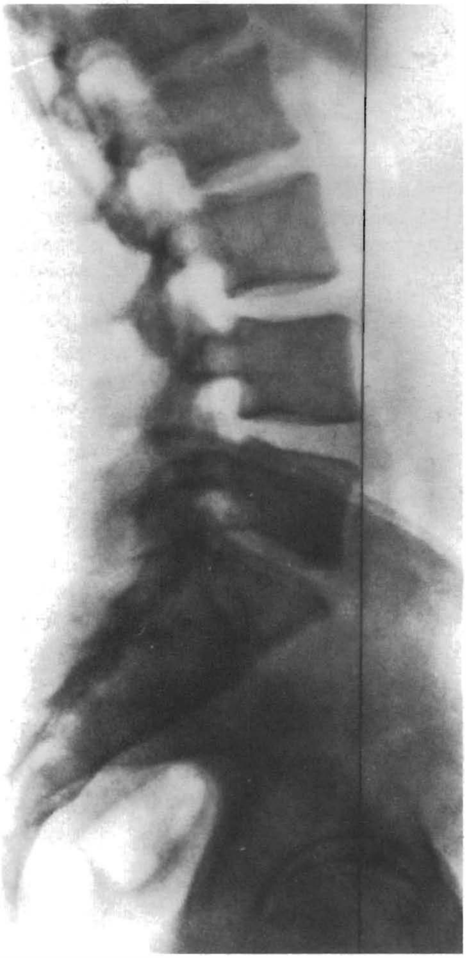


Figure 3.2 Lateral view of the lumbar spine using the technique illustrated in Figure 3.1: perfect visualization of the innominate and the femoral heads, and of the lumbosacral junction. The rest of the lumbar spine is neither over-exposed not distorted

with the plumb-line in place the screen is then lowered to the level required for the lateral view of the lumbar spine (the centre of the screen at the level of the navel or slightly above). The plumb-line must again be taped to the lower edge of the screen and the patient must lean against the screen to avoid blurring. In the lateral view it is an advantage not to focus the central beam on the middle of the picture but eccentrically midway between the iliac crest and the greater trochanter, i.e. roughly at the level of the sacral promontory. The advantage of this technique is that it gives an undistorted view of the pelvis and the hip joints and correct exposure of both the lumbar spine and the lumbosacral junction, and yet there is no distortion of the lumbar spine (Figure 3.2). With the normal technique, either the lumbar spine is over-exposed or the lumbosacral junction is under-exposed. The distance of the X-ray tube to the film should be as great as possible, depending on the power of the apparatus and the corpulence of the patient, the ideal distance being 2 m.

X-ray evaluation of lumbar spinal statics

As we have already seen, X-ray examination of the patient standing serves mainly for diagnosis of static function and its disturbance. It should be borne in mind that clinical examination alone can ascertain the position of the outer occipital protuberance, the spinous processes, the intergluteal line and the mid-point between the heels in relation to a plumb-line. In the sagittal plane, clinical examination can show the position of the shoulders, the great trochanters and the heels in relation to a plumb-line from the external auditory meatus. Clinical examination, however, cannot provide information about the position of the sacrum and L5, i.e. the true base of the spinal column, information which is essential for the understanding and evaluation of spinal statics.

This explains why clinicians interested in body statics have devoted their attention mainly to the question of body equilibrium as a whole, studying deviation of the head and deviation from the line of gravity by means of statovectography. Rash and Burke (1971) pointed out that 'in stationary posture the centre of gravity of each body segment should be vertically above the area of the supporting base, preferably near its centre. If persistent gravitational torques are being borne by ligaments, or if excessive muscular contraction is required to maintain balance, this principle is being violated'. X-ray examination under static conditions provides pertinent information on this type of static disturbance.

The mechanism of balance differs in the coronal and the sagittal planes. This is readily understood if the effect of a heel-pad is considered. An artificial difference of more than 1 cm in leg length changes the balance in the coronal plane; it is immediately felt and resented by the subject, whereas raising (or lowering) both heels is hardly noticed. This is because in the coronal plane the line of gravity lies between the two hip joints and the heels, guaranteeing (relatively) stable equilibrium. Purely mechanical static changes are therefore much more readily felt in the coronal than in the sagittal plane. In the latter the trunk is in a state of labile equilibrium above the two perfectly round surfaces of the hip joints. Balance in this plane cannot be maintained by static forces alone; dynamic muscular forces must be brought into play, but should be kept at a minimum.

Lumbar spinal statics in the coronal plane

Under 'ideal' conditions the pelvis and sacrum in the AP view are straight and all vertebrae are symmetrical; the outer occipital protruberance is in the mid-line and so are all the spinous processes down to the sacrum, as well as the coccyx and the pubic symphysis. Not only is such a spinal column the exception but it is of little interest. Nobody ever stands naturally symmetrically on both feet, and during movement the pelvis constantly swings from one side to the other. The problem is thus not obliquity in itself but correct or faulty reaction to obliquity, and the criteria by which this reaction can be judged.

This can be studied physiologically if one creates obliquity of the base in a healthy subject by lengthening one leg (Figure 3.3). The pelvis shifts to the higher side while the lumbar spine bends to the same side, if both legs are straight and the patient relaxes.

In X-rays the same shift to the side, scoliosis and rotation to the lower side can be observed. The summit of the scoliotic curve is usually at the mid-lumbar region, so that the thoracolumbar junction comes to stand above the sacrum. The degree of rotation in lumbar scoliosis depends on lordosis: if this is present, rotation is normally found. If there is no lordosis – as in acute lumbago or sciatica, for example – there is also no rotation; if there is kyphosis there may even be rotation to the opposite side.

The criterion of normal static function of the lumbar spine must therefore be its reaction to obliquity at the base – this base not necessarily being only the sacrum but also the lower lumbar vertebrae up to L3. If the obliquity is not due to a short leg (pelvic inclination) but only to inclination of the base of the spine, it will persist when the patient is seated, and therefore correction of the sitting position should be considered.

Reaction to obliquity at the base is normal if (1) there is scoliosis to the lower side; (2) there is rotation to the same side, provided that lordosis is present; (3) the thoracolumbar junction stands vertically above the sacrum; and (4) the pelvis shifts to the higher side. Thoracic scoliosis is always in the opposite direction to lumbar scoliosis (Figure 3.4). These facts reflect the physiology of balance and

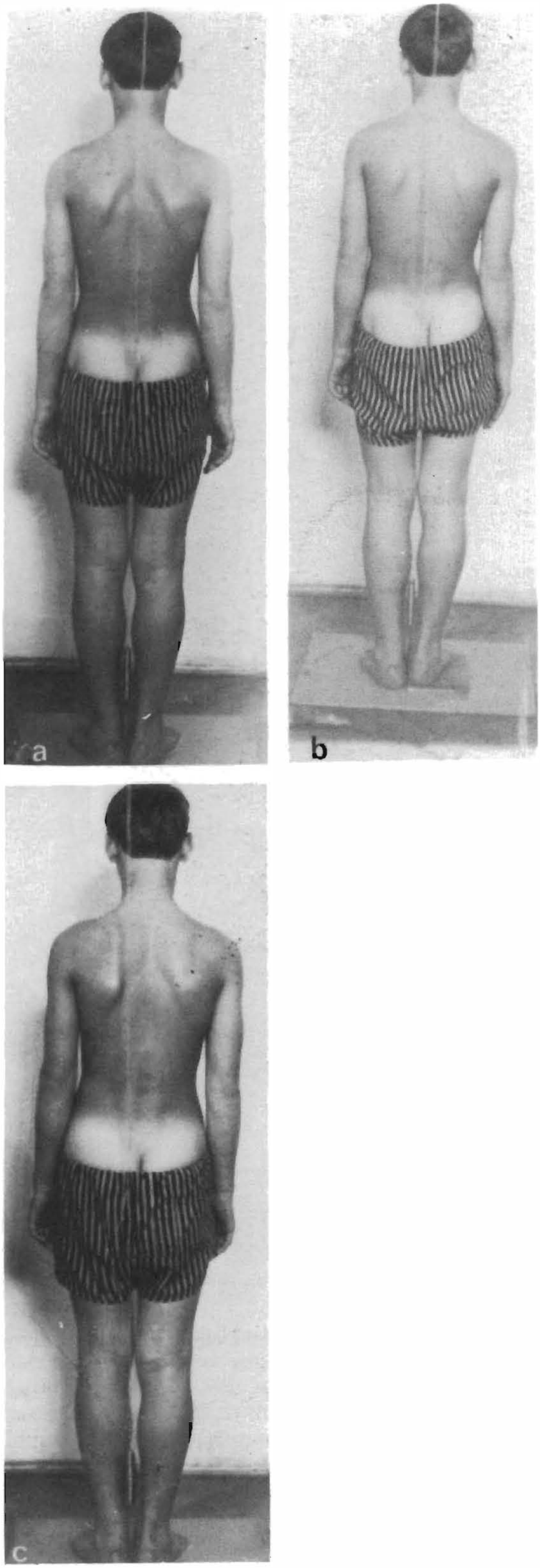


Figure 3.3 Body statics with the subject standing: (*a*) with his weight equally on both feet, the body axis corresponds to the plumb-line between the heels; (*b*) with a heel-pad, the weight again equally on both feet, the pelvis shifts to the higher side; (*c*) with the weight on the right foot the whole body deviates to the right, the head deviating furthest

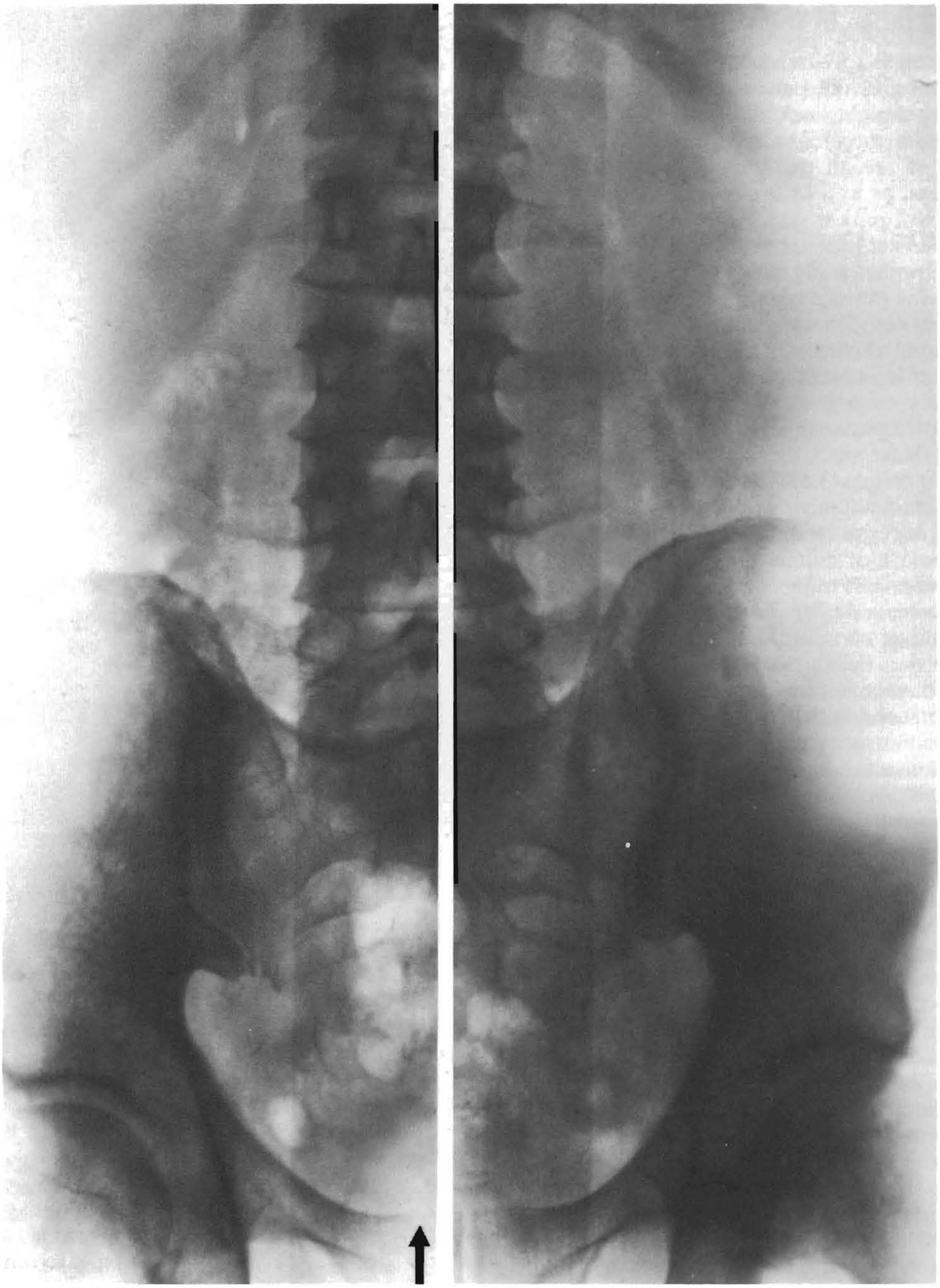


Figure 3.4 Normal reaction of the lumbar spine and pelvis to a short right leg (pelvic obliquity): static dextroscoliosis with dextrorotation of the lumbar spine, deviation of the pelvis to the left from the mid-line (arrow)

affect the whole question of difference in leg length. This in itself is of no significance if it does not cause obliquity of the base of the spinal column. Therefore, the age-old dispute over how to measure this difference is beside the point. What is important is that while clinically we determine pelvic tilt, we cannot determine the position of the sacrum nor that of the lumbar vertebrae that constitute the base of the spinal column, as the pelvis may be straight while the sacrum is tilted, and vice versa. Only by X-ray

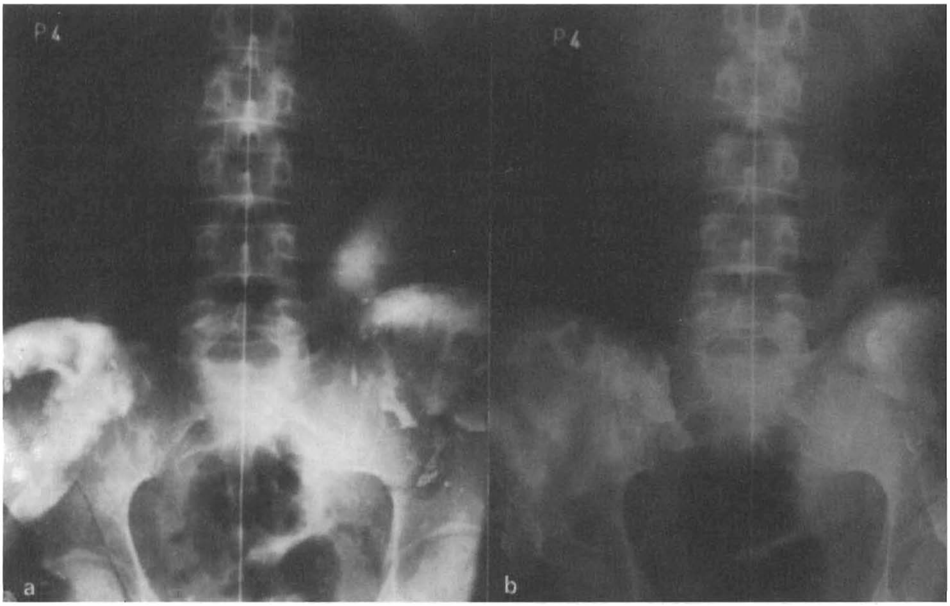


Figure 3.5 Pelvic obliquity. (*a*) Pelvis lower on the right (short right leg) with a horizontal sacrum, the lumbar spine straight; (*b*) with a right heel-pad the pelvis is horizontal, but sacral obliquity appears, with deviation of the lumbar spine to the left and slight dextroscoliosis

examination can the true base of the spinal column and the reaction of the spinal column to inclination be determined (Figure 3.5).

The principal pathological findings are:

1. Obliquity without scoliosis or with insufficient scoliosis, so that the thoracolumbar junction is not above the lumbosacral.
2. No pelvic shift to the higher side.
3. No rotation when there is scoliosis and lordosis or rotation in the opposite direction from the scoliosis, or even scoliosis to the higher side.

Correcting disturbance of statics by means of a heel-pad is the practical application of these criteria. This is, of course, always a clinical question which can never be decided by X-ray alone. Nevertheless, it is X-ray examination that provides the most important information.

What do we expect to achieve by using a heel-pad to reduce obliquity?

1. If scoliosis is not sufficient to bring the thoracolumbar junction above the lumbosacral, or if scoliosis is absent, the thoracolumbar junction will be brought to stand above the lumbosacral, or to approach this position.
2. If the pelvis is shifted, usually to the higher side, it will return to the mid-line.
3. Even if the scoliosis (scoliotic curve) has been balanced, it will decrease after one heel has been raised.

All this must be checked again by X-ray. With each of these possibilities we observe a positive or a negative reaction, the spinal column either 'accepting' or 'rejecting' the correction. In cases of 'rejection' it would be wrong to 'force' correction upon the patient, because this would only increase the strain at the base (Figures 3.6 and 3.7).

Deviation from the plumb-line can usually be interpreted as a sign that the patient puts more weight on the leg towards which the plumb-line is shifted.

The traditional reaction to obliquity has been studied by Illi (1954) and Biedermann and Edinger (1957), with the subject marking time in front of an X-ray screen. At every step obliquity appeared at the base and with it scoliosis to the lower side; the summit of the scoliotic curve appeared at L3 and the thoracolumbar junction was brought above the sacrum. Above T12 the thoracic spine made a (compensatory) scoliosis to the opposite side, but it was less marked, like a damped wave. According to Biedermann and Edinger (1957), the thoracolumbar junction forms a kind of fixed point which should not swing more than 4 cm from one side to the other.

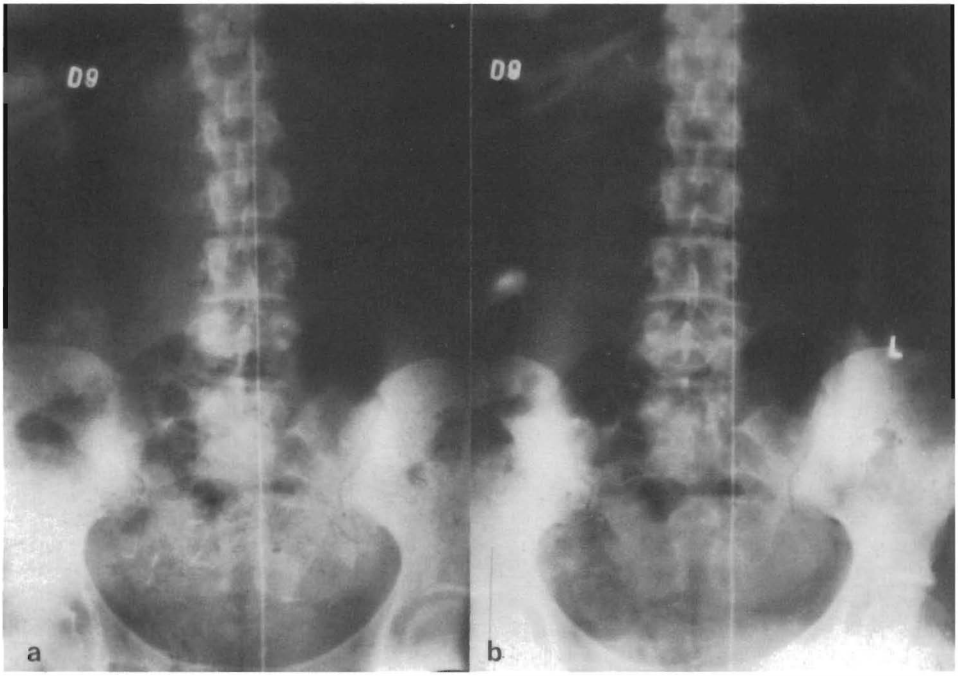


Figure 3.6 Pelvic and sacral obliquity due to a short left leg. (*a*) Left scoliosis with deviation of the thoracolumbar junction to the right; (*b*) normal lumbar statics after application of a left heel-pad

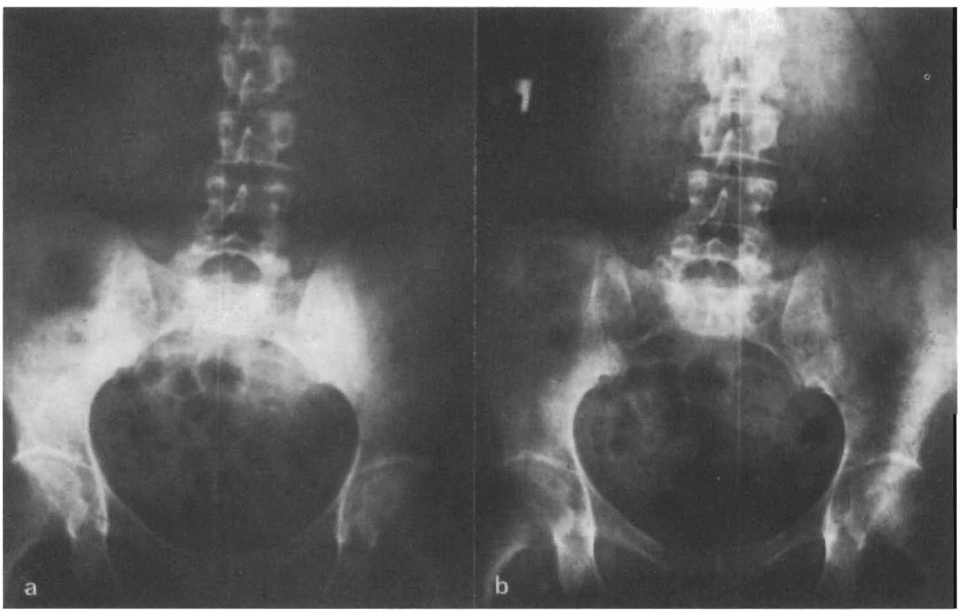


Figure 3.7 Pelvic and sacral obliquity due to a short left leg. (*a*) Left scoliosis with deviation of the thoracolumbar junction to the left; (*b*) less pelvic obliquity after application of a left heel-pad, but no improvement in lumbar statics

The relation of scoliosis to rotation under the influence of lordosis has been studied by Lovett (1907), according to whom the lumbar spine rotates in the direction of scoliosis if there is lordosis, but to the opposite side in kyphosis. This can be explained by the relative mobility of the vertebral bodies and the arches during side-bending. If there is lordosis the articular processes, which are mainly in the sagittal plane, are locked and therefore resist side-bending; the vertebral bodies, however, are free to bend sideways. Hence, there will be more lateral flexion of the vertebral bodies than of the arches, and rotation to the side of scoliosis will result, the spinous processes remaining almost in mid-line.

On the other hand, if there is kyphosis the joints are much freer to move, as the joint facets are in loose apposition. The vertebral bodies, however, are pressed against each other, particularly at their anterior edge, and are therefore not as free to bend as in lordosis. Side-bending of the arches will thus be the same as, or even exceed, lateral flexion of the vertebral bodies. The result will be either no rotation at all, or rotation in the opposite direction from the scoliosis, as can be seen in X-ray pictures of patients with acute lumbago, taken standing (Figure 3.8). This can also be ascertained clinically if a subject with a marked lumbar kyphosis when sitting relaxed is told to side-bend: while in lordosis his lumbar spinous processes will remain almost in mid-line, in kyphosis they will form a perfect scoliotic arch.

Lumbar spinal statics in the sagittal plane

In the sagittal plane we are concerned with what are called 'normal' curvatures, generally held to comprise cervical lordosis, thoracic kyphosis, lumbar lordosis and sacral kyphosis. Sollmann and Breitenbach (1961) have the credit for disproving this widely accepted view, on the basis of 1000 X-rays of the entire spinal column. They came to the conclusion that there is only an 'individual norm': they do not, however, lay down any criteria.

Cramer wrote in 1958 that there is a constant correlation between the tilt of L5 and that of T12, and more important still, that the T12 vertebra lies 4 cm behind L5 (150 measurements were taken). I myself confirmed this in 200 cases (Lewit, 1973) and also showed that the plumb-line from the external acoustic meatus passes exactly through the scaphoids at its base. The sacral promontory lies 4 mm behind and the axis of the hip joints 12 mm in front of this plumb-line. These conditions are changed in disturbance of dynamics, i.e. of muscular function. This is most evident in muscle spasm due to acute sciatica or lumbago in disc lesions, when there is a forward thrust posture (Figure 3.9) or in flabby posture in which the sacral promontory shifts forward and there is an increased difference between L5 and T12, the latter being more than 4 cm dorsal to L5 (Figure 3.10).

'Flabby' posture is the typical reaction to imbalance of the muscles controlling posture of the lumbar spine and pelvis; it may be the result of weak abdominal and gluteal muscles, but equally well of hyperactive back muscles and hip flexors (see Chapter 4).

Lumbar spinal curvature is clearly dependent on pelvic tilt which, in turn, varies according to the 'type' of pelvis, as is shown in the following section.

It can, therefore, be concluded that lumbar spinal curvature is adequate if in the sagittal plane the thoracolumbar junction is behind the lumbosacral junction and there is no excessive anteposition of the sacral promontory, and if T12 is not too far behind L5 (not more than 8 cm, which is double the average). In the coronal plane the most important criterion is also that the thoracolumbar junction should be vertically above the lumbosacral. If there is obliquity at the base the normal reaction is adequate scoliosis and rotation (if lordosis is present) and a shift of the pelvis to the higher side.

If curvature of the spinal column subserves these rules, i.e. the rules of body statics, then it is physiological; I am not aware of any other criteria of spinal curvature. Furthermore, it can be inferred that the spinal column not only helps to maintain equilibrium of the whole body but also determines the relationship between the various parts of the body under the influence of gravity. We may therefore speak of 'partial equilibrium' subserved by the spinal column in accordance with the criteria of Rash and Burke (1971) (see p. 38).

Curvature cannot be evaluated if the patient is recumbent or if the position of the pelvis and the lumbar spine up to at least the thoracolumbar junction cannot be seen on a single radiograph.

It is important to realize that a slight curvature (a 'flat' spine) goes hand in hand with hypermobility and lack of stability, while greater curvature (in both the sagittal and the coronal plane) corresponds to stability and less mobility.

The pelvis

The pelvis and the spinal column constitute a functional entity, the pelvis being the base of the column and the point of connection with the lower extremities. The pelvis transfers motion from the lower extremities and acts as a shock-absorber. From the ilia, powerful muscles and ligaments attach themselves to the spine as though to a mast. The sacroiliac joints and the pubic symphysis allow for some mobility (springing) while guaranteeing adequate stability.

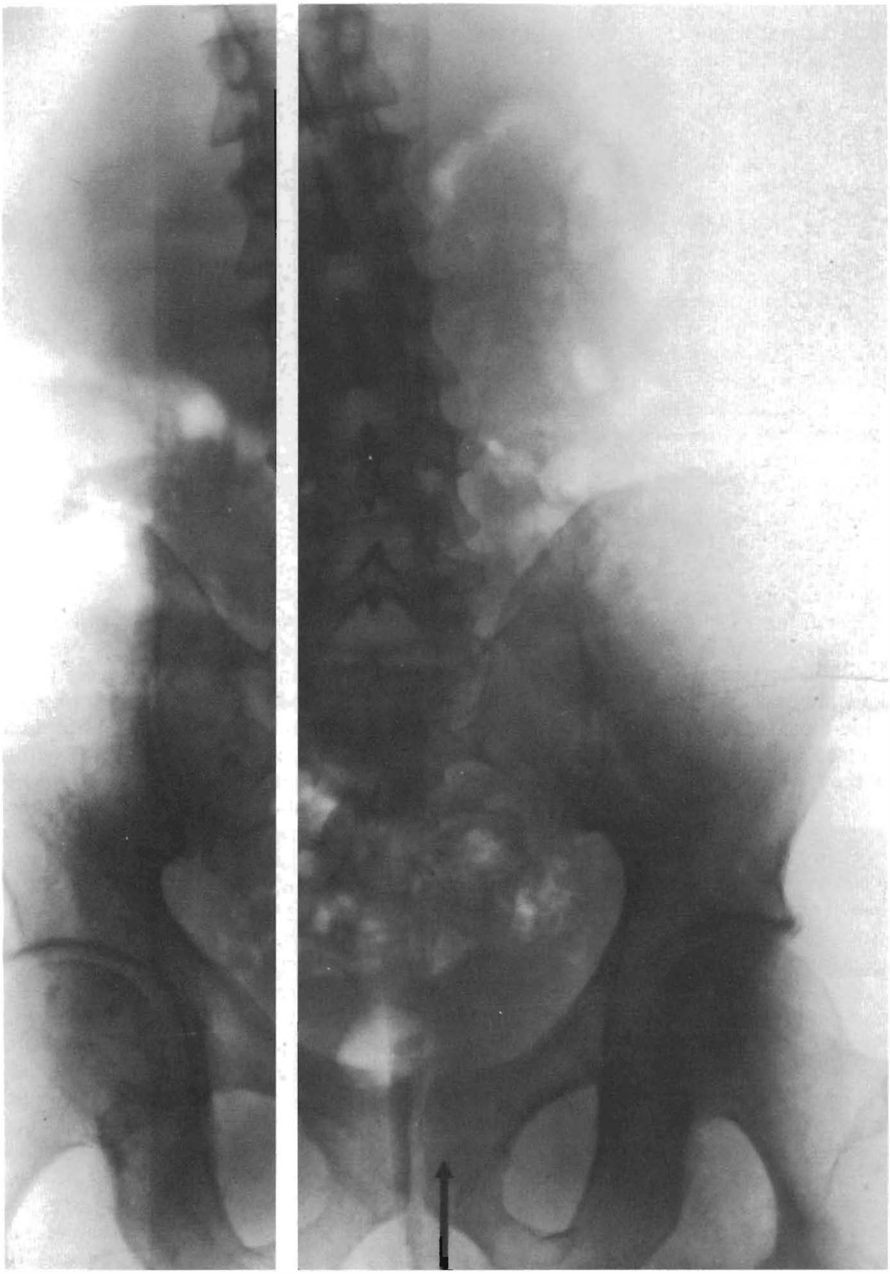


Figure 3.8 Typical posture in acute disc lesions with deviation of the plumb-line and the (straight!) pelvis to the side; 'paradoxical' scoliosis vith slight rotation to the opposite side; lumbar kyphosis can be deduced from the shape of the pelvis

Pelvic types

The function of the pelvis and its influence on body statics depend largely on its type. We owe this concept to Erdmann (1956) and Gutmann (1965).

There are frequent anomalies of the lumbosacral region: the last lumbar vertebra is a 'transitional' vertebra and shows by definition that there is hardly any 'norm' and that variation is the rule. If the

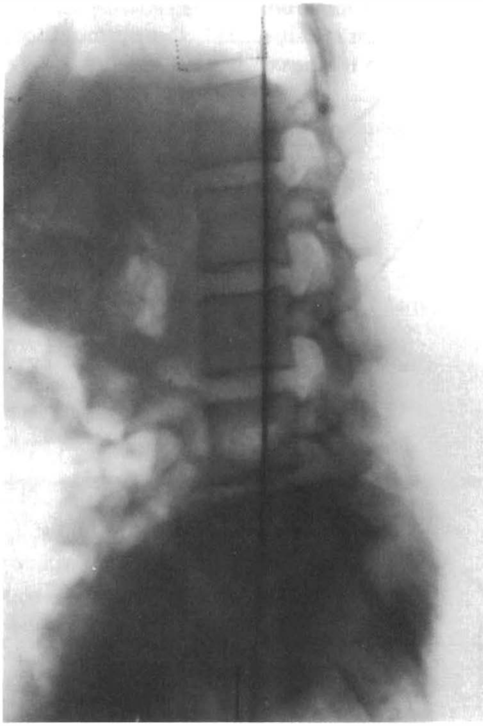


Figure 3.9 Lateral view of the lumbar spine with a forward thrust posture, in an acute radicular syndrome

Figure 3.10 Lateral view of the lumbar spine in 'flabby' posture – a forward shift of the pelvic promontory – in this case due to a shortened iliopsoas muscle

variations are asymmetrical, the result may be obliquity of the sacrum, causing the changes in statics already dealt with. If, however, there is symmetrical variation, the most important consequence is a change in the length of the sacrum, affecting the postion of the sacral promontory.

Gutmann (1965) and Erdmann (1956) distinguish three pelvic types with far-reaching differences in function and possible pathology. The first presents a long sacrum and high sacral promontory, the second the average or intermediate type, and the third a low promontory and considerable pelvic inclination, which the authors call *Hohes Assimiliationsbecken*, *Normal Becken* and *Uberlastungsbecken*, respectively. For greater clarity the different criteria are shown in Table 3.1 and Figure 3.11.

All of this should be borne in mind when evaluating X-ray findings; the type of pelvis will determine the degree of lordosis to be expected, while the height of the last intervertebral disc will determine the mobility of the segment.

The sacroiliac joints

Thanks to the sacroiliac joints and the pubic symphysis there is some mobility of the otherwise firm pelvic girdle, the sacroiliac joints having the decisive role.

The sacrum is wedge shaped in two directions: (1) the whole structure tapers like a pyramid in the caudal direction; and (2) the upper part (S1–S2) tapers in a dorsal direction (according to Solonen, 1957), while the lower part may taper in either direction. There is a tuberosity on the innominate bone approximately in the middle of the joint surface, fitting into an impression on the joint surface of the sacrum at the level of S2, but there is great variability and this is not the only tuberosity. In the AP X-ray there is a double contour owing to the wedge shape described above, but this varies from case to case and is frequently asymmetrical. It is of some importance that the greater the distance between the two contours of the joint, the greater the divergence (or convergence) and the narrower the joint space appears. Conversely, if there is no convergence and we see only one contour, the joint space appears to be wide. Greater convergence (wedge shape) gives more stability, whereas little convergence accompanies hypermobility.

It is important to point out that, despite its unusual shape and the fact that there are no muscles moving the sacrum against the innominate, the

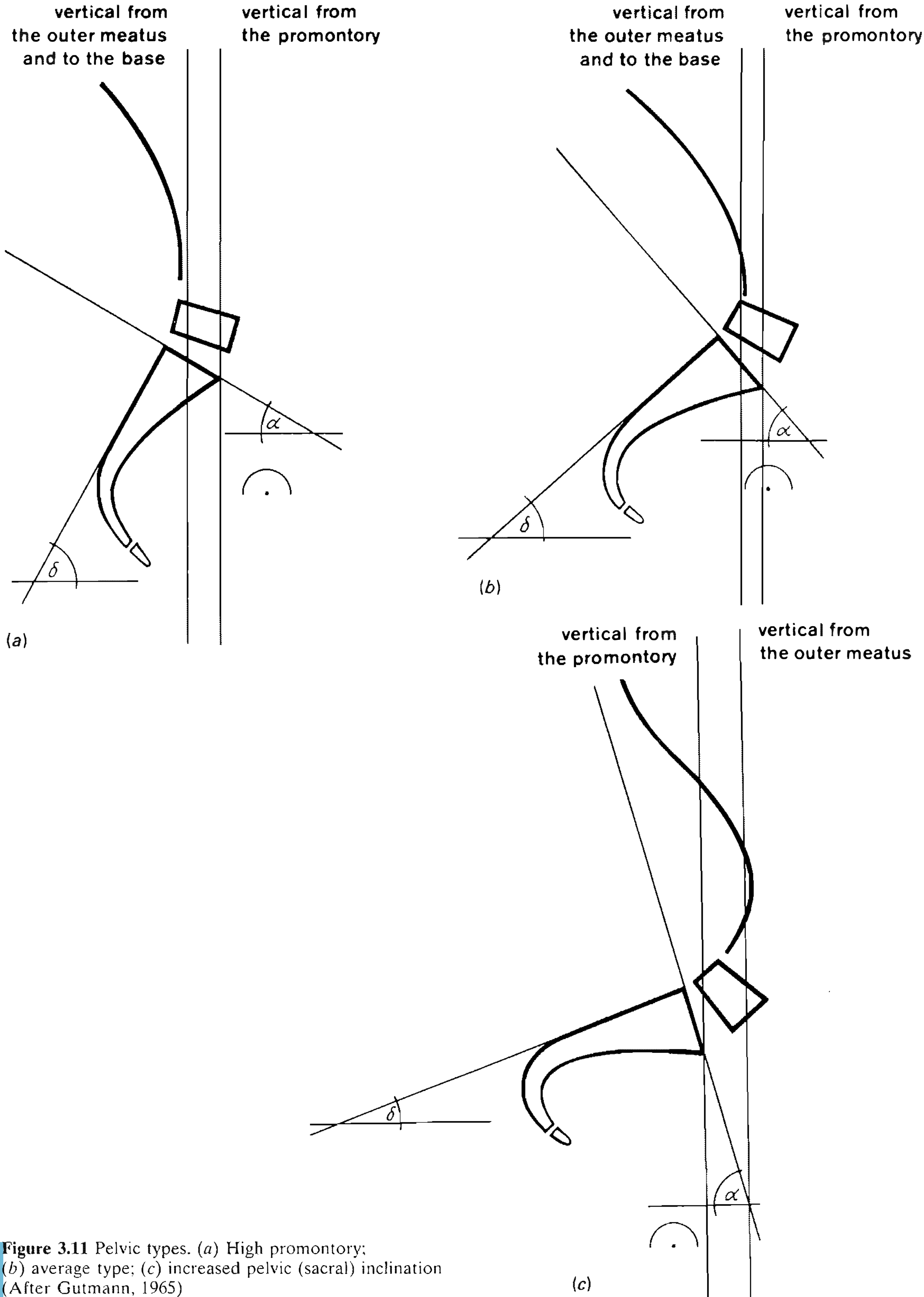


Figure 3.11 Pelvic types. (*a*) High promontory; (*b*) average type; (*c*) increased pelvic (sacral) inclination (After Gutmann, 1965)

Table 3.1 Pelvic types

Criterion	*Type*		
	High promontory	*Intermediate*	*Low promontory*
Inclination of sacrum (degrees)	50–70	35–50	15–35
Inclination of upper surface of S1 (degrees)	15–30	30–50	50–70
Position of L4 disc	Above the line of the iliac crests	At the height of the line of the iliac discs	Below the line of the iliac crests
Position of the promontory in the pelvic ring	Eccentric (dorsal)	At the centre	At the centre or even ventral
Shape of L5 vertebra	Rectangular	Wedge shaped	Wedge shaped
Shape of L5 disc	Rectangular and higher than L4	Wedge shaped and lower than L4	Wedge shaped and lower than L4
Level of maximum mobility	L5–S1	L4–L5	L4–L5
Role of iliolumbar ligament	Little fixation of L5	Good fixation of L5	Good fixation of L5 and even of L4
Weight-bearing structure	End plate of L5	End plate of L5	Apophyseal joint surface of S1, sacroiliac joint
Spinal curvature	Flat	Average	Increased
X-ray statics	Hip joints in front of promontory; the plumb-line from the outer acoustic meatus coincides with the vertical from the os naviculare and lies behind the hip joint, slightly behind the promontory	As for high-promontory type	The plumb-line from the outer acoustic meatus lies in front of the promontory, which lies in front of the hip joint
Clinical consequences	Hypermobility, degeneration or prolapse of L5 disc; ligament pain	Blockage, disc lesion of L4 disc	Arthrosis: lumbosacral, sacroiliac and of the hip

sacroiliac joint is a true diarthrosis with its own mobility (Mennell, 1952; Weisl, 1954; Colachis *et al.*, 1963; Duckworth, 1970). According to Duckworth, 'the normal movement that occurs is rotation of the sacrum around the shortest and strongest part of the interosseus sacroiliac ligaments, which run from the iliac tuberosities to the transverse tubercles of the second sacral vertebra'. This movement can be described as nutation, and the weight of the spinal column during walking will tend to rotate the sacrum forward with each step, the sacroiliac joints playing the part of springing shock-absorbers. This rotational movement of the sacrum against the ilium can be palpated and is familiar to gynaecologists in the management of labour. However important it is that there should be some mobility of the sacroiliac joint, it should be very limited and laxity is undesirable.

At the end of this section on the functional anatomy of the pelvis some remarks are required about a clinically very striking phenomenon which may be called 'pelvic distortion'. If the most prominent points of the bony pelvis are palpated, a peculiar apparent discrepancy emerges: whereas the posterior spina iliaca superior (PSIS) is higher on one side, usually the right, the reverse is found on palpating the anterior spina iliaca superior (ASIS). The iliac crest may be laterally at the same level, or there may be a slight difference. On palpation of the posterior part of the iliac crest a similar difference will be felt to that observed on the posterior spinae iliacae, confirming the findings. This might give the impression that one innominate was rotating against the other on a horizontal axis. This cannot be so because we should then find a considerable shift of the pubic bones at the symphysis.

These clinical facts may best be illustrated anatomically by Cramer's diagram (Figure 3.12). This shows a one-sided nutation and therefore also slight

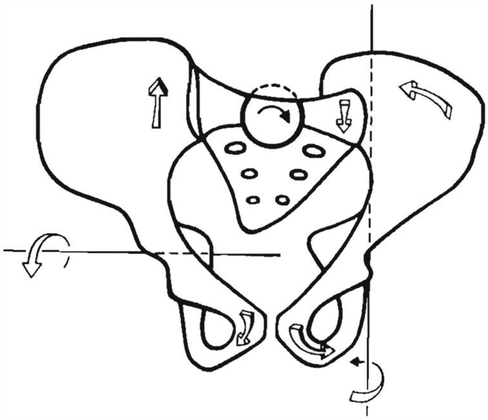


Figure 3.12 The mechanism of pelvic distortion (After Cramer, 1965)

rotation of the sacrum between the ilia, producing rotation of one innominate round a horizontal axis and of the other round the vertical.

Although many attempts have been made to visualize by X-ray some of the asymmetrical changes to be expected, X-ray diagnosis of this condition remains unsatisfactory. There is one change, however, that does appear in the X-ray picture, and that is a change in the statics of the lumbar spine, consisting clinically in a shift of the pelvis to the side of the higher posterior iliac spine, which may produce static decompensation of the lumbar spine, visible in the X-ray picture taken standing (Figure 3.13).

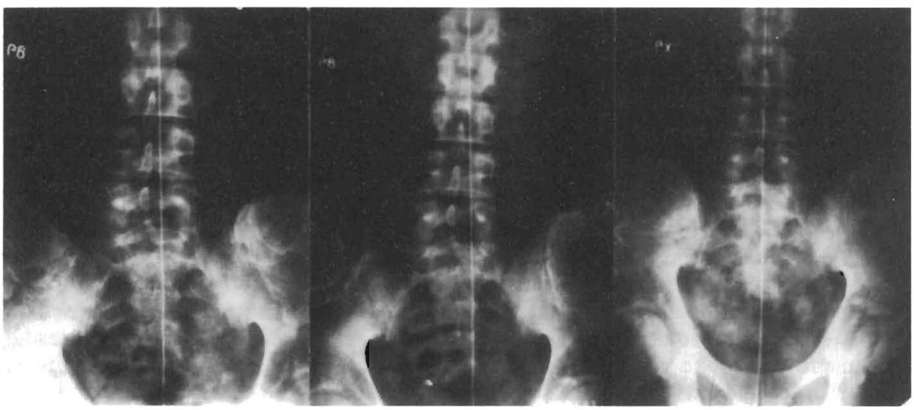
It has been found that palpation findings of a difference in the level of the pubic bones at the symphysis and at the ischial tuberosities do not correspond to X-ray findings (see Chapter 4, palpatory illusion, p. 100).

The lumbar spine

Although only a little shorter than the thoracic spine, the lumbar spine is usually formed of five vertebrae. However, mobility in ante- and retroflexion as well as in lateral bending ensures most of the mobility of the trunk. In addition to this important aspect, the lumbar spine has to carry most of the weight of the trunk. The vertebral bodies as well as the arches are therefore more robust.

The apophyseal joints give both mobility and stability. They are vertical, the (larger) lateral part in the sagittal plane and the (smaller) medial part in the coronal plane. The two parts may thus typically form an angle; however, frequently they only form an arch, the lateral part pointing into the sagittal and the medial into the coronal plane. If there is angularity the joint is easily visualized by X-ray, but this is not the case if it is arched. The lumbosacral joint, however, is mainly in the coronal plane. As the final shape of the joint is formed during ontogenesis, anomalies and asymmetry are very frequent.

The shape of the articulation determines the function of the lumbar spine; it allows for much ante- and retroflexion and practically excludes any axial rotation as long as the lumbar spine is erect. It limits lateral flexion as long as lordosis is present, as has already been explained (see pp. 42 and 43). It



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 3.13 Disturbed statics in pelvic distortion. (*a*) Pelvis straight, obliquity at L4 with deviation of the lumbar spine to the left and slight sinistroscoliosis. (*b*) No improvement after applying a left heel-pad. (*c*) After treatment of a blocked atlanto-occipital (!) joint, normal statics and no pelvic distortion should, however, be kept in mind that the joint capsules are very wide and that the joints are in apposition only in lordosis and allow much free play in neutral and kyphotic positions.

The intervertebral discs are thickest in the lumbar spine and allow great mobility. Their thickness increases from L1 down to L4; hence, maximum mobility is usually found at the L4/5 segment. Only in the pelvic type with a high sacral promontory is maximum thickness and mobility found between L5 and S1.

X-ray anatomy

The whole of the vertebral arch may be recognized in Figure 3.14; the oval or kidney-shaped pedicles (radix arcus) are most evident. Only the last pedicle projects on to the upper lateral edge of the body of the fifth vertebra and is often less distinct. This is most probably attributable to the triangular shape of the vertebral canal in the lowest part of the lumbar spine. From the pedicle we may follow the broad shadow of the lamina in the direction of the spinous process. Lateral to and above the pedicle we can find the upper articular process; from the lamina downwards and below the pedicle, the lower articular process can be traced in a caudal and lateral direction towards the pedicle (and the upper articular process) of the next (caudal) vertebra. Between the arch formed by both lower articular processes and the spinous process of the caudal neighbouring vertebra it is possible to see into the vertebral canal, i.e. the canal is not covered by bone. The distance between the lower articular processes is an important indicator of the effective width of the spinal canal in the AP projection. Where both articular processes meet (close above the pedicle) we can see the joint space (if part of the joint is in the sagittal plane). There is slight divergence of the apophyseal joint in a cranial direction.

The lateral view (Figure 3.15) also shows the thick pedicles, from which the articular processes arise. Here, too, we may see the joint space if part of the joint is in the coronal plane. Between the upper and lower articular processes lies the pars isthmica, the site where spondylolysis may be sought. Below the pedicles we see the intervertebral foramina which lie almost exactly in the sagittal plane. Their horizontal diameter almost corresponds to the anteroposterior width of the spinal canal. The lamina is covered by the articular processes, and dorsal to these processes only the broad shadow of the spinous process can be seen. The transverse process projects on to the articular process behind the pedicle, as a small thick shadow.

The last lumbar vertebra differs from the rest in many ways: in the side view it is wedge shaped and with powerfully developed transverse processes it shows a transitional shape in relation to the sacral vertebrae. Although the S1 root is usually thick, the intervertebral foramen L5/S1 is much narrower than the rest of the lumbar intervertebral foramina. It is important to bear in mind that the iliolumbar ligament is attached to the transverse process of L5 so that the fifth lumbar vertebra transmits impulses to the lumbar spine both from the sacrum and from the ilia, playing the role of a shock-absorber as well. As the upper surface of the sacrum is usually considerably inclined, the position of the lumbosacral apophyseal joints in a mainly coronal plane may act as a prevention against forward gliding.

Some of the important anomalies encountered have already been dealt with under pelvic types. In cases of transitional lumbosacral vertebrae it may be difficult to determine whether the relevant vertebra is a lumbarized S1 or a sacralized L5. The most reliable reference is to a line drawn between the two iliac crests: if an intervertebral disc lies on that line, the vertebra below this disc is L5. If, however, this line passes through the middle of a vertebral body, it may be impossible to determine the transitional vertebra, in particular if there appear to be six lumbar vertebrae, without taking an X-ray of the thoracic spine. Instead of a transverse process, a transitional lumbosacral vertebra may have a massa lateralis which forms a pseudoarthrosis with the massa lateralis of the sacrum, and may even cause symptoms.

The most important anomaly, clinically, is probably a narrow spinal canal which may become even narrower as a result of spondylosis. This is relatively easily recognized in the lateral view by the disproportion between the large vertebral body and short thick pedicles, the narrow intervertebral foramina and the steep lower articular processes. In the AP view, although it would appear logical to do so, this condition should never be assessed according to the interpedicular distance, but by the distance between the two lower articular processes, i.e. the width of the translucency corresponding to the spinal canal. In such cases the articular processes present a swallow-tail shape on X-ray. The articular processes are very thick and the joints clearly visible. If a typical picture is seen in both views we may infer that the spinal canal is trefoil in horizontal section. (However significant these signs may be in classic radiology, CT scanning visualizes the spinal canal directly.)

It is, of course, important to establish sound criteria for assessing the thickness of an intervertebral disc; it should be borne in mind that congenital disc hypoplasia is a common anomaly, not to be confused with disc degeneration. The former condition is found particularly frequently at the lumbosacral disc (where anomalies most often occur). Therefore if the last vertebra shows marked signs of being a transitional vertebra and there are no signs of marginal sclerosis, bone spurs or increased laxity (shift), a diagnosis of degeneration is unfounded. A

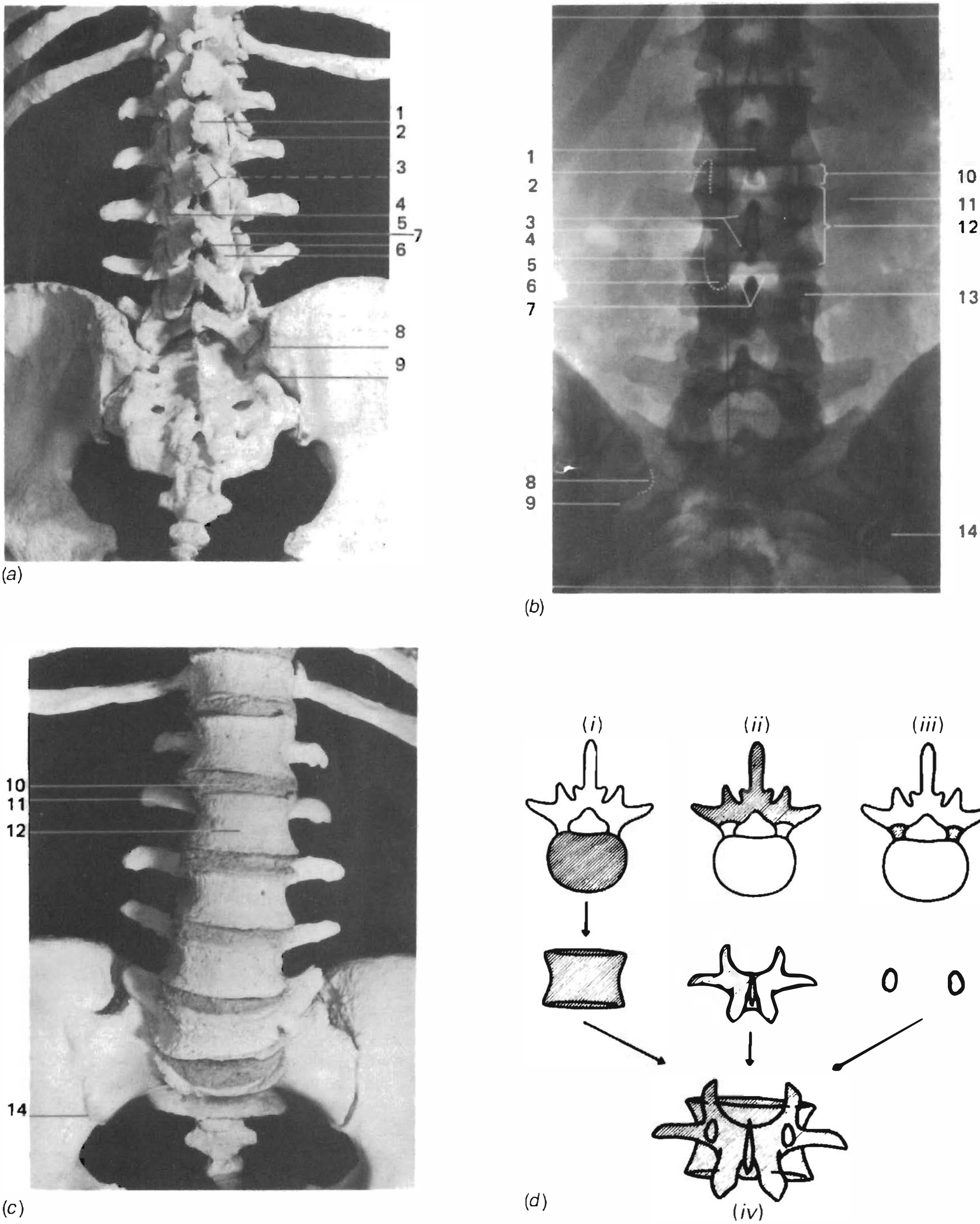


Figure 3.14 Comparison of the anatomical structures in the dorsal aspect of the lumbar spine and the sacrum (*a*) with the anteroposterior X-ray (*b*) and the ventral aspect (*c*). 1, Spinous process; 2, upper articular process; 3, lamina; 4, pars interarticularis; 5, joint space; 6, lower articular process; 7, spinal canal; 8, posterior spina iliaca superior; 9, dorsal part of the sacroiliac joint; 10, disc; 11, transverse process; 12, vertebral body; 13, pedicle; 14, ventral part of the sacroiliac joint. (*d*) De Seze's diagram visualizing the AP X-ray of lumbar vertebrae: (*i*) the vertebral body, (*ii*) the vertebral arch, (*iii*) the pedicles, (*iv*) the entire vertebra

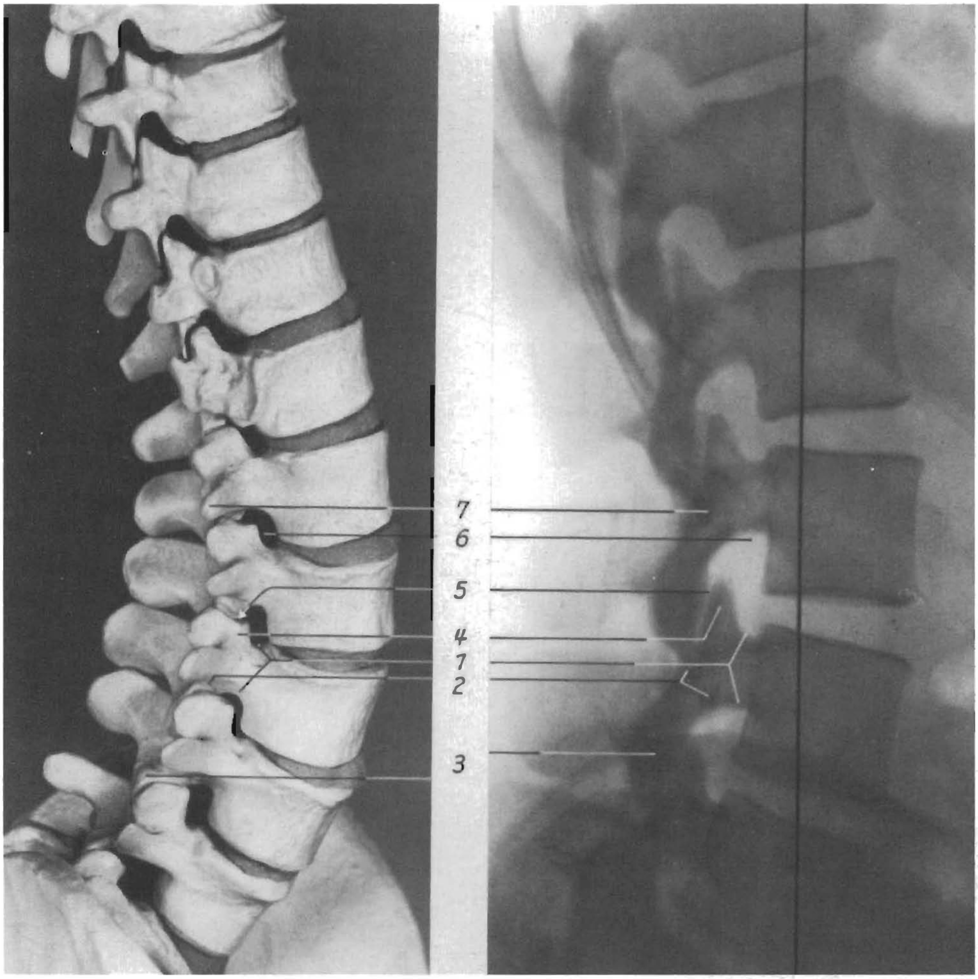


Figure 3.15 Comparison of the anatomical structures in the lateral view of the lumbar spine (model) and the X-ray. 1, Pedicle; 2, pars interarticularis; 3, lower articular process; 4, upper articular process; 5, joint space; 6, intervertebral foramen; 7, transverse process

valuable sign of disc hypoplasia is reduced width of both vertebral margins adjacent to the hypoplastic disc. Although we usually rely on lateral views for the assessment of discs, marked asymmetry in the AP view may be of some importance, particularly at the L5–S1 interspace, as here assessment may be difficult in view of the frequency of anomalies. A marked narrowing on one side may then point to disc degeneration (Figure 3.16).

Evaluation of function

For evaluation of function and its possible disturbances, pictures must be taken under standard conditions (see pp. 36–38).

Assessment of rotation is of value, because rotation should be proportionate to scoliosis and can be modified by the degree of lordosis; if rotation is disproportionate, or limited to one or two intervertebral segments only, it can be a sign of disturbed function. Rotation is recognized by a shift of the spinous process and the pedicles in the direction opposite to that of rotation. On the side of rotation the pedicle becomes wider and the articulation is better visualized; the transverse process is shorter (Figure 3.17). Rotation should never be evaluated on the basis of one single sign (such as deviation of the spinous process). The assessment of lateral flexion (scoliosis) is carried out according to the principles of body statics.

In the lateral view we assess lordosis or kyphosis as well as a forward or backward shift. A local

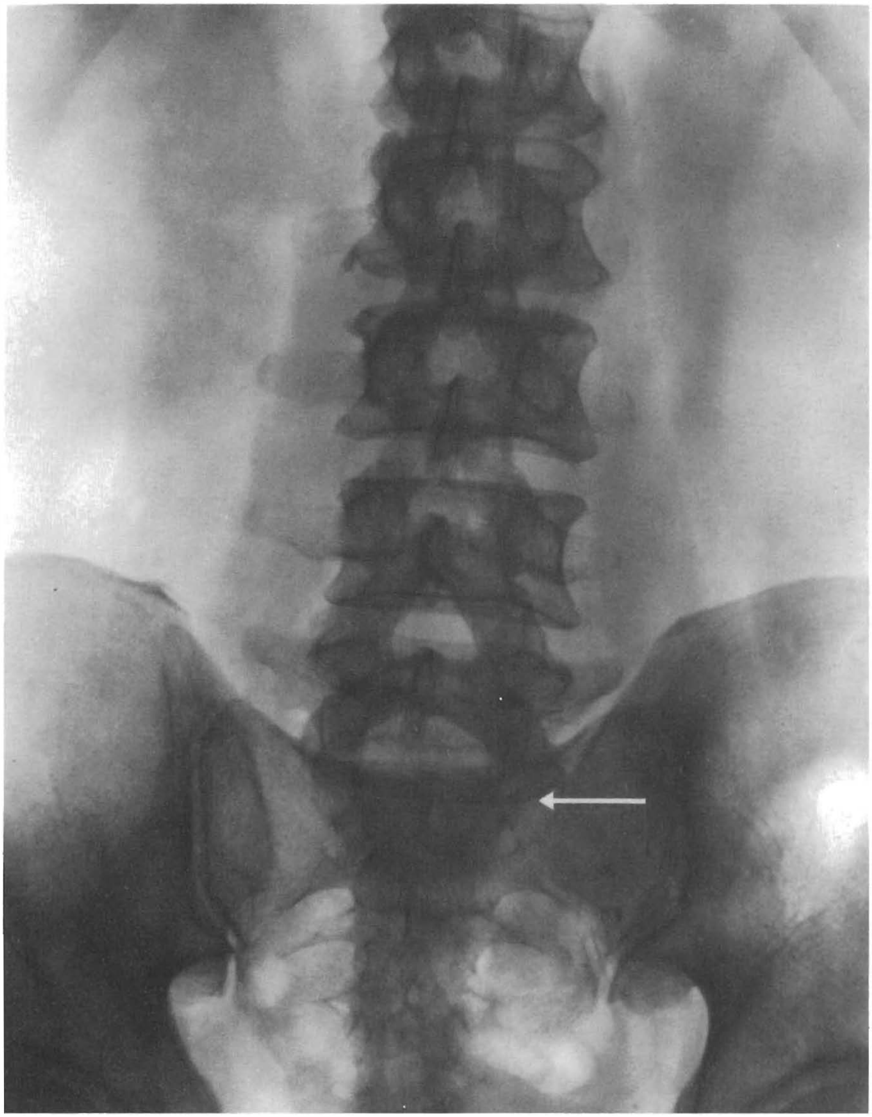


Figure 3.16 The anterior lower edge of the vertebral body of L5 is lower on the left side (arrrow) in relation to the sacrum, hence the L5 disc is narrower on the left: compensatory lumbar scoliosis with left rotation

interruption of the lordotic line or of kyphosis, between two vertebrae, can be a sign of disc lesion. A shift (forwards or backwards) may be a sign of increased mobility – laxity. This may be particularly conspicuous during ante- or retroflexion. Very slight proportional shifts in ante- or retroflexion in young patients, seen at X-ray examination, can be regarded as normal. Two diagnostic pitfalls must be stressed. The first is the incongruous surfaces of two adjacent vertebrae, occurring most frequently between L5 and the sacrum; the upper surface of S1 in such cases is usually slightly longer than the lower surface of L5, and looking at the posterior edge of the adjacent vertebrae one gets the impression of an anterior shift of L5, or (looking at the anterior edge) of a posterior shift of L5. The second pitfall is slight rotation: here the posterior and anterior margins of the vertebrae form a double contour which can be mistaken for a shift.

These shifts due to hypermobility must, of course, be distinguished from true spondylolisthesis (with spondylolysis) and from degenerative spondylolisthesis (the pseudospondylolisthesis of Junghanns, 1930) due to deformity, the bending forward of an

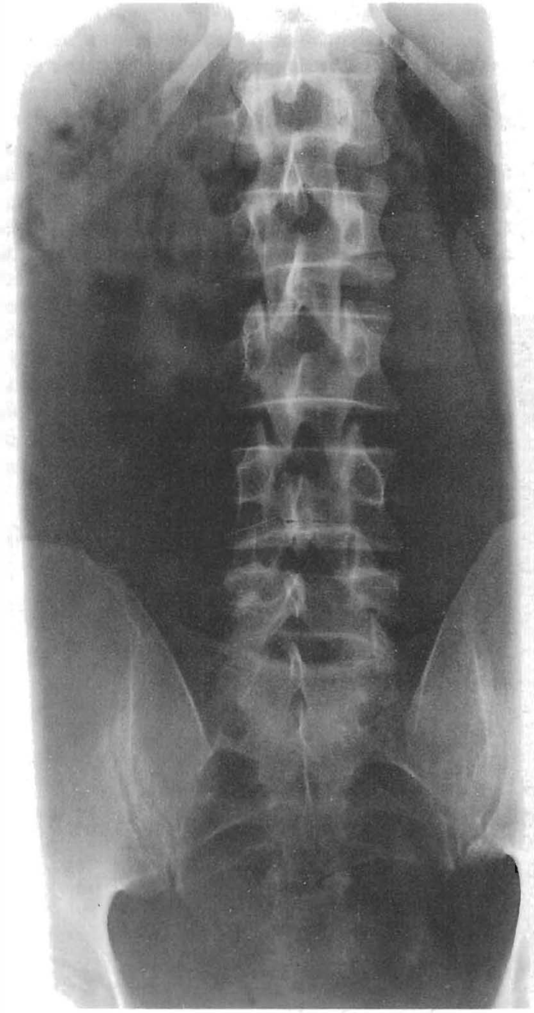


Figure 3.17 Rotation of lumbar vertebrae with lateral shift of the spinous processes and pedicles in relation to the vertebral bodies

upper articular process (most frequently L5) over which the vertebra above glides forward.

X-ray studies of movement

X-ray pictures in the upright position may not provide any clues to disturbed function; those taken in ante- or retroflexion or lateral flexion may then reveal some irregularity. We may distinguish segments of increased or lowered mobility. In ante- and retroflexion increased mobility may take the form of ventral or dorsal shift, respectively ('disc rolling'). As has already been pointed out, very slight proportional shifting movements in all segments may be considered normal, particularly in young subjects (Jirout, 1956). There is one interesting exception: in the lumbosacral segment there sometimes occurs a 'paradoxical' shift, i.e. a dorsal shift during anteflexion and a ventral shift during retroflexion, which may be described as a sort of leverage (Jirout, 1956).

Narrowing of an intervertebral disc, caused by degeneration, may sometimes be visible only in ante- or retroflexion. In such cases we see exaggerated anterior narrowing of the disc (without compensatory posterior widening) in anteflexion and exaggerated posterior narrowing (without compensatory anterior widening) in retroflexion.

Mobility studies are usually made where there is a clinical reason for doing so, i.e. if movement in some specific direction causes symptoms. A condition in which this type of examination is particularly important is spondylolisthesis, because it is advisable to ascertain whether the spondylolisthesis is fixed or mobile; it is the latter that causes symptoms and has a tendency to deteriorate.

In lateral flexion it is most important to correlate the degree of flexion and rotation with regard to the degree of lordosis (see p. 43).

The thoracic spine

Functional anatomy

The thoracic spine (Figures 3.19 and 3.20) is the longest part of the spinal column and that which enjoys the least mobility. The main reason for this is its close relationship to the thorax but it is also related to the thinness of the intervertebral discs. The apophyseal joints are almost vertical and show a slight tilt in the coronal plane, as if on the periphery of a cylinder whose centre is in front of the vertebral body. This shape would allow for considerable rotation were it not for the ribs and the intervertebral discs. Side- and forward-bending, too, are limited mainly by the ribs, although the latter movement is also held in check by the inter- and supraspinal ligaments. Back-bending is limited mainly by apposition locking of the articular and the spinous processes. Because of this relatively limited mobility, trunk rotation was

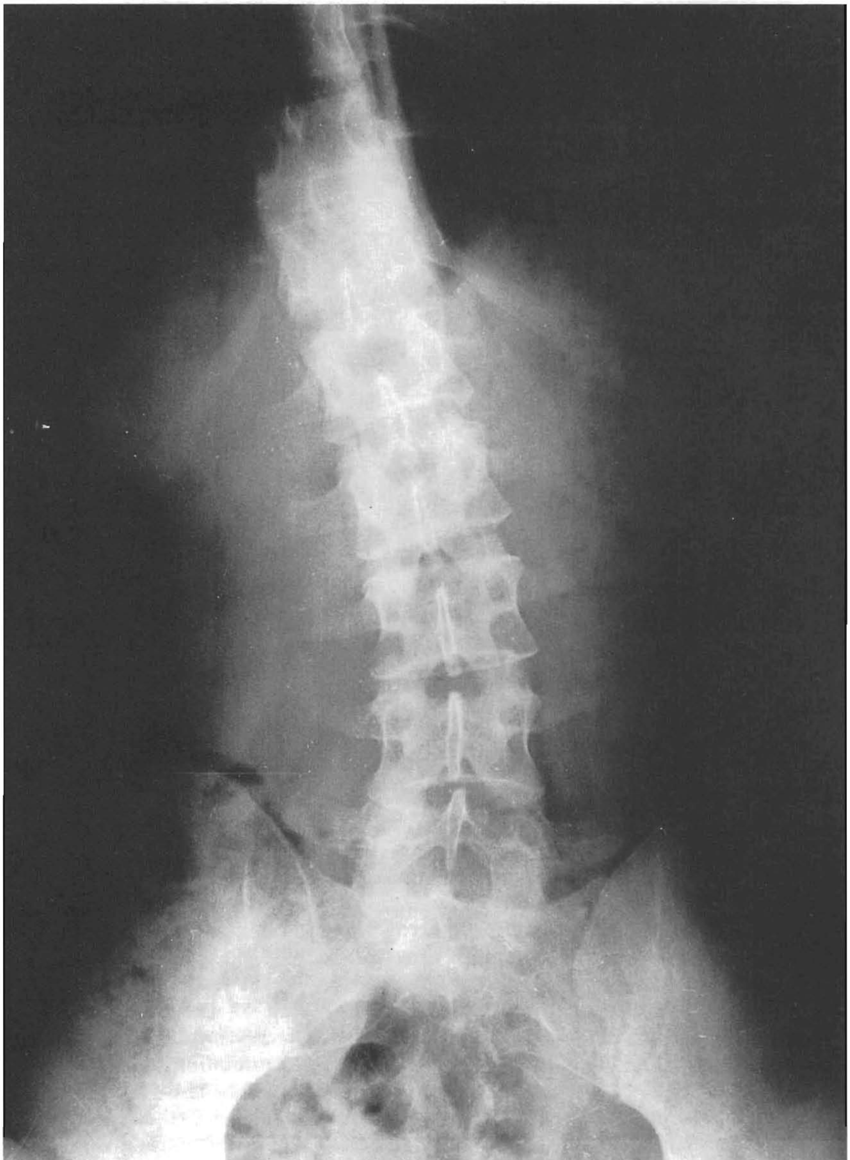


Figure 3.18 The thoracolumbar spine during trunk rotation with the pelvis fixed: there is both rotation and scoliosis (side flexion) beginning at L5

believed to take place mainly in the lowest thoracic segments, those least fixed by the ribs.

Function and its disturbances are of particular significance at the thoracolumbar junction. This may be because in this region movement changes from one type to another within a single segment, as can be deduced from the shape of the apophyseal joints: on a single vertebra the upper articular processes may be in the coronal plane and the lower mostly in the sagittal plane (Figure 3.19). As we have already seen (see p. 43), with the patient marking time the thoracolumbar junction forms a relatively fixed point where lumbar scoliosis to one side changes to thoracic scoliosis to the opposite side. The thoracolumbar junction is also the only transitional region where two very mobile sections of the spinal column meet; dysfunction in this region therefore results in widespread spasm.

That trunk rotation takes place mainly in the lowest part of the thoracic spine (the thoracolumbar junction) was refuted by Singer and Giles (1990). They demonstrated by CT during trunk rotation that some rotation of a few degrees takes place both in the lower thoracic and throughout all the segments of the lumbar spine. To explain the possible mechanism, I examined trunk rotation by X-ray (Lewit, 1996) and demonstrated that side flexion does indeed take place during trunk rotation, i.e. there is a coupled movement which is very similar to what we see during side-bending (Figure 3.18).

Another region of transition and increased vulnerability is the cervicothoracic junction down to T3–4, because it is here that movements of the head and neck end, as are most clearly seen in maximum ante- and retroflexion. The same is true for side-bending and rotation if the cervicothoracic junction

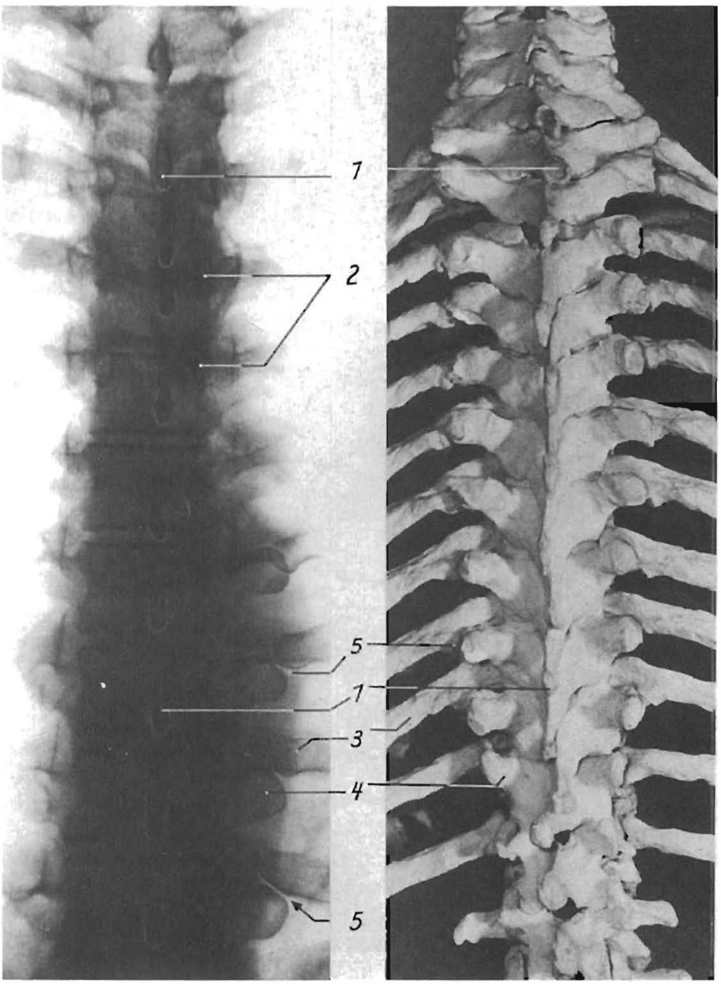


Figure 3.19 Comparison of the anatomical structures in the dorsal view of the thoracic spine (skeleton) with the anteroposterior X-ray. 1, Spinous process; 2, pedicles; 3, ribs; 4, transverse process; 5, transversocostal joint

is held upright. Function is particularly vulnerable here, because the very mobile cervical spine meets the much less mobile thoracic spine. The shoulder girdle, with its powerful muscles, is also attached to this junction.

All transitional regions are rich in anomalies. There may be a rudimentary twelfth rib or a (rudimentary) lumbar L1; remarkably, a cervical rib (C7) is quite common, whereas we rarely find a rudimentary first rib.

The ribs

The ribs are attached to the vertebrae at the transversocostal and costovertebral joints. The head of the rib articulates with the upper margin of the body of the corresponding vertebra and with the lower margin of the next vertebral body above. The centre of the head of the rib (crista capituli) is attached to the intervertebral disc by ligaments. The first rib is an exception in that it articulates exclusively with the body of the first thoracic vertebra. The neck of the rib fixed between the costovertebral and costotransversal articulation forms an axis for rib movement. This axis is horizontal in the true (vertebrosternal) ribs and produces a movement by which the sternum is lifted and at the same time the thorax broadens. In the false (vertebrochondral) ribs the axis is oblique, laterodorsocaudal, and produces a wing-like movement. The last two ribs (free ribs) are attached to rudimentary transverse processes by connective tissue only (syndesmosis). Consequently, there is no joint and hence no joint movement restriction can arise here.

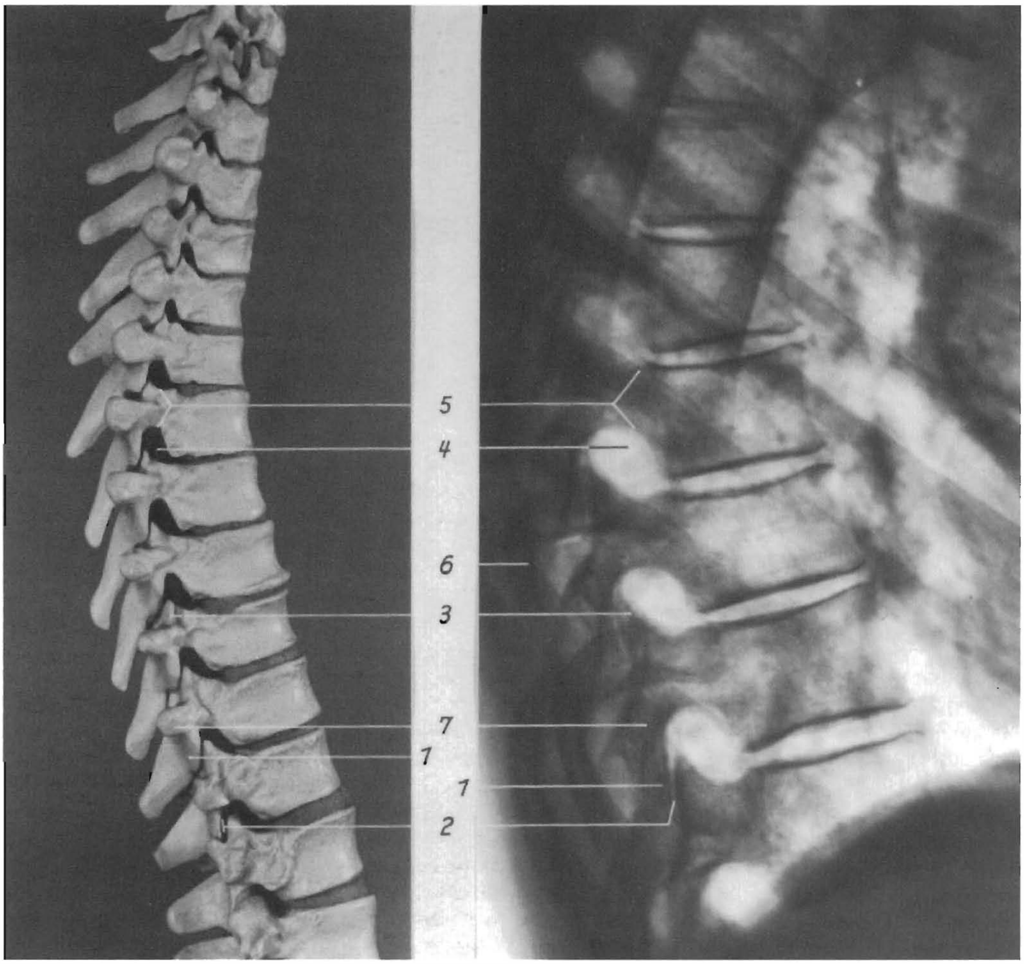


Figure 3.20 Comparison of the anatomical structures in the lateral view of the skeleton of the thoracic spine with the X-ray. 1, Lower articular process; 2, joint space; 3, upper articular process; 4, intervertebral foramen; 5, pedicles; 6, rib; 7, transverse process

The X-ray picture

In the AP view, visualization of the structures of the vertebral arch is much less detailed than in the lumbar spine. In addition to the vertebral bodies and intervertebral discs, we see the spinous processes and the pedicles (see Figure 3.19). It should be borne in mind that from about T4 to T10 the tip of the spinous process is seen at the level of the body of the next vertebra below. The characteristic feature is the costovertebral junction, the head of the rib against the intervertebral disc and the overlapping shadow of the costal neck and the transverse process. As the facets of the costotransverse joints are tilted from dorsocranial to ventrocaudal (almost to the vertical plane) the joint is usually poorly visualized in the AP view with the exception of the lower thoracic ribs, if this tilt is considerable.

In the lateral view (Figure 3.20) the vertebral arches are partly overlapped by the ribs. If, however, the pictures are clear, we get a good view of the intervertebral foramen and even of the joint facets (articular processes). The thoracic spine above T3 is unfortunately hidden by the structures of the shoulder girdle and must be visualized either by oblique views or by tomography.

It may be difficult to number the vertebrae in the lateral view, as T1 cannot be seen and it is hard to recognize T12. It is therefore useful to remember that the lower angle of the shoulder-blade is usually at the height of T7, the arch of the aorta at T4, the fork of the trachea at T5 and the dome of the diaphragm at T9/10.

Evaluating X-rays

As in all parts of the spinal column, curvature is important here from the point of view of function, the most significant changes being scoliosis and increased kyphosis. Here again it must be pointed out that it is essential for us to know whether the curvature is in static equilibrium. There is yet another important aspect of curvature: the more marked it is, the less mobile that section of the spinal column will be, and conversely, a flat thoracic spine is accompanied by hypermobility, which is of considerable clinical significance and most frequently seen in the upper thoracic spine.

Changes in function may go hand in hand with signs of sudden rotation of one vertebra to the next, or with a sudden deviation of the spinous processes together with signs of rotation. Again, rotation is diagnosed by a shift of both the spinous processes and the pedicles in the opposite direction from that of rotation.

Shifts are hardly ever seen in the lateral view of the thoracic spine, nor is kyphotic angulation between two vertebrae that is simply attributable to changes in function. Angulation may, however, be due to deformity, which is particularly frequent in the thoracic spine as a consequence of juvenile osteochondrosis.

In asymmetrical movement restriction of the ribs there may be asymmetry of the distance between the arches of the ribs.

The cervical spine

The cervical spine is the most mobile section of the whole spinal column. The craniocervical junction in particular is the site of the tonic neck reflexes with their repercussions throughout the entire postural musculature; disturbances of function in this region are, therefore, particularly disastrous and their adequate treatment strikingly effective.

X-ray technique

In order to obtain pictures that can be evaluated for function, adequate standard techniques must be adhered to. The usual technique, which visualizes the craniocervical junction poorly in the side view and not at all in the AP view, is not even adequate to show the anatomical details properly and is completely useless for the evaluation of function.

In the AP view the entire cervical spine should be visible, from the craniocervical junction (foramen magnum with the occipital condyles) to the first thoracic vertebrae. An 18×24 cm film is usually sufficient, but 15×40 cm can also be used, showing the upper thoracic spine at the same time. The patient is placed as follows (Sandberg, 1955; Gutmann, 1956): first he is seated on the X-ray table so that the extended legs are symmetrically placed one on each side of the mid-line. Only then is he asked to lie down, without using his arms, in the position that is most natural to him (the position may be checked by repeating the procedure). If the head regularly deviates from the mid-line this must not be corrected, because to do so would either correct or produce cervical scoliosis and at the same time induce axis rotation and lateral deviation of the atlas.

It is therefore necessary to shift the film and the X-ray tube accordingly. The patient now opens his mouth as wide as possible and a gag is placed between his teeth; he then draws his chin in until the glabella and the filtrum are on the same horizontal plane. For this a pillow beneath the head is often necessary.

We are now ready to focus the X-ray tube. The central ray must pass through a point one finger below the upper premolars and one finger above the posterior margin of the occipital foramen (Figure 3.21). If the patient has no teeth the central ray passes through a point one finger below the upper gums to the posterior margin of the foramen magnum. The distance from focus to film should be 1 m.

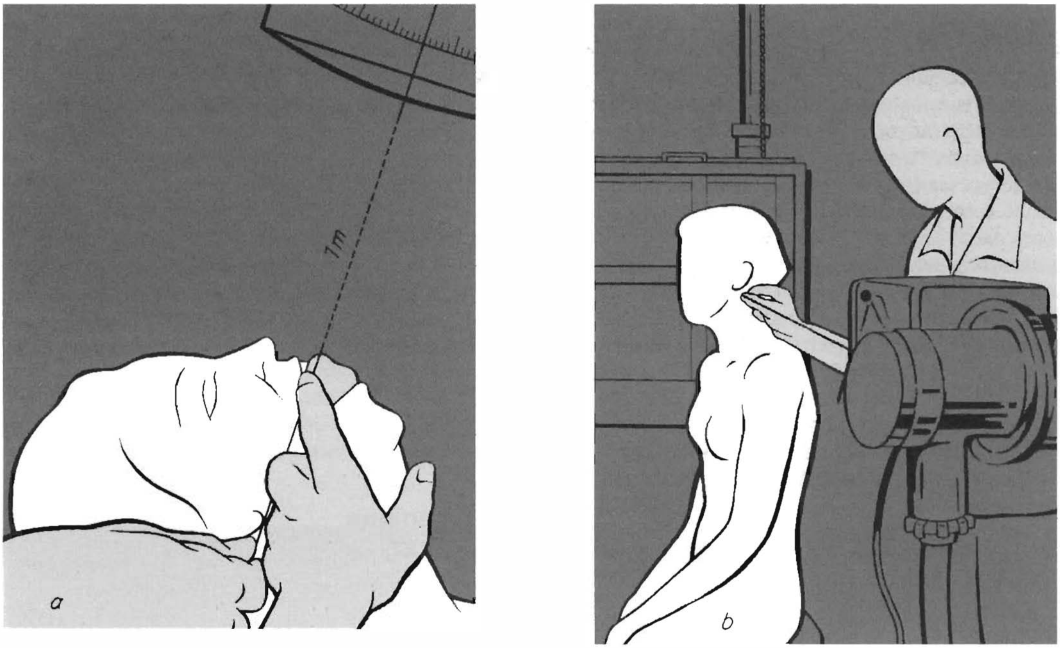


Figure 3.21 X-ray technique of the cervical spine according to Sandberg (1955). (*a*) Focusing the central ray in the anteroposterior view with the aid of a string, the head in a horizontal position; (*b*) focusing the X-ray tube in the lateral view at the mastoid process

Finally, we correct any rotation of the patient's head, bearing in mind the possibility of asymmetry (the upper teeth are a useful landmark).

It is possible to proceed in an analogous manner with the patient seated, which is more difficult but has the advantage of being performed under the influence of body statics. Nevertheless, there can be diagnostic advantage if the side view, which must always be taken with the patient seated, reveals discrepancies when compared with the AP view taken with the patient supine. In such cases the AP view can always be repeated in the sitting position.

Some authors dislike the open-mouth technique because the mandible overlaps the mid-cervical spine, and prefer to take the picture while the patient rhythmically opens and shuts his mouth; in this way the shadow of the mandible is blurred. The technique, however, presents the danger of a slight shaking of the head, which will cause blurring of the image of the apophyseal joints of the craniocervical junction.

In the lateral view the patient is seated relaxed in front of a vertical X-ray cassette; no Potter-Bucky diaphragm is needed. The film may be 18×24 cm or 24×30 cm, and must be placed so that the X-ray shows the base of the skull with the sella turcica, the hard palate and the cervical spine down to C7, if possible with the first two thoracic vertebrae. This, however, is possible only in subjects (usually women) with very tapering shoulders. The patient fixes his eyes on some object at eye-level, to keep the head in a standard position; head rotation or lateral flexion must be corrected.

The central ray is focused not at the mid-cervical region (centre of the film) but at the mastoid process. This yields an undistorted view of the base of the skull and yet causes no distortion of the lower cervical spine (because the base of the skull is wide, while the cervical vertebrae are narrow). In addition we achieve correct exposure of both the base of the skull and the craniocervical junction and of the cervical vertebrae. The distance from focus to film should be 150 cm or more. With this technique pictures of the craniocervical junction are so clear that tomography is seldom necessary.

Assessment of the quality of X-ray pictures

Before evaluating an X-ray of the cervical spine, particularly where function is concerned, we must assess its quality as a picture (Figure 3.22). In the AP view we first make sure that we can see both occipital condyles, the atlas and the axis with both transversocostal foramina (foramina of the vertebral artery), and at the caudal end, the first thoracic vertebra. If the view is correct we see the cleft between the upper and lower front teeth in mid-line, together with the centre of the odontoid process and

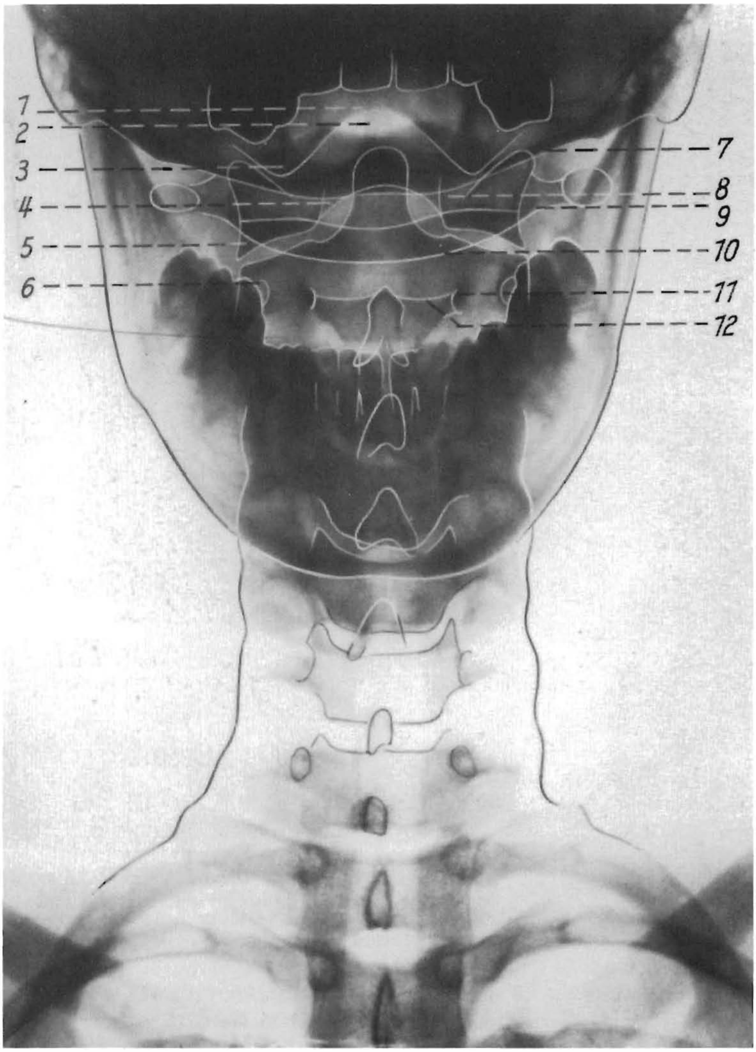


Figure 3.22 Anatomical structures of the craniocervical junction, anteroposterior view. 1, Lower edge of the clivus; 2, foramen magnum; 3, occipital condyle; 4, lower edge of the anterior arch of the atlas; 5, lateral triangle; 6, foramen transversarium of the axis; 7, lower contour of the squama occipitalis; 8, medial translucency of the atlas; 9, transverse process of the atlas; 10, lower edge of the posterior arch of the atlas; 11, pedicle of the axis; 12, lamina of the axis

of the chin. The cervical spine as a whole must lie symmetrically between the two halves of the mandibula. Even if each of these structures is asymmetrical there are sufficient landmarks by which to recognize distortion. A picture without the craniocervical junction and the first thoracic vertebra with the thoracic outlet is insufficient for our purpose.

In the lateral view we need to see the base of the skull with the sella turcica, the clivus down to the basion, the posterior margin of the foramen magnum, the hard palate, the odontoid process and the cervical spine down to C7. If possible even the first thoracic vertebra should be seen, but in heavily built patients it may be impossible to visualize C7 in the lateral view. It is important that the hard palate should be horizontal (for assessment of lordosis or kyphosis) and that the two halves of the mandibula should be exactly overlaid, showing that there is neither side-bending nor rotation (Figure 3.23). Fineman *et al.* (1963) showed that a difference of only 10 degrees in inclination of the head is sufficient to change lordotic to linear posture, and vice versa.

The oblique view serves mainly to show the intervertebral foramina, which in the cervical spine are not visualized at all in the side view and poorly

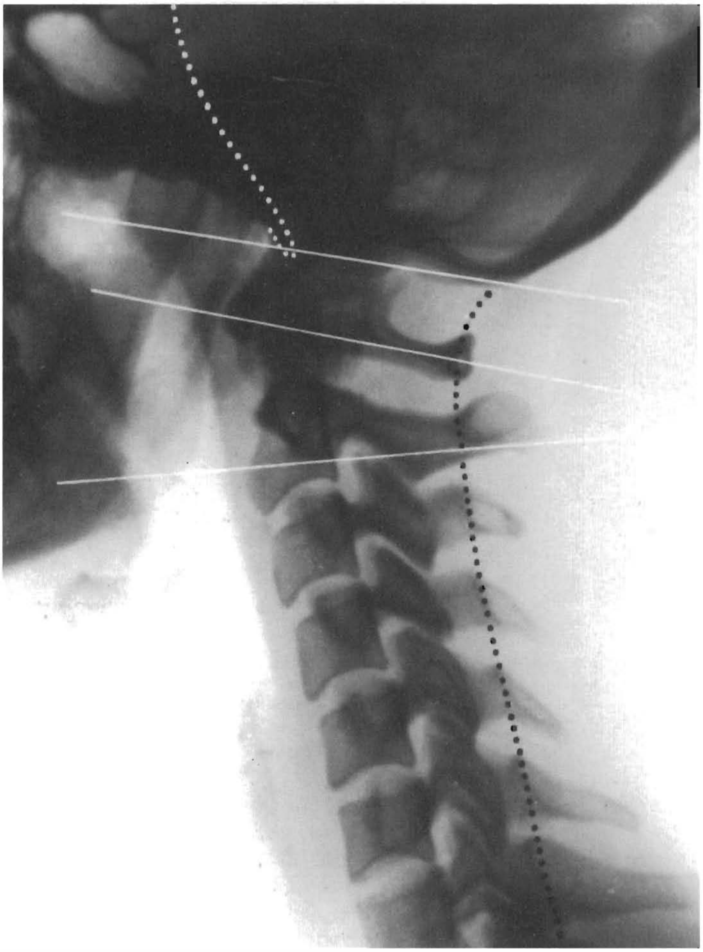


Figure 3.23 Lateral X-ray of the cervical spine with the plane of the foramen magnum, the atlas and the axis indicated; the clivus and the posterior edge of the vertebral canal are also shown

in the AP view. It should be taken with the patient sitting on a chair turned at 45 degrees to the cassette; the patient usually sits with his back to it, but like Gutmann I prefer the patient to face the cassette and to hold the head in retroflexion, because if the patient faces the cassette it is the foramen nearer to it that is visualized, and narrowing of the foramen is often visible only in retroflexion (Figure 3.24).

Oblique views are particularly important in cervical radicular syndromes and in cases of the vertebral artery syndrome, because of the close relationship between the intervertebral foramen, the nerve roots and the vertebral artery.

Functional anatomy of the cervical spine

The cervical spine has two very distinct sections: the craniocervical junction between the occiput and C2, and the section from C2 to C7. Most of the movements it performs start at the craniocervical junction, and the movements of the head and neck are usually initiated by eye movements. I therefore begin with a short anatomical description in which the two parts are treated separately, while the function of the cervical spine is dealt with as a whole.

Functional anatomy C2–C7

As in other parts of the spinal column, the degree of movememt in the cervical spine is determined mainly by the thickness of the intervertebral disc; this is usually greatest in the segments C4/5 and C5/6, where mobility is also greatest. The characteristic feature of the cervical vertebral bodies is a lateral ridge, the unciform process. Its significance for cervical function is that the shape of the vertebral body limits lateral flexion while encouraging ante- and lateral flexion.

The apophyseal joints are almost parallel on both sides and are tilted from ventrocranial to

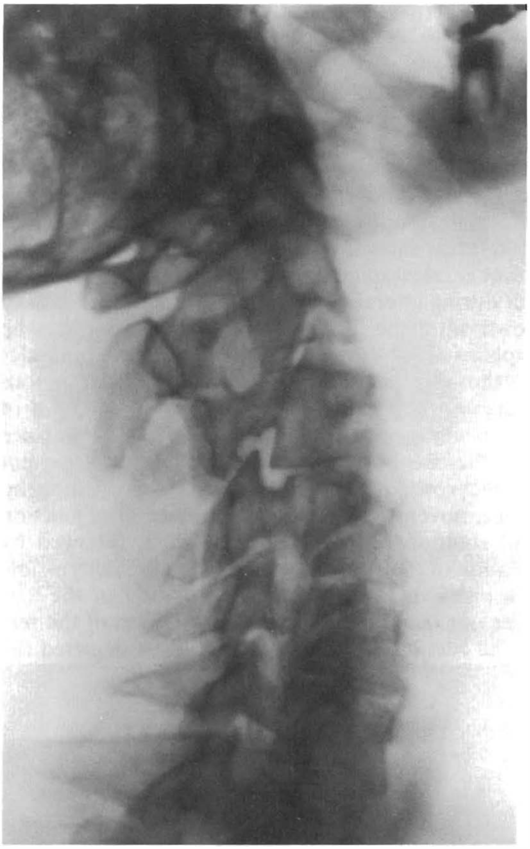


Figure 3.24 Oblique view of the cervical spine in retroflexion showing a narrowed intervertebral foramen of C2/3 on the right

dorsocaudal. This tilt varies considerably (about 45 degrees), being greatest at C2/3 as a rule. At this level the joints are frequently not parallel but as if on the surface of a cylinder with its centre behind the spinal column; it is therefore not pathological if the articulation C2/3 is not well visualized in the side view (unlike the other cervical apophyseal joints). The shape of the cervical apophyseal joints is best suited to ante- and retroflexion. On lateral flexion the tilt of the joints produces rotation to the side of inclination and during head rotation inclination results for the same reason.

During anteflexion there is frequently a slight shift of the cranial vertebra, and in retroflexion a slight backward shift which is also in accordance with the tilt of the articular facets. According to Penning (1968) this forward and backward movement of the cranial vertebra is like a rotation of the upper vertebra in the sagittal plane round an axis situated at the dorsal part of the lower vertebral body. It should be pointed out that these shifting movements, which are the rule in children and young adults, are less marked in higher age groups. It is important to realize that they are physiological if they are proportionate, and that the shift is greatest at the C2/3 segment (see Figure 3.30)

It must be also borne in mind that during anteflexion the cervical vertebral canal lengthens considerably, shortening during retroflexion. This produces a significant movement of the meninges with their root sleeves, and also of the spinal cord, which can be seen in pneumomyelographs to get longer and thinner in anteflexion and shorter and thicker in retroflexion.

Another highly significant feature is the course of the vertebral artery, which enters the bony canal at the transversocostal foramen of C6 and runs upwards, crossing the intervertebral canals in close contact with the articular processes almost at right angles to the course of the nerve roots. Therefore, as the intervertebral foramen (canal) narrows in retroflexion, this may affect the nerve root and the vertebral artery.

Functional anatomy of the craniocervical junction

Study of this most important junction is concerned with the mobility of each of its joints and the bony structures and ligaments that limit it. There are no intervertebral discs.

The upper articular facets of the atlas are oval with the long axis running obliquely, converging posteriorly and medially like a section of the surface of a sphere with the centre located above both articular surfaces. The main mobility in the atlanto-occipital joints is ante- and retroflexion, about 15 degrees (Figure 3.25). There is posterior gliding of the occipital condyles during anteflexion and anterior gliding during retroflexion. Slight rotation is possible, which Jirout (1981a) has shown to be a very limited lateral flexion, rotation being coupled with side-bending to the opposite side.

The atlantoaxial joints comprise the atlanto-odontoid as well as the joints between the massae laterales and the axis, and their main function is axial rotation. The joint facets run anteroposteriorly and are concave on the massa lateralis of the atlas and convex on the axis. In addition, there is the atlanto-

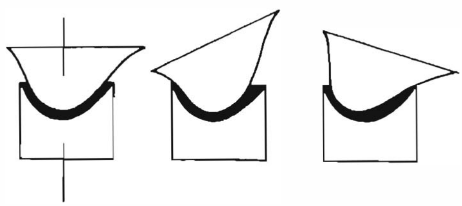


Figure 3.25 Ante- and retroflexion between occiput and atlas

odontoid joint between the anterior arch of the atlas and the odontoid process anteriorly, while the posterior surface of the odontoid process is lined by cartilage and in contact with the transverse ligament.

The possible movements are ante- and retroflexion and rotation. During ante- and retroflexion the anterior arch of the atlas glides up and down on the odontoid and if the transverse ligament is firm the space between these two structures does not widen. The range of movment here is again about 15 degrees.

The most important movement, however, is rotation, in which all joints take part; while there is rotation round the odontoid, the massa lateralis of the atlas glides on the axis posteriorly on the side of rotation and anteriorly on the opposite side. Rotation is limited by the joint capsule and the powerful alar ligaments which are attached to the margins of the foramen magnum and to the atlas. Rotation amounts on average to 25 degrees to each side, the maximum being 40 degrees (Figures 3.26 and 3.27). Dvořák (1988) has shown by axial computed tomography that the range of movement between atlas and axis may be even greater: he found averages of 41.5 degrees to the right and 44 degrees to the left with a maximum of 50 degrees (!) to one side, and in addition an average of 4.5 degrees between occiput and atlas to the right, and 4.1 degrees to the left. Huguenin and Hopf (1993) using magnetic resonance, on the other hand, found that the range of motion corresponds much more to our earlier findings.

Kinesiology of the cervical spine as a whole

Rotation

During rotation, movement starts between the atlas and the axis and takes place mainly there until the range of motion is exhausted, i.e. to about 25 degrees to each side, on average. Up to this point there is pure axial rotation in the horizontal plane. From this point onwards rotation takes place from C3 to C7 in succession if there is flexion at the cervicothoracic junction, and as far as T3 if the cervicothoracic junction is straightened up. There is still some additional passive rotation between the occiput and the atlas. The moment rotation takes place in the cervical spine below the axis; side-bending automatically occurs at the same time, unless deliberately avoided.

Side-bending

Side-bending can be studied only by X-ray, and therefore is dealt with under X-ray mobility studies. Like rotation, it begins at the craniocervical junction. This can best be studied during passive side-tilting movement localizing lateral flexion mainly in the upper cervical area (Figure 3.28). This shows that lateral flexion starts with rotation of the axis in the direction of side-bending and at the same time there is synkinesis of the atlas, shifting relative to the occipital condyles and to the axis, in the direction of side-bending.

On lateral flexion of the whole of the cervical spine we see side-bending and rotation in the direction of lateral flexion, being greatest at the axis. As Jirout (1968) has shown, this rotation usually ends in the lower cervical spine during side-bending to the right, but during lateral flexion to the left can be followed down into the upper thoracic region. (This he explains as the result of stronger pull of the muscles of the shoulder girdle attached to the spinous processes on the right side.) This combination of side-bending and rotation is, of course, in accordance with the tilt of the cervical apophyseal joints but not a direct consequence of the tilt, as is usually thought, as the movement starts at the craniocervical junction and rotation of the axis comes first, followed by rotation of the lower cervical vertebrae in succession. As is shown in detail later, if rotation of the axis does not take place, there is no rotation of the rest of the cervical spine. Jirout (1971) has depicted the force causing rotation during side-bending (Figure 3.29). It can easily be seen that some anteflexion might take place with rotation during side-bending, and these synkineses in the sagittal plane have, in fact, been confirmed by Jirout; they constitute joint play in the cervical spine (see Figure 3.46). However, the exact mechanism that forces the axis to rotate, the moment that lateral flexion starts (which can easily be palpated), remains unknown.

Anteflexion and retroflexion

Anteflexion can be carried out in different ways: we can either draw the chin in, or let the head drop forward, or bring the chin to the chest, which is a combination of the first two movements. In retroflexion there are no such differences. The two mechanisms of anteflexion are somewhat in competition: unless there is hypermobility, if we draw the chin in we cannot drop the head far forward and if we drop it forward, we cannot draw the chin in. The explanation lies in the mechanism of atlas tilt, which must be understood in order to assess cervical ante- and retroflexion.

The following changes can be observed in X-ray studies in the sagittal plane (see Figures 3.30 and 3.31).

1. With the patient in the erect position the planes of the foramen magnum and the axis run almost parallel, the atlas being tilted backwards at an average angle of about 6 degrees.
2. When the patient draws in the chin, anteflexion between occiput and atlas increases only slightly;

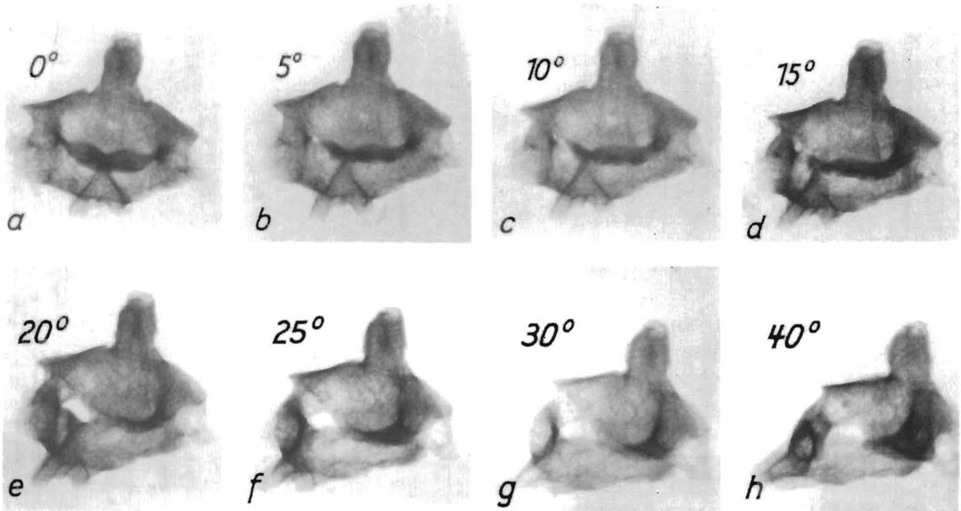
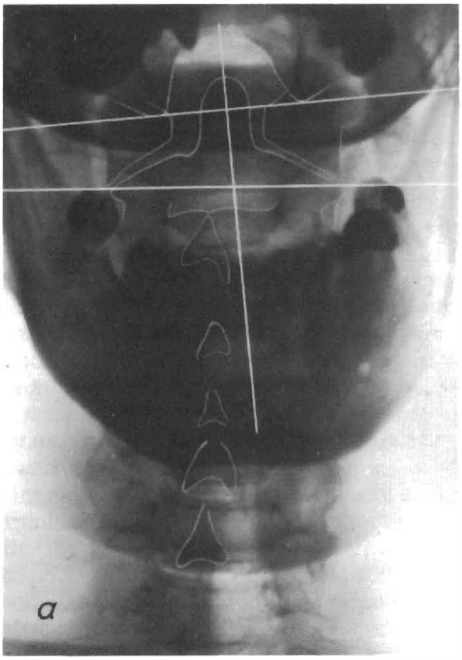


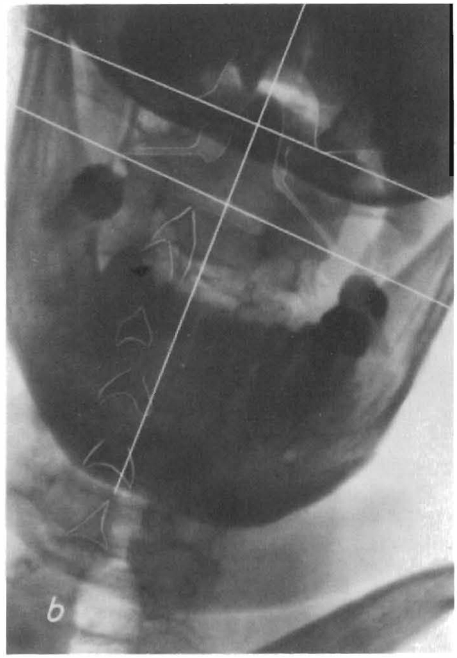
Figure 3.26 Anteroposterior X-rays of an isolated axis: (*a*) in neutral position and (*b–h*) in rotation from 5 to 40 degrees; the pictures are useful for grading rotation

Figure 3.27 Rotation of the axis in relation to the atlas (head): the head is fixed in neutral position, the body in maximum rotation (here at 40 degrees axis rotation; cf. Figure 3.26 (*h*))

the main movement is anteflexion between atlas and axis, the former being now tilted forward while the rest of the cervical spine remains almost straight.

3. In maximum anteflexion the cervical spine is almost horizontal; there is proportionate ventral shift of the cervical vertebrae up to C2/3; there is maximum anteflexion between C1/2 but, contrary to positions (1) and (2), anteflexion of the occiput against the atlas has now disappeared, i.e. there is retroflexion of the head against the atlas or forward tilt of the atlas. Consequently, the angle





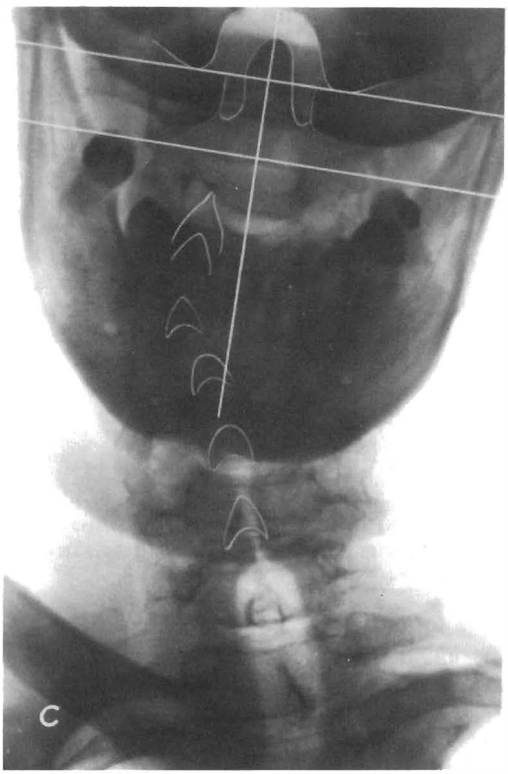


Figure 3.28 Anteroposterior X-ray of the cervical spine of a healthy subject, in neutral position, during active lateral flexion, and passive lateral flexion limited to the upper cervical region. (*a*) In neutral position the atlas is to the right in relation to the condyles, and the plane of the condyles and the axis converge on the right, the axis being rotated about 5 degrees to the left. (*b*) At active lateral flexion to the left the atlas is still to the right of the condyles and the plane of the condyles and the axis converge a little to the right, the axis now being rotated about 10 degrees to the left. (*c*) Passive lateral flexion of the upper cervical spine to the left: the atlas is now clearly to the left of the condyles and the plane of the condyles is parallel to the axis which is rotated about 10 degrees

Figure 3.29 Mechanism of lateral flexion of the cervical spine according to Jirout (1971). During side-bending the head rotates round a sagittal axis (x) situated in the anterior cranial fossa. The diagram shows how the base of the skull, with the condyles, shifts in the opposite direction of lateral flexion against the atlas, and how the axis with the lower cervical vertebrae is brought into rotation and the spinous process of the axis is tilted forward by cranial pull

between the clivus and the odontoid, i.e. the measure of kyphosis between the head and the odontoid, remains the same as with the head erect, and is greatest when the chin is drawn in. There is some degree of forward shift of the basion against the tip of the odontoid.

4. In retroflexion with the patient sitting, there is maximum retroflexion of the atlas against the axis (not the occiput against the atlas!); we see a proportionate backwards shift of the cervical vertebrae and of the basion against the tip of the odontoid.
5. In retroflexion while lying on the side there is now maximum retroflexion of the occiput against the atlas and much less retroflexion of the atlas against the axis. There is no shift of the basion backwards (the subject must not force his head back) (see Figure 3.31).

The mechanism underlying these phenomena, in particular movement of the atlas, is illustrated in Figure 3.31, which shows how the atlas is tilted forward during anteflexion and backwards during retroflexion, with the subject seated, by the weight of the occipital condyles.

X-ray anatomy of the cervical spine

AP view (Figures 3.32 and 3.33)

In the AP view we see the arch formed by both occipital condyles and the anterior margin of the foramen magnum. The condyles articulate with the lateral mass of the atlas, the atlanto-occipital joints being visible on both sides, their planes meeting at an angle of about 125–130 degrees. Beneath the condyles we see on both sides of the odontoid process the lateral masses of the atlas, which are wedge shaped, tapering towards the medial border. Close to the border we often see a translucency which should not be taken for osteolysis. Laterally there are the transverse processes. From one transverse process to the other, one can follow the course of the posterior arch which is like a spindle, broader at its centre. The lateral triangles of the massae laterales project below the shadow of the posterior arch. Sometimes the anterior arch can be seen crossing the tip of the odontoid.

Below the massae laterales of the atlas we see the atlantoaxial joints and the joint facets of the axis. Medially, these facets end in a notch bordering the odontoid process situated between the lateral masses of the atlas and well below the border of the foramen magnum. Close beneath the lateral tip of the axis joint facets we see the foramen costotransversarium of the axis. Medial to the foramen we see the pedicles, while between the pedicles we see the arch of the axis with the spinous process in mid-line. If there is marked lordosis it is possible to see the translucency of the spinal canal at that level.

Below C2 the cervical vertebrae are characterized by the unciform process on both sides; the intervertebral disc is therefore much higher medially than laterally. The narrow shadow of the pedicles lies between the unciform process, and the spinous processes are in mid-line. Lateral to the unciform process the intervertebral foramen can be seen. The lateral contour is formed by the transversocostal process, and sometimes the intervertebral joint can be seen.

Side view (Figure 3.34)

In the side view an undistorted picture of the base of the skull with its relationship to the upper cervical spine is obtained. In particular, the clivus can be followed down to where it forms the anterior margin of the foramen magnum (basion) which is usually situated straight above the tip of the odontoid process. The position of the posterior margin of the foramen magnum (opistion) is sometimes clearly seen if the squama occipitalis is followed down to the base of the skull. If not, the posterior margin of the cervical spinal canal is followed and where its prolongation meets the base of the skull the position of the opistion is determined (see Figure 3.23).

The mastoid process frequently overshadows part of the massa lateralis of the atlas and therefore the atlanto-occipital joint is not always well visualized in the side view; in some cases, however, it can be seen very well (Figure 3.35).

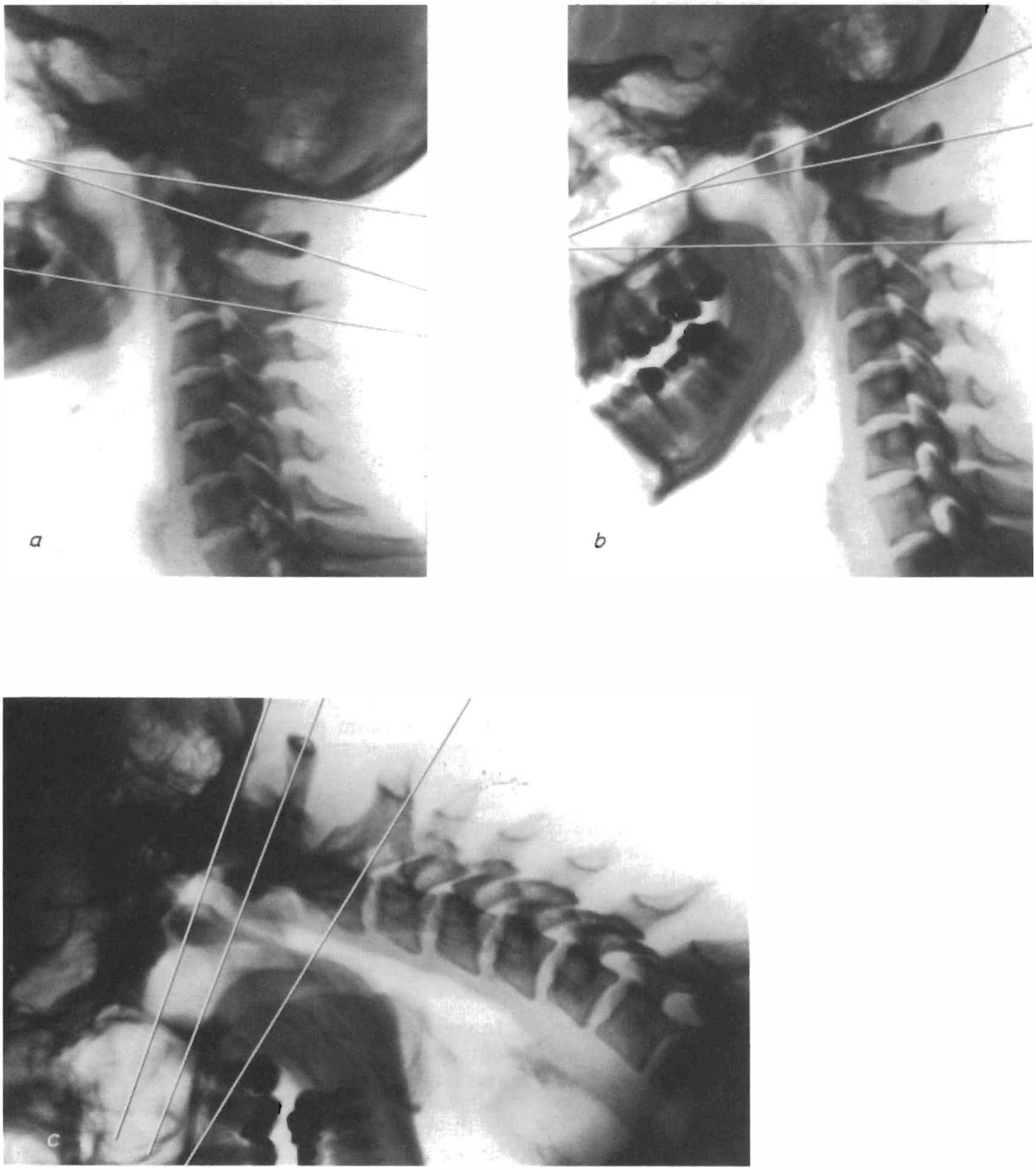


Figure 3.30 Mobility of the cervical spine during ante- and retroflexion. (*a*) Neutral position with the patient erect; the atlas is in retroflexion with relation to the axis and the head in anteflexion in relation to the atlas. (*b*) With the chin drawn in, anteflexion of the occiput with relation to the atlas increases only very little, whereas there is now marked anteflexion of the atlas in relation to the axis. (*c*) Anteflexion: while anteflexion of the atlas is now at maximum (anterior tilt of the atlas) the head has moved into retroflexion so that the plane of the foramen magnum and of the atlas now lie almost parallel. (*d*) Retroflexion sitting: there is both retroflexion of the head against the atlas and of the atlas against the axis, the former being less owing to the tilting of the atlas: as in anteflexion, the plane of the foramen magnum lies parallel to the plane of the atlas. (*e*) Retroflexion with the patient on her side: as the weight of the head no longer plays a part, there is no backward tilt of the atlas and there is maximum retroflexion of the head against the atlas and far less retroflexion of the atlas against the axis. Note also the shift of the basion forward during head anteflexion and backwards during retroflexion (sitting)

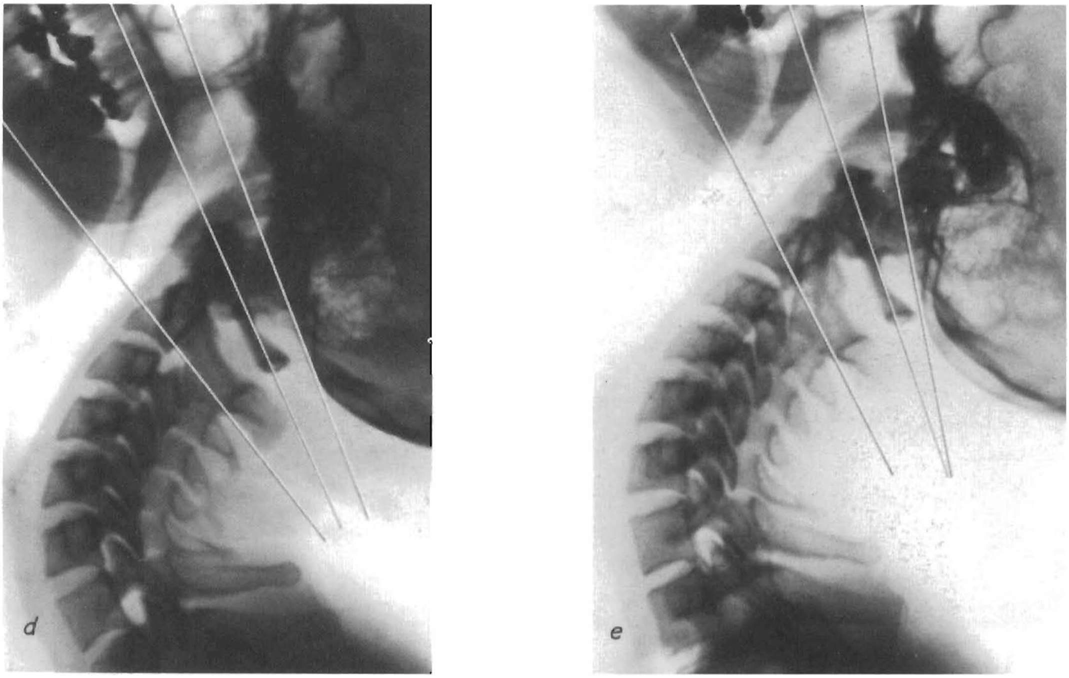


Figure 3.30 (continued)

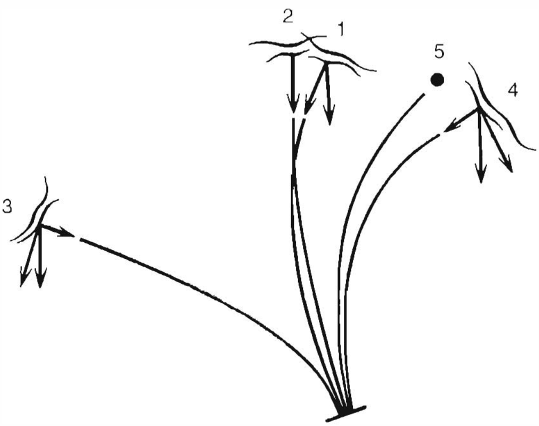


Figure 3.31 The mechanism of atlas tilt

To determine the plane of the foramen magnum a line is drawn from the basion to the posterior margin of the foramen magnum. The plane of the atlas corresponds to a line connecting the centre of the anterior and the posterior arches; the plane of the axis corresponds to a line from the lowest point of the transversocostal process to the lower margin of the arch of the axis. This allows relative ante- or retroflexion to be assessed (see Figure 3.23).

The shadow of the odontoid process is just behind the anterior arch of the atlas, the tip of the odontoid being usually about the same level as the upper margin of the anterior arch. It should not be much above the palato-occipital line; this is the case in basilar impression.

Unlike the rest of the spinal column, the transversocostal processes with the pedicles project on to the vertebral bodies in the side view. The upper margin of the transversocostal process is even slightly above the upper margin of the vertebral bodies, somewhat blurring the lower contour of the intervertebral discs.

The shadows of the articular processes and the translucency of the joints projecting into the spinal canal can be seen behind the vertebral bodies. If the side view has been taken correctly, only one line can be seen, showing that the joints are parallel. The posterior margin of the spinal canal is indicated by a shadow at the base of the spinous processes where the laminae meet. The shadow is usually also clearly visible at the level of the atlas; its absence is a clear sign of spina bifida, a frequent anomaly of the atlas arch.

X-ray evaluation of function

The most characteristic disturbance of statics in the cervical region is the forward drawn position (Figure 3.36). This is so because even when statics are normal the centre of gravity of the head is slightly in front of its support and therefore there is always some muscular activity in the neck musculature in the erect

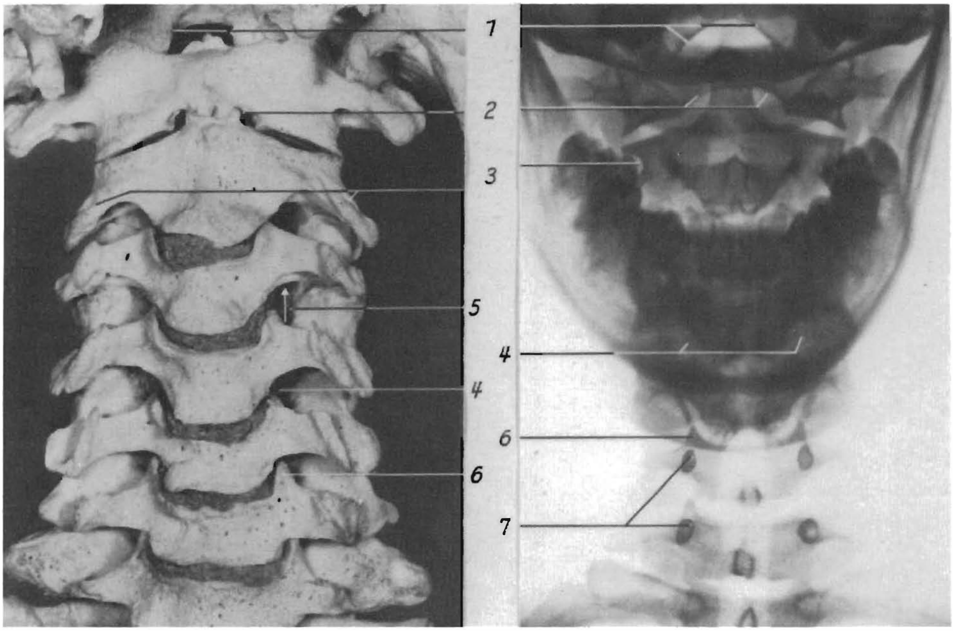


Figure 3.32 Skeleton of the cervical spine (ventral aspect) compared with the anteroposterior X-ray. 1, Anterior edge of the foramen magnum; 2, lower edge of the anterior arch of the atlas; 3, foramen costotransversarium of the axis; 4, foramen intervertebrale; 5, course of the vertebral artery; 6, unciform process; 7, pedicle

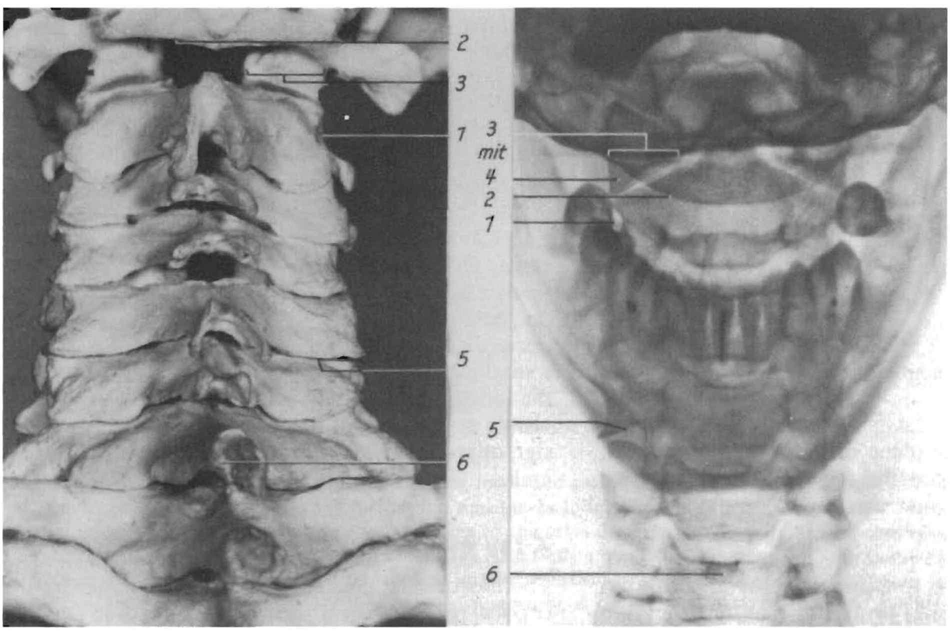


Figure 3.33 Skeleton of the cervical spine (dorsal aspect) compared with the anteroposterior X-ray. 1, Foramen costotransversarium of the axis; 2, lower edge of the posterior arch of the atlas; 3, massa lateralis of the atlas with 4, the lateral triangle; 5, joint space; 6, spinous process

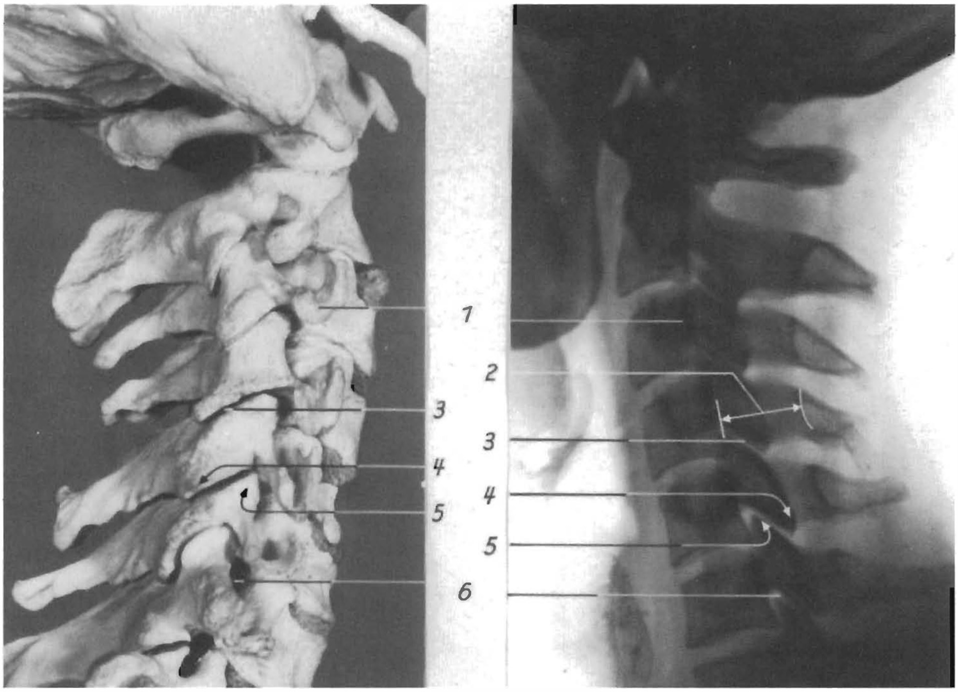


Figure 3.34 Skeleton of the cervical spine (lateral aspect) compared with the lateral X-ray. 1, Transverse process; 2, width of the spinal canal; 3, joint space; 4, lower articular process; 5, foramen intervertebrale; 6, upper articular process

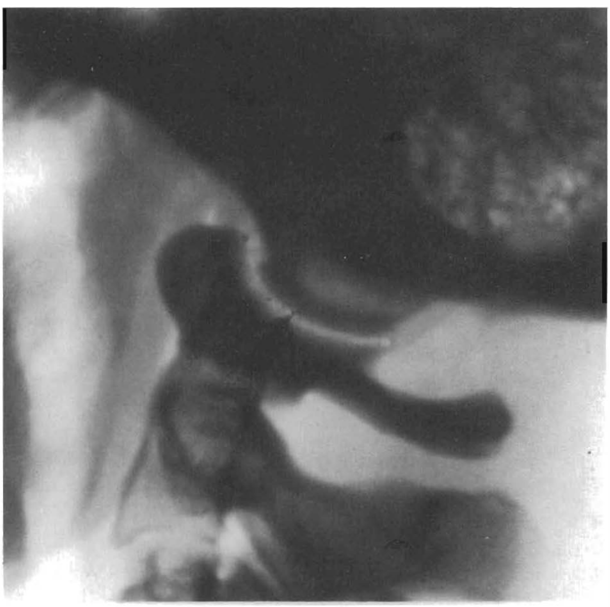


Figure 3.35 Atlanto-occipital joint, lateral view

Figure 3.36 Forward-drawn position of the head: the external auditory canal and the odontoid process lie far anterior to the upper and anterior edge of C2; the craniocervical junction is in a position of compensatory hyperlordosis

Figure 3.37 Lateral view of the cervical spine with the patient sitting erect: the external auditory canal (centre of gravity of the head) and the odontoid process lie above the anterior and upper edge of the vertebral body of C7. In this case kyphosis of the mid-cervical spine is in keeping with a normal static function, owing to a flat back, C7 being almost horizontal

Figure 3.38 Lateral view of the cervical spine with the atlas in anteflexion (relative to the axis)

position. Obviously, in the forward drawn position this imbalance is greatly enhanced, producing increased acitivity in the neck muscles and (by counterpressure) increased strain on the cervical spine.

As Gaizler (1974) has shown, in order to get a true picture it is very important to take the lateral view in a relaxed position, the subject sitting without support, or faulty posture may be overlooked. It is necessary, however, to insist on the patient relaxing while constantly keeping his gaze on an object at eye level, to avoid head anteflexion. In a group of 50 patients I compared lateral views with the patients sitting erect, standing and sitting relaxed. Whereas with the subject sitting erect (Figure 3.37) the outer auditory meatus was almost exactly above the anterior upper edge of the C7 vertebra (on average 1.9 mm behind), in standing patients it was 7 mm in front of this edge, and in the relaxed sitting position (i.e. in the habitual working posture) it was 16 mm in front. In individual cases there were differences of up to 5 cm! This is particularly so if there is marked lumbar kyphosis in sitting, caused by lumbar hypermobility.

In addition to changes in statics concerning the whole cervical spine, there can be relative forward or backward shift (even in the neutral, erect position) and/or locally increased lordosis or kyphosis. At the craniocervical junction the atlas may be in a position of ante- or retroflexion in relation to the axis (the terms 'atlas superior' or 'atlas inferior' used by chiropractors are most confusing and should be avoided). Because of the tilting mechanism of the atlas as described in

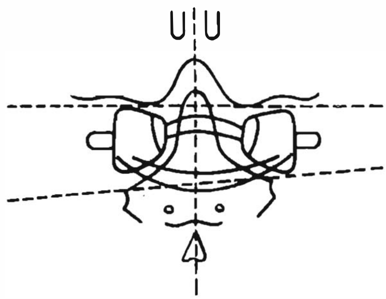
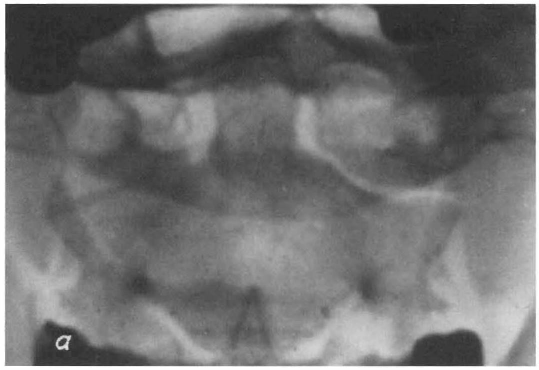


Figure 3.39 Asymmetrical position of the atlas relative to the condyles and the axis (the dotted lines represent the planes of the condyles and the axis, converging to the side of the relative atlas shift)

(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 3.40 (*a*) Anteroposterior X-ray showing asymmetrical position of the atlas against the occipital condyles to the left. (*b*) After treatment the position is symmetrical



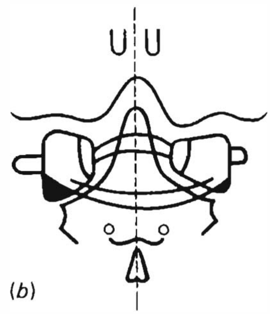


Figure 3.41 Dextrorotation of the atlas. (*a*) Anteroposterior X-ray. (*b*) Diagram

anteflexion and retroflexion sitting (see Figure 3.30), the atlas is usually in a slightly retroflexed position if there is cervical lordosis, the head being consequently in anteflexion; conversely in a kyphotic, forward-drawn position, the atlas tends to be in anteflexion and the head in retroflexion in relation to the atlas (Figure 3.38).

In addition to rotation in individual segments there is frequent asymmetry of the atlas in relation to the axis, as though the atlas were shifted to one side. At the same time the condyles are shifted relative to the atlas, in the opposite direction. This is frequently described as a shift of the atlas relative to the axis and the condyles in the same direction, but this is not quite consistent, as movement in the spinal column should always be described in relation to the lower element (Figures 3.39 and 3.40). Isolated rotation of the atlas in relation to both the axis and the occiput is uncommon. On the side of rotation there is a narrow articular cleft between atlas and axis and a larger lateral triangle of the atlas, the centre of the posterior atlas arch being shifted in the opposite direction and the massa lateralis being larger on the side opposite to rotation (Figure 3.41).

Much more frequently than rotation of the atlas is axis rotation in the neutral position of the head and neck (see Figures 3.26 and 3.27). In fact, rotation of the order of 5 degrees is quite common and even of the order of 10 degrees is not unusual. Interestingly, rotation (and equally asymmetry of the spinous process) of the axis is accompanied by rotation of the cervical vertebrae below the axis, quite fre-

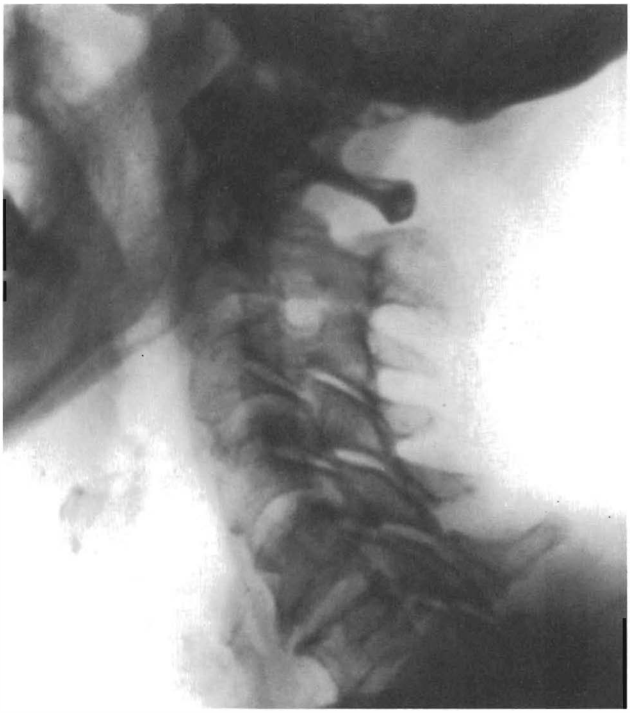


Figure 3.42 Rotation of the cervical spine in the lateral view: the transverse and articular processes as well as the joint spaces are visualized separately, owing to rotatory distortion

quently down to C7, particularly when rotation is to the left. The mechanism is probably that described during side-bending (see Mobility studies, below).

The characteristic features of axis rotation in the AP view are as follows: the spinous process and the pedicles shift to the opposite direction to that of rotation, the transverse foramen opens on the side of rotation and the atlas/axis joint space narrows on the opposite side. In the rest of the cervical spine there is distortion of the unciform processes in addition to the shift of the spinous processes and pedicles. In the side view of rotation of the cervical spine, the structures that usually overlap are separately visualized: joint spaces, articular processes and transverse processes. In fact, the transverse process of the axis is projected in front of the body of the axis (Figure 3.42).

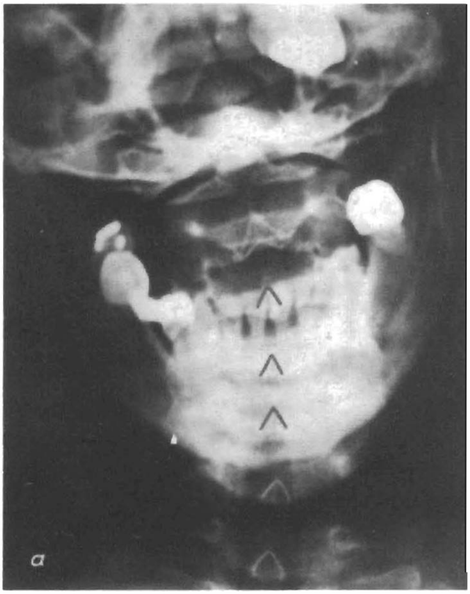
An important sign of static disturbance is discrepancy between the AP view taken with the patient supine and the lateral view in sitting, in particular if there is marked rotation in sitting and none at all in the supine position; this is usually due to obliquity below the cervical spine.

Mobility studies

X-rays of lateral, ante- and retroflexion can be useful in the diagnosis of movement restriction and of hypermobility; rotation tells us much less because it is difficult to assess.

Lateral flexion

The physiological reaction of the cervical spine during side-bending has been described under functional anatomy. Lateral flexion is examined mainly in order to detect movement restriction. One of the most interesting observations is that if there is no rotation in the upper cervical spine during side-bending, there will be none in the lower cervical spine (Figure 3.43). On the other hand, lack of rotation in the lower cervical spine will not have any effect on rotation in the upper cervical spine. This is yet further proof that rotation of the cervical spine during side-bending originates at the axis. Jirout (1971) has shown that rotation is transmitted to the lower cervical vertebrae by means of the spinous processes. If, for example, the spinous process of C2 or C3 is asymmetrical without that vertebra being rotated, e.g. pointing to the right, then on side-bending to the right this spinous process will not deviate to the left, but may reach only the mid-line. In such a case the rest of the cervical spine below this vertebra will not rotate, just as though rotation had been restricted in the upper cervical spine (Figure 3.44).



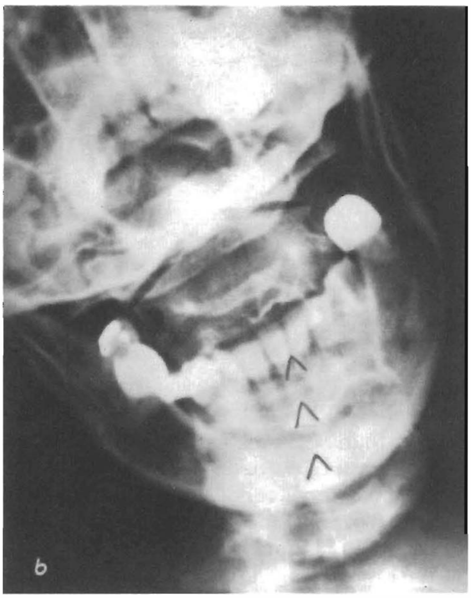


Figure 3.43 (*a*) Blocked rotation of the axis at lateroflexion to the right: no rotation of the cervical spine below C2. (*b*) After treatment: normal dextrorotation from the axis down to C5, lateral flexion of the entire spine increased compared with (*a*)

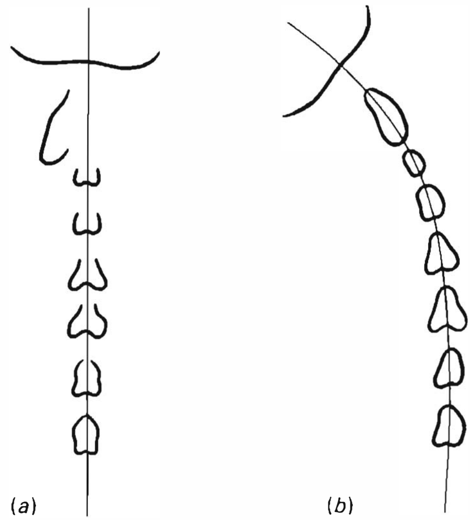
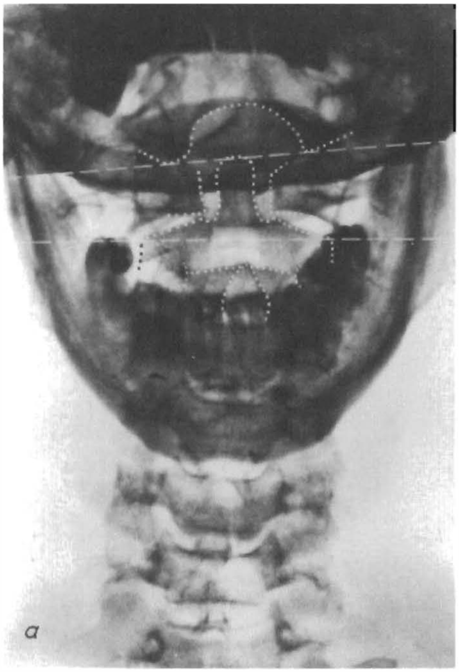


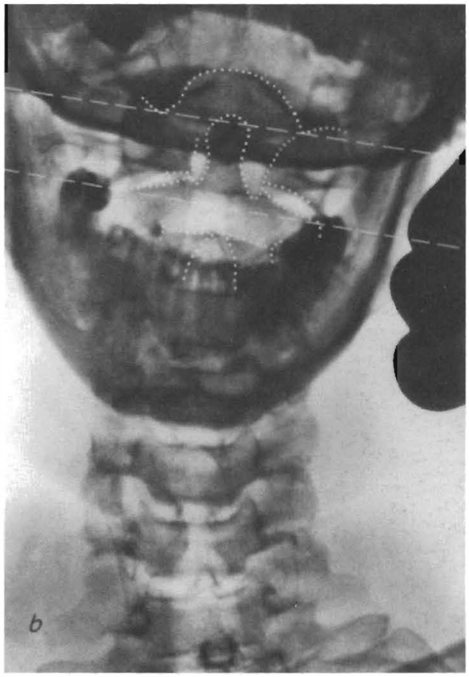
Figure 3.44 The effect of asymmetrical position of a spinous process on rotation of the caudal cervical vertebrae at side-bending. (*a*) At neutral position the spinous process of C2 deviates to the right. (*b*) Side-bending to the right causes dextrorotation of the axis, the spinous process of the axis rotating only into mid-line, however; the caudal cervical veretebrae remain unrotated (After Jirout, 1970)

Although side-shifting of the atlas is the rule in lateral flexion, at times it does not take place without movement restriction, in particular if there is marked asymmetry; even more important, even in cases of clinically severe movement restriction between atlas and occiput, this side-shift may be seen. On the other hand, if the axis does not rotate there is no side-bending at the craniocervical junction (Figure 3.45). This is in keeping with the fact that in cases of atlas assimilation to the occiput, side-bending at the junction may be normal.

The question now arises whether movement restriction between atlas and occiput on side-bending can be visualized by X-ray. We have shown this to be possible (Lewit and Krausová, 1967), but only with the head rotated, i.e. with atlas/axis locked. This is of great importance for clinical diagnosis.

It is usually easy to see movement restriction between the atlas and axis on side-bending: the axis does not rotate (Figure 3.45). In the rest of the cervical spine this is much less easy to visualize by X-ray, even where it can be clearly diagnosed clinically. According to Jirout (1970) small tilting movements in the sagittal plane take place on side-bending and can be recognized by a change in the position of the spinous process. These synkineses in the sagittal plane correspond to joint play of the cervical spine and are more prone to movement restriction than is lateral bending (as can be seen from comparison of X-rays taken before and after manipulation). Moreover, the changed position of the spinous process, i.e. the tilt in the sagittal plane, does not necessarily disappear after the cervical spine returns to neutral position; it may not reach the same position, but may even overreach it,





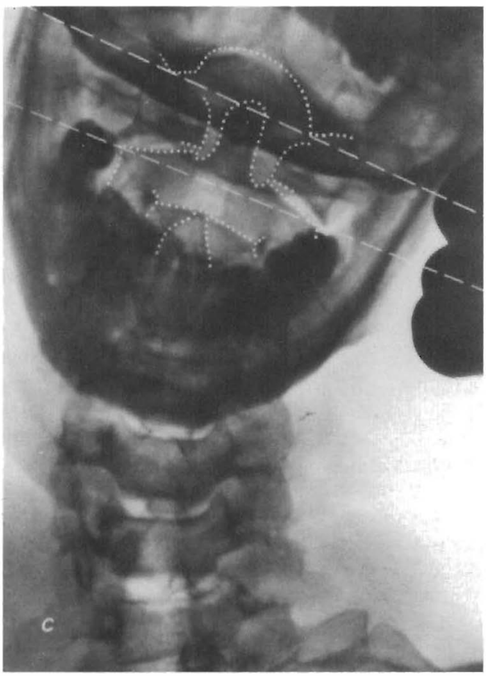


Figure 3.45 Blocked passive lateral flexion at the craniocervical junction. (*a*) In the neutral position the atlas is slightly asymmetrical, to the right of the condyles and the axis. (*b*) Attempted passive left lateral flexion at the upper cervical spine has failed; there is no axis rotation, yet the atlas has moved to the left(!). (*c*) After treatment, normal lateral flexion of the upper cervical spine is restored, with normal (slight) rotation of the axis and shift of the atlas to the left

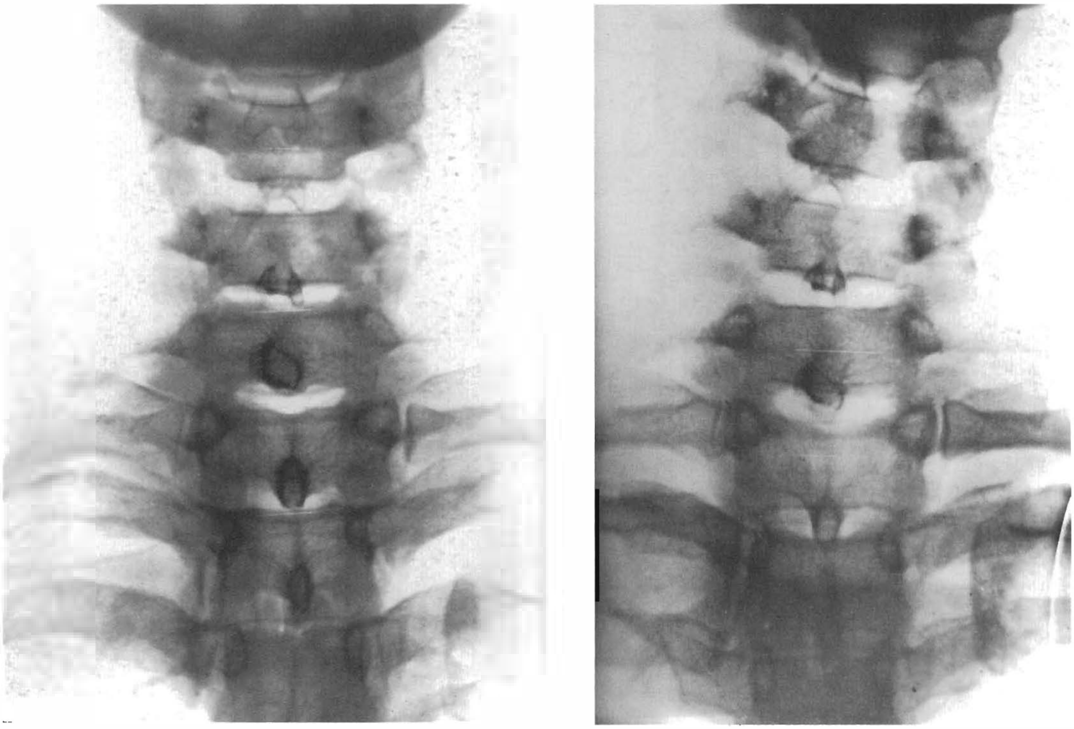


Figure 3.46 AP pictures of the cervical spine: left in neutral position, right side-bent to the left. Compare the position of the spinous process in relation to the vertebral body at C7 and C6 (reproduced by kind permission of Professor Jirout)

showing the variability of the neutral position (Figure 3.46).

We must therefore conclude that lateral flexion of the head against the cervical spine in the coronal plane is mainly the result of axis rotation; conversely, if we restore blocked side-bending at the craniocervical junction we restore rotation between the atlas and axis.

Lateral flexion between occiput and atlas can be established clinically and by X-ray only if the atlas and axis are locked, i.e. if the head is rotated. Movement restriction of the occiput on the atlas does not interfere with side-bending in the coronal plane, nor with a shifting synkinesis of the atlas against the occiput during rotation.

Anteflexion

Ante- and retroflexion are the movements most easily performed by the cervical spine; hence restriction will show only in relatively severe cases (except between occiput and atlas). On the other hand, ante- and retroflexion will reveal any hypermobility: increased shifting movements between C2 and C7, increased lordosis or kyphosis even in a single segment. At the craniocervical junction there may be the following sings of hypermobility:

1. Laxity of the transverse ligament between atlas and axis, with an increased distance between the anterior arch of the atlas and the odontoid. As a consequence the basion also shifts forward (Figure 3.47). At the same time the angle between the clivus and the odontoid decreases not only when the chin is held in, but also during anteflexion of the whole of the cervical spine (Figure 3.47).
2. There is hypermobility between the occiput and the atlas, with increased shift of the basion and opisthion in relation to the atlas, without laxity of the transverse ligament (Figure 3.48).

Some morphological aspects

It is, of course, impossible to do justice to the vast field of morphology in this book; fortunately, it is adequately dealt with in the traditional literature, and only some aspects which are particularly important for us are touched on here.

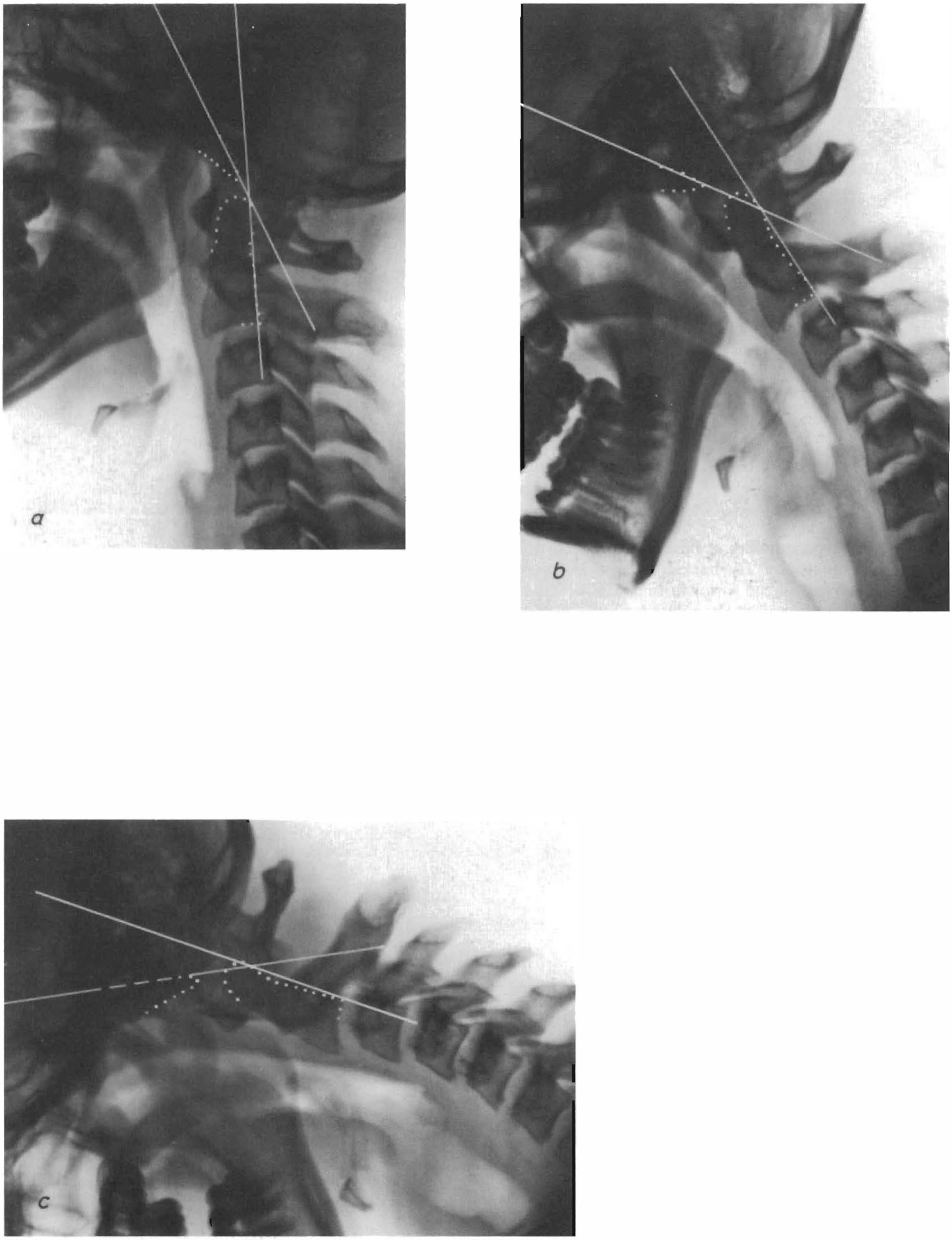


Figure 3.47 Hypermobility at head anteflexion with laxity of the transverse ligaments of the atlas. (*a*) In the neutral position the anterior facet of the anterior arch of the atlas is parallel to the odontoid process. (*b*) Light and (*c*) maximum anteflexion: there is increasing angulation between the articular facets of the anterior arch of the atlas and the odontoid; note the change in the angle between the clivus and the axis and the anterior shift of the basion

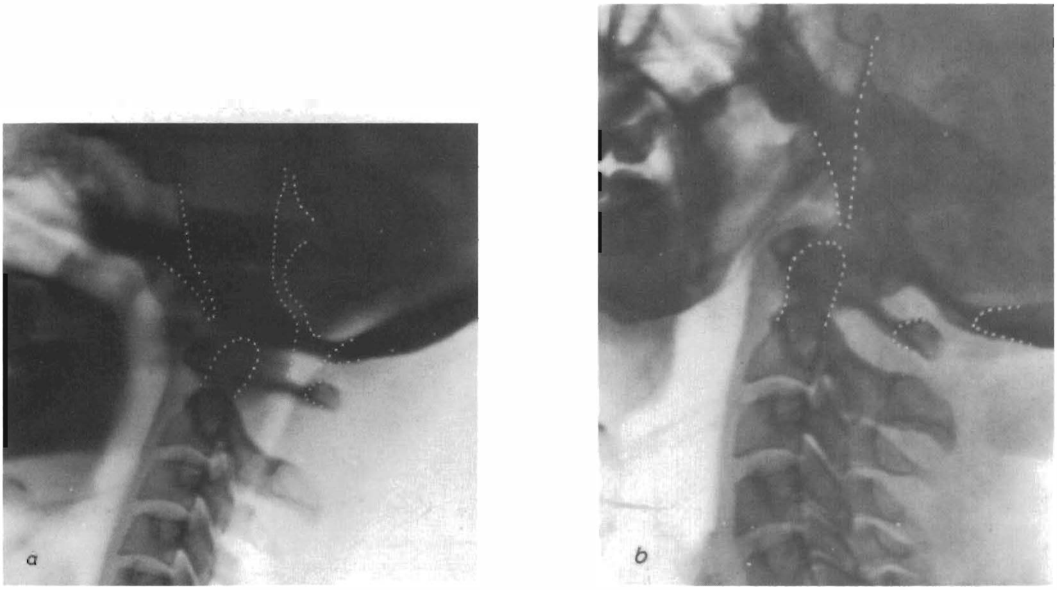


Figure 3.48 Hypermobility at head ante- and retroflexion between occiput and atlas. (*a*) At anteflexion (autotomogram during pneumography) the basion lies above the anterior arch of the atlas and the opisthion above the posterior arch; the arched course of the foramen magnum Magendi has been drawn in. (*b*) At retroflexion the occiput has shifted 2.5 cm (!) back (compare the relative positions of the basion and the odontoid process and the opisthion and the posterior arch of the atlas). For easier comparison (*a*) has been turned 90 degrees clockwise

Figure 3.49 Incomplete congenital coalesence of C5 and C6 with a hypoplastic intervertebral disc and a short anteroposterior diameter of both adjacent vertebral bodies

Figure 3.50 The narrow spinal canal

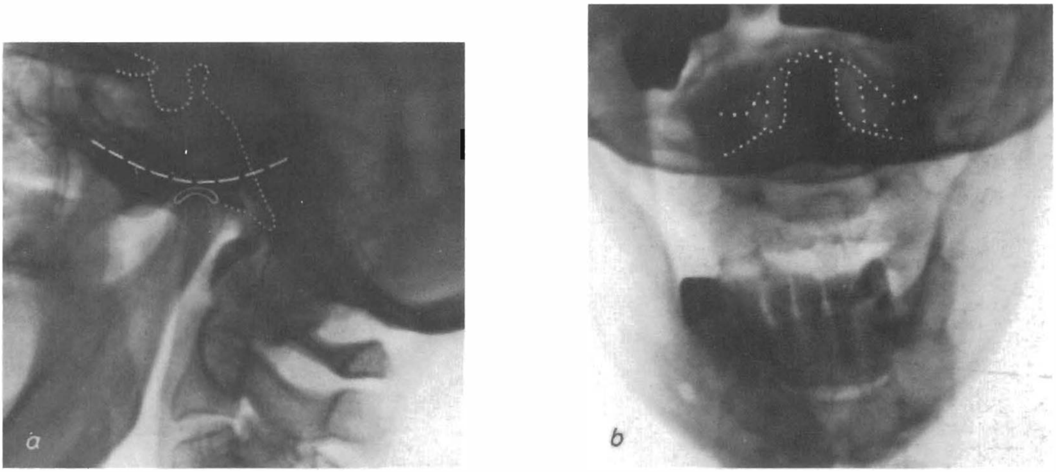


Figure 3.51 Basilar impression. (*a*) Lateral view with short clivus. (*b*) Position of the odontoid high above the condyles

Figure 3.52 Os odontoides, side view (arrows) (Reproduced by kind permission of Dr E. G. Metz)

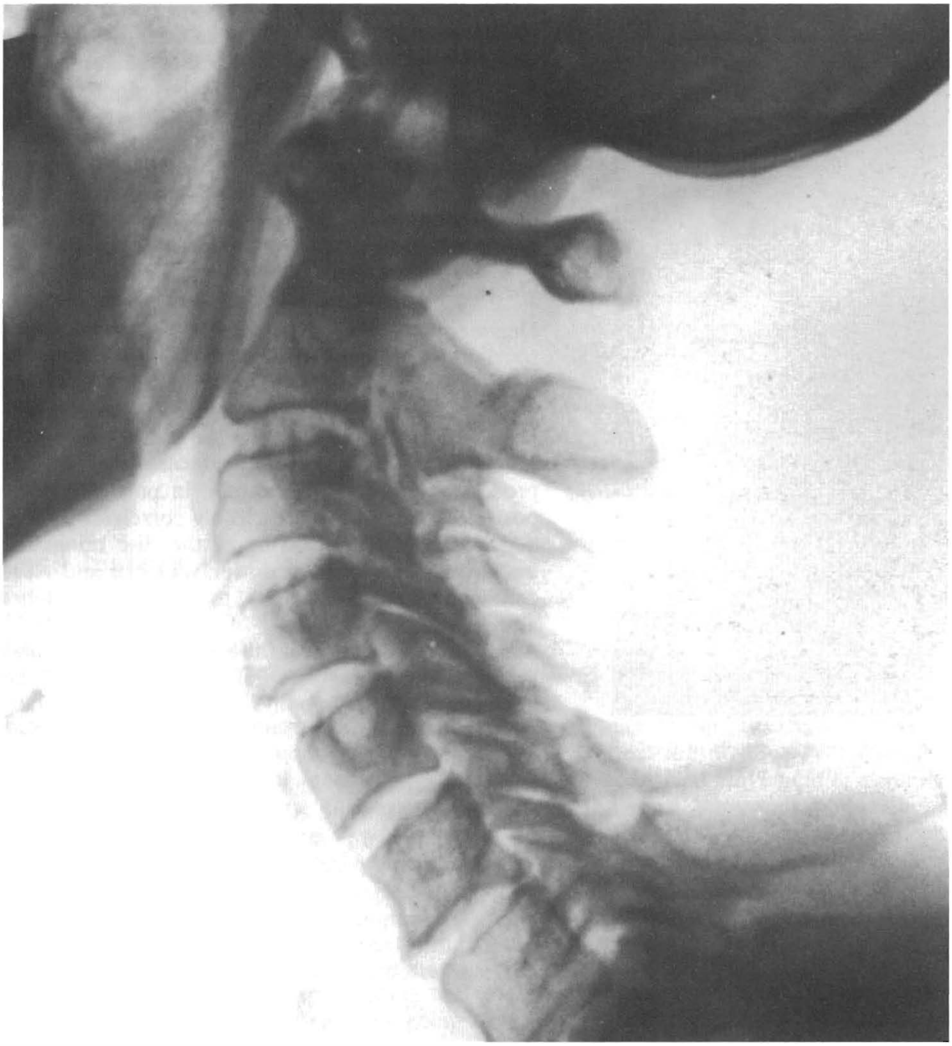
(a)

Figure 3.53 Spondylarthrosis with a horizontal course of the intervertebral apophyseal joints. (*a*) In the AP; (*b*) (*opposite*) in the side view

Anomalies

Anomalies may be important because they frequently imply some degree of change in function. This is particularly obvious in coalescence of vertebral bodies and/or arches. These may be only partial, and in such cases we see a hypoplastic intervertebral disc, the vertebral bodies adjacent to that disc being narrower (Figure 3.49). The anomaly implies reduced or no mobility in a segment and produces (compensatory) hypermobility in the neighbouring segment (usually cranial) resulting ultimately in degenerative changes. A frequent anomaly is a transitional cervicothoracic vertebra C7 with large transverse processes and/or cervical ribs and without unciform processes; it is often asymmetrical.

Clinically the most important anomaly is a narrow spinal canal, because it may cause cervical myelopathy. A more useful method than measuring the width of the anterior–posterior diameter is to observe the altered proportions visible at first glance: normally the spinal canal is wider than the vertebral body in the cervical spine; in the narrow spinal canal it is narrower and the shadow of the articular



(*b*)

Figure 3.53 (continued)

processes cover most of the breadth of the spinal canal (Figure 3.50).

The craniocervical junction, as a region of transition, is the site of frequent anomalies. The most important of these is basilar impression due to hypoplasia of the base of the occipital bone. In this condition the occipital part of the clivus is shortened and therefore the odontoid process is drawn up into the foramen magnum and is situated considerably above the palato-occipital line in the lateral view; in the AP view it can reach the upper border of the foramen magnum between the condyles, and be high above the bimastoid and bidigastrical lines (Figure 3.51). At the same time the foramen magnum may be narrower than usual, unless there is also an Arnold–Chiari deformity. The changes may cause compression of the nervous tissue not unlike that which occurs with a narrow spinal canal further down (Figure 3.51).

In addition there is often hypoplasia or assimilation of the atlas to the occipital condyles. Less common is coalescence of the massa lateralis (usually one-sided) with the axis. All the anomalies are more often than not asymmetrical; this

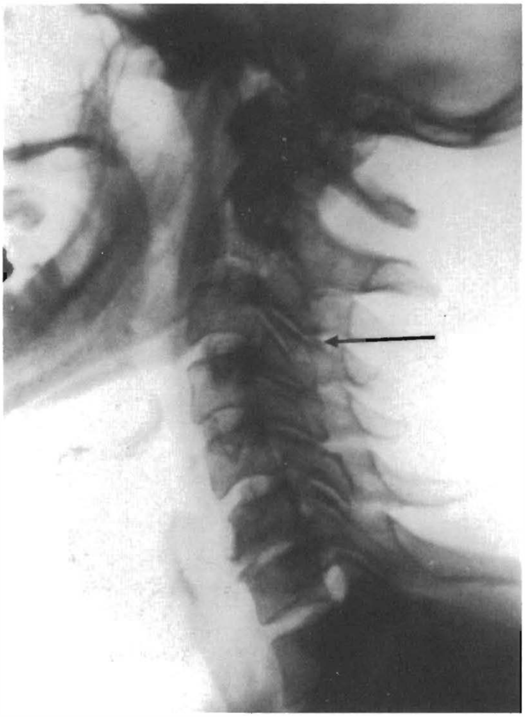


Figure 3.54 Difference in the oblique course of the apophyseal joints between C3 and C4 in the lateral view (arrow)

asymmetry concerns the whole of the craniocervical junction and may produce side-shift of the atlas and even marked rotation of the axis in neutral position, which necessarily produces asymmetrical mechanisms of side-bending and rotation.

One important anomaly (malformation) is hypoplasia of the odontoid and the os odontoides, which implies pathological hypermobility (Figure 3.52). Another significant anomaly of the odontoid is increased reclination (Gutmann, 1981), which forces the atlas into a position of retroflexion and therefore places increased strain on the transverse ligament of the atlas during head anteflexion, and may cause laxity of that ligament.

Degenerative changes

Degenerative changes in the cervical spine are of special clinical interest when they impinge on the intervertebral foramina and may therefore interfere with both the spinal root and the vertebral artery. For this reason oblique views are useful (see Figure 3.24). These changes mainly concern the unciform processes (neurocentral joints), in particular their posterior parts. They are closely correlated to disc degeneration, as narrowing of the disc brings the unciform process of the lower vertebra into close contact with the lower lateral margin of the vertebra above.

Similarly, deformity of the articular processes may impinge on the intervertebral foramen. This is found in arthrosis of the apophyseal joints, which usually goes hand in hand with a horizontal position; in such cases the apophyseal joints become the weight-bearing structures (Figure 3.53). They are therefore seen very well in the AP view.

Finally, I must point out the great significance of a change in the parallel course of both apophyseal joints in one segment, seen in an undistorted lateral view. This implies forced rotation of the cervical spine during retroflexion, producing narrowing of the intervertebral foramen on one side (Figure 3.54).

4

Examination of locomotor function and its disturbance

Case history

As in other fields of medicine, examination starts with the anamnesis. Because vertebrogenic disorders represent the most important group, they will serve as the principal example. It is important to stress from the outset that diagnosis of disturbed function as the cause of disease should not be made *per exclusionem* – i.e. only if other (organic) causes are ruled out – but principally on positive evidence, of which a characteristic history is significant. We owe the main criteria to Gutzeit (1956).

Chronic intermittent course

Unless we see an acute condition in a young patient, we can usually ascertain by questioning that there have been previous attacks, perhaps going as far back as adolescence (e.g. low-back pain during menstruation in young girls). There are periods of complete recovery in between, and we should try to ascertain the frequency and duration of the attacks (and the free intervals), and the time of onset of the latest attack, providing evidence for the general trend of the patient's condition.

Involvement of the locomotor system

The function of the locomotor system and its disturbance can never be limited only to one structure, and therefore symptoms occur in various more distant parts of the system in the course of time, the variously located complaints having, perhaps, a common denominator – the vertebral column. This, too, has to be elicited by careful questioning; the patient will probably be unaware of the possible connection between, for example, headache, shoulder pain, pain in the region of the heart, or in the hip or knee, experienced at different times and perhaps after considerable intervals.

Susceptibility to strain and sustained posture

Function and its disturbances in the locomotor system are obviously influenced by strain imposed by enforced movement or sustained posture. One of the most important points in recording the case history is to determine under what conditions the attacks occur; this is not only of diagnostic value, but also important for therapy and prevention. This is the most crucial but also the most difficult information to extract from the patient. It does little good to ask him after what his symptoms started, for he is likely to provide all the theories he has heard or formed for himself. What we need to know are the immediate circumstances in which pain was felt. This patients are often reluctant to tell, either because they cannot remember or because they find it irrelevant or unimportant; such statements as 'I was sitting, and when I got up from my chair ...', 'I was shaving and when I looked into the mirror ...', '... when waking up in the morning or turning round in bed ...', 'when I stooped to pick up this bit of paper from the floor ...', are significant details. It is also important to learn which position or movement gives relief. It is important to k
provoked by a single brusque movement, by strenuous effort of some duration, or by an enforcedly rigid position. Slight details may be important: the underlying cause of pain may be very different if it occurs during forward bending, while stooping (e.g. over a work bench), in maximum flexion (e.g. stooping to wipe a floor), or while straightening up from a stooping position. Also pain may occur on coughing, sneezing, even laughing.

Trauma

Trauma is one of the commonest causes of disturbed function and provides significant corroboration, even if structural damage is also present. We must insist on the fact that any external force applied to the body affects the locomotor system and the spinal column. This is particularly the case in head injury. Unfortunately the patient often forgets a minor trauma (such as an awkwardly performed somersault) and it is therefore advisable to ask what sports he indulges in. To give a typical example: a patient who 'never suffered any trauma' said that his hobbies were boxing and rugby football!

Factors primarily influencing the autonomic nervous system

In vertebrogenic disturbances the mechanical factor is not the only one, and the reactions of the nervous system must also be taken into account. These include undue susceptibility to changes in the weather, particularly to cold and to high humidity; infectious diseases causing high temperatures; hormonal disturbances (more apparent in women because of the menstrual cycle); pain of locomotor origin which is heightened during menstruation; even allergy may be involved.

The psychological factor

As the locomotor system is the instrument of our will, and pain is the most frequent symptom of disturbed function of that system, it is only to be expected that a psychological factor is frequently present in vertebrogenic lesions. Psychological involvement thus in no way excludes, but rather corroborates, the diagnosis of disturbed function of the motor system. It must be stressed that adequate treatment of the locomotor disturbance usually deals most effectively with the pain, giving the physician a much better chance to deal with the psychological problems, having understood the patient's main trouble. The course of treatment reveals the importance of the psychological factor as such and finally shows whether the patient recovers psychologically when relieved of pain, or whether the psychological conditions may not even cause relapse through muscular tension, as may happen, for example, in masked depression. Purely psychological pain is not common, particularly if the patient is capable of localizing the pain and describing it without frequent changes in the description.

Paroxysmal character

Those complaints in which autonomic nervous symptoms are prominent follow a typical paroxysmal course, e.g. vertebrogenic headache, vertigo, cardiac or other (pseudo-)visceral pain. Even if the patient describes the pain as constant, further questioning reveals that its intensity changes paroxysmally.

Asymmetrical localization

Vertebrogenic pain is rarely symmetrical, and is often one-sided. This holds for radicular and pseudoradicular syndromes of the extremities as well as for headache, shoulder pain and pain in the chest.

The role of age

For differential diagnosis it is important to bear in mind that the most frequent pathological conditions should be evaluated according to the age of the patient.

We may expect juvenile osteochondrosis in adolescents, ankylosing spondylitis in young patients and disc prolapse in young and middle-aged adults; after the age of 50 osteopenia (osteoporosis) may occur, especially in women; progressive (destructive) osteoarthrosis, especially of the hip and knee joint, can be found in older men and women and so, too, can malignant disease. For this reason a history of pain in the locomotor system that begins after the age of about 50 and takes a progressive course must be treated with great circumspection.

Examination

The anamnesis is followed by clinical examination. There is perhaps no field of medicine in which clinical examination has so decisive a role, and is so exacting, as in examination of locomotor function. Examination begins the moment the patient enters the doctor's office: the way he or she moves, sits down, undresses, etc. The patient must always undress for the first examination (to bra and briefs); natural movement is essential. Whatever the site of the trouble, important if not vital information may be missed if the patient remains fully dressed.

Examination of posture (inspection)

Examination usually starts with the rear view; the plumb-line is placed between the heels. This is followed by the side view, observing the patient from the feet upwards, and finally by examination of the front view. This may be followed by examination sitting.

We begin with the feet, looking at the shape (roundness) of the heel and its deviation; the shape and thickness of the Achilles tendon and the calves; the lateral deviation of the knees; the shape and thickness of the thighs; the height of the gluteal lines;

the position and symmetry of the hips; the course of the intergluteal line and the shape of the buttocks; the waist between the pendant arms forming triangles which may or may not be symmetrical; the rhomboid of Michaelis between the dimples situated at the posterior iliac spines and the upper end of the intergluteal line and the culminating point of lumbar lordosis and its transition into thoracic kyphosis. The thickness and prominence of the erector spinae muscles are compared on each side, as is the groove between these muscles where the spinous processes are situated, and a scoliotic curve may be detected. Above the waist the position of the shoulder blades is compared, together with their relative height and distance from the mid-line; then the height and course of the shoulders is compared. The lateral contour of the back is formed by the quadratus lumborum muscle at the waist and the latissimus dorsi above, up to the axilla. The upper margin of the shoulders is formed by the musculus trapezius laterally, and by the levator scapulae more medially. The neck should be in mid-line, but may deviate to one side or the other; finally, the head may be in mid-line, or inclined in line with the neck, or forming an angle with the neck. The neck can be slim or thick, and the hair line may be higher or lower on the nape of the neck.

In the side view it is advisable to consider the posture as a whole: normally, the head should be vertical above the shoulders which are vertical above the hips and the feet, so that the outer meatus acousticus is vertically above the clavicular bone and slightly in front of the ankles. It is extremely important to register a forward-drawn position where the head and neck are in front of the shoulder girdle and this is in front of the hips, so that the buttocks stick out behind the arms, which hang loosely on either side.

Again the examiner looks from the feet upwards, noting the shape of the feet, the course of the legs, in particular whether the knees are bent backwards or even slightly forward, and the convexity of the buttocks. Then he follows the (usually lordotic) curve of the lumbar spine; it is important to note whether lordosis is most accentuated at the lumbosacral or in the mid or upper lumbar region. In cases of increased lordosis (flabby posture) the abdomen protrudes (even if the patient is slim) and again this protrusion may be accentuated at the level of the navel or above the pelvis, according to where the musculature is weakest.

In the thoracic region (which is usually kyphotic) it is important to note whether the back is flat or not, whether kyphosis is exaggerated and also if kyphosis is mainly in the upper or lower thoracic region. A flat back frequently accompanies increased kyphosis at the cervicothoracic junction. In addition to kyphosis it is important to note whether the shoulders are drawn forward. Cervical lordosis depends on the shape of the thoracic spine, and in flat backs (frequently in athletic youngsters) there is no lordosis. If there is increased lordosis, typical in flabby posture, the trachea and the thyroid cartilage may protrude, at first glance giving the impression of an enlarged thyroid gland which, however, disappears in the supine position. Finally, in a forward-drawn position there is frequently hyperlordosis at the craniocervical junction.

In the front view, the examiner may begin with the position of the toes and the arch of the feet, followed by the legs; at the knee we note valgosity or varosity and possible lateral deviation of the patella. We then follow the contours of the thighs and of the lower abdomen between the ilia and the navel, which may be shifted to the side, may be on the surface, or may be engulfed. The flanks may be drawn in at the waistline, or may bulge. If muscles are weak, the abdomen protrudes with the navel on its surface and the flanks are bulging. The lower edge of the thorax may be prominent, or may be hidden by a protruding abdomen; the epigastric angle may be obtuse or acute.

It is only possible to assess the sternum and its position relative to the pectoral muscles in men. The lateral portion of the pectoralis forms the anterior border of the axilla; the subclavicular portion of the pectoralis can be assessed even in women who are not obese, and the upper ribs may be visible. Above the infraclavicular fossa are the collar bones on both sides, and it is particularly important to note to what extent they move during respiration. The depth of the supraclavicular fossa may be important (the inspiratory position of the thorax); above this there is the contour of the trapezius and the levator scapulae, which is normally concave provided that there is no hypertonus. The shoulders are laterally above the axilla, often unequal in height.

The most prominent feature of the neck is the jugular fossa and the two sternocleidomastoids; the attachment point at the sternum is more noticeable than on the clavicle. Between the sternomastoids and the trapezius some bundles of the scaleni may be visible. In mid-line above the fossa jugularis there is the prominence of the thyroid cartilage; it is very important to note whether it is exactly in mid-line, or perhaps is slightly shifted to one side (difference in tension in the digastric muscles). If this is the case, there may be noticeable asymmetry of the submandibular region, as far as to the angle of the mandible. Hypertonus and hyperactivity of the masticatory muscles is often seen, and we should note how far the patient opens his mouth during speech. Facial asymmetry is very frequent and can be combined with asymmetry of both the teeth and the skull as well as with scoliosis.

From both the rear and front view it is possible to diagnose relative weakness of one side (hemihypogenesis); dominance of one cerebral hemisphere can frequently be recognized by the difference in musculature of the upper extremities. In the lower limbs, the supporting leg is usually the left (non-dominant), which is therefore more powerful.

Inspection during anteflexion of the trunk is important; rotation of the vertebral column in scoliosis patients thus becomes more apparent in both the lumbar and the thoracic region, with the ribs becoming even more prominent on the convexity. There is often little or no kyphosis in the lowest thoracic area, or in the low lumbar region, whereas kyphosis may be exaggerated in the upper thoracic region.

Inspection from above may reveal rotation of the shoulder girdle in relation to the pelvic girdle and the heels.

Inspection of the seated patient when relaxed may show marked changes in posture, particularly in hypermobile subjects, in whom marked lumbar lordosis standing becomes significant lumbar kyphosis when seated. This results in an important change in head position, which may be normal when the patient stands but drawn forward when he sits in a relaxed position. This is particularly important in subjects whose profession is mainly sedentary.

Palpation (soft tissue lesions)

Palpation is essential, both for diagnosis of painful changes in the tissues in general and in the locomotor system in particular, and also for all manipulative techniques. It is thus logical to proceed to palpation and soft tissue diagnosis at this point.

The first step in palpation, after touching the surface of the patient's body, is to concentrate on our goal: testing resistance, mobility, shape, temperature, moisture and roughness, or provoking pain. As palpation is related to touch, and touch receptors to pressure, it is frequently assumed that palpation is primarily the registration of pressure, and that a pressure-registering device could make palpation more objective. Unfortunately, this is rarely the case, for during palpation our fingers (hands) do not exert static pressure, but perform subtle and judicious movements. Therefore we engage not only tactile but also proprioceptive receptors and integrate information from both.

The barrier phenomenon common to most soft tissues has already been discussed (Chapter 2, p. 11); whether soft tissue is stretched, or soft tissue layers are shifted, we first meet very little resistance until we reach an easily sprung barrier. In hyperalgesic zones (HAZ) stretch or mobility is limited; the barrier is stiff, and does not give.

The barrier phenomenon enables us even to differentiate the superficial from the underlying tissue layers by shifting one against the other: shifting the most superficial layer by minimal force we at first meet no resistance until the barrier is reached. At this moment the next underlying tissue layer starts moving and so on. This is particularly important in movement palpation of bony structures covered by soft tissues: the soft tissues move first and bone will not move until we have reached the barrier (e.g. in sacroiliac motion palpation).

The simplest way to find a hyperalgesic skin zone (HAZ) is to run one's fingers very lightly over the surface of the skin: increased skin drag reveals heightened friction due to moister skin at the site of an HAZ. This is more readily recognized, the lighter the touch.

For further examination of the superficial layer of the skin it is best to stretch the area of increased skin drag, if small between the finger tips, a larger area between the thumb and the thenar, while a considerable patch of skin is best examined between the crossed hands. The barrier is reached with a slight pull (taking up the slack), while another slight tug (without moving away from the barrier) should spring it. A symmetrical skin patch on the other side of the body must be stretched in the same direction for comparison (see Figure 6.72). This technique is particularly valuable at the skin fold between toes and fingers which is the site of clinically important HAZs in root syndromes. Another (for the patient more painful) technique is to create a skin fold: it is thicker at the site of the HAZ in comparison with a symmetrically localized normal area.

To examine connective tissue (i.e. subcutaneous tissue, scar tissue, muscles with their fascia) it is best to form a fold (see Figure 6.74) and to stretch (not squeeze) it until a barrier is reached; this should spring, but will be stiff if there is an HAZ. If soft tissue cannot be folded, moderate pressure may be applied; the pressing finger sinks into the tissue until the barrier is engaged. The diagnosis of a normal or a pathological barrier can thus be made (see Figure 6.75.).

In diagnosing changes in the fascia, it is useful to shift deep layers of soft tissue relative to bony structures: shifting the lumbodorsal fascia towards the buttocks or the shoulders, with the patient prone; moving the buttocks up or down; shifting (and stretching) the deep tissue layers on both sides of the trunk, with the patient seated (see Figures 6.77–6.79). The scalp can readily be shifted in all directions against the skull, and restrictive 'adhesions' noted. The mobility of soft tissues against bone can be examined at the heel, by rotatory movement at the neck and the extremities, and resistance can be felt. At periostal pain points we regularly find pathological barriers ('adhesions') of subperiostal tissue in one direction, unlike the other side, found typically at spinous processes, epicondyles, iliac spines etc.

There are specific disturbances of mobility where movement of adjacent bones depends on soft tissue

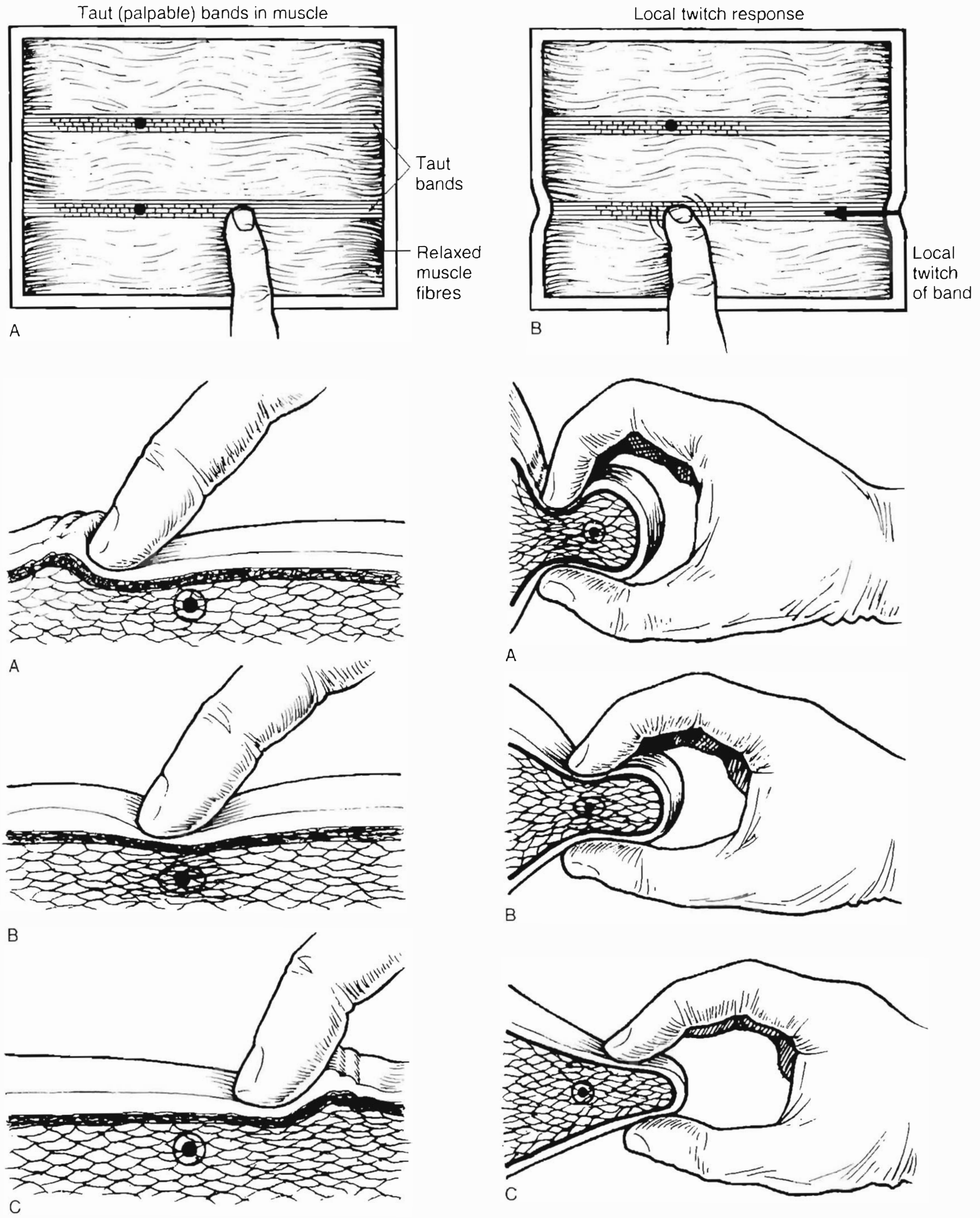


Figure 4.1 Snapping palpation according to Travell and Simons (1983)

resistance; this is particularly the case between the metacarpal and metatarsal bones. This resistance is often increased in root syndromes where pain radiates to the toes, and is a valuable diagnostic sign pointing to the affected root. At the same time we also usually find an HAZ between the fingers or toes.

A very characteristic soft tissue lesion presents as a myofascial trigger point (TrP); this widely

Table 4.1 Important muscular trigger points

Muscle	*Clinical significance*
Soleus	Pain at the Achilles tendon
Quadriceps femoris, tensor fasciae latae	Pain at the upper edge of the patella
Thigh adductors	Lesion of the hip joint
Iliacus	Lesion of segment L5/S1 (coccyx)
Piriformis	Lesion of segment L4/5 (coccyx)
Rectus femoris	Lesion of segment L3/4 (hip)
Hamstrings	Lesion of segments L5–S1, pain at the tuberosity of the ischium and fibular head
Levator ani (per rectum)	Coccyx
M. coccygeus (lig. sacrotuberale)	'S'-reflex – pelvic dysfunction (Silverstolpe) pelvic diaphragm
Psoas and quadratus lumborum	Lesion of thoracolumbar junction (T10–L1)
Erector spinae	Lesion of segment at the corresponding level
Rectus abdominis	Tenderness of xiphoid, symphysis, low-back pain at back-bending, abdominal viscera
Pectoralis major	Thoracic viscera, upper ribs
Pectoralis minor	Tender proc. coracoideus, syndrome of the upper thoracic outlet
Middle part of trapezius	Cervicobrachial and radicular syndromes of upper extremity
Subscapularis	Frozen shoulder, scapular pain
Supinator, finger extensors, biceps, brachioradialis	Radial epicondylalgia
Finger flexors	Ulnar epicondylalgia
Triceps brachii	Pain at the dorsal aspect of the axilla
Upper part of trapezius	Any cervical lesion
Sternocleidomastoid	Lesion of segment C0/1 and C2/3, pain referred to skull and face
Short extensors of the occiput (overlying the posterior arch of the atlas)	Lesion of the atlanto-occipital segment
Masticatory muscles	Temporomandibular joint, headache, facial pain
Digastricus	Pain at the hyoid, dysphagia

accepted term has been defined best by Travell and Simons (1983): 'A hyper-irritable spot, usually within a taut band of skeletal muscle or in the muscle's fascia, that is painful on compression and can give rise to characteristic referred pain, tenderness and autonomic phenomena'. If such a muscular band is rolled under the fingers, a local twitch can be felt and can be registered by EMG, while the patient feels a sharp pain (Figure 4.1).

The trigger point appears to be a band of muscular tissue which is in a state of contraction while the rest of the muscle is quiescent; complete relief can be obtained by decontraction (e.g. by the spray and stretch method, or by post-isometric relaxation); i.e. what we have here is a reversible change of function, similar to reversible joint movement restriction. In 1993 Hubbard showed that spontaneous EMG activity can be registered in TrPs with the aid of monopolar electrodes.

Myofascial TrPs are not the only tender points (TePs); these can be found at periosteal points, on joints (joint capsules), and at attachment points of muscles. Indeed, a muscle with a TrP producing tension is usually connected with a TeP at the muscle attachment. Even in muscles there may be tender points which are not taut bands, e.g. in 'fibromyalgia' where we can palpate a painful 'pasty (i.e. dough-like) hypotonus'. Such TePs may even produce referred pain, but no twitch sign can be elicited nor does relaxation produce any results.

Eliciting the twitch sign in a TrP illustrates another very important feature of palpation: it provokes a reaction of the patient's tissues, additional diagnostic information establishing a unique feedback relationship between two highly complex self-regulating systems, examiner and patient, which can be matched by no other instrument. This would satisfy any criteria of modern information theory, if it were reproducible and scientifically verifiable. We are thus faced with a paradoxical situation: the clinical method that provides the richest and most differentiated information is stigmatized as 'subjective' and therefore non-scientific, compared with sophisticated apparatus which at best is but a poor copy of the nervous system, whereas palpation uses the human brain itself, and the sensing hands.

Table 4.1 lists some important muscle trigger points.

Reflex changes on the periosteum – pain points

There are numerous pain points on the periosteum in patients with disturbed function of the locomotor

Table 4.2 Important periosteal points

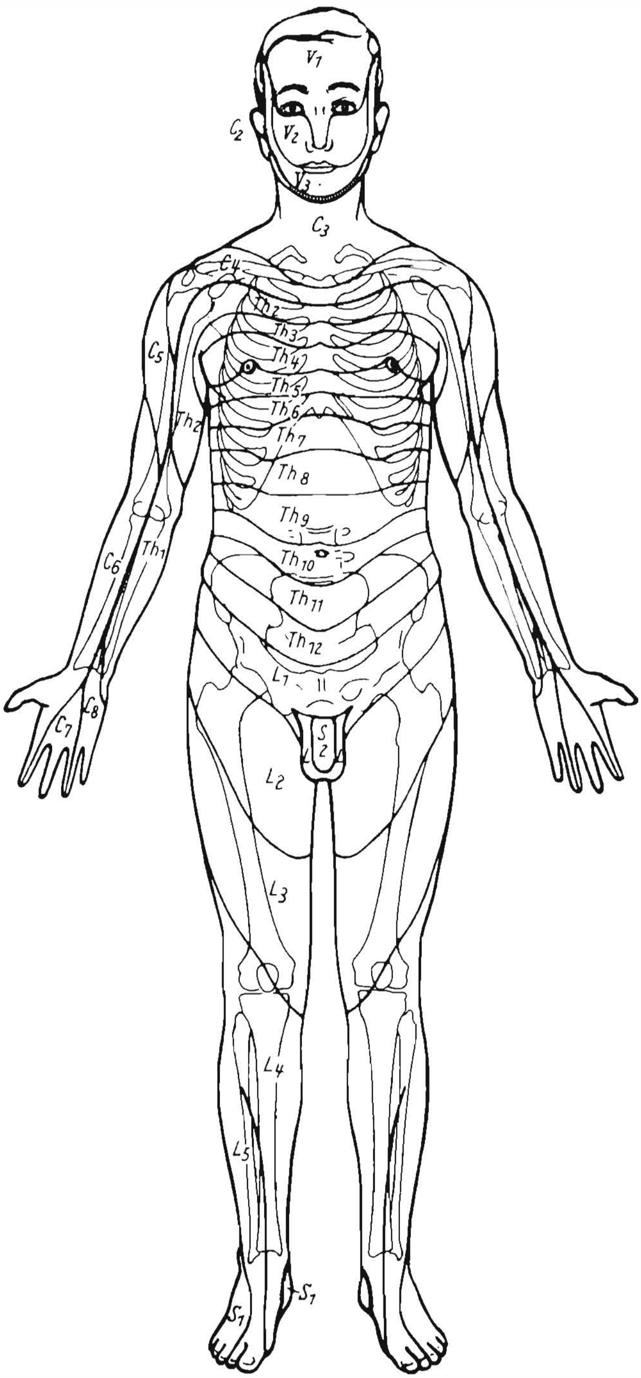
Periosteal point	*Clinical significance*
Calcaneal spur	Tension in plantar aponeurosis
Pes anserinus (tubercle of tibia)	Tension in long adductors, hip lesion
Fibular head	Tension in biceps femoris, blockage
Upper margin of patella	Tension in quadriceps or tensor fasciae latae
Posterior superior iliac spine	Frequent but not specific
Tuberosity of the ischium	Tension in hamstrings
Lateral aspect of the pubic symphysis	Tension in the adductors, sacroiliac blockage, hip lesion
Upper margin of the symphysis	Tension in the rectus abdominis
Coccyx	Tension in the gluteus maximus, levator ani, piriformis
Iliac crest	Lesion of thoracolumbar junction, tension in quadratus and gluteus medius
Greater trochanter	Tension in abductors, hip lesion
Spinous process (most frequently L5)	Tension in deep paraspinal muscles
Spinous process Th5, 6 (Maigne's 'dorsalgie')	Low cervical lesion, thoracolumbar lesion
Spinous process of C2	Lesion of segments C1/2 C2/3, tension in levator scapulae
Xiphoid process	Tension in rectus abdominis
On ribs in the mammary and axillary line	Tension in pectoralis and serratus attached here, visceral pain
At sternocostal junction of upper ribs	Tension in the scalenus
Angulus costae	Movement restriction of ribs
Sternum just below clavicle	Lesion of first rib
Medial end of clavicle	Tension in sternocleidomastoid
Erb's point	Upper limb root syndromes, tension in the scalenes
Transverse process of atlas	Lesion of atlas/occiput segment, tension in sternocleidomastoid and recti capitis laterales
On the occiput (linae nuchae)	Referred from the posterior arch of the atlas and lateral aspect of spinous process C2
Styloid process of radius	Lesion at the elbow joint
Epicondyles	Lesion of the elbow joints, tension of muscles attached at epicondyles
Attachment of deltoid	Lesion of scapulohumeral joint
Condyle of mandible	Lesion of temporomandibular joint, tension in masticatory muscles
Cornua of hyoid bone	Tension of the digastricus, dysphagia

system. Frequently, like trigger points in muscles, pain points are highly characteristic of certain lesions and therefore have high diagnostic value (Table 4.2). Their disappearance (improvement) also serves as a valuable test of the efficacy of treatment. Frequently the tender periosteum is changed on palpation, offering increased resistance to shift. Many periosteal pain points are sites of attachment of tendons or ligaments (enthesopathy), and the tenderness is apparently related to increased muscular tension, e.g. the greater trochanter, fibular head, Achilles tendon and attachments. If spinous processes are tender on one side, this correlates with the side of muscle spasm and with restricted rotation to that side.

Where joints can be palpated directly they are tender on palpation if there is any lesion. This is true for the intervertebral joints, which can be particularly well palpated in the cervical region with the patient supine; for the rest of the spinal column deep paraspinous palpation is required, with the patient prone. All extremity joints are accessible to palpation, and this is very important in affections of the hip joint which is palpated in the groin, of the acromioclavicular and sternoclavicular joints palpated at the lateral and medial end of the clavicle, and of the temporomandibular joint palpated before the tragus.

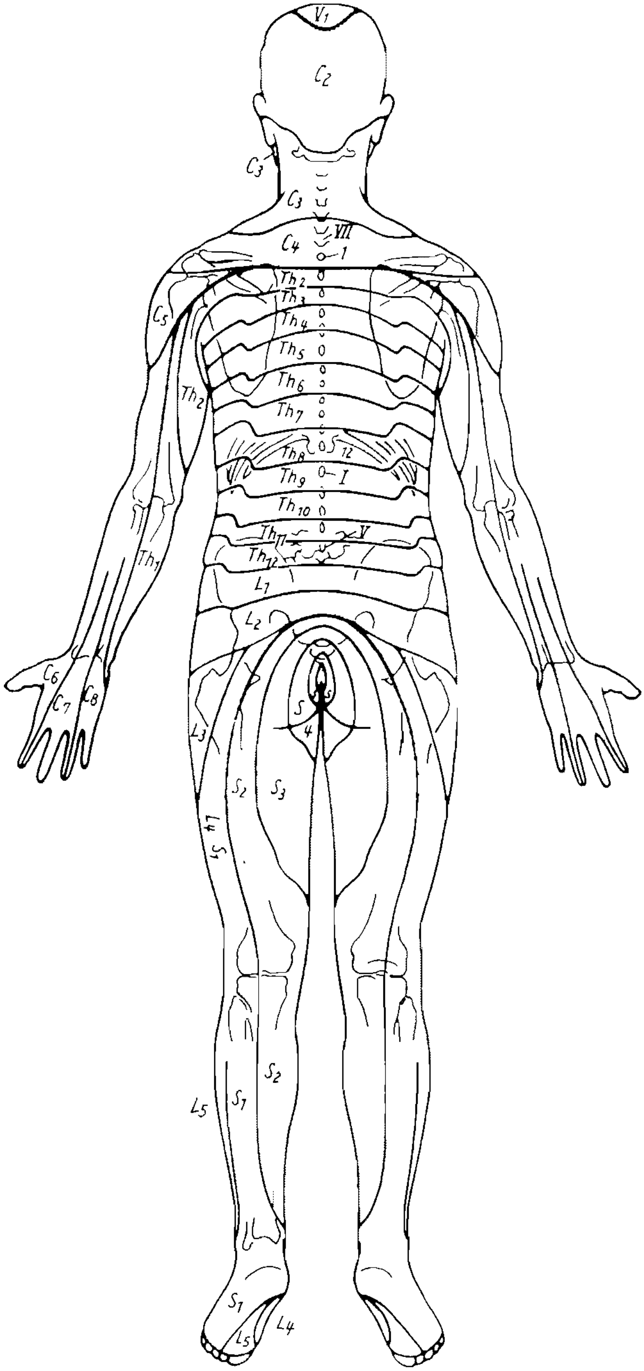
Root syndromes

I have repeatedly stressed that mere reflex changes in a single segment, including radiating pain, hyperalgesia and even dysaesthesia, do not constitute sufficient grounds for a diagnosis of root syndrome. Conclusive evidence of a root lesion is provided by neurological deficit: hypoaesthesia, hypoalgesia, muscular weakness with hypotonia and/or atrophy, increased idiomuscular excitability and decreased tendon reflexes. Unless these signs are present we may suspect root lesion but require further proof. There are two signs, however, which strongly suggest a root syndrome: pain and/or dysaesthesia radiating as far as the toes or fingers, the impression that the entire leg is painful and that the bone hurts; and the straight leg raising test below 45 degrees.



(*a*)

Figure 4.2 The dermatome chart given by Hansen and Schliack (1962) (*a–e* and *g*) and by Keegan (1944) (*f*): dermatomes on the (*a*) ventral, (*b*) dorsal, (*c*) lateral aspects of the trunk; (*d*) on the inner and (*e*) outer aspect of the leg and foot; (*f*) on the outer aspect of the leg; (*g*) at the perineum



(b)

Figure 4.2 (continued)

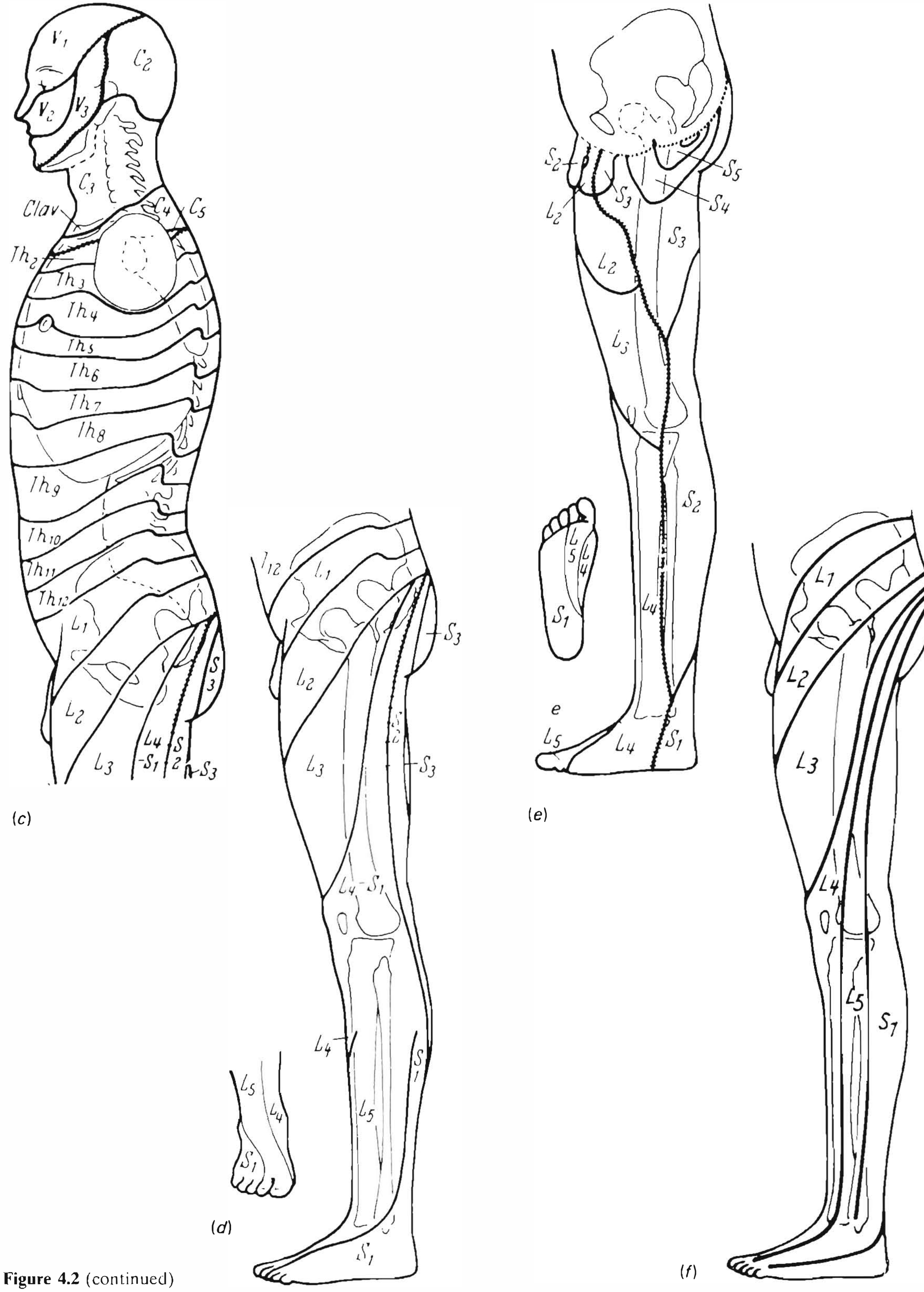


Figure 4.2 (continued)

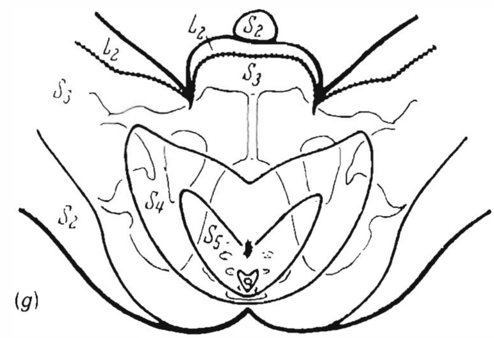


Figure 4.2 (continued)

The individual root syndromes are dealt with in Chapter 7. The dermatome chart of Hansen and Schliack (1962) is reproduced here (Figure 4.2*a–e* and *g*) together with that of Keegan (1944) (Figure 4.2*f*) for the leg. It should be pointed out that to this day there is no generally accepted dermatome chart, which may perhaps be explained by the fact that dermatomes vary from one subject to the next. An important point in the Hansen and Schliack (1962) chart is their 'cervicothoracic and lumbosacral hiatus': segments C5–T1 and L2–S2 do not appear on the trunk, but only on the extremities. On the scapular line on the back there is a 'step' which these authors consider to be the region where the dorsal and ventral rami meet.

In conclusion, it can be said that there is a wealth of detectable signs of reflex changes due to painful (nociceptive) stimulation in the skin and underlying tissues, in muscles, periosteum, tendons and ligaments, all of which can be diagnosed clinically and some of which can be registered (skin temperature, electrical resistance, etc.). These signs enable us to make a clinical diagnosis and to locate those changes that can be the object of specific and adequate therapy.

Examination of mobility

Only certain general principles are dealt with here. We should examine active mobility, passive mobility and movement against resistance. Active mobility shows both muscular activity and joint mobility uninfluenced by the examiner. Any force applied by the examiner may be less than, equal to or greater than that used by the patient; we then have concentric (resisted) movement, isometric resistance, or eccentric movement. Each technique examines muscular function (the strength of muscle, reaction to pain provoked in the muscles, even coordination).

Passive movement shows the degree of mobility of joints and may at the same time reveal muscular tension or spasm. Examination of a particular joint may disclose normal, increased, or restricted mobility. This may affect functional movement as well as joint play (see Chapter 2). The following changes should be looked for during examination:

1. Limited range of movement compared with the symmetrical joint or a neighbouring spinal motor segment, the 'pathological barrier' of American osteopaths; this has been registered remarkably successfully by a device constructed by Berger (1982), which is likely to prove very important for accurate analysis of impaired mobility (see Figure 4.32*b*, *c*, p. 112).
2. Resistance during motion, particularly during the examination of joint play.
3. Resistance or springing in the end-position. The pathological barrier, if engaged, does not spring. Here it is essential to take up the slack of both functional movement and joint play. This resistance in end-position has been registered by Figar and Krausová (1975) using a resistance transducer, in a blocked cervical segment before treatment, during a high-velocity thrust and after treatment (Figure 4.3).

A diagnosis of movement restriction (blockage) is usually followed by examination for the direction of

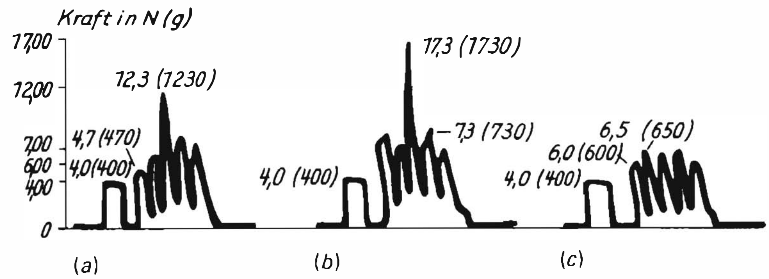


Figure 4.3 Recording resistance in the end-position by the method of Figar and Krausová (1975). (*a*) Increased resistance in the blocked segment. (*b*) The force required for thrust manipulation in the blocked segment. (*c*) Equal resistance in all segments after manipulation. A weight of 400 g was used as a gauge

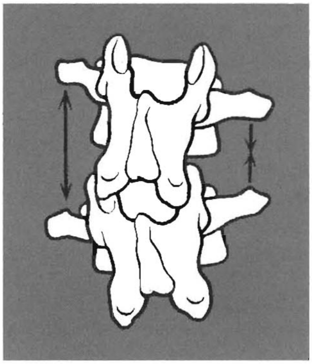


Figure 4.4 The mechanism of lateral flexion in the lumbar spine

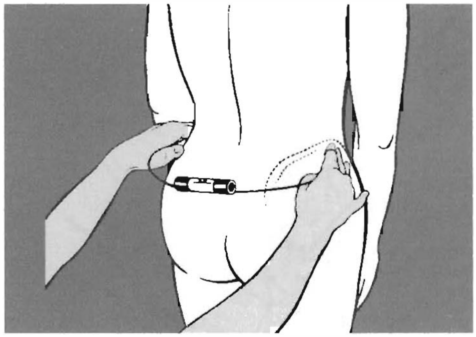


Figure 4.5 Comparison of the level of the iliac crests or other symmetrical structures, using a spirit level

restriction; therapeutic techniques are concerned mainly with mobilization in a specific direction. With movement restriction in the spinal column, however, it is sometimes of interest to note not only the direction of restriction but also which of the two intervertebral apophyseal joints is involved. However, this is not always easy to determine and, in fact, most techniques are effective if applied in the correct direction, whichever joint is affected.

The question of which side is affected is most readily solved in the lumbar region by simple clinical examination, because here axial rotation is not possible and therefore a combination of restriction in the sagittal and coronal planes shows clearly which side is involved. It can be easily understood that on anteflexion the articular surfaces are in end-to-end position, whereas in retroflexion they are in full contact. During side-bending, however, the articulation on the convex side is in an end-to-end position as during anteflexion, whereas that on the concave side is in full contact as during retroflexion (Figure 4.4). Therefore, restricted retroflexion and side-bending to one side shows that the joint on the side of restricted lateroflexion is at fault, whereas restricted anteflexion and side-bending indicates that the joint on the side opposite to restricted lateroflexion is lesioned.

In the rest of the spinal column, in particular in the cervical region, a combination of lateroflexion and ante- or retroflexion may be helpful: if lateroflexion is restricted (mainly) in retroflexion it is the joint on the side to which we side-bend that is affected; if it is more restricted in anteflexion the joint on the opposite side is blocked.

Examination of the lower extremities and the pelvis

There is no need to repeat here what I have already said about the general examination of posture. It is important to assess the arch of the foot in both planes. To compare the feet it is useful to place one finger under the arch of each, from the medial aspect: where there is a flat foot, the finger meets resistance. It may be even more revealing to examine the arch as it functions (in walking): from the medial aspect we can see whether the arch sags (decompensation of flat foot). For the function of the whole limb it is very important to note valgosity of the heel and the degree of external rotation of the foot (i.e. of the hip).

Examining the knee, we are interested both in varosity and in valgosity, and in the genu recurvatum.

Flexion in the hip joint while standing is characteristic of hip joint involvement: it presents itself, however, by increased lordosis (unlike lumbago) and by knee flexion.

For more detailed examination of the pelvis, palpation is needed. First the iliac crests should be palpated. This is more difficult than is usually thought: it must be done from above, from the ribs down – the crests can be much higher than one would expect from the shape of the buttocks, i.e. close below the lowest rib. If the hips deviate to one side the iliac crests also deviate, and therefore it is not difficult to palpate the crest on the side to which the pelvis deviates, but greater pressure is needed to get on top of the iliac crest on the other side. The iliac crest thus appears higher on the side to which the pelvis shifts, unless great care is exercised.

To be sure that the iliac crests are at the same height it is wise to check with a spirit level (Figure 4.5).

The iliac crests should be palpated laterally (at the highest point) and followed towards both posterior superior iliac spines, and note taken whether the two palpating hands converge. Both the posterior and the anterior iliac spines point downwards and sideways and have therefore to be palpated from below and from the side in order to find the corresponding points.

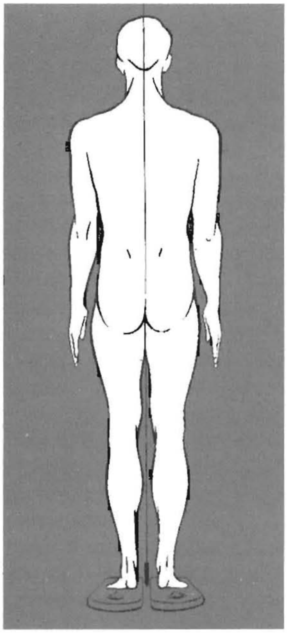


Figure 4.6 Examination of symmetrical stance on two scales in front of a plumb-line

If both iliac crests are at the same height – and this is also true of the anterior and posterior iliac spines – the pelvis is horizontal and the legs are probably of equal length; if the iliac crest is higher on one side – and the same is true of both anterior and posterior superior iliac spines – and if the fingers palpating the crests towards the posterior spines meet, there is pelvic obliquity and the most probable reason is difference in leg length.

Pelvic obliquity

Measurement of leg length is more difficult than might be thought, because the femoral heads and necks are hidden. Pelvic obliquity is thus the most reliable clinical sign of difference in leg length, unless this is caused by a difference in the length of the legs below the knee, a condition which can be readily assessed, e.g. with the patient supine, with knees flexed. The examination of a patient standing, with both legs straight, usually detects deviation of the pelvis towards the higher side; in typical cases the shoulder is lower on the side where the pelvis is higher. The (clinical) effect of a heel-pad should then be tested: if the pelvis is level after the heel has been raised on the lower side, there should be no side-shift and the shoulders should have levelled out. However, this test is useful only if there is no major movement restriction anywhere in the spine.

At the same time weight distribution can be examined on two scales (Figure 4.6), with and without a heel-pad on the lower side, to see whether the patient is better able to assess equilibrium with or without the pad. The subjective reaction is tested by asking the patient whether he feels happier with a heel-pad, or whether it makes no difference. (In view of static correction an X-ray check is necessary; see pp. 39–43.)

If we conclude that there is a difference in leg length we again check whether this is due to asymmetrical deformity at the knee (valgosity or varosity) or to a one-sided flat foot, in which case an arch support is more appropriate than a heel-pad.

Besides obliquity, the pelvis may be rotated as a whole in relation to the shoulder girdle and the feet. Inclination (reclination) of the pelvis is assessed by comparing the height of the anterior and posterior upper iliac spines.

Pelvic distortion

This is a curious phenomenon which must be distinguished from pelvic obliquity and is always secondary to some other lesion which should be found and treated. In the rear view the pelvis deviates slightly to one side (usually to the right) and is slightly rotated (usually to the left). Palpating of the iliac crests shows that they are more or less on the same level laterally, but as the fingers palpate towards the posterior superior spines they do not meet: one superior posterior spine (usually the right) lies higher than the other. This can be confirmed by direct palpation of the spines. In the front view the converse is found: here the right anterior superior iliac spine is usually lower and the left higher. The two ilia seem to be distorted one against the other. Thus there is always a discrepancy if the iliac crests, and the anterior and posterior superior iliac spines, are compared, but relations vary so much here that the difference at the anterior or posterior spines may be greater or smaller, and the crests accordingly level or not; confusion with pelvic obliquity can easily occur (Figure 4.7).

For this reason, if examination shows signs of pelvic obliquity with some discrepancy on palpation of the most important points on the pelvis, the best approach is to treat the pelvic distortion first, and then to re-examine for pelvic obliquity.

Another feature of pelvic distortion is important because it points to disturbance of function: the 'overtake' phenomenon, in which on standing or sitting the left superior posterior iliac spine is usually the lower, but overtakes the right on stooping, becoming the more cranial of the two for a short time (less than 20 s), after which the two spines are level and return to a symmetrical position. If there is no overtake phenomenon on standing we should examine it with the patient seated or with both

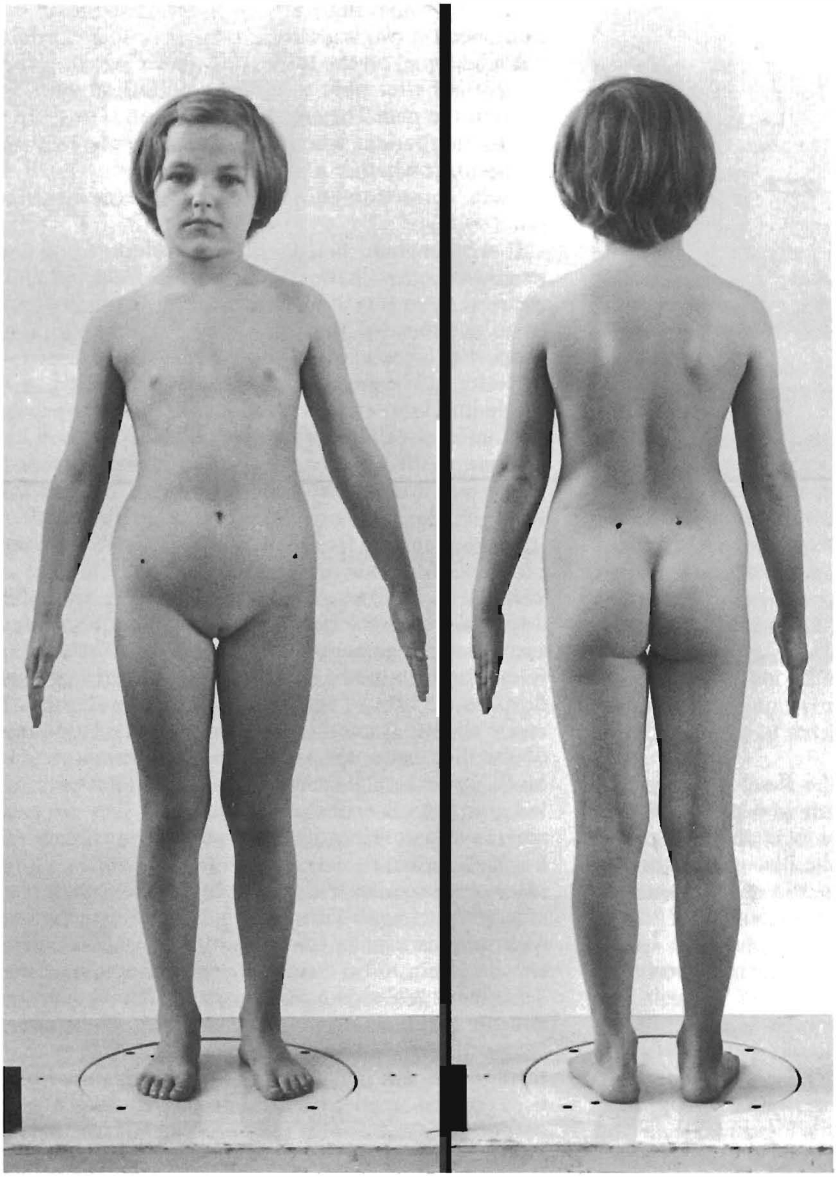


Figure 4.7 Pelvic distortion in a child. Note the typical pelvic asymmetry

knees slighlty bent so as to exclude the pull of the hamstrings.

Figure 3.12 (see p. 48) shows that the sacrum must lie asymmetrically between the ilia in such a way as to create more tension on the side of the lower posterior superior iliac spine; as a result it follows the sacrum more promptly in stooping, causing the 'overtake'. The figure shows clearly that in the supine position there is greater external rotation of the leg on the side of the lower posterior spine, and there may be what Derbolowski (1956) has called a 'variable difference' in leg length – i.e. one leg may be apparently shorter in the supine position, whereas on sitting this is reversed.

More significantly, in this condition there is usually muscular imbalance in the pelvic region: spasm of the iliacus is frequent on the side of the lower posterior spine and the function of the gluteal musculature is frequently asymmetrical, but much depends on the cause of the pelvic distortion, which, as I have stressed, is always secondary.

Sacroiliac blockage

Although there is no active movement between the sacrum and the ilium, passive mobility can be examined, as well as springing. (Gynaecologists are familiar with the nutation movement of the sacrum during labour.)

In addition to the overtake phenomenon, a simple screening method of diagnosing sacroiliac blockage during standing is by direct palpation with the thumbs below and medial to the posterior superior iliac spines (PSIS) while the patient marks time. It is more exact, however, to examine the 'spine sign' (Figure 4.8). The examiner sits behind the standing patient, placing one thumb on the posterior iliac spine and the other on the spinous process of S1 or better of L5 from the side of the joint we intend to examine. The patient is then told either to raise the leg on the side where the PSIS is being palpated, or to bend her knee and let the hip drop. In either case the distance between the PSIS and the spinous process increases, unless there is movement restriction. In pelvic distortion this sign may be temporarily positive on the side of the lower PSIS, but after 10–20 s the distance increases to normal. The advantage of this sign over that of the overtake phenomenon is that it is positive even if there is blockage on both sides. We prefer to palpate the spinous process of L5 to landmarks on the sacrum because it is easier to feel.

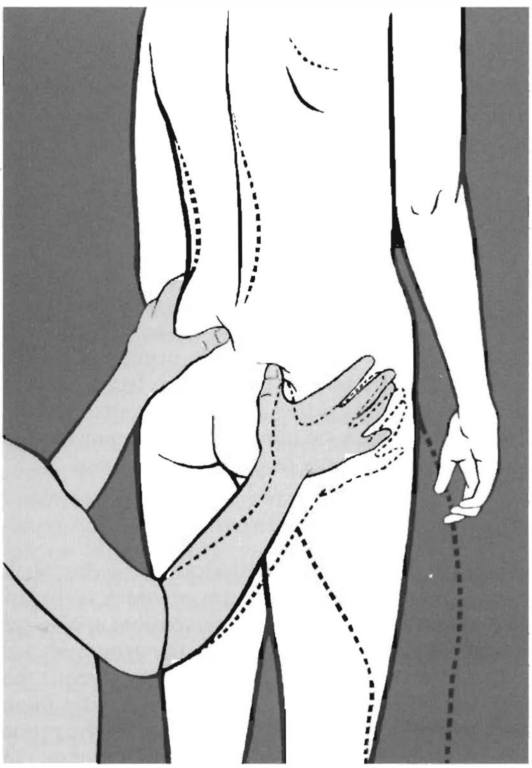


Figure 4.8 The 'spine sign': comparison of the distance between the two thumbs placed on the spinous process of LS and the PSIS, respectively, when the patient stands with both legs straight, then with one leg bent and the hip dropped

Probably the simplest screening method with the patient standing has recently been described by Rosina (personal communication, 1996): the examiner places both hands on top of the iliac crests and tells the patient to rotate his head as far as he can to one side and then to the other. After a few seconds latency the examiner feels that the iliac crest is higher on the side to which the head rotates. If there is sacroiliac blocklage the iliac crest does not move. This is not only a reliable test, it is very easy to perform in cases where palpation of the PSIS and even of the spinous process can be difficult or inaccurate. It is, however, useless if head rotation is restricted. The PSIS and ASIS also move.

Another screening method is to examine restricted adduction of the thigh, with the hip flexed to about 90 degrees. The patient is supine. The examiner stands by the table and grasps the patient's furthermost knee, which is bent, and flexes the hip; with his other hand he fixes the anterior superior iliac spine to the table, from above. He then adducts the patient's thigh across the pelvis and compares the angle of adduction on the two sides. If there is normal mobility of the hip joint, adduction restriction is due to a blocked sacroiliac joint. At the same time the examiner can sense the absence of springing when he reaches end-position.

The sacroiliac joint can be sprung similarly: the patient is again supine and the examiner again grasps the knee and adducts the thigh across the patient's pelvis, but without fixing it with the other hand. Instead he continues adduction until the pelvis begins to rotate, i.e. the posterior spine begins to lift from the table. At this point the slack is taken up at the sacroiliac joint and the examiner places a finger of his free hand between the posterior superior spine and the sacrum, so as to palpate movement (springing). Without increasing adduction he now exerts slight pressure against the patient's knee in the direction of the axis of the thigh (taking up the slack) and from this position springs the joint by a gentle push in the same direction (Figure 4.9). The force with which the sacroiliac joint is sprung in this technique produces a dorsal shift of the ilium against the sacrum, i.e. a movement mainly in the sagittal plane. This technique is very popular but difficult because we have to engage the barrier twice: first when we turn the patient to the point when the PSIS begins to be lifted, and then when applying axial pressure on the patient's knee.

There is another very useful method for springing the sacroiliac joint. The patient lies on her side, and

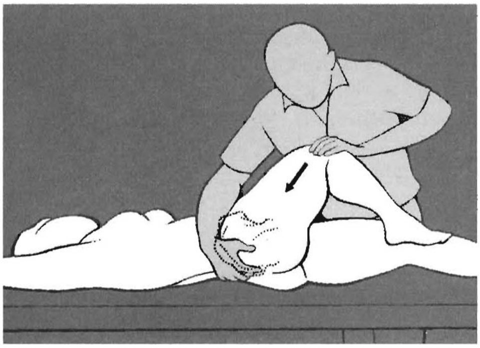


Figure 4.9 Springing the sacroiliac joint: with the patient supine, one leg flexed at the hip and knee and adducted across the pelvis, the therapist exerts pressure on the patient's knee

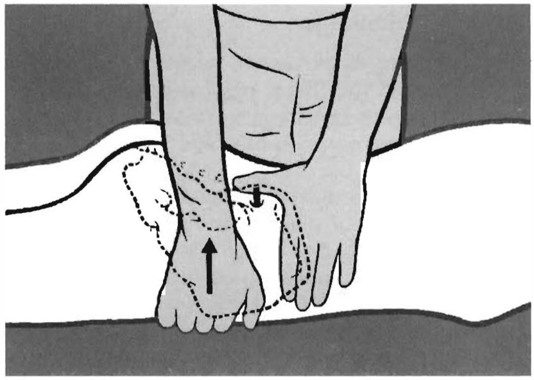


Figure 4.11 Palpation of mobility at the upper part of the sacroiliac joint with the patient prone

to stabilize the pelvis it is best if the lower leg is extended and the upper flexed, with the knee on the table. The operator puts his forearm (soft muscles) obliquely over the patient's iliac crest, so as to produce gapping between the posterior superior iliac spine and the sacrum. This is achieved by slight pressure in a ventromediocranial direction, but great care must be taken not to rotate the pelvis. Gapping is felt with the thumb of the other hand, between the posterior superior iliac spine and the sacrum (Figure 4.10). This technique thus produces a movement of the ilium against the sacrum in the horizontal plane, and it is important to point out that it can reveal blockage even if the techniques described above show normal mobility. Rhythmic repetition of this manoeuvre evokes excellent mobilization, and it can be used as a high-velocity thrust after taking up the slack (see p. 179).

Springing of the sacroiliac joint can only be examined at the upper or lower end; frequently only

Figure 4.10 With the patient lying on her side the therapist springs the ilium in an oblique ventromediocranial direction, with his forearm, to produce gapping between the posterior sacroiliac spine and the sacrum, which he palpates with the thumb of the other hand

one part of the joint is blocked. If restriction is found at the upper end the examiner places his thumb or finger on the upper end of the sacrum, while the other hand grasps the anterior spina (ASIS) from below, the patient lying prone, and lifts it rhythmically in a vertical direction. If there is no restriction this lifting movement should hardly be felt at all at the base of the sacrum. In blockage, however, it is clearly felt by the palpating thumb (Figure 4.11). At the lower end of the sacrum the examiner directly springs the end of the sacrum on the right and on the left with his thumb, from above, and compares the degree of resistance on either side.

The mobilization techniques shown in Chapter 6 can be used for diagnosis.

There are typical pain points at the upper and lower edge of the sacroiliac joint on the sacrum where increased resistance to springing may be felt, and a tender attachment point of the adductors at the symphysis. We find a slightly positive Patrick's sign with the straight leg raising test, but no pain is felt if the patient is sitting up with legs outstretched! There is some back-bending and/or stooping restriction, and pain radiates in the S1 dermatome.

Symphyseal shift

Another clinically important lesion can be described as 'symphyseal shift', the nature of which is discussed below. On palpation with the patient supine we find that the pubic bones close to the symphysis are not level; in most cases (83 out of 92 examined) the right was lower than the left. In all these cases there was also a shift at the ischial tuberosity in the prone position. In 39 cases the tuberosity was lower on the side where the pubic bone was lower; in 53 cases it was lower on the opposite side. The symphysis and adjacent parts of the pubic bone must be palpated from above, the fingers palpating the upper edge of the symphysis through the abdominal wall, then moving from side to side to compare the height of the bony structures. The ischial tuberosity must be palpated from below, i.e. in a cranial direction, from the gluteal line. Only a difference of approximately 2 cm is significant.

Where this change is clinically relevant, we find tenderness at the symphysis with corresponding TrPs in the straight abdominal muscles and hypertonus in one buttock, not necessarily accompanied by pain. Comparing resistance of deep fascias while shifting each of the buttocks in a cranial direction, there is increased resistance on the side of the hypertonus, where the tuberosity usually seems lower on palpation.

This shift is probably not related to sacroiliac blockage; it was not present in two-thirds of our cases, and specific treatment of one lesion (no thrust!) had no effect on the other. It is interesting that on examination in the standing position, no shift could be detected either at the symphysis or at the tuberosities. However, where there is marked tenderness of the symphysis, with trigger points and hypertonus of the abdominal muscles, the patient shows forward-drawn posture. This can be corrected by specific therapy. It is precisely this forward-drawn position, caused mainly by increased tension of the abdominal muscles, which is the most relevant lesion and should be routinely looked for.

In typical cases this goes hand in hand with increased tension of the muscles of the back and neck. If the cause lies in the pelvis (or below) this increased tension disappears with the patient seated. Very frequently we also find changes in function at the lower extremity, at the foot and in particular at the fibular head with a TrP in the biceps femoris.

Originally we used osteopathic 'repositioning manoeuvres' for treatment, and they worked. However, when the effect was checked by X-ray, the ischial tuberosities and the symphysis did not change position, even if at palpation the differences were considerable. What, however, did change was the position of our palpating fingers. The important conclusion is that if we palpate bone through soft tissue of unequal tension we must be prepared for '*palpatory illusion*', a phenomenon which is most important in the interpretation of findings by palpation (Figure 4.12).

More about this syndrome in Chapter 8. As the essence of this change is muscular imbalance with painful tension throughout the motor system, symptoms are very varied. For the changes described here the literature also gives terms like 'upslip and downslip' or even 'shear dysfunction' (see p. 258, Figure 7.2).

Innominate shear dysfunction

A clinically important change described by Greenman (1986) as 'innominate shear dysfunction' is occasionally found, mainly after a fall (trauma); in the supine position, one innominate appears flatter, with the ASIS rotated outwards ('outflare'), whereas the other is more prominent and rotated inwards ('inflare'). Hence the triangle formed by both ASIS and the navel is distorted. If this is not mere asymmetry, we find relative hypertonus at the lower abdomen on the side of inflare and decreased tonus on the side of outflare. (For more about this lesion see Chapter 8, p. 257)

The 'S'-reflex (Silverstolpe–Skoglund)

Silverstolpe (1989) and Skoglund (1989) described a clinically frequent and important lesion which they call 'pelvic dysfunction' with serious repercussions throughout the motor system. For diagnosis the first step is to find a very tender TrP in the mid-thoracic section of the erector spinae, more frequently on the left side where the patient indicates pain. On examination, provoking the twitch reaction we produce contraction of the low lumbar part of the erector spinae with dorsiflexion of the pelvis. If this is the case we usually find a very tender point in the lateral region of the buttock of the same side at the level of the tip of the coccyx.

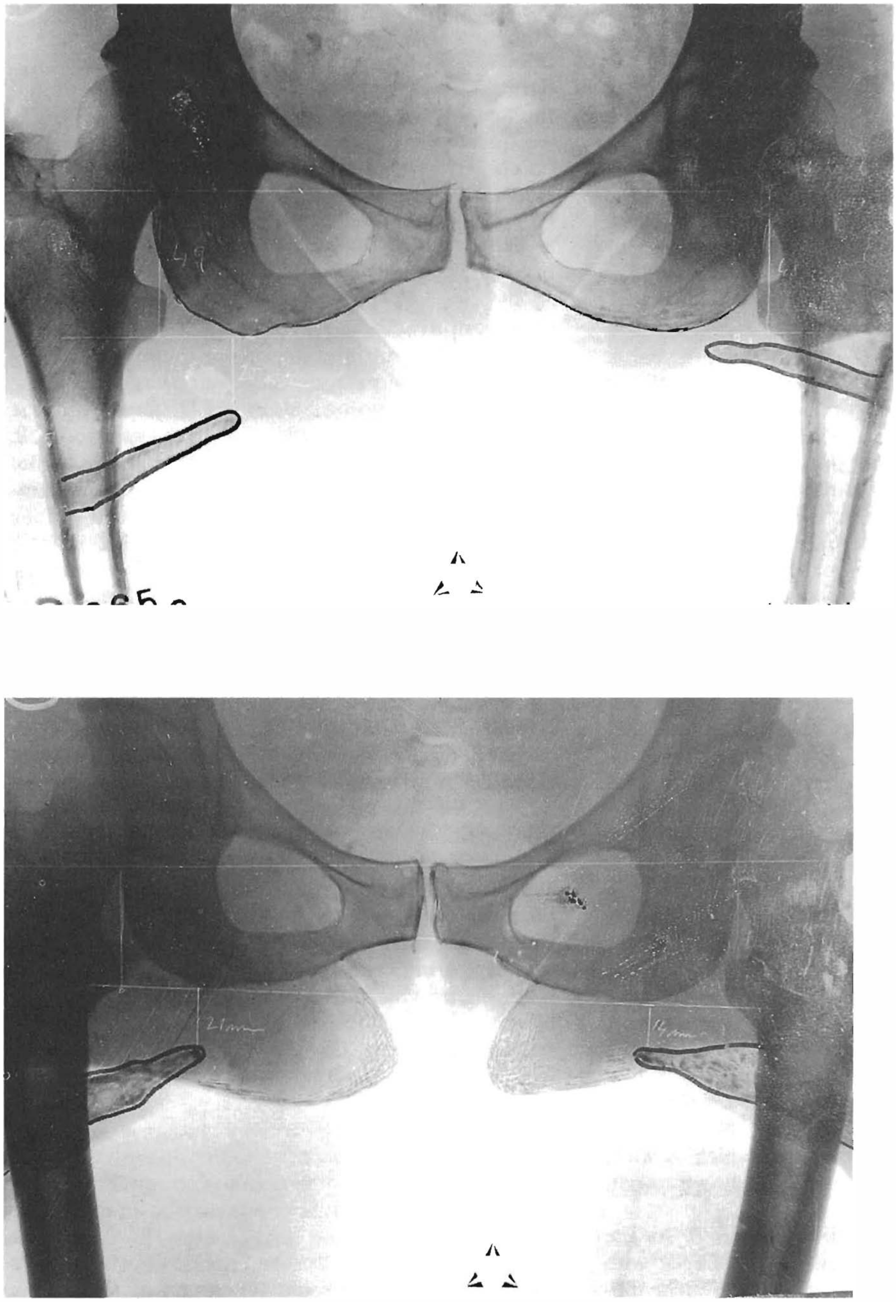
From these findings we can foretell that at palpation of the sacrotuberous ligament we will find a hard and extremely tender point. This is reached by the finger at the side of the coccyx pointing in a cranial direction. At the moment the finger feels resistance the patient experiences a sharp pain. At the same moment both the TrP at the erector spinae and the TrP at the buttock disappear. It seems unlikely that the hard TrP and this striking effect is produced by the sacrotuberous ligament. It is much more likely that it stems from the underlying m. coccygaeus as part of the pelvic diaphragm which thus can be reached by our palpating finger. (For more about this syndrome see Chapter 8, pp. 259–260)

A tender coccyx

A tender coccyx should never be missed at examination of the pelvis; it is far more frequently a sign of low-back pain than of coccygodynia (a much less common condition).

Correct palpation is crucial for diagnosis, but not as simple as it might seem. The point of tenderness is at the ventral aspect of the curved tip of the coccyx, and it is usually a very curved coccyx that presents this tenderness. Palpation is made even more difficult by the hypertonus of the glutei present in this condition. Exceptionally it may not be possible even to reach the tip of the coccyx, in which case an extremely tender coccyx must be assumed.

In addition to this most important sign there can be a visible hyperalgesic zone on the sacrum, looking



(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 4.12 Palpatory illusion: pelvic X-ray showing symmetrical position of ischial tuberosities (*a*) before and (*b*) after treatment. What has changed is the position of the examiner's fingers

like a cushion of fat covered by very smooth (taut) skin; Patrick's sign may be slightly positive on both sides, and the same is true of the straight leg raising test, as well as of spasm of the iliacus.

Ligament pain

Closely related to both sacroiliac lesions and to the tender coccyx there is the condition known as 'ligament pain' (Hackett, 1956; Barbor, 1964). It is examined and elicited by techniques that are thought to produce tension in the ligaments. According to Hackett (1956) and Barbor (1964) three ligaments are concerned: these are the sacroiliac, the iliolumbar and the sacrotuberous ligaments. The first two appear to be of considerable clinical importance. The following technique is used to provoke the pain. The patient lies supine on the table, and the examiner (standing by the table) grasps the further knee, flexes the patient's hip and adducts the knee; at about 90 degrees of hip flexion and adduction the iliolumbar ligament is tested; if flexion goes further (70–60 degrees) the sacroiliac ligaments are tested. If the operator feels resistance to increase on further adduction he holds the pressure against the knee in the direction of the axis of the thigh, thus producing a gapping effect at the site of the ligaments, and maintains this pressure for several seconds. If the iliolumbar ligament is tender, the patient feels pain in the groin; if the sacroiliac ligament is tender, the pain radiates down the leg in the S1 dermatome (Figure 4.13). Before testing the ligaments the examiner must be sure the sacroiliac joints are not blocked in either the sagittal or the horizontal planes.

On closer scrutiny, however, in the large majority of cases with a positive ligament test, resistance to adduction is increased on the painful side, so that the distance between the adducted knee and the table is considerably greater on the painful side.

Figure 4.13 Testing ligament pain: the leg is flexed at the hip and knee; taking up the slack into adduction (arrow 2) and maintaining pressure along the axis of the thigh (arrow 1), the therapist produces a gapping effect between the ilium and the sacrum (L5), producing tension in the sacroiliac (iliolumbar) ligament

Obviously, ligaments cannot be the source of this increased resistance and muscular spasm must be looked for and treated. This type of pain is found particularly in hypermobile patients suffering from static pain.

Examination of the lumbar spine

Some criteria of pelvic examination, particularly with the patient standing, are also valid for the lumbar spine. Examination of mobility should start with active movement, and I recommend back-bending. Here we are not only concerned with the total range of movement, but can follow it from the thoracolumbar region to the sacrum, noting regularity or local hypo- or hypermobility. Normally it should be possible to follow the movement down to the sacrum, as there is considerable mobility between L5 and S1 in retroflexion. If mobility ceases above S1, there is movement restriction in the segments above and even at the sacroiliac joints. In hypermobility, on the other hand, there may be a sharp bend at the thoracolumbar or at the lumbosacral junction. This is a frequent finding, and of importance; if back-bending is not restricted but is painful, this may be a sign of tender spinous processes.

When examining side-bending, care should be taken to see that the patient is in neither a forward- nor a backward-bent position, that the hands and arms slide sideways down the legs, and that the legs are straight. The patient bends as far sideways as she can, and we note (1) how far down the fingertips reach; (2) whether the spinous processes arch symmetrically and regularly to both sides; and (3) whether there is rotation synkinesis: on side-bending it is normal for the pelvis to rotate towards the convexity of the curvature, i.e. to the right when bending to the left. Loss of this synkinesis is often the first sign of movement restriction in the lumbar spine and/or in the sacroiliac joints.

On anteflexion with the knees held straight, we note how close to the floor the fingertips reach, and at the same time note the arch of the lumbar spine and the position of the pelvis, for it is important to distinguish whether the pelvis is much bent forward while the lumbar spine remains almost straight, or whether, on the contrary, the lumbar spine arches forward while the pelvis is only slightly flexed with regard to the legs. We then follow the arch of the spine, noting where it is exaggerated and where it is flattened. There is frequently a flattening at the thoracolumbar junction which should be regarded as physiological, and little or no kyphosis at the lumbosacral junction, with exaggerated kyphosis of the thoracic spine (which is not considered normal). Observing the patient from the rear we note whether the transverse processes and the erector spinae muscles are not more prominent on one side than on the other, in anteflexion. This is a sign of rotation usually found in scoliosis. In the thoracic region the corresponding phenomenon is prominence of the arch formed by the ribs. In addition to rotation there can also be trunk deviation to the side which is particularly characteristic in root syndromes. We should note not only how far the fingertips are from the floor, but also the opposite – a patient who can lay her hands flat on the floor while bending forward with knees straight; hypermobility is as significant as restricted movement. The proportions of the patient – arm, leg and trunk length – must of course be taken into account.

Forward-bending while standing may be painful and yet not restricted; one reason is the 'painful arc' described by Cyriax (1977). Almost at the beginning of forward-bending the patient feels a sharp pain, and a slight evasive reaction can often be seen in the spinal column; forward-bending may then proceed without difficulty, but on straightening up pain is again felt just before the erect position is reached. This phenomenon is never seen in anteflexion from the supine position, and is due to contraction of the erector spinae muscle on stooping; it is an important sign of true disc lesion. If, however, the patient feels pain only as she straightens up, this is a sign of articular blockage; in such cases back-bending is also restricted.

If anteflexion is restricted while standing with knees straight, it should always be examined with the patient sitting on a chair; this localizes the movement restriction into the lumbar spine. If there is no such restriction, the straight leg raising test is used, which will show restriction due to tension in the hamstrings.

Before examining movement restriction in individual segments of the lumbar spine it is advisable to examine tension (trigger points) in certain muscles corresponding to those segments. This has already been dealt with (see Table 4.1).

Examination of individual segments in the lumbar spine

Tenderness is first examined by palpating the spinous processes with the fingertips; tenderness is usually not quite symmetrical, but more pronounced on one side or the other. Then the springing test is applied; this examines both resistance and tenderness of deep structures (mainly the discs and apophyseal joints) and avoids irritation of the spinous processes. The thenar eminence of one hand is placed on one transverse process and the hypothenar on the other; very slight pressure is exerted by the extended arm to take up the slack, and then to spring the vertebra by a slight extra push (Figure 4.14).

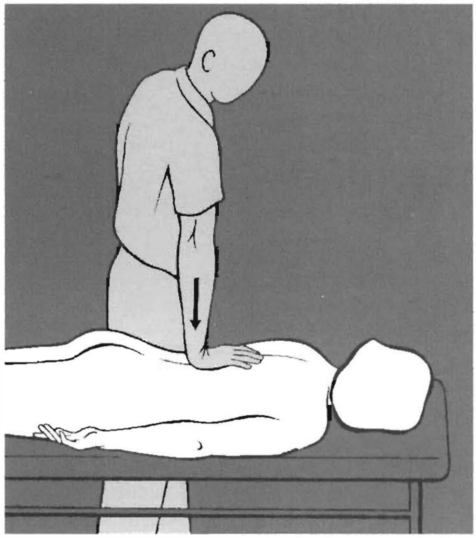


Figure 4.14 Examination of springing of the lumbar and thoracic spine, using heel of the hand contact with the arm outstretched

Another method is to use two fingertips of one hand, placing one on either side of the spinous process, i.e. on the transverse processes of one vertebra; the hypothenar of the extended other arm is then placed across these fingertips, springing the vertebra after taking up the slack in the same way as before, again taking care to avoid irritating the spinous processes (Figure 4.15).

If increased resistance can be felt and the patient feels pain, this is probably due to articular blockage. If, however, there is no increased resistance and yet the patient feels pain, there is likely to be a disc lesion. The springing test, however, cannot localize movement restriction or hypermobility in a single motor segment precisely. To achieve this, specific mobility tests must be used.

To test retroflexion (extension)

The patient lies on her side with both hips and knees flexed. The hip should be flexed to about 100 degrees. The examiner leans against the patient's knees with his thighs, fixing the spinous process of the upper vertebra of the examined segment with one finger, reinforced by the fingers of the other hand placed over it. He now exerts slight pressure against the patient's knees in the presumed direction of the intervertebral disc of that segment so as to take up the slack, and then springs the segment by a slight additional push with his thighs; he feels a slight shift of the pelvis and the lower vertebra against the one that is fixed. In cases of blockage no movement is felt if the slack has been properly taken up. If normal springing is felt, dorsiflexion takes place between two adjacent vertebrae, as can be seen in an image

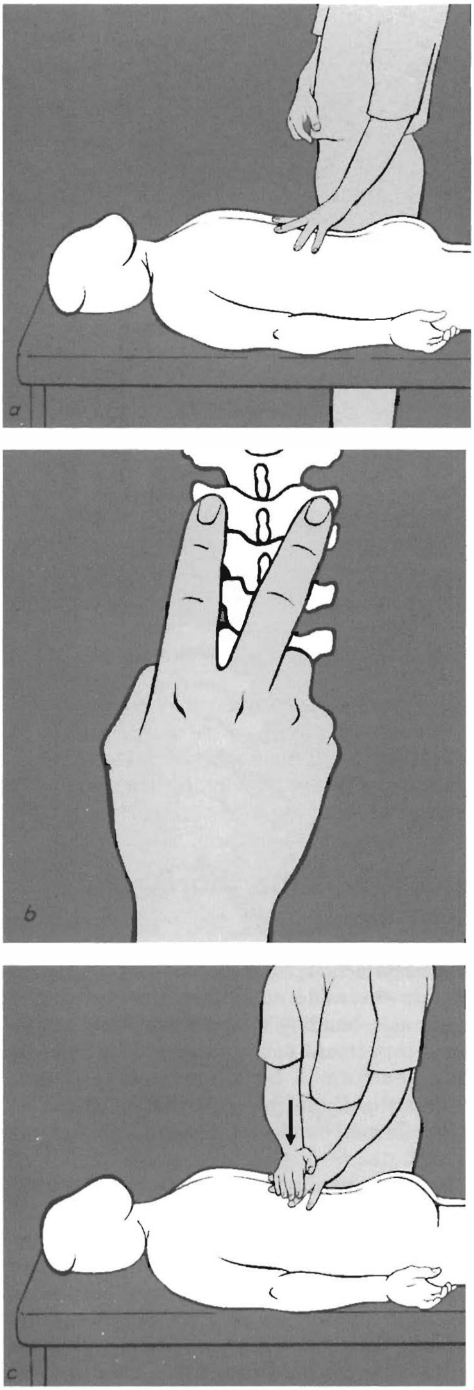


Figure 4.15 Examination of springing (as in Figure 4.14). (*a*) To avoid pressure on the spinous process, two fingers of the hand coming from below are placed on the transverse processes on either side. (*b*) On the skeleton. (*c*) With the ulnar edge of the extended arm over both fingertips on the transverse processes, the therapist springs a lumbar (thoracic) vertebra

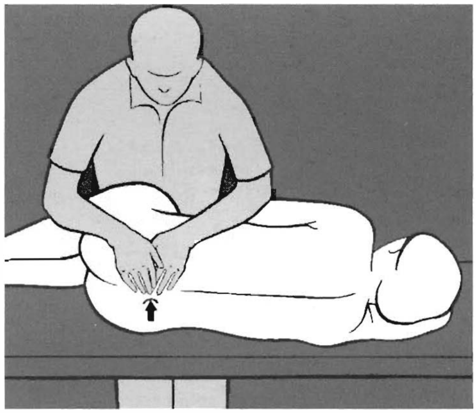


Figure 4.16 Testing retroflexion in one lumbar segment: the patient lies on her side, the therapist exerting springing pressure on both knees and fixing the upper spinous process with both hands.

intensifier. If there is hypermobility there may be some additional shift (Figure 4.16).

Retroflexion can also be examined by grasping both the patient's feet above the heels with one hand. The patient lies on her side with slightly bent knees and hips and the examiner puts one finger of his other hand between the spinous processes of the motor segment he intends to examine. In this position the examiner shifts both legs horizontally in a dorsal direction producing retroflexion of the lumbar spine. With the finger of the hand palpating the spinous processes he feels that the adjacent spinous processes approach one another. When the slack is taken up he springs the segment into retroflexion. If there is movement restriction resistance is increased and the segment does not spring (Figure 4.17).

Examination of anteflexion

The patient again lies on her side with flexed hips and knees. With one elbow the examiner fixes the upper thoracic region while pushing both flexed knees against the patient's abdomen, using his belly and thighs; this produces maximum anteflexion. With the index finger of the hand fixing the upper thoracic spine he palpates between the two spinous processes of the motor segment, sensing movement (separation of the spinous processes) and tension (at maximum flexion). With his other hand over the patient's buttocks he reinforces flexion of the hips (this hand may also be used for palpation if the patient is very tall and the operator cannot reach the relevant segment with the upper hand). The most important technical detail in this manoeuvre is the fixation of the upper thoracic spine with the elbow

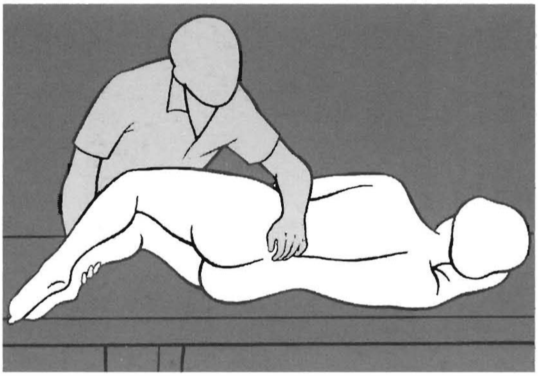


Figure 4.17 Examination of lumbar spine retroflexion by moving both legs in a dorsal direction

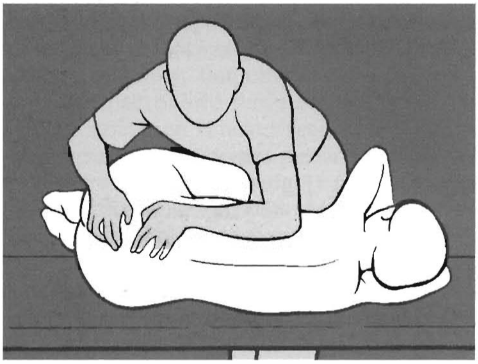


Figure 4.18 Testing anteflexion in one lumbar segment: the patient lies on her side, the therapist pushing the patient's knees against the chest, exerting counter-pressure with his elbow. The hand on the patient's buttock increases anteflexion of the pelvis, while the forefinger of the other hand palpates movement (tension) between the spinous processes

while the knee is pushed towards the abdomen, i.e. in the direction of the elbow (Figure 4.18).

Examination of side-bending

The patient is in the same position as in the last section but the lower leg is bent at right angles to the hip, the knee protruding slightly over the edge of the table; the upper leg is flexed even more so that the foot lies behind the thigh of the lower leg. The operator stands by the table, facing the patient, and grasps the heel of the lower leg with one hand. With the other hand he fixes the patient's flank, the heel of the hand creating a fulcrum at the level of the motor segment being examined, while he palpates between the spinous processes with one finger, from above. The hand holding the patient's heel lifts the lower leg, producing lateroflexion of

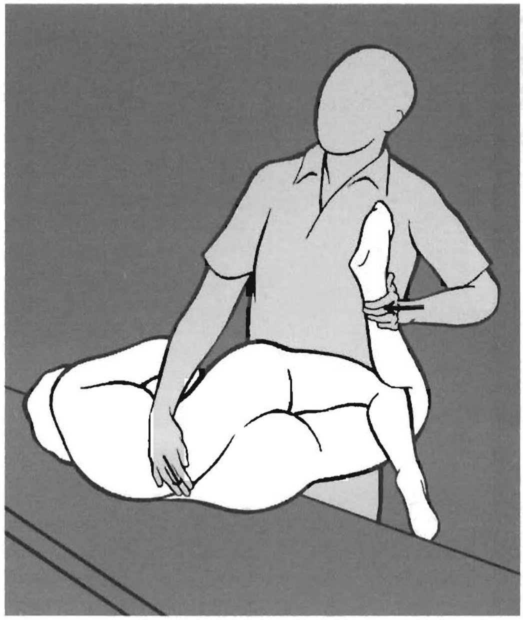


Figure 4.19 Lateroflexion of the lumbar spine

the lumbar spine. With the fingers of the other hand he senses movement and, finally, resistance (Figure 4.19).

Examination of the thoracic spine and the ribs

Active mobility is first examined, with the patient seated astride the table and performing ante- and retroflexion, side-bending and rotation. In rotation symmetrical movement can be assessed by sight by tracing the line formed by the spinous processes, especially in a slightly kyphotic position, and by noting the angle formed between the patient's shoulders and the table.

As in the lumbar spine, the spinous processes are palpated for tenderness; this is best done in a kyphotic position (Figure 4.20). Springing is performed by the same technique as that described for the lumbar spine.

For the examination of passive movement the patient sits on the table with hands clasped behind her head and the elbows brought together in front of the face. To test back-bending the examiner stands by the side of the patient, grasping both elbows from below, so as to extend her trunk and palpate with one finger of the other hand between the spinous processes of the segment being examined, sensing movement and then resistance in the end-position (Figure 4.21).

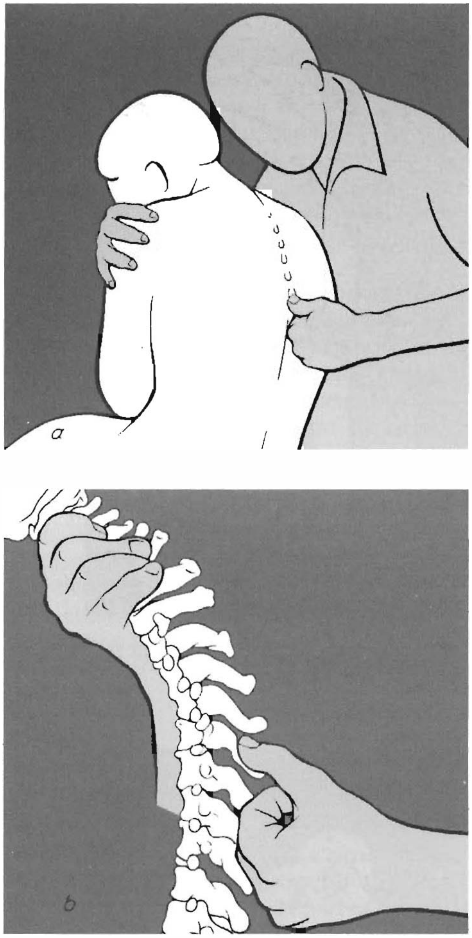


Figure 4.20 (*a*) Palpating tenderness of the tip of the spinous processes of the thoracic spine, separated by anteflexion. (*b*) Skeletal diagram

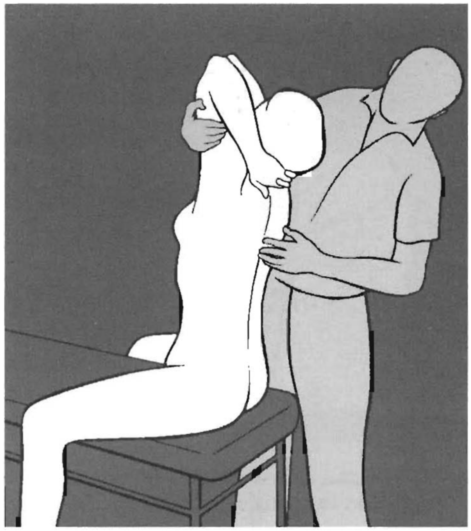


Figure 4.21 Examination of retroflexion of the thoracic spine

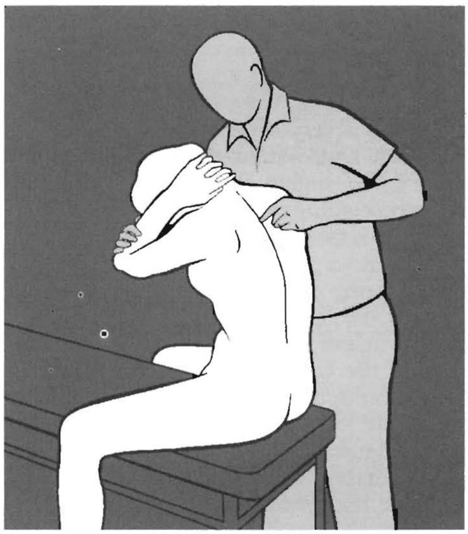


Figure 4.22 Examination of anteflexion of the thoracic spine

To examine forward-bending the operator grasps the patient's elbows from above in order to anteflex the trunk, again palpating between the spinous processes with one finger of the other hand, for movement and for tension in the end-position. In both these examinations it is important to move the patient so as to provide maximum ante- or retroflexion at the site of palpation (Figure 4.22). It is also possible to examine ante- and retroflexion in a similar way with the patient lying on her side; this position is used for mobilization into retroflexion (see Figure 6.35, p. 181).

To examine side-bending the operator stands behind the patient with one hand round the patient's ribs at the level of the segment being examined, the thumb against the interspace between the spinous processes of the segment and the other hand against the patient's shoulder. He side-bends the patient with the latter hand while his other forms a fulcrum against the ribs, the thumb palpating the movement of the spinous processes and resistance in the end-position. The bending movement may be performed at the level of the patient's shoulder; if the upper thoracic spine is being examined, this hand may be against the patient's neck; during examination of the thoracolumbar spine it may be below the shoulder. The other hand must always stabilize the chest from

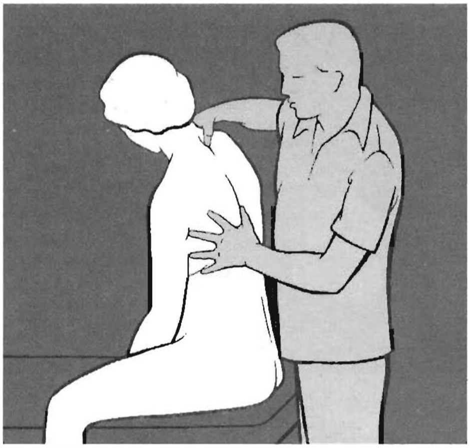


Figure 4.23 Examination of lateral flexion of the thoracic spine, standing behind the patient

the side, creating a solid fulcrum, even if the palpating thumb appears to be far from the spinous processes when the patient is erect. During side-bending the thumb usually reaches the spinous processes, owing to rotation coupled with side-bending (Figure 4.23).

If, however, the patient has a very broad back and the examiner has a very small hand the following technique is more appropriate: the examiner stands at the patient's side, slightly behind her, and grasps the further elbow raising it above her head. The examiner places his thenar eminence with the thumb parallel to the spinous processes on the side to which side-bending is being examined. With the tip of his thumb he fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra of the motor segment. He now produces lateroflexion of the trunk by pulling the patient's elbow towards himself, the thenar and the thumb creating a fulcrum localizing lateroflexion to the tip of the thumb (Figure 4.24).

To examine rotation the operator sits the patient astride the table and grasps one shoulder, passing his forearm under her axilla on the other side. He first carries out maximum rotation to one side, repeating the manoeuvre on the other side to compare the two. For examination of individual segments a slightly kyphotic position is recommended, making the spinous processes more accessible both to inspection and to palpation. If there is movement restriction the blocked segment is often visible: there is very little rotation if we follow from the lumbar spine into the thoracic up to the blocked segment, whereas there is hypermobility above it, so that the line of the spinous processes angulates. On the side where rotation is free we see the unbroken line of the spinous processes from the lumbar up to the thoracic region. Palpating the spinous processes of

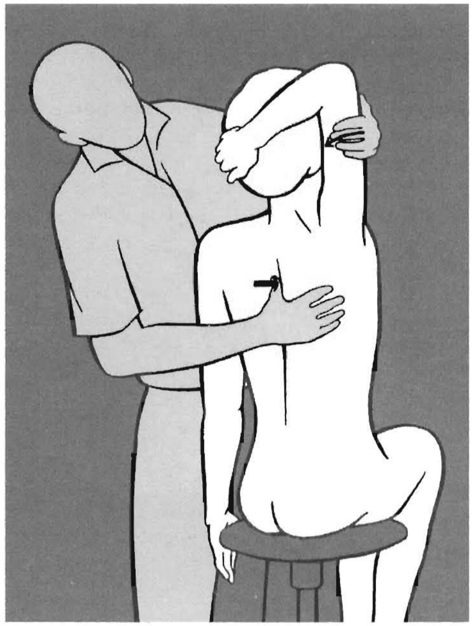


Figure 4.24 Examination of lateral flexion of the thoracic spine, standing at the side of the patient

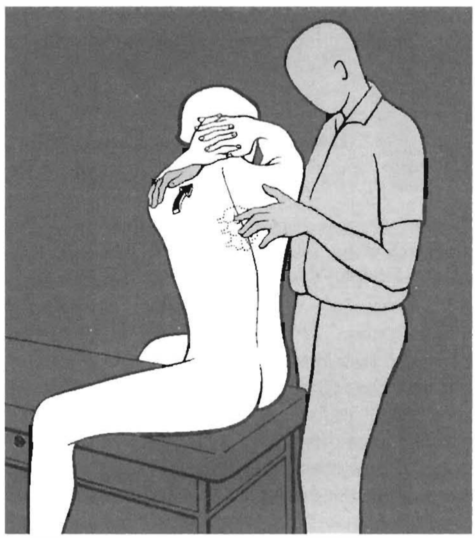


Figure 4.25 Examination of rotation of the thoracic spine

the blocked segment with two fingers, we feel no relative mobility, whereas on the normal side rotation will be felt first at the upper and a little later at the lower spinous process (Figure 4.25). It is most important for the examiner to rotate the patient exactly round her body axis, and to palpate with relaxed fingers which can follow the movement of the spinous processes. This is not easy, and it is therefore a great advantage to form a diagnosis by inspection; this is usually possible in kyphosis unless the patient is too obese. Rotation restriction is most significant in the lowest thoracic spine and at the thoracolumbar junction, and less so in the middle or upper thoracic regions. (Recent investigations have shown that what we see and palpate in this case concerns in the first place the spinous processes and not necessarily the entire motor segment; see p. 54 Figure 3.18.)

Mobility of the thoracic spine can be examined with the patient prone, breathing slowly in and out: not only can we see how the whole of the thorax lifts but the spinous processes can be seen spreading like a fan. This fan-like movement can be followed from the lumbar spine up to the cervicothoracic junction. To achieve this we recommend instructing the patient first to breathe into his abdomen (lumbar spine) and then into his chest, and as far up as he can. As a rule, at the point where there is an interruption there is blockage; after treatment we see the normal mobility restored during breathing. The exception to this rule is patients with a faulty respiration technique who are unable to breathe into the posterior wall of the thorax even when prone.

Ribs

We now proceed to examine the thorax, particularly the ribs. For screening it is useful to move the flat hands over the rib cage, noting any asymmetry, and particularly whether any rib is prominent. Just as we palpate the spinous process for tenderness, so we palpate the most prominent part of the rib, the costal angle; in the region of the upper ribs we have first to abduct the shoulder-blade, by moving the elbow towards the shoulder of the opposite side.

In theory, a rib can be blocked both in the expiratory and the inspiratory position; from this it follows that it is more prominent if blocked in inhalation, and less so if blocked in exhalation. Again it is wiser to rely on examination and comparison of mobility rather than on position; this means that we examine rib movement on both sides during breathing in and out, examining both by inspection and palpation. It is particularly useful to insist on deep inhalation and exhalation: in the former, the restricted side will stop breathing in sooner than the healthy side; during exhalation the same will happen. It is clearly recognizable that movement continues on one side but is arrested on the other. A particularly striking phenomenon is the 'overtake' phenomenon, found characteristically in the region of the upper ribs: palpation approximately in the nipple line, or even closer to the sternum, often shows that the ribs are not quite on the same level on the two sides. If the patient is asked to take a deep breath, the rib that stood lower will usually be higher than that on the other side, i.e. it has 'overtaken' the other rib. The side of lesser mobility is usually the side of mobility restriction.

Figure 4.26 Palpation of resistance at the (upper) ribs at retroflexion of the thorax, according to Kubis (personal communication)

E. Kubis (unpublished observations) has described the best method of diagnosing blockage by increased resistance to (passive) mobility during back-bending: the patient sits on the edge of the table with the hand of the side to be examined behind her head, so that the elbow points upwards. The examiner stands on the other side, grasping the elbow from in front and provoking back-bending. With the fingers of the other hand at the costal angle of the rib under examination he creates a fulcrum and senses resistance to back-bending, resistance that increases if there is blockage (Figure 4.26).

It is important that the fingers fixing the rib should be level on the costal angle; curiously enough, the shoulder-blade is no obstacle to effective palpation. Resistance is felt through the shoulder-blade in blockage of the second to fifth ribs, i.e. the region where rib blockage occurs most frequently. Care should be taken that only back-bending takes place and no rotation of the patient's trunk.

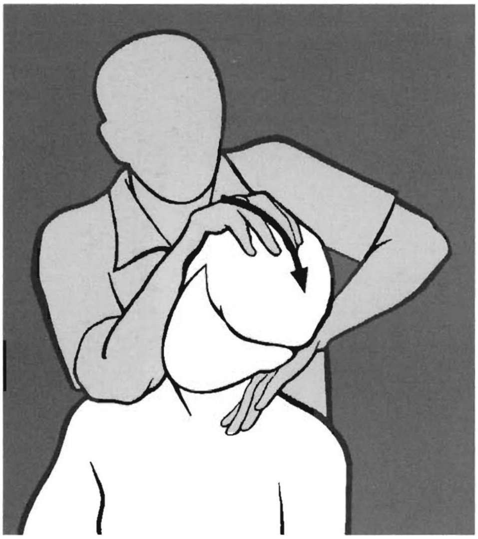
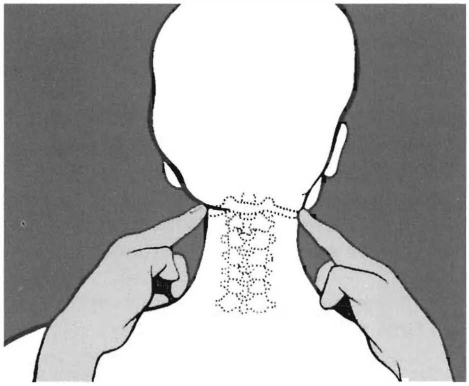
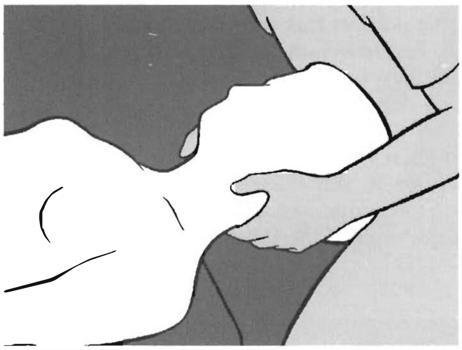


Figure 4.27 Examination of a blocked first rib by forward bending of the head rotated to the opposite side



(a)



(b)

Figure 4.28 Palpation of the transverse processes of the atlas (*a*) with the patient seated; (*b*) cervical spine, supine

Examination of the first rib

In derangement of this rib, pain is felt mainly in the shoulder and in the cervical region; there is a typical tender spot, which can be palpated beneath the clavicle towards the manubrium sterni. The typical restriction of movement is impaired anteflexion of the rotated head: the examiner stands behind the seated patient and rotates her head away from the affected rib. With the radial aspect of the forefinger of the other hand he creates a fulcrum parallel to and above the clavicle, over which the rotated head and neck are bent forward (Figure 4.27). The result of this manoeuvre is compared for both sides. Increased resistance and even tenderness may be felt on springing the first rib from above (see Figure 6.50, p. 188). Direct movement palpation of the first rib is performed by inserting the forefinger behind the clavicle, with the patient supine, and following the movement of the rib during inhalation and exhalation.

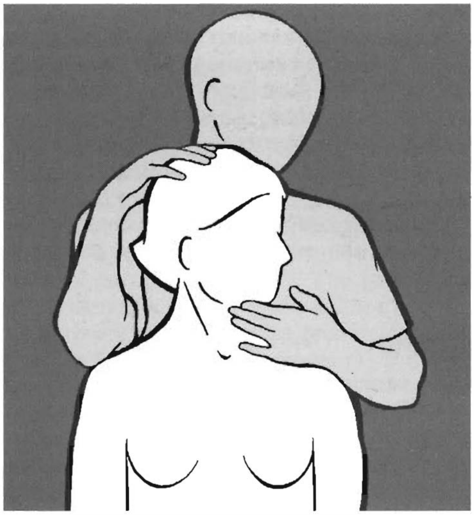
Examination of the cervical spine

After general inspection of the head and neck position we test active mobility – ante- and retroflexion, side-bending and rotation. When dealing with the cervical spine it is important not to omit examination of resisted isometric mobility, which reliably reveals pain due to muscular lesions; this is frequently significant in acute trauma.

The best position for the patient during palpation is supine, the head resting against the examiner's thigh or belly, and slightly raised. In this position the muscles are relaxed and we can palpate not only the spinous processes but also the transverse and articular processes, while if the head is slightly raised we can palpate the posterior arch of the atlas. In order to palpate the lateral aspect of the spinous process of C2, which is one of the principal pain points, the head must be bent to the opposite side. The transverse processes of the atlas are felt between the mastoid processes and the ramus of the mandible, but they should be palpated from below, with the patient seated, because they are more prominent than the transverse processes of the lower cervical vertebrae (Figure 4.28).

For exact orientation it is important to localize correctly the spinous processes of C7; this is done during retroflexion of the cervical spine. Placing one finger on C7 and the next on C6, we will note that while C7 remains in place, C6 moves forward and is difficult to palpate in retroflexion. (NB: One should not rely on the vertebra prominens being inevitably C7.)

Examination of passive mobility must begin with the mobility of the whole of the cervical spine. The patient is seated and the examiner must fix (immobilize) the shoulder girdle. He begins with passive retroflexion: standing by the side of the patient he moves her head into retroflexion with one hand while the other fixes the cervicothoracic junction. In passive anteflexion the patient's chin is drawn to the sternum; this is a movement that is often restricted because of shortened neck muscles. If maximum anteflexion is immediately painful, and there is no meningitis or acute radicular pain, the pain felt by the patient is usually due to restricted anteflexion of the occiput against the atlas; if, however, pain is felt after 15–20 s, this is most probably ligament pain (see pp. 270–271), Anteflexion headache). In order to examine side-bending of the cervical spine, the operator must fix the shoulder of the side towards which the head is bent and compare mobility in both directions. (If he fixed the shoulder away from which the head is bent he would then be examining the stretching of the trapezius muscle or even of the scaleni.)


(*a*)

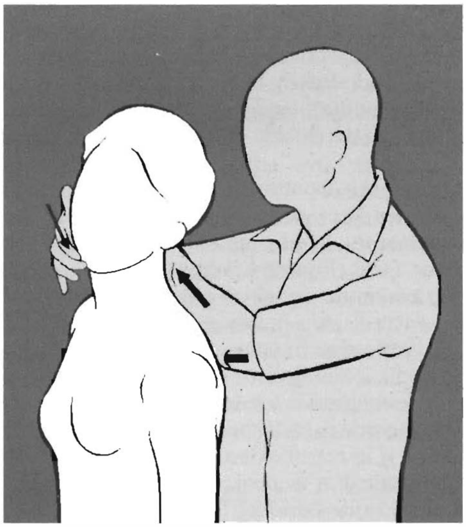

(*b*)

Figure 4.29 Examination of rotation of the entire cervical spine: (*a*) both hands moving in the same direction; (*b*) both hands and arms moving in opposite directions. The latter is particularly useful for examination of rotation in retroflexion

Rotation

With the patient's head and neck erect

The examiner either fixes the shoulder away from which the head is turned, with one elbow, observing how close he can bring the chin to the shoulder on one side or the other; or he crosses both hands and, with his forearm, he fixes from behind the shoulder towards which the head is turned, moving the occiput. His other hand moves the chin. Care must be taken to perform rotation of the head and neck round a vertical axis (Figure 4.29).

With the head in maximum anteflexion

The examiner stands behind the patient; with one hand on the occiput he moves the head and neck into maximum anteflexion, while his other hand holds the patient's chin. The rotation he now effects is mainly between the occiput and C2, i.e. between atlas and axis. Again, care must be taken to rotate round the axis of the head and the cervical spine, i.e. the operator moves the occiput from one side to the other, while the chin remains almost fixed. A word of caution: because the examiner is standing behind the patient, it is the occiput he sees, and he is therefore tempted to move the chin!

With the patient's chin drawn towards the neck

As Jirout (1979) has shown, movement restriction of the C2/3 segment can be selectively shown by this movement. Again the examiner stands behind the patient, rotating the head with one hand on the occiput and one on the chin. The latter is necessary mainly to fix the chin against the neck, while it is the hand on the occiput that rotates the head, the axis of rotation being close behind the forehead. At the same time some degree of traction is applied to the head.

In retroflexion

This reveals blockage below C3; the greater the retroflexion, the more caudal the segment causing it. Here, too, the chin should be almost fixed while the hand on the occiput produces rotation. To fix the patient's shoulders, the examiner's arms should move in opposite directions, i.e. rotating the patient's head to the left he grasps the chin with his right hand (pushing the chin slightly to the left) and the occiput with his left, pushing towards the right and resisting rotation of the shoulder with his left forearm (Figure 4.29*b*).

After these more or less screening techniques we must proceed to the most important specific techniques.

Side-bending

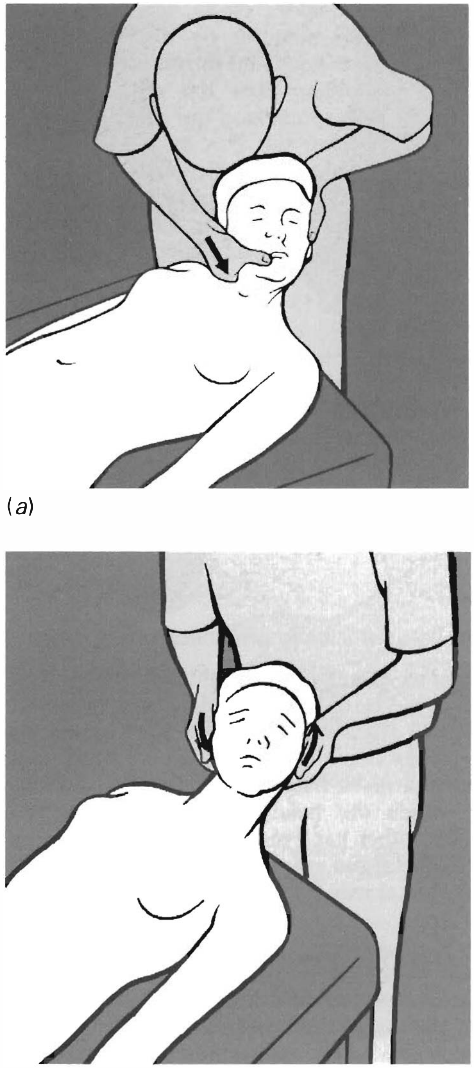
This can be performed with the patient seated or supine; in each case the examiner bends the patient's head sideways with one hand while the other creates a fulcrum with the aid of the medial aspect of the forefinger against the transverse process of the lower vertebra of the segment under examination. Both the range of movement and the resistance in end-position must be noted. In the supine position the patient's head is projected over the end of the table and cradled in the examiner's hand. It is advisable to rotate the head slightly in the opposite direction to that of side-bending, and to lift it (Figure 4.30*a*). This technique is applicable from C1/2 to C5/6 and even C6/7.

To examine side-bending at C1/2, the cervical spine should be kept straight up to C2 while the operator rotates the head round an axis through the bridge of the nose (Figure 4.30*b*).

So as to determine on which side the apophyseal joint is restricted, side-bending can be examined with the cervical spine in ante- or in retroflexion, by raising the head in the former case, or lowering it in the latter. If restriction is felt in anteflexion the joint on the opposite side is restricted in side-bending and in anteflexion, if in retroflexion, the joint on the side to which lateroflexion is carried out is restricted in retroflexion and side-bending.

Dealing with the cervicothoracic junction, with the patient seated the examiner must take care to maintain the whole of the cervicothoracic spine erect, and the neck even in slight retroflexion, while the head must be slightly rotated in the direction opposite to that of the side-bending. With the thumb of the other hand he creates a fulcrum against the spinous processes of the lower vertebra of the examined segment (Figure 4.31).

The same effect can be achieved with the patient lying on her side: the examiner stands in front of the patient, cradling her head and neck in his forearm and thus producing a side-bending movement, while the thumb of his other hand fixes the spinous processes from above (from the side; see Figure 4.34). In both cases the hand that side-bends the cervical spine also fixes (pushes) the spinous process of the upper vertebra, with the thenar (hypothenar).



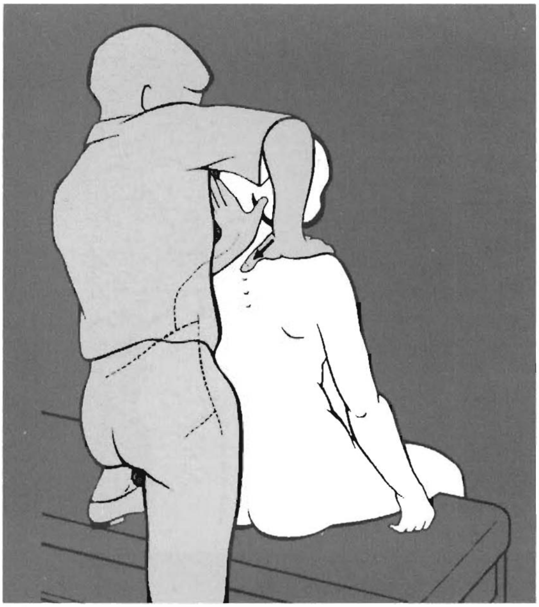
(*a*)

(*b*)

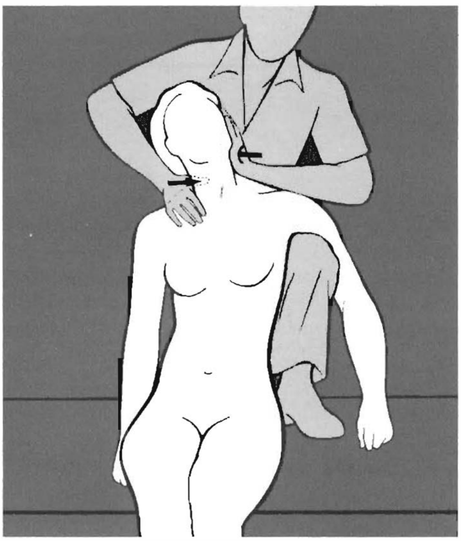
Figure 4.30 Examination of passive lateral flexion of individual segments of the cervical spine with the patient supine: (*a*) in the lower cervical spine; (*b*) between the atlas and axis

Rotation

The patient is seated while the examiner stands behind her and fixes between thumb and forefinger of one hand the vertebral arch of the lower vertebra of the relevant segment, from one transverse process to the other. The examiner now rotates the patient's head (usually with his other hand on the chin) until he feels that the transverse process is engaged against his thumb or forefinger. He begins with the axis, establishing the range of movement between atlas and axis, proceeding from one vertebral arch



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 4.31 Examination of lateral springing at the cervicothoracic junctions, by a push with the thumb against the lateral aspect of the lower spinous process of the segment examined

to the next. The range of movement should increase step-wise from one segment to the next. If there is blockage in a mobile segment, the absence of this increase in one or both directions should be noted (Figure 4.32*a*).

This technique is particularly suitable for demonstration in the lecture hall of movement restriction of single mobile segments, and equally suitable for optical registration. Berger (1984) has constructed a device (cervicomotograph) which is a helmet fixed to the ceiling by joints and rods. The patient is seated, looking at a fixed point in order to determine the neutral position of the head. Using the technique described here the operator first examines the segment C1/2 by fixation of C2, then C2/3 by fixation of C3, and so on down to C5/6; capacity transducers in the rod joints make electronic recordings of the range of movement possible. The resulting graph is a 'cervicomotogram' (Figure 4.32*b*, *c*).

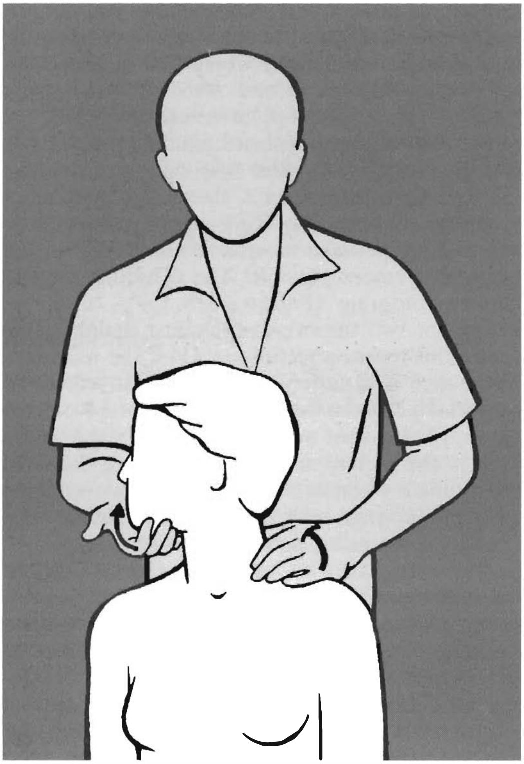
There are two important technical details to be noted in this rotation technique: (1) if the examiner fixes the arch of a vertebra he must do so exactly in the neutral position, i.e. he must sense the correct position; (2) he must not use force to fix the vertebral arch: the patient simply stops turning the head at the moment when he senses the examiner's fingers coming into contact with the articular process from behind by some reflex action.

Rotation can also be examined in the cervicothoracic junction; the patient's head is held against the examiner's shoulder (by the forearm), nose and chin turned towards her elbow; the head and neck are thus turned to the side. The examiner's hypothenar and little finger are at the cervicothoracic junction from above, the little finger round the spinous process of C7 or Th1. The thumb of his other hand exerts springing pressure against the spinous process, opposing further rotation after the slack has been taken up (Figure 4.32*d*).

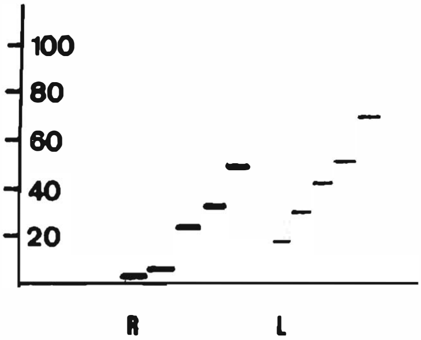
A simple screening technique is to hold the spinous process between both thumbs, from C7 down to Th3 in succession, as the patient rotates the neck as far as possible while maintaining neck and thorax erect. The examiner senses the movement of the spinous process he fixes between his thumbs from side to side.

Shifting techniques

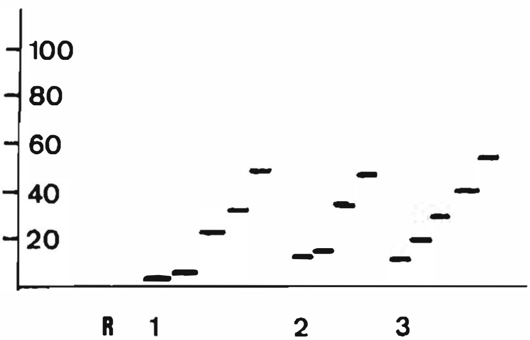
These are used to examine joint play in the cervical spine and can be carried out in an anteroposterior and in a laterolateral direction. The examiner stands at the side of the seated patient and puts his arm round her head in such a way that his elbow is in front of her face or forehead, while his little finger grasps the vertebral arch of the upper vertebra of the segment to be tested. With the other hand he fixes the vertebral arch of the lower vertebra between thumb and forefinger from behind. With his arm on the patient's head he now (1) pushes the head and the upper vertebra backwards, taking up the slack and finally springing the end-position against the thumb and finger of the fixing hand; or (2) he side-shifts the patient's head and upper vertebra against either the thumb or the forefinger of the fixing hand, first taking up the slack and then springing the end-position (Figure 4.33*a*). In this way



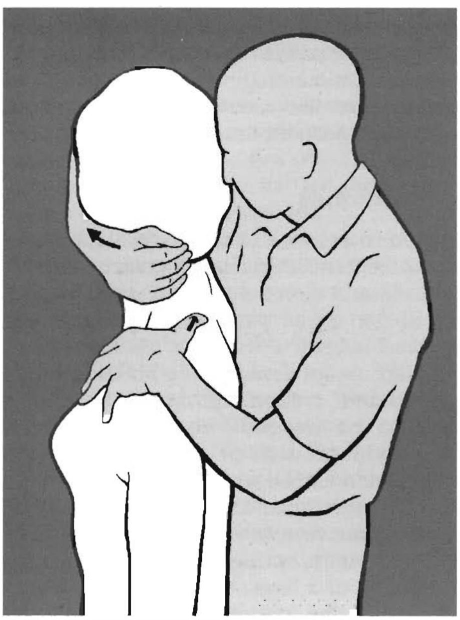
(a)



(b)



(c)

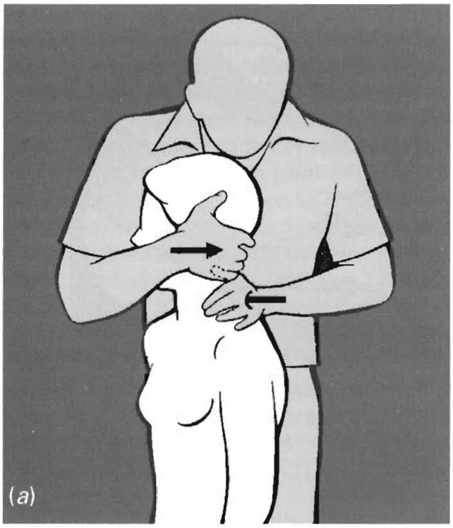


(d)

Figure 4.32 (*a*) Examination (mobilization) of restricted rotation in the cervical spine with the patient seated (arrow: fixation by the thumb from behind). (*b*) 'Cervicomotogram' (from M. Berger, personal communication) shows on examination of right rotation (thick lines) movement restriction at C1/2 and C2/3, and hypermobility at C3/4, rotation to the left (thin lines) being normal. (*c*) The same case: (1) right rotation only; (2) after treatment of C1/2; (3) after treatment of C2/3. (*d*) Examination (mobilization) of rotation at the cervicothoracic junction

he can examine the cervical segments from C2/3 down to C5/6 and also in the anteroposterior direction, the occiput against the atlas – here I recommend slight anteflexion of the head. The fixing hand stabilizes the arch of the axis, but shifting occurs exclusively between occiput and atlas because no shifting movement can occur between the anterior arch of the atlas and the odontoid process (Figure 4.33*a*).

From C6/7 to T1/2 or even T2/3 it is again only possible to carry out anteroposterior shifts, with the patient seated. The examiner applies his hand to the mass of the patient's upper trapezius muscle, from above, producing a backward shift, while he fixes the



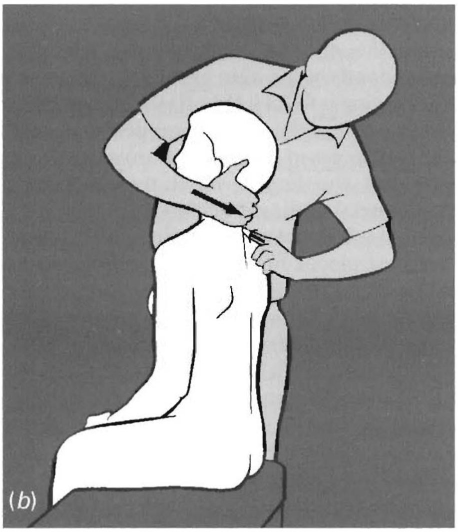


Figure 4.33 Examination of dorsal shift (springing) of the cranial against the caudal adjacent vertebra (*a*) in the cervical spine and (*b*) in the cervicothoracic junction: the head and cranial vertebra of the examined segment are shifted (backwards), while mobility (resistance) is felt at the spinous process or vertebral arch of the lower vertebra

spinous process of the lower vertebra of the segment with one finger or the thumb of the other hand and the hand between his forearm and chest while moving his trunk backwards (Figure 4.33*b*).

Shift can also be examined with the patient lying on her side; the examiner stands in front of her, grasping her head in his arm and stabilizing it against his chest, while his little finger clasps the vertebral arch of the upper vertebra of the segment being examined. The other hand fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra with his thumb. The examiner

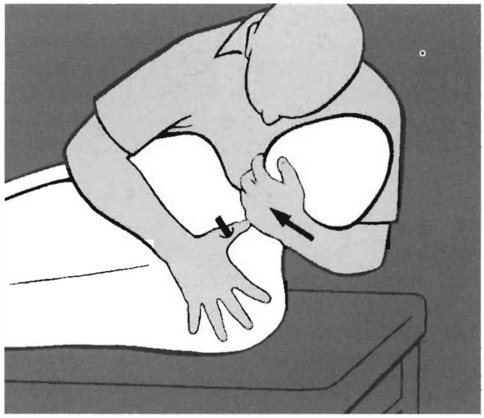


Figure 4.34 Examination of the cervicothoracic junction with the patient lying on her side

may now push the patient's head backwards or upwards, i.e. laterally in the direction of the fixing thumb; downwards the movement is less effective. In the cervicothoracic region the hand coming from above again pushes against the mass of the upper trapezius muscle to produce a backward shift; it may also push upwards, producing a lateral shift against the spinous process of the upper vertebra, in the direction of the thumb of the other hand fixing the spinous process of the lower vertebra from above (Figure 4.34). It is important that the push from below should always be delivered at the level of the upper vertebra of the segment, so that there are no segments separating the examining hands! Both taking up the slack and springing should be carried out with minimum force. To side-bend the elbow of the arm performing the movement should shift on the examination table and not be raised, the hand rotating and side-bending the patient's head automatically. These techniques for examining shift (joint play) are among the most sensitive, revealing blockage in the cervical and cervicothoracic spine that is as yet unexposed by any other technique.

Movement between atlas and occiput

1. Without using any force, the examiner stands behind the seated patient with his fingers on her face and chin and brings the head into maximum rotation, stabilizing it against his chest and taking care to see that the head is erect, rotating correctly round a vertical axis. After taking up the slack he springs maximum rotation with the minimum of force (see Figure 4.29*a*). With a fingertip of the other hand he senses springing at the transverse process of the atlas. An alternative method is to fix the atlas with the thumb and forefinger against the transverse process on each side from behind, (see Figure 4.28*a*, p. 108) and to grasp

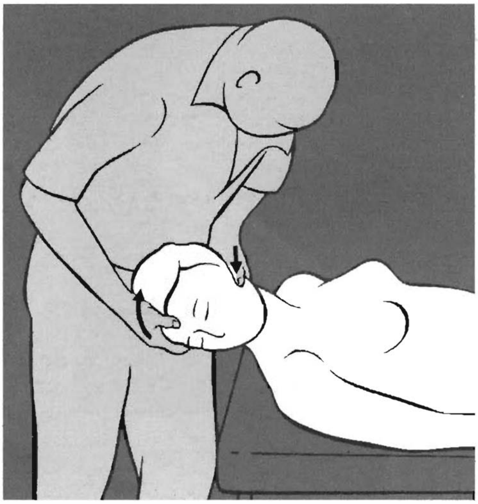


Figure 4.35 Examination of lateral flexion between occiput and atlas with the head rotated to the opposite side

the patient's head with the other arm in order to produce a very small rotatory movement while slightly side-bending the head in the opposite direction. In order to reach those transverse processes from behind the diverging thumb and forefinger must be inclined, pointing upwards beneath the occiput.

2. Side-bending – The patient lies supine with her head over the edge of the table; the examiner rotates the head so as to lock C1/2, i.e. at least about 50 degrees. He now side-bends the head against the cervical spine (which is erect). Head rotation need not exceed 50 degrees, an important point to remember with elderly patients (Figure 4.35).

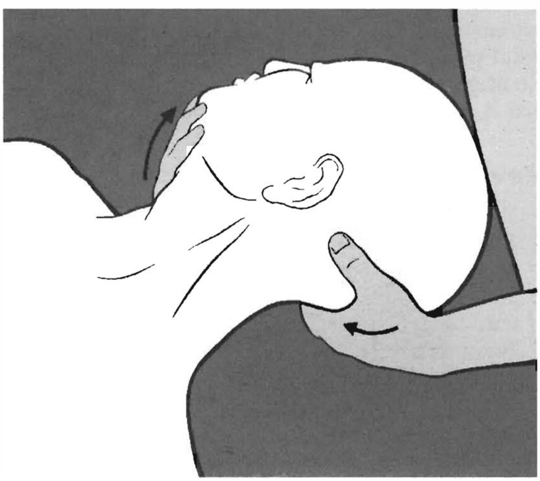


Figure 4.36 Examination of retroflexion between atlas and occiput with the head rotated

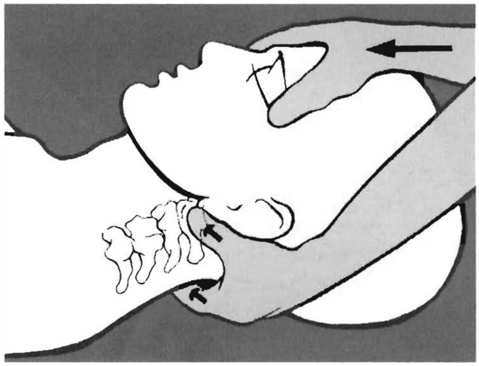


Figure 4.37 Examination of anteflexion between occiput and atlas with fixation of the transverse processes of the atlas

3. Retroflexion – The patient is supine with her head over the end of the table; the examiner places one hand on the chin and the other on the occiput, rotating it to lock the atlas/axis, and bending it back against the cervical spine. Care must be taken not to grasp the occiput too close to the atlas, so that the fingers meet no obstruction before full back-bending is achieved (Figure 4.36).
4. Anteflexion – The patient is supine on the table; the examiner places his hand under her occiput from one side so that his thumb is resting against one transverse process of the atlas and his index finger against the other, producing fixation of the arch of the atlas. With his other hand on the patient's forehead he induces anteflexion (Figure 4.37). Anteroposterior shift of the occiput against the atlas has already been described under shift techniques (see Figure 4.33*b*, p. 113).

Examination of the extremity joints

Before going into detail I must stress once again that correct or disturbed function of the locomotor system concerns both the spinal column and the extremities, and that if pain is due to such a disturbance, function must be normalized, whatever its localization. It is often taken for granted by neurologists, as well as manipulators, that the spinal column has the 'dominant role' and that pain almost necessarily radiates from the spine to the extremities, in a somewhat hierarchical manner. This is to neglect the fact that nervous control is the result of processed information from receptors, and that these are most numerous at the periphery of the body, i.e. at the hands and feet; afferent input is of paramount importance. It can be disastrous for the physician to neglect disturbance of the extremity joints or of the temporomandibular joints (masticatory dysfunction).

The examination of individual joints follows the pattern already established: active movement, resisted or isometric movement to show whether muscles are at fault, and passive mobility including joint play.

If passive mobility in a joint is impaired, there is a 'capsular pattern' (Cyriax, 1977) for each joint, i.e. if there is movement restriction in several directions it shows characteristic proportions, or a pattern. If impairment does not follow this pattern we may conclude that the lesion is not in the joint but affecting it from without. The significance of joint play lies in the fact that its disturbance is the first sign of a lesion. The technique of examination of joint play is described in Chapter 6, as it is identical to that of joint mobilization.

The shoulder

Active mobility includes abduction and elevation of the arm, rotation, anteflexion and retroflexion. The most striking disturbance is the 'painful arc' of Cyriax (1977) during abduction: the patient may feel sharp pain during abduction to even less than 90 degrees, but when she passes this point she can then raise her arm to a full 180 degrees. This phenomenon is due to disturbance of the subacromial bursa which facilitates the gliding motion of the head of the humerus, with the rotator cuff under the coraco-acromial ligament.

Isometric resistance may show tenderness of some muscle insertions: against abduction, the supraspinatus tendon; against external rotation, the infraspinatus; and against raising the semi-flexed arm (like a waiter carrying a tray, Figure 4.38*c*), the long biceps tendon. Tenderness in the subscapularis must be diagnosed by direct palpation, as described in Chapter 6, p. 225.

If passive mobility is impaired and the characteristic capsular pattern of the shoulder joint is present, the lesion is in the capsule of the glenohumeral joint, as is the case in 'frozen shoulder'. If we examine from the neutral position, i.e. with the arm in adduction, the elbow in right-angle flexion and the forearm facing forward, we find according to Cyriax maximum restriction of external rotation followed by abduction and internal rotation. Recently, however, Sachse (1995) using the technique shown in Figure 4.63 showed that it is abduction which as a rule is restricted first and most. It is therefore important to examine abduction fixing the shoulder-blade from above; external rotation should be examined by the examiner standing behind the seated patient and grasping the forearms close to the elbow, keeping the elbows closely adducted against the patient's trunk and using the forearm as a lever to produce external rotation (Figure 4.39). By drawing the patient's thumbs up her back, on both sides, we examine mainly internal rotation coupled with extension and adduction.

If it is only abduction that is restricted, and rotation is free, the lesion is in the subacromial bursa, whether there is a painful arc or not. In this case there is often impaired joint play. The examiner stands behind the seated patient and abducts her arm to 90 degrees, telling her to relax. With his other hand on the head of the humerus he exerts very slight pressure from above in order to take up the slack, and then springs the joint in the same direction. Interestingly, if there is a true capsular pattern and yet it is possible to abduct the arm to the horizontal, we find normal joint play, which again shows that the 'frozen shoulder' is not due to

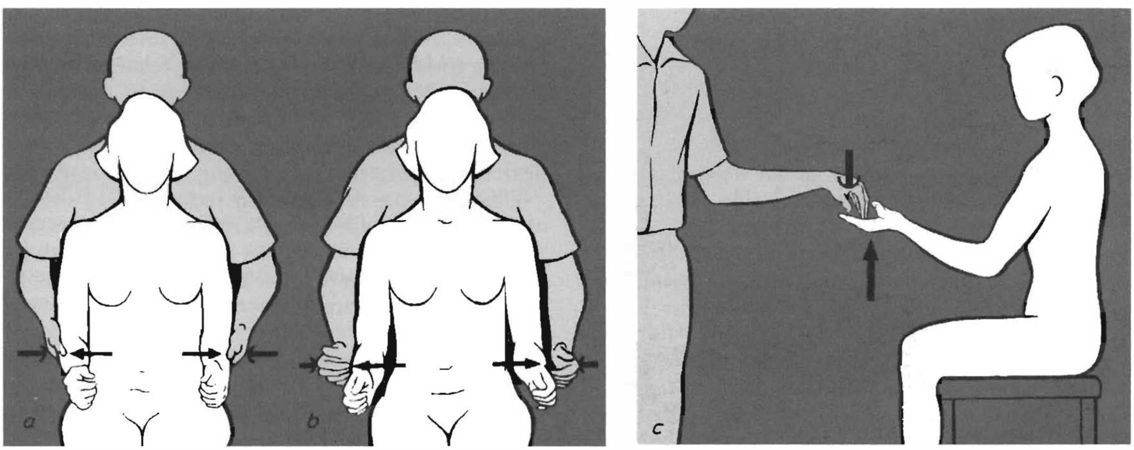


Figure 4.38 Examination against isometric resistance of the muscles of the rotator cuff at the shoulder: (*a*) against abduction of the adducted upper arm (supraspinatus); (*b*) against external rotation (infraspinatus); (*c*) against raising of the semi-flexed arm (long biceps tendon)

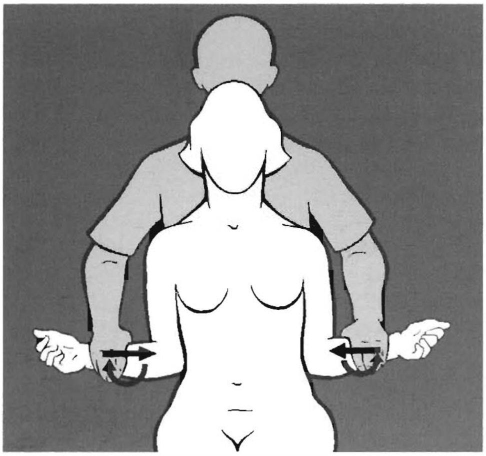


Figure 4.39 Examination of passive external rotation of the shoulder with the arms in adduction and elbows flexed at right angles

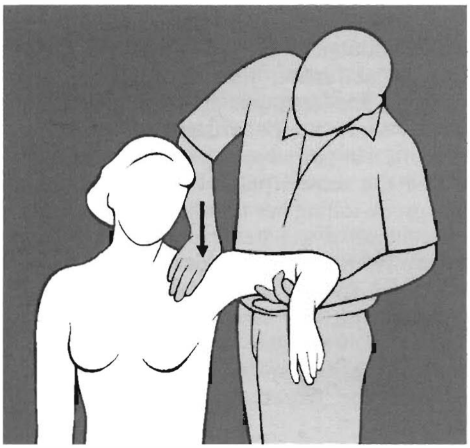


Figure 4.40 Examination of joint play (caudal shift) with the patient seated, her arm in 90 degree abduction; springing pressure is applied from above, on the head of the humerus

blockage. Joint play, however, is certainly impaired if only abduction is involved, i.e. in what might be called 'periarthritis' if it were not preferable to drop this misleading term and call it 'abduction lesion' (Figure 4.40). Care must be taken to place the hand on the head of the humerus and not on the labrum glenoidale of the scapula.

Two more joints may cause shoulder pain: the acromioclavicular and the sternoclavicular. Involvement of the former is a very frequent but rarely diagnosed condition, yet diagnosis is not difficult: if we push the elbow of the affected side against the opposite shoulder, the patient feels pain and the movement is restricted compared with the healthy side. Direct palpation of the joint is also painful. Pain due to blockage of the sternoclavicular joint is a much less common condition, unless there is rheumatoid arthritis. The patient experiences pain when moving the shoulder-blades (shrugging the shoulders); passive rotation of the shoulder is restricted and direct palpation reveals tenderness.

There is one diagnostic pitfall to be avoided, however: tenderness of the medial end of the clavicle can be due to tension at the attachment point of the sternocleidomastoid muscle.

The elbow joint

Impairment here concerns mainly flexion and extension, the former suffering more (capsular pattern). In addition there is pronation and supination between the radius and the ulna. As there are three bones articulating at the elbow, however, joint play is complex, and includes movement between radius and ulna. The most important clinical condition is pain at the epicondyles, where we find in addition to local tenderness at the epicondyles, impaired lateral springing, and typical muscle spasms which will be dealt with elsewhere.

The wrist joint

This is a complex joint consisting of the radius and ulna, the carpal bones and the joints of the distal carpal bones and the metacarpals. For clinical localization it is useful to know that the proximal skin fold on the dorsal aspect of the wrist in dorsiflexion corresponds to the radiocarpal joint, whereas the fold on the palmar aspect in palmar flexion corresponds to the carpometacarpal joints. Active movement consists of dorsal and palmar flexion and radial and ulnar flexion. For correct treatment each of the movements must be fully understood.

Dorsal flexion takes place more in the mid-carpal joint, the distal row of the carpal bones gliding in a palmar direction. If this movement is impaired, palmar gliding (joint play) must be restored.

Palmar flexion takes place mainly in the radiocarpal joint, the proximal row of the carpal bones gliding in a dorsal direction (joint play). If palmar flexion is impaired, dorsal gliding must be restored.

Ulnar flexion consists of a radial gliding movement of the ovoid of the wrist in relation to the radius (and ulna), by which the hand rotates into ulnar flexion. This gliding movement of the proximal row against the radius must be restored if ulnar flexion is impaired.

The most complex of these movements is radial flexion. This movement is achieved by approaching the base of the first metacarpal to the styloid process of the radius. This is made possible by a localized dorsiflexion between the scaphoid and the trapezium, which can be palpated as a palmar protuberance in the proximity of the styloid process during radial flexion. Thus radial flexion cannot be carried out if the hand is in palmar flexion, whereas it is facilitated by dorsiflexion.

To restore this movement we must therefore restore joint play between the trapezium and the scaphoid, moving the former in a palmar direction. Even more frequently, however, radial flexion is restricted by yet another mechanism: impaired pronation of the radius against the ulna. On moving the hand into radial and ulnar flexion on a horizontal board we can easily see that the forearm makes a pronatory synkinesis during radial flexion and a supinatory synkinesis during ulnar flexion. Hindering this synkinesis by placing a thumb under the styloid process of the radius will prevent radial flexion. The same holds – in the opposite direction – for ulnar flexion. We must therefore examine and restore joint play in the elbow joint as well: for impaired radial flexion, lateral springing of the elbow joint should be used, and for ulnar flexion, medial springing. This is also the mechanism underlying styloid process pain.

In addition to movement that can be carried out actively, there is, of course, joint play between each of the carpal bones and between the carpal bones and the forearm, and also between the carpal and the metacarpal bones, and even between the bases of the metacarpals. This has been shown to be of considerable clinical importance in view of the frequent occurrence of the carpal-tunnel syndrome. Whereas the gliding movements of joint play can normally be brought about with the minimum of force (indeed, it is difficult to exert so little force as not to move these bones), in the carpal-tunnel syndrome there is increased resistance to joint play. It can only be diagnosed, however, by examining with the minimum of force. The clinical consequence is clear: we treat the carpal-tunnel syndrome by removing its main cause, disturbed joint play of the bones that form the walls of the carpal tunnel, bearing in mind that this function, too, is influenced by movement patterns controlling the upper extremity.

The finger joints are dealt with in Chapter 6 (p. 161).

The hip joint

Although the hip is an extremity joint, clinically it is part of the pelvis, and frequently the first symptom in lesions of the hip joint is low-back pain. The most constant signs to be looked for are Patrick's sign (Figure 4.41), a tender femoral head in the groin, restriction and tenderness on internal rotation (Figure 4.42), and pain on maximum active abduction with the patient lying on her side. There is tenderness of the greater trochanter and, if the patient also complains of pain in the knees, tenderness of the pes anserinus on the tibia. The typical capsular pattern is maximum disturbance of internal rotation

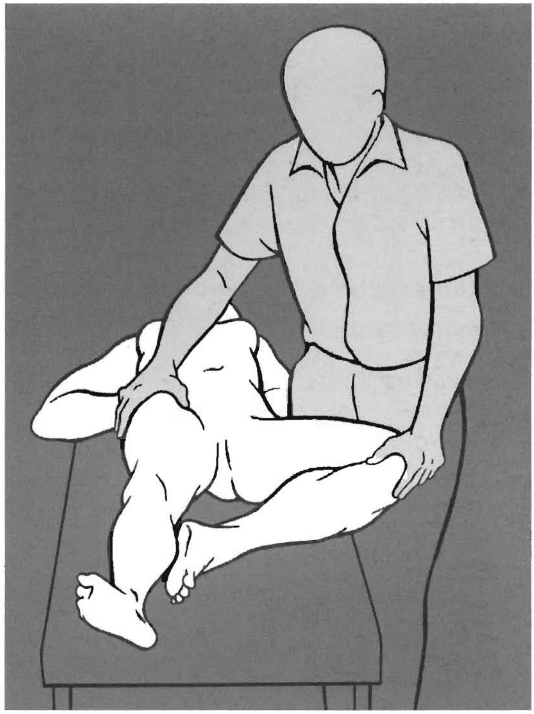


Figure 4.41 Examination of the hip joint for Patrick's sign

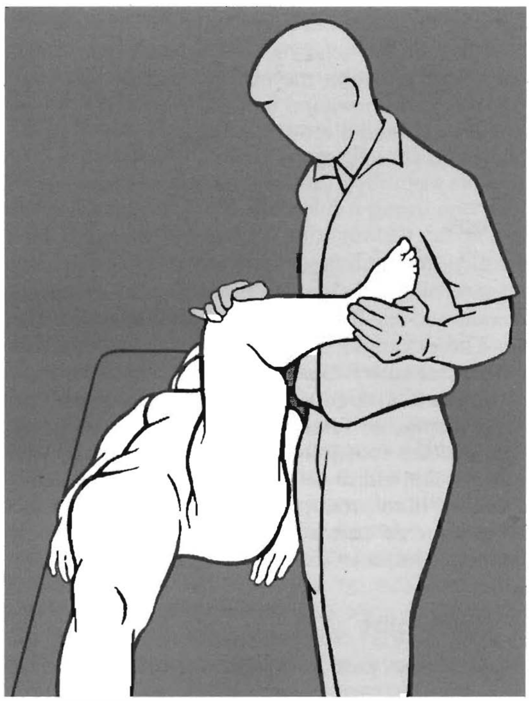


Figure 4.42 Internal rotation of the hip joint

followed by extension, flexion and external rotation. The articular surfaces being largely congruous, there is hardly any joint play in the sense of translatory movement; there is only considerable distraction possible. In severe cases full extension of the hip is impossible and the typical posture develops: the buttock on the affected side becomes prominent, there is compensatory hyperlordosis of the lumbar spine and flexion of the knee.

The knee joint and the tibiofibular joint

The principal function of the knee is flexion and extension, but with the knee flexed there is considerable rotation. In disturbed function the capsular pattern shows maximum impairment of flexion followed by extension; maximum flexion therefore is examined first. Because the surfaces of the tibia, fibula and patella are incongruous there is much joint play: proximodistal gliding of the tibia on the femur, lateral springing, and (clinically very important) shifting movements of the patella. Because both femoral condyles are incongruous there is a tendency to inward rotation during knee flexion and to external rotation during extension.

Although not directly connected, the tibiofibular joint plays a part in rotation of the leg if the knee is flexed, allowing some additional adduction and abduction of the foot. It can therefore be examined by comparing foot rotation with the patient prone and the knees flexed at right angles. The joint play consists of anteroposterior gliding with some rotation of the fibular head on the surface of the tibia. In lesions of this joint the fibular head is tender on palpation. This goes hand in hand with a TrP in the biceps femoris and a tender attachment point at the fibular head (see Figure 6.22, p. 171).

The foot

The function of the foot joints is best tested first by rotation around the long axis; the patient is supine, the examined leg flexed with the heel touching the table. The examiner grasps the foot with one hand at the first metacarpal head and the other at the fifth, and rotates it around the long axis, the centre of rotation being the talar head. If there is disturbed function of the foot joints, including the ankle, this rotation is impaired: either the foot deviates from the axis or, if an attempt is made to keep it on the axis, rotation is restricted and there is increased resistance. This is an invaluable screening test.

The ankle joint

This is a hinge joint in which dorsal and plantar flexion can be carried out. If there is disturbed function, dorsal flexion suffers more than plantar flexion (capsular pattern). When dorsal flexion is being examined it is important that the patient's knees be flexed, or else a short gastrocnemius muscle may impair dorsiflexion. Joint play consists of a dorsal shift of the tibia and fibula against the talus (see Figure 6.28, p. 175). It is important to realize that in this joint we find very frequently indeed that joint play is impaired without restriction of active mobility.

Examination of the joints of the foot

The complex of joints in the foot consists of the subtalar joint, Chopart's joint and the tarsometatarsal joint. They make possible pronation and supination (inversion and eversion), abduction and adduction of the foot. The techniques of joint play are invaluable for the examination of individual joints between the tarsal and the metatarsal bones.

For screening dysfunction at the foot and ankle the examiner grasps the ground phalanx of the big and the fifth toe so as to rotate the foot round its long axis (centred on the talus). If conditions are normal this rotation is unrestricted. If there is restriction we find that from a certain point the foot will deviate from that axis, or else that axial rotation is indeed restricted. Restriction then is most frequently in the tarsometacarpal joints or at the talocrural joint.

The temporomandibular joint

The temporomandibular joint forms a functional unit together with the masticatory and submandibular muscles, particularly the digastricus. That it is very important can be seen from the term 'mandibulocranial syndrome' now becoming accepted, as the cervicocranial syndrome has already been. In fact, the mandibulocranial syndrome may cause symptoms identical to the latter, including vertigo (Costen's syndrome), and may be accompanied by pain in the face (imitating trigeminal neuralgia), by pain in the region of the ear, and by dysphagia.

At examination there is characteristic tenderness of the joint in front of the tragus; it is easier to palpate if the patient opens and shuts her mouth. Tenderness may be due to primary joint lesion as in the case of malocclusion (missing teeth), or secondary due to muscular trigger points referred to the joint, or to attachment points at the meniscus (pterygoideus externus). Trigger points (except those on the temporalis muscle) must therefore be examined through the open mouth.

Normally the mouth opens so that we can place three knuckles between the upper and lower incisors. We should also note whether the chin moves in a straight line on opening the mouth, or whether it deviates to one side. Clicking noises while opening the mouth are also frequent. The shape of the teeth (crossed bite) may point to dysfunction; a history of bruxism, with resulting changes in the teeth, is also significant.

Besides affecting the masticatory muscles, dysfunction may also affect the digastricus: increased tension can be felt in the submandibular region. If there is greater tension on one side, there may be lateral deviation of the hyoid and thyroid cartilage, and increased resistance to shifting of the mid-line structures away from the deviating side. The characteristic muscular imbalance is increased activity in the masticatory muscles, which are tight, whereas the muscles that govern the opening of the mouth (mainly the digastricus and the deep neck flexors) are relatively weak.

Examination of disturbed equilibrium

I have already shown that the spinal column plays an important part in maintaining or disturbing equilibrium, and it is therefore necessary to assess this factor in cases of disturbance, if possible by direct clinical examination.

Hautant's test is very suitable for this purpose: the patient is seated in a chair which supports her back, with both arms stretched forward. The examiner stands facing her, with his thumbs pointing at the patient's hands. The patient closes her eyes while the examiner watches for a few seconds, to see whether the patient's hands deviate to one side in relation to his own thumbs (Figure 4.43). After examination in the neutral position, the test is repeated in different head positions: bent back, bent forward, turned to the left and to the right. While the patient changes the position of her head the examiner holds her hands in neutral position to prevent deviation due to synkinesis of the arms.

This test has two great advantages: being seated and propped up, the patient feels safe even if dizzy, and deviation is not caused by nervousness, as is often the case in Romberg's test (with the patient standing). The second advantage is that with the patient's back leaning against a chair, only side deviation of the arms is possible. In Romberg's test, on the other hand, in which the swaying of the body with eyes shut is tested, the change in the direction of swaying that occurs in head rotation (forwards or backwards) is interpreted as the result of labyrinth imbalance, the patient swaying in the direction of the affected labyrinth. In Hautant's test, any deviation that takes place when the patient turns her head is the result of the head position relative to the trunk, i.e. the position of the cervical spine. We can thus distinguish pathogenic and relief positions of the head, i.e. positions that cause or increase deviation, and those that abolish deviation if it has been found in the neutral position. In fact, the reaction to changed head position in cases of

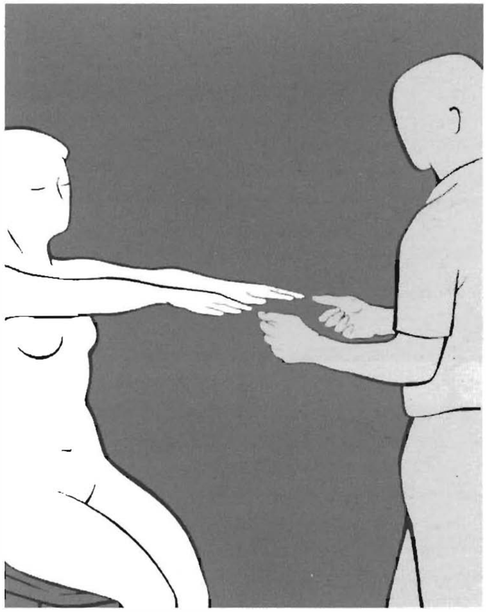


Figure 4.43 Hautant's test: the patient is seated with the back supported and the eyes closed; the examiner watches deviation of the outstretched arms by comparing the position of the patient's hands with his own thumbs

imbalance due to cervical lesion is so characteristic that we can speak of a 'cervical pattern' (see p. 273).

This very simple examination is carried out if the patient complains of disturbed balance and if the test standing on two scales shows a difference greater than 4 kg.

M. Berger (personal communication) has constructed a simple technique to register this deviation: the patient is seated as before, with eyes closed; in one outstretched hand she holds a pencil and moves it from right to left and back for about 1 cm on paper that is moving at a constant speed. In this way deviation can be registered for various head positions (Figure 4.44).

There is a subtle difference between the simple Hautant's test and Berger's method of registering deviation: in the former both hands are tested for deviation, and if there is only divergence or convergence, the result is negative. Deviation is diagnosed if one hand deviates to the side while the other remains in neutral position, because it is the deviation of the centre point between both arms which counts. However, in Berger's test, if the writing hand deviates there is no way of knowing whether the other hand deviates in the same direction, or to the opposite side (divergence).

Diagnosis is corroborated (or reversed) if deviation disappears (or persists) after treatment.

It is necessary to distinguish between disturbance of balance caused by the position of the neck, and

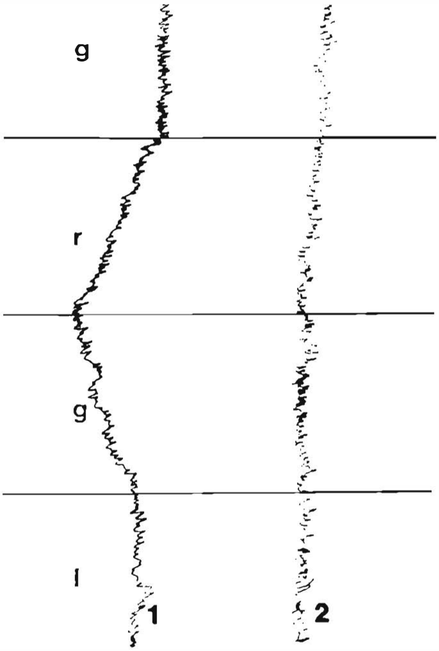


Figure 4.44 Cervicovertigogram (by courtesy of Berger): the patient holds the head in various positions, with eyes closed, and makes oscillatory movements with the outstretched arms; these movements are recorded by pencil on a moving strip of paper. (1) During head rotation to the right (r) there is deviation to the left; with the head straight (g) the arm returns to mid-position; and during head rotation to the left (l) there is no deviation. (2) After treatment of restricted rotation of the occiput/atlas to the right, there is no longer any deviation

disturbance due to the position of the head with the rest of the body in space, i.e. to labyrinthine lesions. To make this distinction we must change the position of the patient's head and trunk simultaneously (sitting up, lying down, turning from one side to the other) to determine which position causes vertigo. This type of vertigo is usually very intense but of short duration, so that it is enough to watch the patient's reaction. We should, however, insist on the patient keeping her eyes open while changing position; we can then observe spontaneous nystagmus, which usually lasts only a few seconds. (The patient will always tend to close her eyes in this type of vertigo.)

To determine the role of the vertebral artery in vertigo, de Kleyn's tests are useful; here, too, it is the position of the head relative to the trunk that is decisive, i.e. neck position. If the head is bent back and rotated to one side, blood flow is impaired in the vertebral artery on the side away from which the head is turned. Hence, if the vertebral artery on the side towards which the head is turned is insufficient owing to disease, symptoms will occur. The test is carried out with the patient supine, her head in retroflexion over the end of the table. Turning the head first to one side and then to the other, we examine nystagmus in end-position and watch the patient for symptoms of dizziness, nausea, etc. This test is particularly conclusive if there is no movement restriction in the position that causes symptoms, thus ruling out blockage as their possible cause. For diagnostic purposes it may therefore be necessary to treat movement restriction (e.g. if left rotation in retroflexion is restricted and causes symptoms) and to repeat the test after mobility has been restored. If the symptoms do not recur, then they were due to the movement restriction; if they persist, then they are due to vertebral artery insufficiency (in this case, on the left).

The position of the patient during de Kleyn's test may sometimes cause positional vertigo; this is a benign condition, not to be confused with vertebral artery insufficiency, which is serious. The distinction can be made by repeating the test; in positional vertigo there is a 'training' effect so that no vertigo is provoked at the second or third repetition of the test. The condition also disappears after a few seconds, even if the test position is maintained. In true vertebral artery insufficiency if the de Kleyn test is positive the patient's condition gets worse owing to ischaemia if she maintains the test position – which involves considerable risk.

Examination of disturbed muscle function

The great difficulty here is that there is no exact delimitation of what is to be considered normal, and diagnosis must be based almost exclusively on clinical examination. Polymyoelectrography using surface electrodes is so cumbersome that its use is very limited.

Clinical kinesiological examination should comprise:

1. Neurological screening.
2. Examination of muscle strength (muscle tests).
3. Examination of short muscles, fasciae, etc.
4. Examination of hypermobility.
5. Examination of posture standing and sitting.
6. Examination of simple movement.
7. Examination of gait with variations such as walking on tip-toe, on the heels, with arms raised, etc.

In the neurological examination the signs of special interest are those characteristic of minimal brain dysfunction: marked asymmetry in particular of the face and the extremities, restlessness, clumsiness, etc.

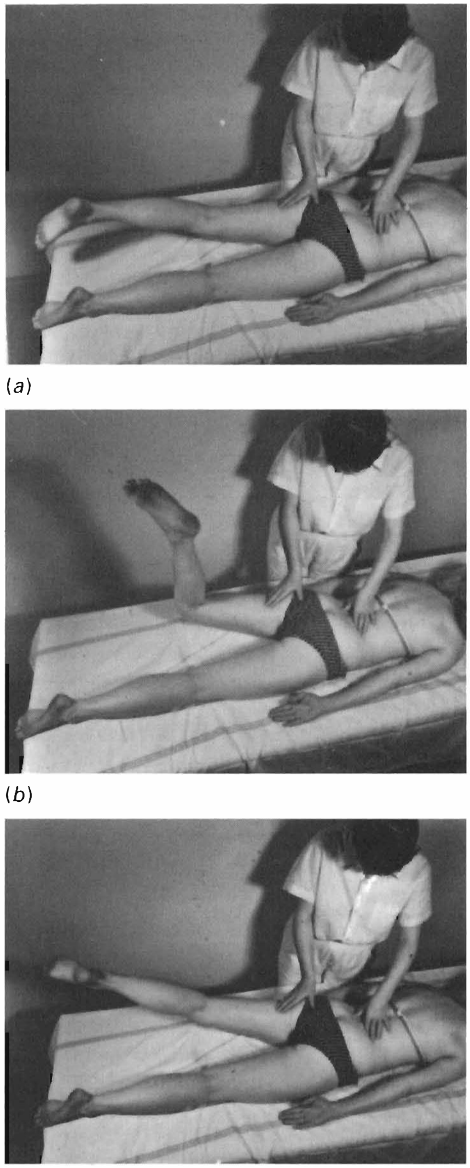
Muscle testing was originally introduced to examine paresis of individual muscles or of muscle groups in such diseases as poliomyelitis. Essentially, muscle strength is examined in the course of simple coordinated movements which make it possible to examine only one specific muscle or muscle group. Standard conditions must be maintained, so that results are comparable. Results are graded as follows:

0. No muscle activity at all.
1. Muscle twitch without locomotor effect.
2. Movement with exclusion of gravity (i.e. only in the horizontal plane).
3. Movement against gravity but not against additional resistance.
4. and 5. The ability to perform movement against resistance: (4) against little resistance, (5) normal muscle activity.

Because, in our patients, true paresis is found only in root syndromes, changes are usually found between grades 4 and 5, although the abdominal muscles and deep neck flexors may exhibit grade 3. Thus the distinction between grades 4 and 5 is not fine enough for our purpose.

Without going into details about muscle testing, it is essential to stress the following principles: the position of the patient must be constant; fixation, because this determines which muscles the patient brings into play; direction, speed and resistance must be constant throughout the movement. Isometric examination can reveal the degree of force in the muscle but not important faults of coordination.

For the type of disturbance to be expected in our patients it is necessary to modify the original muscle test in some particulars; the most important techniques are described here. In the section on disturbed movement patterns I have distinguished those muscles with a tendency to weaken ('predominantly phasic muscles') and those with a tendency to hyperactivity (tautness – 'predominantly postural muscles') after Janda (1972).



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*)

Figure 4.45 Examination of the gluteus maximus by dorsiflexion (hypertension) of the hip: (*a*) with the leg straight; (*b*) with the leg flexed; (*c*) with the leg in external rotation

Examination of muscles tending to weakness

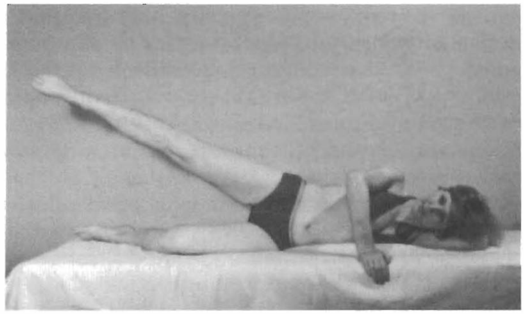
Gluteus maximus (Figure 4.45)

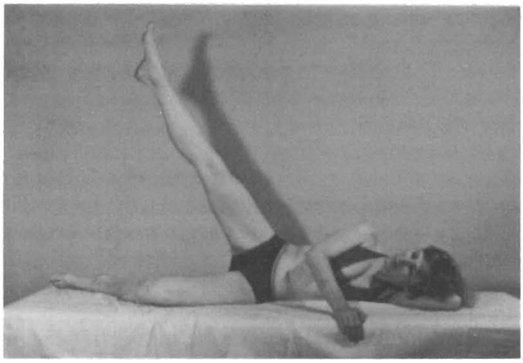
Before performing the 'classic' muscle test we examine (hyper)extension of the hip, with the patient prone, in order to diagnose the pattern. Electromyography has established that the prime movers in hip extension are the hamstrings, followed almost immediately by the gluteus maximus and the erector spinae. It is advisable to palpate the hamstrings and gluteus with one hand and the two lumbar erectores spinae with the other. If the gluteus maximus is weak, contraction is retarded, weaker than on the healthy side, and may even be absent – yet the strength of hip extension need not be noticeably reduced. In very marked overactivity of the lumbar erector spinae with marked hypertonus, even with the patient prone, this muscle may contract first, before the hamstrings. In the most severely changed motor patterns muscular contraction may start at the upper part of the trapezius.

The muscle test proper is performed with the patient prone, her knee flexed so as to inhibit the hamstrings. Resistance is applied against the thigh, above the knee, throughout the movement. If we wish to facilitate the gluteus maximus to the greatest extent, we examine hyperextension of the hip with the leg in external rotation.

Gluteus medius (Figure 4.46)

We first examine spontaneous abduction of the hip with the patient lying on her side, the under leg slightly bent at the knee and hip. First we observe the patient to see whether she makes a true abduction, or a combined movement rotating the leg outwards while flexing the hip. True abduction employs both the tensor fasciae latae and the abductors (glutei medii and minimi), and the combined movement is produced mainly by the tensor fasciae latae. It is therefore advisable to palpate the tensor fasciae latae with one finger and the gluteus medius with another, to see whether both contract during abduction. If there is outward rotation and hip flexion (incoordination) the gluteus medius is contracting too late, too little, or not at all. During the muscle test the requisite resistance is given against the lower third of the thigh from the side, and the pelvis is fixed in such a way that incoordination is prevented. Even then one should palpate the contraction of both the tensor fasciae latae and the gluteus medius, and watch for undesirable contraction of the quadratus lumborum.


(a)


(b)


(c)

Figure 4.46 Examination of hip abduction with the patient on her side (gluteus medius and minimus): (*a*) pure abduction correctly carried out; (*b*) false abduction by substitution by the hip flexors, particularly by the tensor fasciae latae; (*c*) the 'classic' test for the abductors (the examiner palpating the tensor fasciae latae with the fingers and the gluteus medius with the thumb)

Rectus abdominis (Figure 4.47)

The usual test of the rectus abdominis is for the patient to sit up from the supine position, with flexed knees: to 'curl up', lifting first the head, then the shoulders and then the rest of the trunk, with the operator fixing the feet and pelvis. For our purposes it is better if the patient flexes her legs and sits up unaided with arms stretched forward.

This can only be done if the abdominal muscles are functioning well – if these muscles are very strong the patient may be able to sit up with her hands held behind her head. Although bending the legs inhibits the hip flexors to some degree, sitting up is always the result of coordinated synergy of the abdominal muscles and the hip flexors. To examine the recti abdominis alone, the examiner puts his hands under the heels of the supine patient, telling her to press the heels downwards. She is then told to lift her head, shoulders and trunk, in succession; the moment the patient starts using the hip flexors, the pressure of her heels on the examiner's hands ceases. The stronger the abdominal muscles, the higher the patient can lift head and shoulders without relaxing the pressure of the heels.

Lower part of the trapezius (Figure 4.48)

To test this muscle the patient must be prone, with the arm on the tested side stretched forward. With one hand the examiner grasps the outstretched arm above the elbow, while the other grasps the inferior

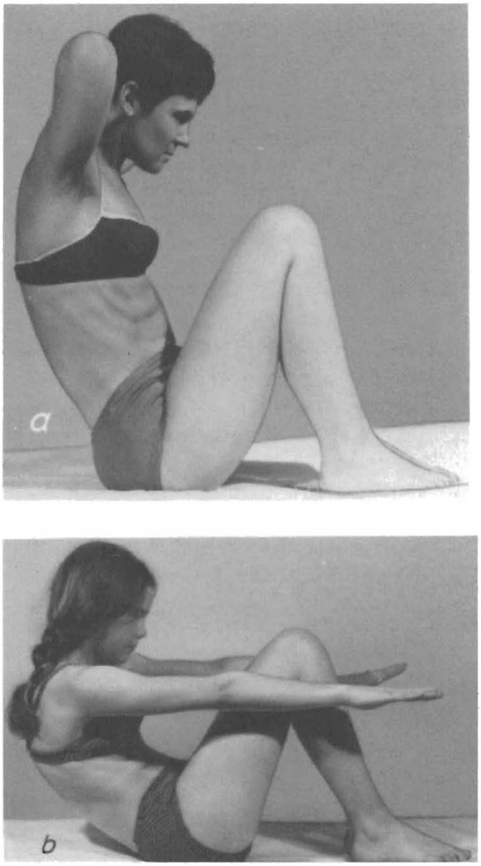


Figure 4.47 Examination of the rectus abdominis: the patient sits up with flexed knees, without fixation: (*a*) 'excellent'; (*b*) normal strength

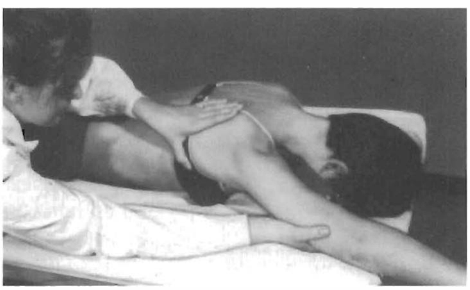


Figure 4.48 Examination of the lower part of the trapezius: the patient moves the shoulder-blade actively, in a caudal direction (against resistance)

angle of the scapula, telling the patient to pull her arm and shoulder down; the examiner resists this movement with both hands and, if the lower trapezius is weak, the resistance of the hand holding the inferior scapular angle is sufficient to prevent the scapula from moving down. For our purposes, i.e. to diagnose incoordination, mere inspection is usually sufficient: we tell the prone patient to pull one shoulder down (in a caudal direction). If this movement is carried out correctly, the inferior scapular angle moves in a caudomedial direction (i.e. in the direction of the fibres of the lower trapezius muscle). If this muscle is weak, however, the inferior scapular angle moves medially like a hook and protrudes under the skin, not unlike an alar scapula. This is why the caudal movement, usually forceful, can be so easily prevented by the examiner's hand.

Serratus anterior

This muscle is tested with the patient on all fours; care must be taken to see that she puts her weight not on her knees but on her arms, and that the shoulders are abducted. The patient is watched to see whether an alar scapula appears. To make the test more difficult, the patient may be told to bend her elbows. Although this test concerns mainly the serratus anterior, it is also affected by a weak lower part of the trapezius. If weakness of the serratus is only slight we may detect an alar scapula even better when the patient holds her arms horizontally outstretched for some time.

Deep flexors of the neck (Figure 4.49)

To test these muscles the patient is supine and is told to pull her chin towards her chest in an arching movement. The examiner fixes the patient's chest with one hand while the other, on her forehead, resists flexion of the head and neck. This movement must be carefully distinguished from that of the patient pushing her head forward, which will usually happen if the deep flexors are weak (incoordination), bringing into play the sternocleidomastoids and also the scalenes. There is a useful quantitative

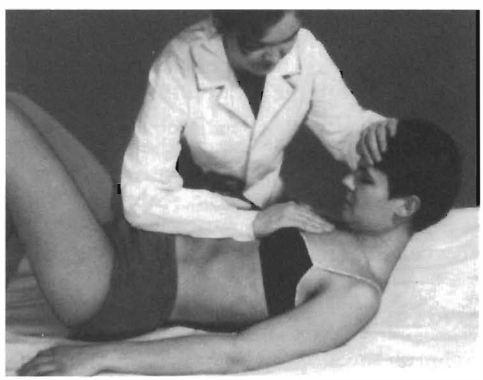


Figure 4.49 Examination of the deep neck flexors

test: we ask the patient to lie with her head raised as though intending to read (without lifting the thorax). Normally this position can be maintained for half a minute or even longer, but patients with weak deep neck flexors can hold it for only a few seconds.

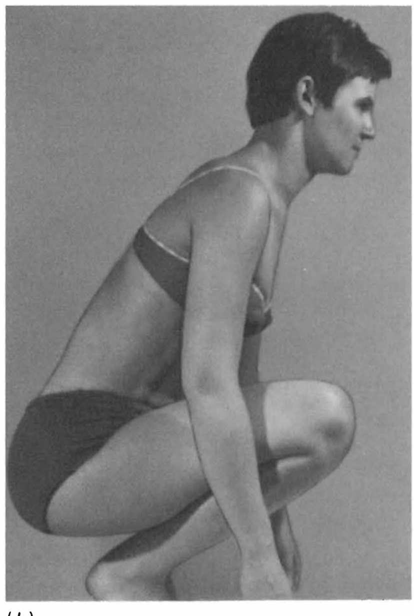
Examination of short (tight) muscles

We have already seen which muscles tend to shorten – the 'predominantly postural muscles' of Janda (1972). In principle we observe how far a muscle can be stretched without the use of force; as this is done mainly by the same manoeuvres as post-isometric relaxation, only those techniques that differ are described here.

Triceps surae (soleus)

If this muscle is shortened, dorsal flexion of the ankle joint is restricted. This can be tested by asking the patient to squat down: if the triceps surae (soleus) is normal, she should be able to place the whole foot on the floor, including the heel, but if the soleus is shortened, the heel will not touch the floor (Figure 4.50). If, however, it is only the gastrocnemius that is shortened, as is frequently the case, dorsiflexion of the ankle joint will be reduced if the knee is stretched and increased if she flexes the knee (Figure 4.51). For this reason it is a mistake to examine the mobility of the ankle joint with the knees extended.

(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 4.50 Screening test for shortening of the soleus: the patient squats. (*a*) Normal; (*b*) shortened (the heel does not touch the floor)

Hamstrings

The hamstrings are tested the same way as in the straight leg raising test. The leg that is not being examined should be fixed to the table from above. The hamstrings are considered shortened if the stretched leg cannot be raised to an angle of 80 degrees from the horizontal. Note that if the legs are outstretched the lumbar spine is not in a neutral but in a lordotic position. Therefore if we want to perform the straight leg raising test from a neutral position, the leg which is not examined is bent at the hip and the knee, with the foot on the table. In this case straight leg raising to 90 degrees should normally be expected. Unlike in the straight leg raising test for root syndromes, the patient feels only the stretch under the knee, but no real pain. This is the most frequent reason why a subject cannot touch the floor when bending forward with straight legs.

Hip flexors (Figure 4.52)

These comprise the iliopsoas, the rectus femoris and the tensor fasciae latae. They are examined in the position for Mennell's tests. The patient is supine with the buttocks at the edge of the table, the leg of the examined side hanging over the edge. The patient grasps the flexed knee of the other leg and draws it towards her chest close enough to flatten lumbar lordosis. In this position it is possible to

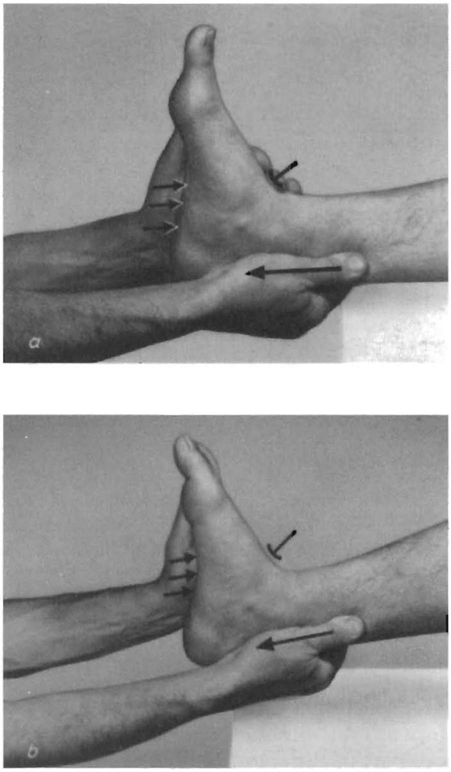
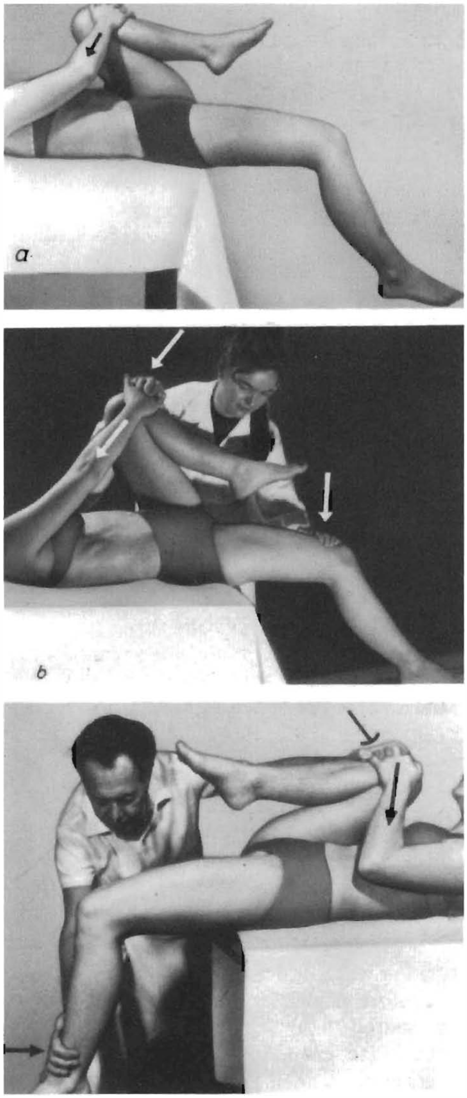


Figure 4.51 (*a*) Examination of dorsiflexion of the foot with leg stretched; (*b*) with knee bent. Marked increase in dorsiflexion with the knee bent is characteristic of a short gastrocnemius

assess the relevant changes by inspection: if the iliopsoas is shortened, the knee of the leg hanging over the edge of the table will be raised instead of being below or on the level of the patient's hip. If the rectus femoris is shortened, the knee will show too little flexion; if the tensor fasciae latae is shortened, the leg will be slightly abducted and the patella deviated slightly outward.

The examiner can now proceed to consider each muscle, with the patient in the same position. With one hand he reinforces the fixation of the knee (held in the patient's two hands) and then (1) exerts pressure on the other knee from above in order to determine the exact extent of shortening of the iliopsoas; (2) increases flexion of the knee of the free leg (over the edge of the table) or tells the patient to flex it actively – if the rectus femoris is short the knee will immediately rise above the horizontal; and (3) the examiner will try to adduct the knee. If the tensor fasciae latae is shortened there is immediate resistance to adduction, and the iliotibial tract can be seen to form a groove on the lateral aspect of the thigh by tightening.



(*c*)

Figure 4.52 Examination of the hip flexors: the patient is supine with her buttocks at the end of the table; she pulls one bent knee to the abdomen, to flatten lumbar lordosis, while the leg to be tested hangs over the edge of the table. (*a*) The examiner notes whether the thigh is raised above the horizontal and whether there is extension of the knee; (*b*) by pressure on the knee from above he tests shortening of the iliopsoas; (*c*) bending the knee produces hip flexion if the rectus femoris is short

The (lumbar) erector spinae (Figure 4.53)

There is a simple test for orientation: the seated patient is told to draw her forehead to her knees. This is hindered by a shortened erector spinae, but there are many factors that may invalidate the test:

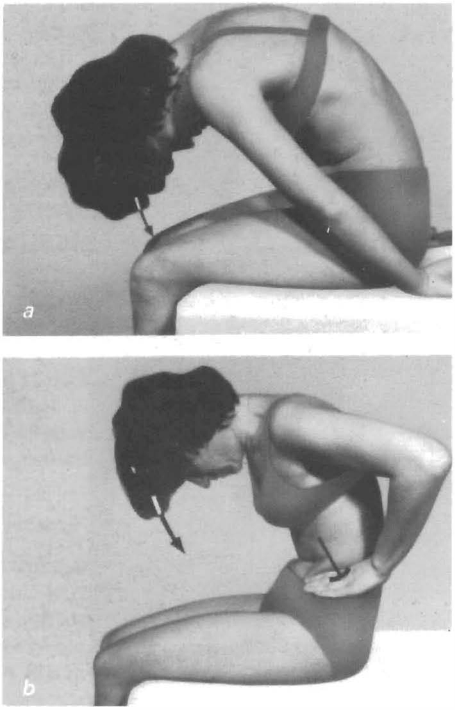


Figure 4.53 Examination of short erectores spinae, the patient sitting, with knees bent: (*a*) drawing the forehead to the knees; (*b*) humping her back while fixing the pelvis with her hands

if the patient has a short trunk and long thighs she will perform the movement easily even with a short erector spinae; conversely, if her trunk is long and thighs short, she will fail even with a normal erector spinae. I therefore prefer a modification of the test: the patient, seated, fixes her pelvis by placing the hands on the iliac crests, and simply humps her spine. If the lumbar part of the erector spinae is shortened, no lumbar kyphosis is obtained.

Clinically no less important than a shortened erector spinae is hypertonus of this muscle, especially in the thoracolumbar region; it is most often found in patients with increased lumbar lordosis. It may be seen when the patient stands relaxed, and disappear on retroflexion (first degree); it may be found on retroflexion and disappear when the patient is prone (second degree); in the most severe cases it is found even when the patient is prone. These are the cases in which hip extension from the prone position is initiated by the erector spinae.

The quadratus lumborum (Figure 4.54)

The state of this muscle can be assessed while the patient bends sideways, but difference in leg length must, of course, be ruled out first. For exact assess-

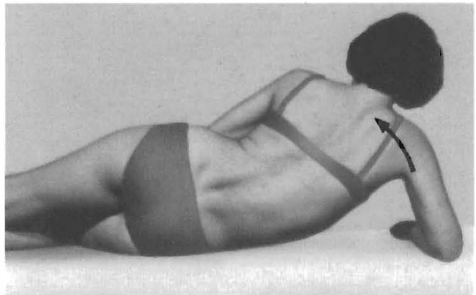


Figure 4.54 Examination of the quadratus lumborum: the patient lies on her side, lifting the upper part of her body by adducting the elbow (the pelvis must not be lifted and may be fixed by the examiner)

ment the patient lies on her side and lifts the upper part of her body by adducting the elbow and side-bending the trunk. Care must be taken to see that she does not lift her pelvis, which is best fixed from above by the examiner.

The technique of examination of the pectorales, upper trapezius and levator scapulae is identical to relaxation treatment, and is described in the relevant chapter. At inspection a short pectoralis is shown by round or forward-drawn shoulders, while hypertonus of the upper part of the trapezius is revealed by the upward convex 'Gothic' shape of the shoulders (Figure 4.55).

For rapid assessment of both upper trapezii and the other neck extensors, the simplest test is to draw the patient's chin to her chest. If the neck extensors are short, a gap of one or two (or even three) fingers' breadth remains. Short neck extensors are the most frequent cause of inability to bring the chin down on to the chest.

Examination of hypermobility (range of movement)

Not only weakness and tautness, but hypermobility, too, is mainly the consequence of muscular activity or is determined by the muscular system. The significance of hypermobility for pathogenesis has already been pointed out; here we are concerned only with examination and diagnosis.

To Sachse (1969) goes the credit for elaborating guidelines for the assessment of normal range of movement, and for attempting to determine the concepts of hypomobility, average mobility and hypermobility, all within the range of the normal. It is, nevertheless, important to bear in mind the great variability not only between individuals, but also according to age and sex. What may be considered hypermobile in an adult male may be perfectly normal in a female, an adolescent or a child. With

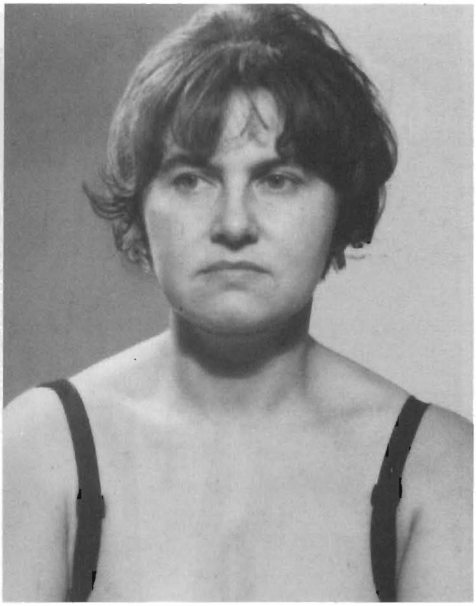
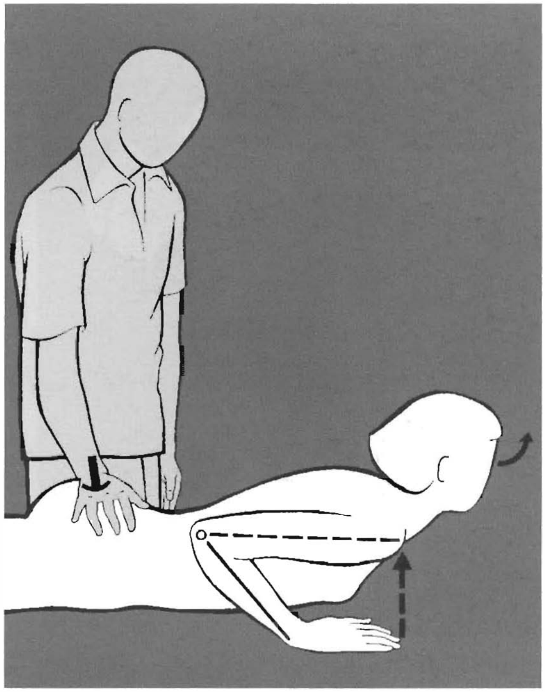
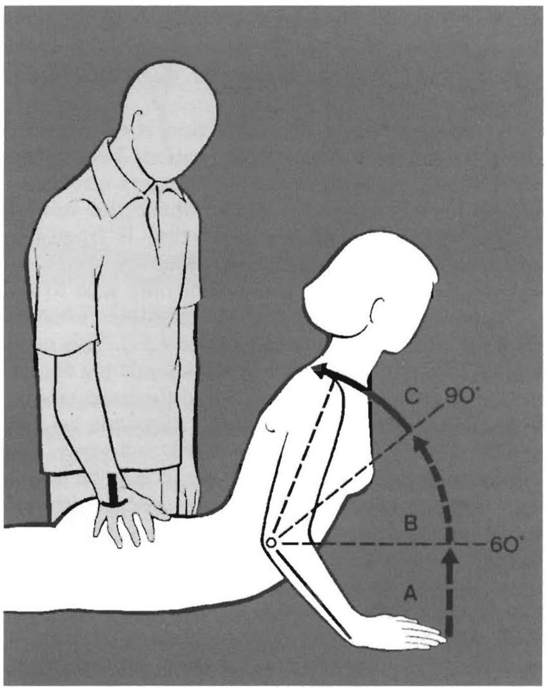


Figure 4.55 Typical appearance of a patient with hypertonus and hyperactivity of both upper trapezii, 'Gothic shoulders'



(a)



(b)

Figure 4.56 Testing the range of lumbar (trunk) retroflexion. Range A, hypomobile to normal; B, slight hypermobility; and C, marked hypermobility (After Sachse, 1969)

these limitations in mind, range A (in the diagrams) stands for hypomobile to normal, range B for slightly hypermobile and C for marked hypermobility. I give the criteria of Sachse with additional data from Kapandji (1974).

The spinal column

The total range of spinal mobility is given by Kapandji (1974), on the basis of X-ray examination, as 145 degrees for anteflexion, 135 degrees for retroflexion, 75 degrees for lateroflexion to one side, and 90–95 degrees for rotation to one side.

This is difficult to assess clinically; each of the principal sections of the spinal column must be examined separately.

Lumbar spine

The average range of retroflexion is 35 degrees according to Kapandji (1974). Clinical examination shows a sharp bend either at the lumbosacral or at the thoracolumbar junction in cases of hypermobility. In order to determine the range within the normal, Sachse (1969) gives the following test: the patient lies prone with bent elbows pointing backwards and hands flat on the table by her shoulders (Figure 4.56*a*). By extending her arms at the elbow she lifts the upper part of her body while the examiner fixes the pelvis from above; in this way the lumbar spine

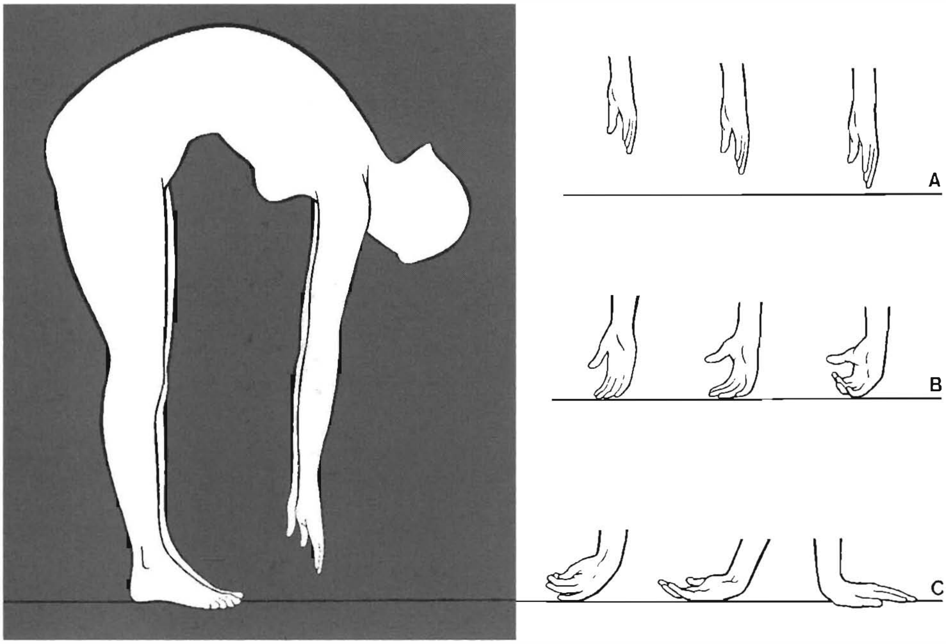


Figure 4.57 Testing the range of lumbar (trunk) anteflexion

is forced into retroflexion. Range A is from up to 60 derees at the elbow, range B between 60 and 90 degrees and range C above 90 degrees (Figure 4.56*b*).

The average range of anteflexion is 60 degrees. Clinically this is tested by the patient bending to touch the floor, with knees and fingers stretched. Range A goes up to the point where the subject touches the floor with her fingertips, B from this performance to putting the knuckles on the floor, and C beyond this, the patient not only able to lay her hand flat on the floor, but sometimes even to bring the chest to the thighs (Figure 4.57). This most popular test, unfortunately, shows not only the degree of anteflexion of the trunk but also the extensibility of the hamstrings; it also largely depends on the proportions of the legs to the trunk and arms. For simple trunk anteflexion, therefore, it may be better for the patient to sit and touch her knees with her forehead (see Figure 4.53*a*), range A covering the range of anteflexion up to where this is possible, and range B is where the patient can put her forehead between her knees.

The average range of lateral flexion is 20 degrees to each side; the clinical criterion according to Sachse (1969) is the shift of the axilla relative to the mid-line. In range A, the axilla of the convex side should come to rest above the intergluteal line; in B it should rest above the buttock of the other side, while in C the axilla shifts beyond the lateral aspect of the buttock on the other side (Figure 4.58). The range of axial rotation is given by Kapandji (1974) as 5 degrees but is not clinically tested. When testing stooping and side-bending the examiner must take into account the mobility of the hips and the proportions of the patient: there may be 'false' hypermobility due to a long trunk and short legs, or 'false' hypomobility due to long legs and a short trunk, while the length of the arms plays a part in stooping.

Because of its unfavourable consequences, however, clinically the most important sign of lumbar hypermobility is hyperlordosis when standing relaxed and exaggerated lumbar kyphosis when sitting relaxed.

Thoracic spine

Trunk rotation is tested clinically. Kapandji (1974) gives 35 degrees to each side as the average. The patient sits astride the table, turning first to one side and then the other. According to Sachse (1969) range A is up to 50 degrees to each side, B from 50 to 70 degrees and C beyond 70 degrees (Figure 4.59). (Note that we have shown that trunk rotation like side-bending is a coupled movement concerning both the thoracic and the lumbar spine, see Chapter 3, p. 55.)

Obviously the tests for stooping, retroflexion (extension) and side-bending show the mobility of the whole trunk, including the thoracic spine, but in clinical practice they are used (with the patient standing) for assessment of the lumbar spine.

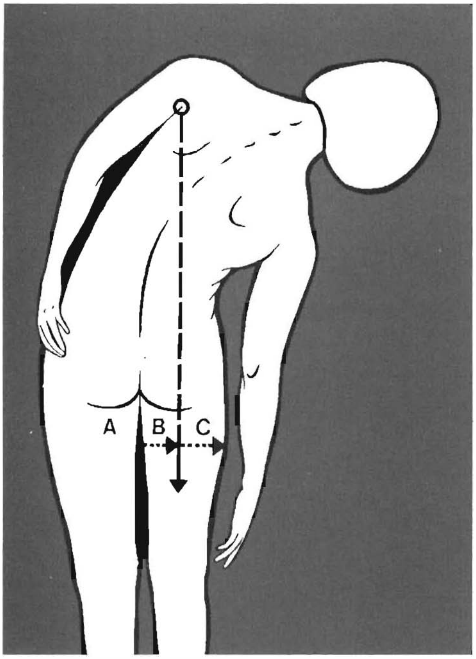


Figure 4.58 Testing the range of lumbar (trunk) lateral flexion

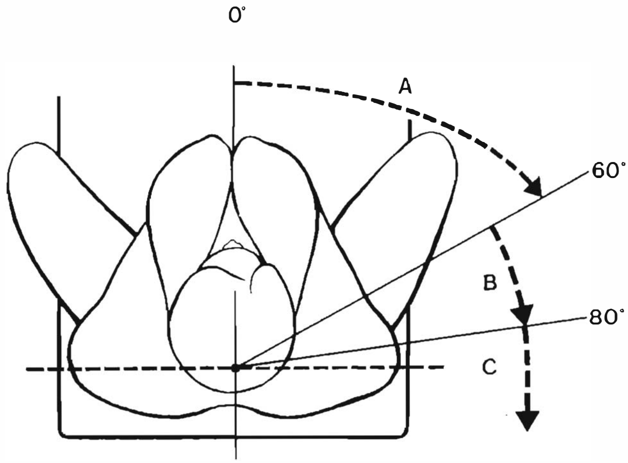


Figure 4.59 Testing the range of trunk rotation

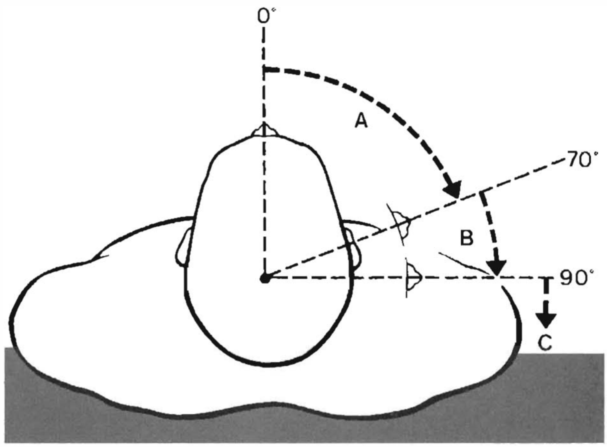


Figure 4.60 Testing the range of head (cervical) rotation

Kapandji (1974) gives the range of movement for the thoracic spine as 45 degrees in anteflexion, 25 degrees in retroflexion and 20 degrees to each side in lateroflexion.

Cervical spine

Here, too, it is mainly rotation that is clinically tested. According to Kapandji (1974) this is only 50 degrees to each side, whereas Sachse (1969) gives range A as up to 70 degrees to each side, B from 70 to 90 degrees and C over 90 degrees. Rotation is tested in the erect position by bringing the patient's chin above the shoulder. The discrepancy between the anatomical and the clinical data is due to the fact that rotation takes place in the erect position, and thus also involves the upper thoracic spine. On slight forward-bending rotation stops at C7 and the range is reduced to about 50-60 degrees (Figure 4.60).

The range of anteflexion (Kapandji, 1974) is 40 degrees, that of retroflexion 75 degrees and of lateroflexion 35 degrees to each side. The range of mobility at the craniocervical junction is given in the chapter on Functional anatomy and radiography of the spinal column, p. 62.

Some extremity joints

Here again I give the figures as determined by Sachse (1969). For metacarpophalangeal joints, at passive dorsiflexion, range A is up to 45 degrees, B between 45 and 60 degrees and C beyond 60 degrees (Figure 4.61).

With regard to the elbow joint, there is more valgosity in the hypermobile elbow, and the following test is therefore clinically valuable. The patient holds both arms before her chest, palms upwards, with her forearms held together from elbow to wrist; she is told to stretch her arms, keeping the elbows together. Range A mobility will enable the patient to keep the elbows touching up to an angle of 110 degrees, B to 110–135 degrees, while beyond this is range C (Figure 4.62).

For the shoulder girdle, the characteristic test is to bring the elbow towards the shoulder of the opposite side; range A mobility enables the patient to bring the elbow to mid-line, range B from there

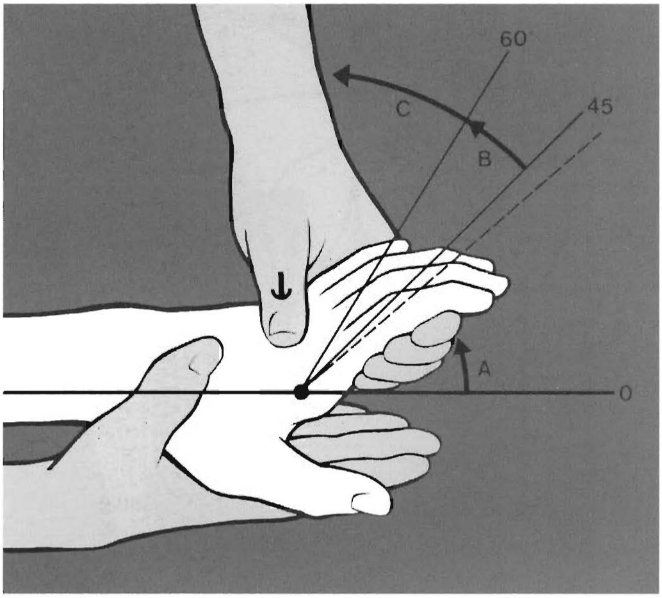


Figure 4.61 Testing the range of dorsiflexion of the metacarpophalangeal joints

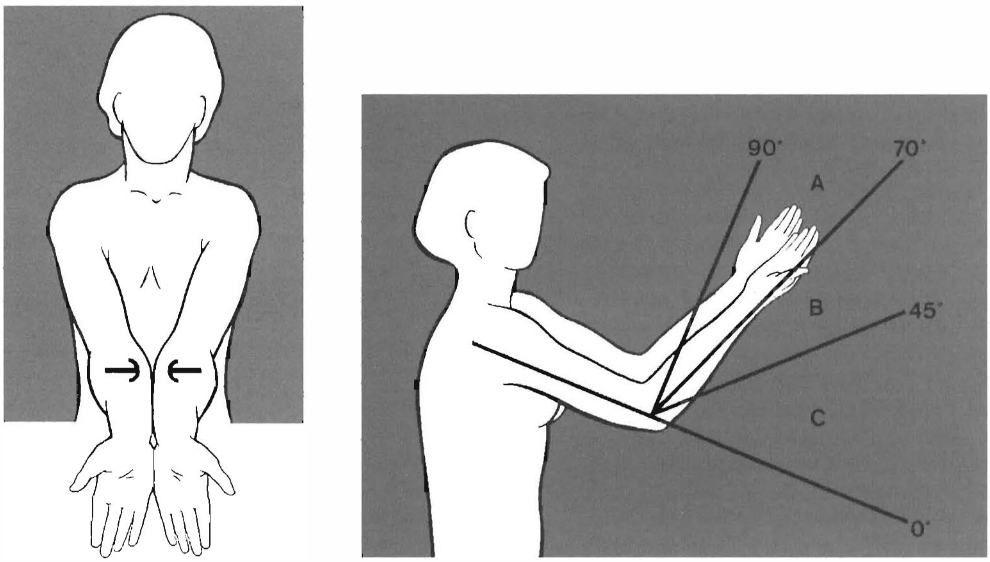


Figure 4.62 Testing the range of elbow extension, both elbows kept touching

to a point half-way between the mid-line and the other shoulder, while in range C the elbow may touch the opposite shoulder (Figure 4.63). Another test is to try to make both hands meet behind the back, one from above and the other from below. With range A mobility the fingers may not touch, or may just come into contact; in range B the fingers may touch or overlap as far as to the first phalanx; in C the whole hand may overlap (Figure 4.64). In this test it is important not to allow hyperlordosis to occur.

If we intend to examine the scapulohumeral joint by itself, it is most convenient to test only pure abduction while one hand fixes the shoulder-blade

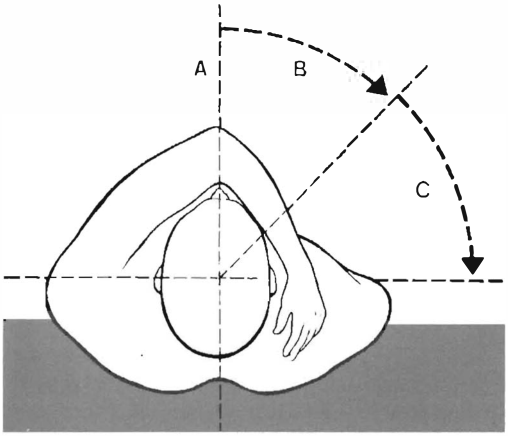


Figure 4.63 Bringing the elbow towards the shoulder of the opposite side

with the clavicle, from above. Range A is up to 90 degrees, B from 90 to 110 degrees and C over 110 degrees (Figure 4.65).

The knee joint is tested for extension (or hyperextension), range A being up to full extension (180 degrees), range B up to 10 degrees hyperextension (190 degrees) and C beyond this figure (Figure 4.66).

For the hip joint, internal and external rotation are tested, range A being up to 90 degrees (external plus internal rotation), B between 90 and 120 degrees and C more than 120 degrees (Figure 4.67).

It is important to test the range of mobility in various regions of the body, because there may be hypermobility in one and average or even reduced mobility in another, without restriction of movement. Slight relative hypermobility on the non-dominant side is physiological (Hinzmann and Sachse, 1988).

Examination of coordinated movement (locomotor patterns)

The examination of individual muscles and the assessment of overall mobility are followed by the study of more complex movement patterns, or stereotypes. We begin with assessment of posture with the patient standing, as described at the beginning of this chapter (see Figure 4.6, p. 95).

Here the following criteria should be stressed: whether the vertical line from the external occipital protuberance corresponds to the body axis, i.e. whether our patient stands symmetrically, and to what extent the two halves of his body differ.

The relative proportion of the extremities to the trunk and neck are important, as is the relationship of the upper part to the lower part of the trunk. The proportions of the proximal to the distal sections of the extremities are equally significant.

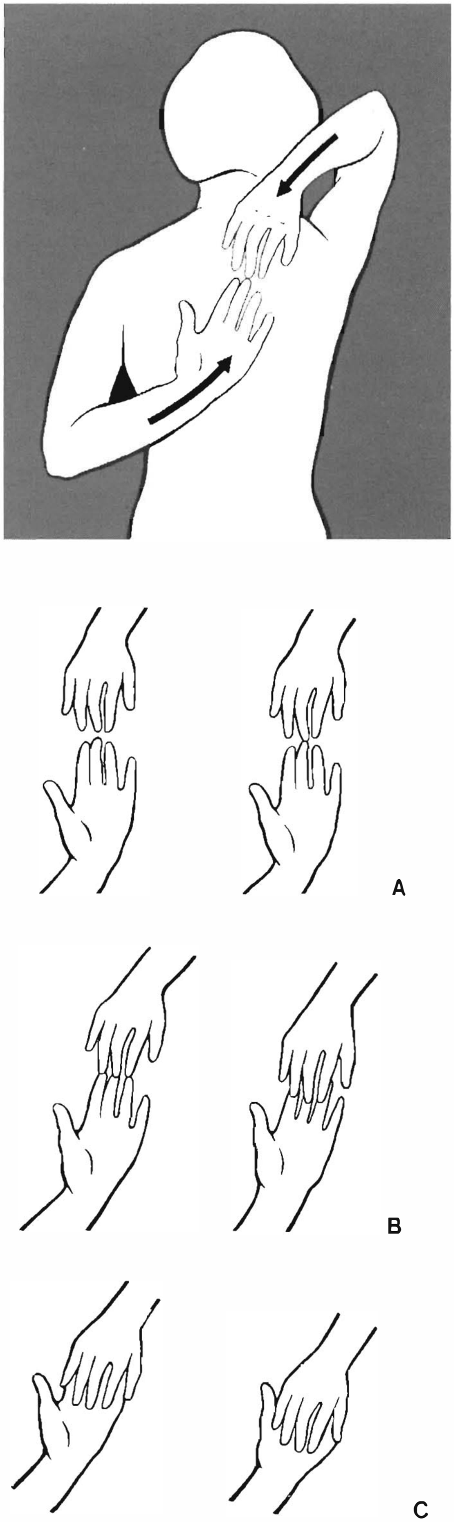


Figure 4.64 Making both hands meet behind the shoulder

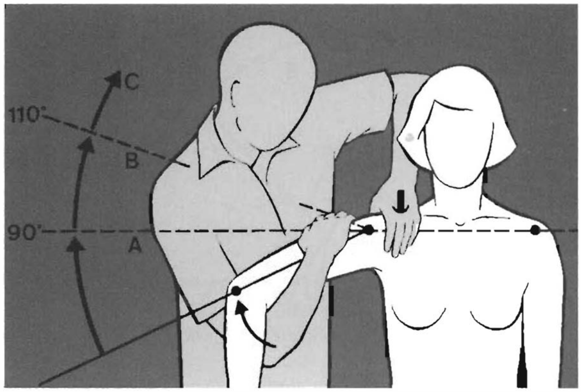


Figure 4.65 Testing the range of abduction of the scapulohumeral joint, with the shoulder-blade fixed from above

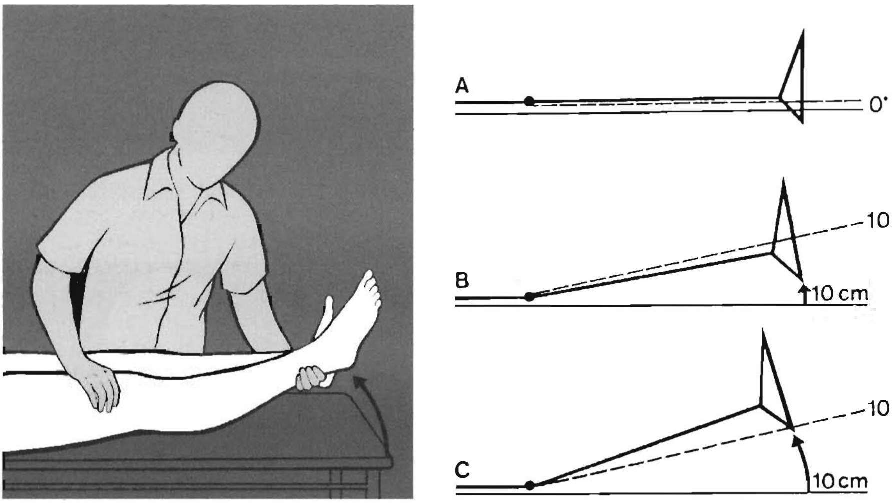


Figure 4.66 Testing extension (hyperextension) of the knee joint

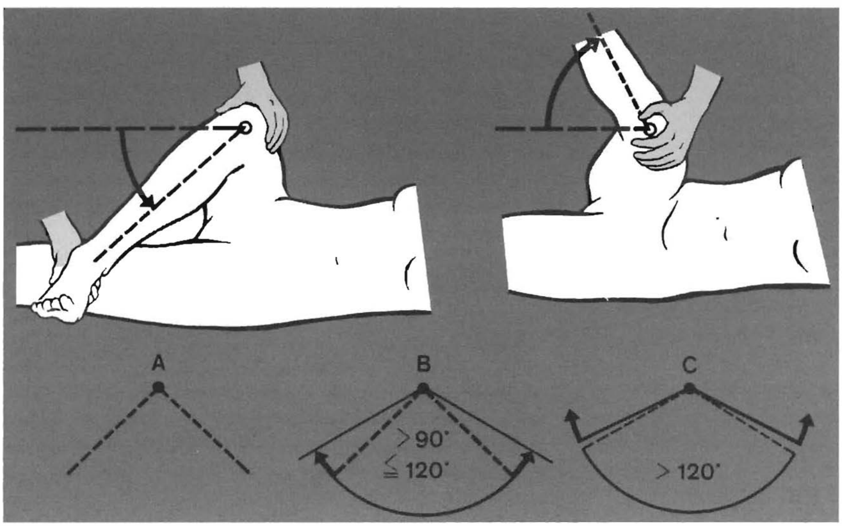


Figure 4.67 Testing internal and external rotation of the hip joint

The body contours inform us about increased tonus or flabbiness. This is particularly important if we compare the two sides (tight–loose complex). Not only exaggerated protrusion, but also sharp indentations are important, as is the flattening of contours. This is further confirmed by palpation which enables us to distinguish the type of resistance (resilience) of individual tissue layers.

Analysis of patterns of movement and posture may start with the patient sitting on an adjustable stool (Figures 4.68 and 4.69). The examiner notes the position of the feet and of the iliac crests, the course of the (lumbar) spine and the tonus of the abdominal and gluteal musculature. In correct posture, seated, the feet are flat on the floor in slight external rotation, the thighs horizontal and slightly apart, the pelvis rotated (tilted) forward if possible; there should be slight lumbar lordosis (no kyphosis) and no flabbiness of the abdominal or gluteal muscles.

Stooping and straightening up (Figures 4.70 and 4.71)

For correct stooping one foot should be placed in front of the other and the knee of the forward leg should be slightly bent. The trunk bends forward, starting with the head, the body curling up from the head downwards as the gluteal and abdominal muscles contract. The erector spinae contracts first and then relaxes during maximum stooping. Conversely, at straightening up the knees stretch while the trunk uncurls, starting with the lumbar spine, followed by the thoracic spine, the neck and finally the head. This, too, is the result of coordinated contraction of the gluteal, abdominal and back musculature. The trunk must never be lifted like a rod (lever!) nor must the abdomen be allowed to bulge.

Trunk rotation, sitting (Figure 4.72)

This test is more closely concerned with the thoracic spine and shoulder girdle than were the previous tests. Again the pre-condition is correct sitting posture on a stool, with a test object (such as a book) in the hand resting on the lap. Special attention must be paid to relaxation of the arms and shoulders, which must not be drawn forward and elevated. The patient is now asked to place the book on a shelf behind her, at the level of her head; special attention must be paid to trunk rotation, the action of the back and abdominal muscles, fixation of the shoulder-blades and tension in the upper part of the trapezius.

If the test is performed properly we see harmonious rotation from the thoracolumbar junction upwards while the pelvis and legs remain in place; abdominal and back muscles are moderately active, the inferior angles of the scapula do not diverge and the neck musculature, in particular the upper part of the trapezius, remains relaxed.

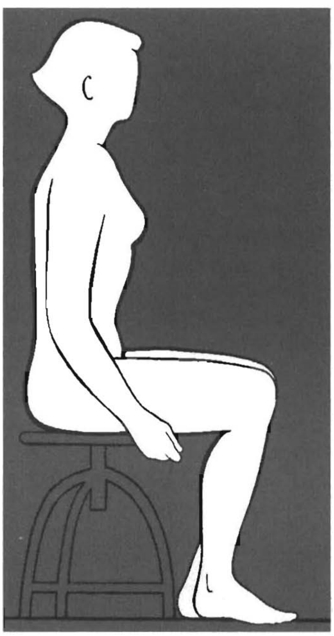


Figure 4.68 Sitting on a stool: correct posture

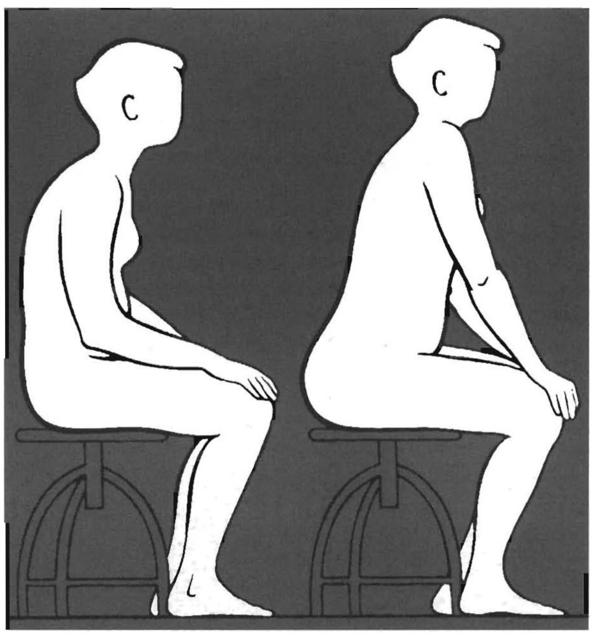
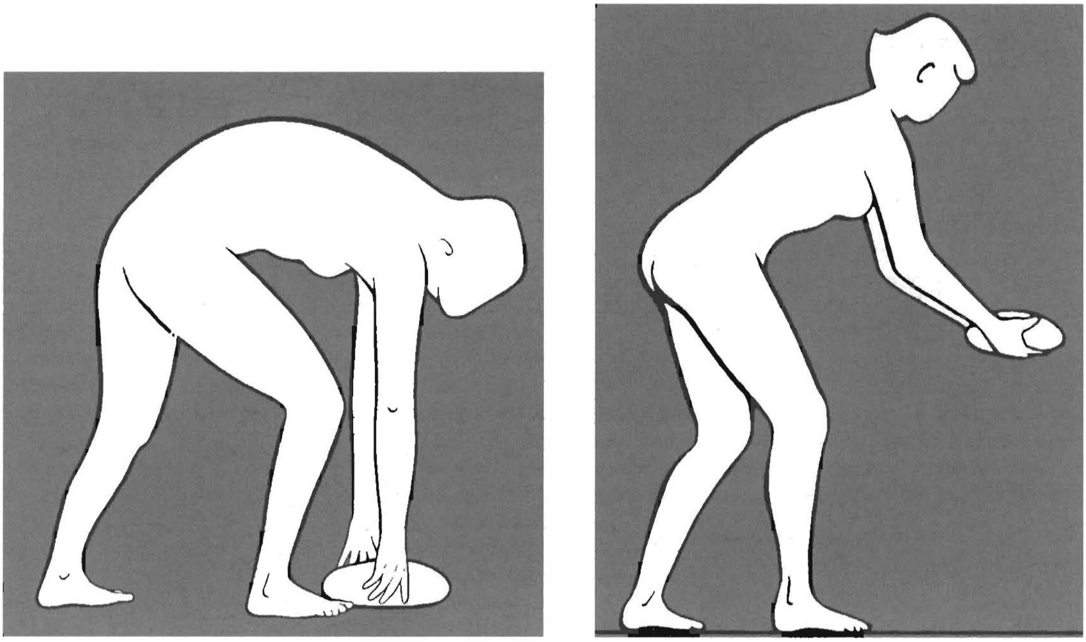


Figure 4.69 Two types of faulty sitting posture



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 4.70 (*a*) Stooping and (*b*) lifting an object correctly

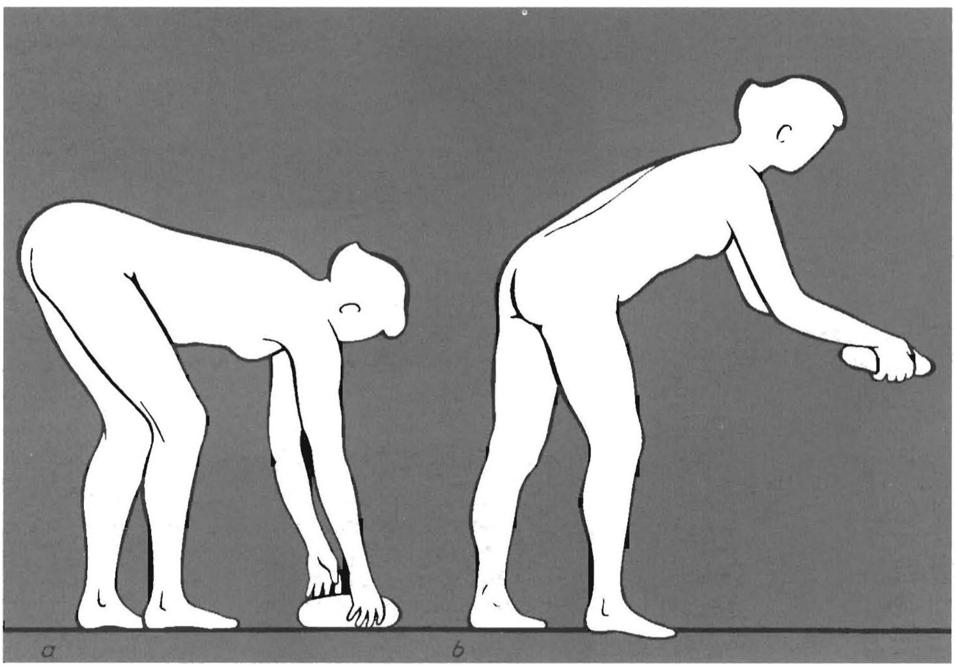


Figure 4.71 The same movements as in Figure 4.70 performed incorrectly

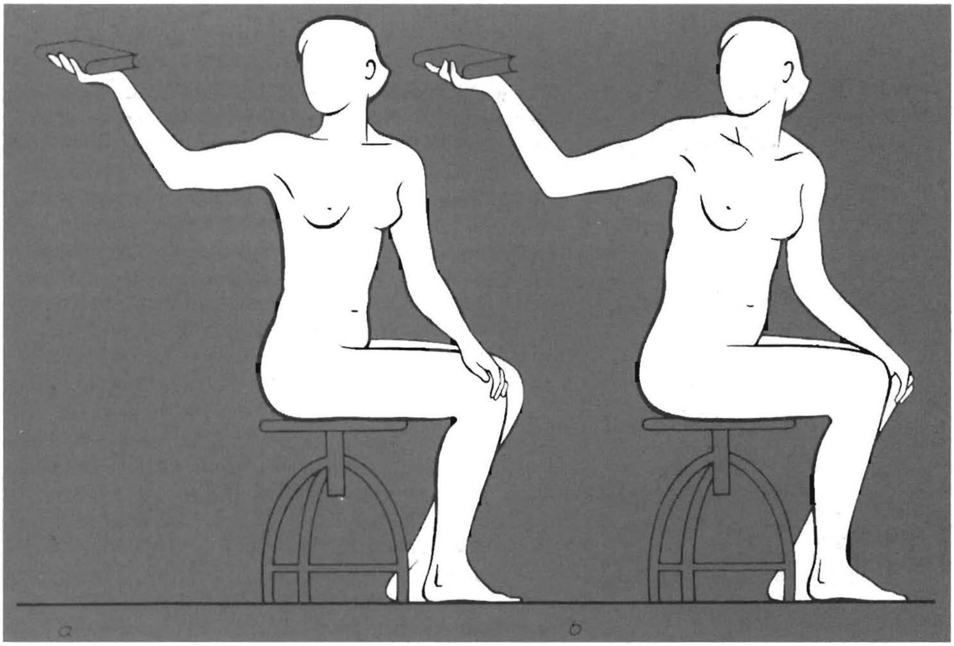


Figure 4.72 Trunk rotation, seated, holding an object in the hand: (*a*) correct; (*b*) faulty

Test movements for the head and neck (Figure 4.73)

First we observe the head position with the patient standing and sitting; lordosis should not be too marked and if there is a flat thoracic spine the neck will also be straight. The angle between the mandible and neck should be about 90 degrees. During head turning the examiner observes neck rotation as well as muscular activity: lateroflexion should take place only at extreme range and should not be exaggerated, lordosis should not increase, the shoulders should not be lifted nor should one shoulder be drawn forward; the sternocleidomastoid should not be overstrained.

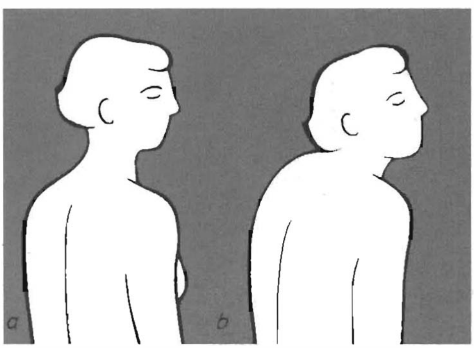


Figure 4.73 Head rotation, seated: (*a*) correct; (*b*) faulty

Lifting the arms (Figure 6.146)

When lifting the arms the patient also raises her shoulders, contracting the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle (upper part of the trapezius and the levator scapulae), fixation of the shoulder-blades from below (by the lower part of the trapezius) being insufficient. However, lifting of the shoulders should be only slight and towards the end of the movement.

Weight carrying (Figure 4.74)

Here the typical fault is a forward-drawn position of the head and shoulders, causing tension in the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle. If a weight is to be carried correctly the shoulders are behind the line of gravity of the body and the head and neck remain erect. The hand carrying the brief-case should also be relaxed.

Standing on one leg (Figure 4.75)

Special attention should be paid to the muscles and joints of the supporting leg, the line of gravity of the body, the pelvis, in particular the iliac crests, and the hip stabilizers, especially the gluteal musculature, and the spinal curvature.

In correct posture on one leg, all joints of the supporting leg are in the line of gravity; the centre of gravity, compared with stance on two legs, moves

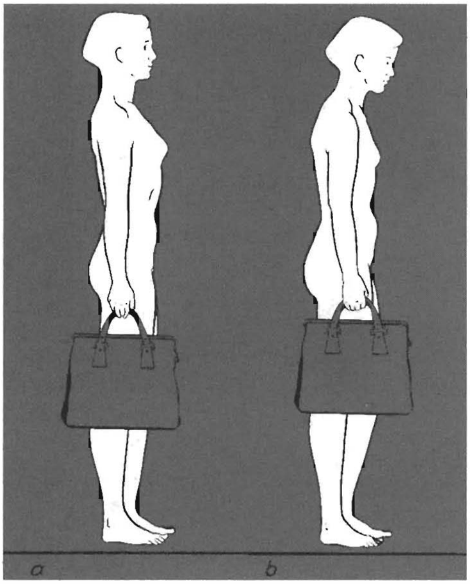


Figure 4.74 Carrying weights: (*a*) correct; (*b*) faulty posture

forward to the second and third metacarpal head. The pelvis should remain horizontal and spinal curvature should therefore be almost unchanged. The stabilizers of the hip, in particular the gluteus medius, should contract. Both flexors and extensors of the hip as well as the abdominal and back muscles, and the quadrati lumborum, should contract in a coordinated fashion to stabilize the hip and trunk. If the hip abductors are weak, the most frequent fault, the patient will lift the iliac crest of the side opposite to the supporting leg (Dejerine, 1901), bringing the centre of gravity above the supporting leg and thus relieving the abductors. (Trendelenburg's sign, the lowering of the iliac crest on the unsupported side, is relatively rare; it is seen in severe cases of congenital hip luxation but not even in myopathy with extremely weak muscles.)

Gait

The examiner takes particular note of how the heels touch the ground followed by the ball of the foot and the toes, while the heel is lifted; he should also note how weight is shifted from one leg to the other, how the pelvis moves with the spinal column, the position of the head and the movements of the arms.

In normal gait the steps are even and the weight is placed equally on each leg in turn. The arch of the foot does not sag and the toes are active in propulsion. The pelvis should remain almost horizontal, and it sways from side to side, more so in women than in men. The spinal column curves from one side to the other in a series of waves, the greatest excursion being in the mid-lumbar region; there is some counter-excursion in the thoracic spine, the thoracolumbar junction remaining above the sacrum. The head should move very little and the arms should swing symmetrically or slightly more on the

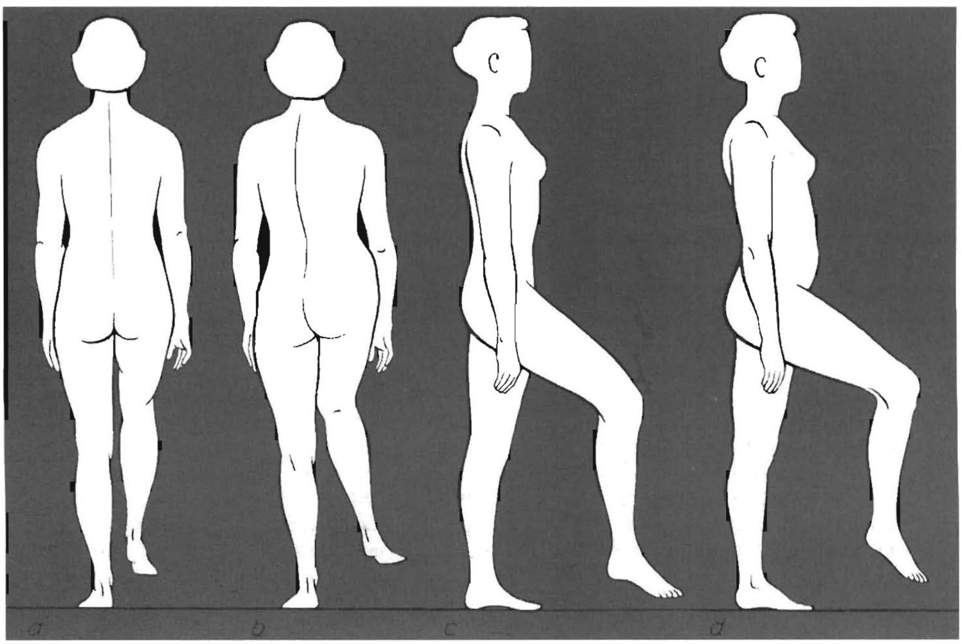


Figure 4.75 Standing on one leg, back view: (*a*) correct; (*b*) faulty. Side view: (*c*) correct; (*d*) faulty

left, the movement coming from the shoulder. The shoulder-blades are fixed from below, the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle relaxed. The centre of gravity of the body and that of the head should shift as little as possible, either from one side to the other or up and down, i.e. the patient should neither waddle nor rock.

Asymmetrical gait and stiffness can also be heard, and therefore the examiner must listen carefully. Certain faults become more marked if the patient closes her eyes, walks on tiptoe or on the heels; these should be examined as required.

Finally, patients should be examined, if possible, in their typical working position (e.g. typing, lifting weights, reading, at a machine, at the computer, etc.).

Examination of respiration

We have already seen in Chapter 2 that respiration is first examined at rest in the supine position and then with the patient seated or standing. In the supine position abdominal respiration should predominate. Under postural conditions the trunk broadens from the waist; the examiner therefore places his hands on the patient's lower ribs, from both sides. If breathing is correct, the hands are moved apart, but if the patient lifts her thorax as she breathes, the examiner's hands move upwards. If this faulty breathing pattern (with raised thorax) is very pronounced, the thorax may remain in the inhalation position even while at rest, the upper clavicular grooves are deep and the sternocleido-mastoids, scalenes and upper fixators of the shoulder girdle are taut. During inhalation the collar bones are lifted, too. In less severe cases this fault is noticeable only when the patient takes a deep breath while sitting; but in more severe cases it can be seen even during breathing at rest and in the most severe cases it is evident even at rest in the supine position (Figure 4.76). Respiration can be so badly co-ordinated that a patient may draw the abdomen in during inhalation and push it out while breathing out (paradoxical respiration).

Inhalation and exhalation should have about the same duration; the patient should be able to breathe in for 7–10 s or longer, breathing out for the same length of time (except for professional singers, who breathe out for much longer). There are, however, patients who cannot breathe in (or out) for more than 4 s, although they suffer from no respiratory disease! The nostrils expand during the deep inhalation and then narrow during exhalation. It is important that the facial musculature should be relaxed, particularly the lips, the muscles of the jaw and the tongue.

The examiner should watch carefully for asymmetry, particularly in a patient who lifts her shoulders during inhalation.

Figure 4.76 Lifting the thorax during inhalation: marked tension in the sternocleidomastoidei, scaleni and the upper part of the trapezii; very deep supraclavicular fossae on both sides and the abdomen is drawn in at inhalation

In the prone position the respiratory wave of the thoracic spine should be observed during deep breathing. The absence of a wave, and no blockage of the thoracic spine, implies a faulty breathing pattern.

Syndromes

The lower crossed syndrome (after Janda, 1979)

There is imbalance in the following pairs of muscles: (1) weak glutei maximi and short hip flexors; (2) weak abdominals (recti abdominis) and short lumbar erectores spinae; (3) weak glutei medii and short tensors of the fasciae latae and quadrati lumborum.

There is not only antagonism but also 'competition' or substitution: for weak glutei medii by the tensors and quadrati lumborum; for weak abdominals by the iliopsoas in hip flexion; for weak glutei maximi by the erector spinae (and the hamstrings). Obviously, in this syndrome the correct mechanism of curling up in sitting up from the supine position and in stooping is interfered with; the result is

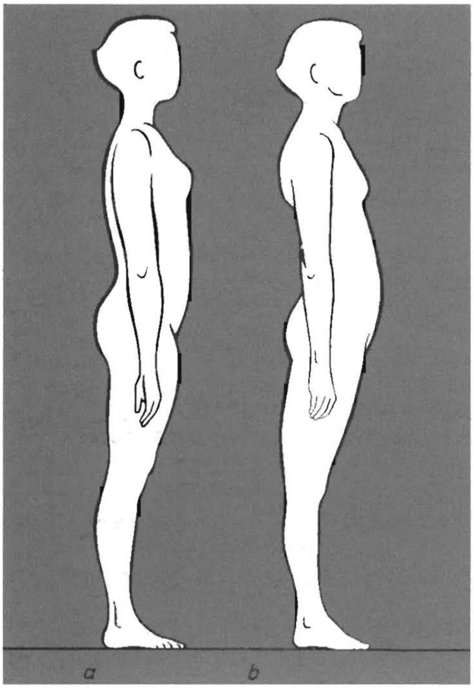


Figure 4.77 (*a*) Increased pelvic tilt and (*b*) lumbar hyperlordosis

increased forward tilt of the pelvis as well as increased lumbosacral (Figure 4.77*a*) and/or lumbar lordosis (Figure 4.77*b*). The hamstrings are usually short in this syndrome, but this is frequently a compensatory mechanism that lessens pelvic tilt.

It must be stressed, however, that even the antagonism of hip flexors and extensors, and of adductors and abductors, is only one somewhat simplistic aspect, for all these muscles stabilize the hip during gait and stance. Sometimes the imbalance can be due to dysfunction outside the pelvis, e.g. of the foot, as could be guessed from Figure 4.77*b*, where we find (unintentionally!) unproportionally strong muscles at the hip and a very weak lower leg and foot, i.e. an important disproportion which could imply compensation of weak stabilizers of the foot by hip stabilizers.

The upper crossed syndrome

There is imbalance in the following muscle groups:

1. Between the upper and lower fixators of the shoulder girdle (i.e. the upper trapezius, levator scapulae and frequently the scalenes on the one hand, and the lower trapezius and the serratus anterior on the other).
2. Between the pectorales and the interscapular muscles.
3. Between the deep neck flexors (longus cervicis, longus capitis and omo- and thyrohyoideus) on the one hand, and the neck extensors (cervical section of the erector spinae, upper part of the trapezius and levator scapulae) on the other.

In addition there may be shortening of the uppermost part of the ligamentum nuchae with fixed lordosis in the upper cervical region.

Obviously, if the lower fixators of the shoulder girdle are weak, the upper fixators must become hyperactive and tense. Hyperactivity of the pectorales produces round shoulders and forward-drawn shoulders, neck and head; weak deep neck flexors with short extensors produce hyperlordosis of the upper cervical spine. In addition to the relevant movement patterns, the respiration stereotype is also usually affected.

Here, too, one has to bear in mind what has been said about the lower crossed syndrome, possible interrelations between both syndromes and dysfunction at the hand and elbow.

Stratification syndrome

In this syndrome, strata of hypertrophic and weak muscle groups alternate: in a caudocranial direction there are weak muscles of the foot and leg, hypertrophic ischiocrural muscle groups, hypotrophic weak gluteals and underdeveloped lumbar erectores spinae, and above these the bulging hypertrophic thoracolumbar section of the erectores spinae; these are followed by flabby interscapular muscles with hypertrophic taut upper fixators of the shoulder girdle above them.

On the ventral aspect the lower section of the recti abdominis bulges, but more laterally there is a groove corresponding to the taut oblique abdominal muscles; lateral from this the abdominal wall may bulge again in the region of the waist ('pseudohernia').

This syndrome implies imbalance in the stratum of hypermobility (laxity) that alternates with strata of increased tension, hypermobility being most pronounced in the low-back region. It also illustrates the importance of disproportion.

Testing

Clinical examination provides a wealth of data concerning the functioning of the locomotor system and reflex changes in the tissues. This enables us not only to establish diagnosis, but to compare before and after therapy using the techniques described below, which produce an immediate reflex effect. Immediate testing, i.e. comparison of the state before and after treatment, thus constitutes a feedback which enables us to assess not only treatment but diagnosis on the spot, an aspect that is indispensable for the critical therapist. This becomes clear if we compare our procedure with that of the pharmacotherapist, whose clinical results are always difficult to assess in view of the ever-changing and frequently unpredictable course of the disease. It is all the more important, therefore, that we can see immediately clear effects, or complete failures. However, a positive test is not tantamount to therapeutic success, because if we have treated an irrelevant lesion the effect may be but short-lived. If the immediate effect is incomplete, this leads us to look carefully for yet another lesion.

In principle, every deviation from the norm found at clinical examination can be made the object of testing; obviously, the most rewarding are findings that can be measured: range of movement of joints, parts or mobile sections of the spinal column, and the straight leg raising test. However, improvement in the straight leg raising test should be considered reliable only if there is a marked difference in performance before and after treatment (20 degrees or more) and if the test has become much less painful. Side deviation in Hautant's test is also significant, as is asymmetrical distribution of weight on two scales before and after treatment. Systematic testing can easily show that even slightly paretic muscles in radicular syndromes acquire strength immediately after successful manipulation or even after traction, and that even the tendon reflex may improve.

It is also possible to test reflex changes: muscle spasm, trigger points, hyperalgesic zones, the skin fold, skin stretching or shifting of fascia may all be influenced immediately by manipulation, local anaesthesia or needling, or simply by skin stretching or post-isometric muscle relaxation. Instrumental methods such as the measurement of skin temperature, conductivity, plethysmography, etc. may also show reflex changes affected by any type of therapy.

Testing, however, also implies a more judicious attitude to treatment. It is essential to know the relative importance of numerous findings and their mutual influence. For instance, in disturbance of the low back, I may want to know the importance of dysfunction at the craniocervical junction or at the foot, or again, of a scar in a lesion at the shoulder: in such a case I must not treat the pelvis before I treat the craniocervical junction or the foot; nor must I treat the shoulder before I have done something about the scar. In other words, in a case which is not quite simple the patient has first to be thoroughly examined and only after analysis of the findings can treatment be planned so that by testing we can decide not just that the patient 'has improved' (or not) but also which lesion is primary, which is secondary, which is more and which is less relevant.

Although one should not rely solely on subjective assessment, it is of course most significant if the patient herself (as is frequently the case) feels and appreciates immediate relief after the appropriate treatment. It is, in fact, good policy to let the patient herself palpate pain points and trigger points before and after treatment, to assess the effect herself. If the therapist palpates after treatment, the patient sometimes doubts whether the same amount of force has been applied as before treatment, because she feels less.

In addition to its diagnostic value, testing is useful for indication of further therapy; e.g. if traction has brought relief, further traction treatment is probably indicated.

The course of examination with special regard to chain-reaction patterns

There is an important question: what should the case sheet of a patient with disturbed function of the locomotor system look like? A 'manipulative case sheet'?

Once the examination techniques are known, the question of how to obtain useful results in practice and avoid errors as far as is humanly possible must be addressed.

The answer is not simple, as the object of examination – disturbed function of the locomotor system and its reflex changes – concerns many different fields of medicine. Some patients present themselves with problems belonging to the field of general medicine; others with metabolic, endocrine, neurological, rheumatological, orthopaedic, gynaecological, otiatric and other symptoms; in some cases the trouble lies in disturbed joint mobility, in others in disturbed muscle function, while in other cases pain with its specific reflex reactions dominates. To examine each patient from all of these aspects would demand far more time than the clinician has at his disposal.

We must therefore approach each case from the point of view of the patient's complaint, and proceed from one finding to the next. Experience has shown that the findings follow certain patterns (chains) so that if we find (a) we expect (b) and must then look for (c).

If the patient is absolutely unknown to the examiner, he must first look at gait and posture, see how the musculature is developed, make screening tests of cervical, thoracic and lumbar mobility, palpate the pelvis with the patient standing, examine Patrick's sign with the patient supine, and examine rotation of the foot – at least.

As, however, the patient can be expected to provide information about his complaints, we may proceed accordingly. For instance, if a patient comes with headache troubles (and negative neurological findings) we must thoroughly examine mobility of the craniocervical junction and the typical pain points on the posterior arch of the atlas, the lateral aspect of the spinous process of C2, and the masticatory muscles. If the head is held in the forward-drawn position, we look for a stiff thoracic kyphosis, for taut pectoralis muscles, for hypertonus of the upper trapezius and levator scapulae and for weak lower parts of the trapezius; and we must even bear in mind that the disturbance may originate from the pelvis or even the lower extremities. If the patient adopts this forward-drawn position when seated, we look for increased lumbar kyphosis in the sitting position. We should never fail to note a raised thorax during respiration, and consequently examine the scalenus muscles. If there is restriction in the craniocervical junction we examine the upper ribs, the temporomandibular joint and masticatory muscles.

In shoulder pain or a painful upper arm we pay attention not only to the whole cervical spine including the craniocervical junction, but also to the cervicothoracic junction, the upper ribs and the humeroscapular joint; we have to expect a painful arc during abduction, examine joint play with the arm horizontal and examine the clavicular joints. Painful muscle insertions should be sought; we must palpate the epicondyles and examine joint play of the carpal bones. Here, too, disturbance of muscle function in the region of the shoulder girdle is important, and again a forward-drawn position of the shoulders, in view of pain during weight carrying.

Even for low-back pain we must give a screening examination to the upper cervical spine and then examine the position of the pelvis and some characteristic muscles (psoas, iliacus, erector trunci, piriformis, rectus femoris); we must perform the springing test with the patient prone, and lying on her side; we must examine the sacroiliac joints and the coccyx. If stooping is restricted on standing, we examine anteflexion sitting and then perform the straight leg raising test. Then we look for typical pain points and test the ligaments. If posture is affected, the muscles that govern pelvic inclination should be systematically tested, and if low-back pain is provoked by weight lifting, the patient's stooping stereotype should be examined.

These examples may suffice. They show how difficult is the complex approach: the locomotor system and its function mirror disturbances of the entire organism, while the system itself is highly complex and reacts as a whole, regardless of the site of symptoms. Many doctors who use methods treating only function and concomitant reflex changes are thinking only in terms of the method, and not in terms of the clinical object to which the method is applied, i.e. to disturbed function, which seems very elusive. Yet to treat mainly at the site of symptoms, of pain, is to fail, if the trouble is disturbed function.

It is by no means easy to think in terms of function. Instead of well-defined structures, function implies the correlation and interplay of structures that may be very far apart. The practitioner may well feel the ground slipping from under him. That is why the patterns or chains based on empirical observation help by providing a rational approach to systematic clinical examination directed at disturbed function.

We must ask whether these chains are haphazard or whether there is some underlying principle which helps us to understand and therefore predict them. Tracing the early ontogenesis of postural activity according to Vojta and Peters (1992) and Kolar (1996) such a principle becomes clear. The most important feature is the development of the extension pattern of the neck and trunk (i.e. the spinal column) which characterizes the human race and is the prerequisite for erect posture. However, the extensors alone could never maintain erect posture. For trunk stability a co-contraction pattern had to develop: muscles originally acting as antagonists (trunk extensors and trunk flexors, knee extensors and knee flexors) became synergists for the maintenance of posture and gait. First we analyse some basic functions of the locomotor system.

Disturbances of these basic functions, with typical chains of affected structures, are given in Table 4.3.

The practical advantages are clear; not only can we more readily assess the condition of our patient, but each of the disturbances listed can be treated in a way which is specific, even if several methods may be used. Concomitant (reflex) changes in the soft tissues have not been listed, for clarity; such changes are usually segmentally linked to muscles and joints. They become more important in the chronic stage. It is of interest that increased resistance of fascia to shift, with concomitant tautness of muscles (but not trigger points), is often found on the side that is not painful and does not present symptoms; this is not true of hyperalgesic skin zones, however.

The chain reactions given here are not meant to be complete nor are they by far the only ones. They are the expression of some basic functions or 'programmes' of the motor system. A typical chain related to forward-drawn posture standing is worth mentioning: here as a rule we find increased tension with TrPs in the abdominal muscles, increased tension in the whole of the back and neck musculature, increased tension in the buttocks, and as a rule at the fibular head, with a TrP in the biceps femoris and frequently also dysfunction at the feet. Tension in the back and neck muscles disappears in the sitting position.

Another chain described by Silverstolpe as 'pelvic dysfunction' is characterized by a very tender TrP in the erector spinae, causing a twitch reaction in the lumbar region, a gluteal pain point, TrPs of the m. coccygeus and respiratory dysfunction in the upper respiratory tract, owing to dysfunction of the pelvic diaphragm. The latter forms part of the abdominal cavity wall along with the diaphragm and the abdominal muscles which are essential for respiration.

Brügger describes what he calls the 'sterno-symphyseal syndrome' as a consequence of habitually sitting in a round-shouldered position: forward-drawn head with increased tension in most of the muscles of the shoulder girdle, increased tension in the short extensors of the craniocervical junction, increased tension in the abdominal muscles and even in the muscles of the thighs. To what an extent this dysfunctional chain is reversible can be demonstrated if the patient changes into an erect (lordotic) sitting position with the result that areas of tension with TrPs in these muscles immediately disappear (see p. 246).

In a great number of usually severe cases with a chronic course we find what may be called a 'chain reaction from severe nociception'. Unlike the forward-drawn posture and the Brügger chain where the co-contraction pattern has been thrown out of balance, here we find TrPs in both extensors and flexors, mainly on one side, but much more frequently on the right. There may be some (equally balanced) TrPs on the left, too, but these are much less prominent. The most striking feature at first glance is ventral prominence of the right shoulder (with the patient supine) due to a TrP in the upper part of the pectoralis major, with concomitant TrPs in the longissimus and serratus anterior.

The muscles involved are given in Table 4.4.

As a rule it is sufficient to treat the most relevant TrP, or a restricted joint relevant to the corresponding muscle (e.g. the fibular head and the biceps femoris), and the entire chain can be expected to vanish.

It should be pointed out here that visceral changes producing reactions in the locomotor system frequently trigger off chains or patterns that are of great diagnostic value and provide a basis for rational treatment. It is of practical significance that such chains are usually formed on one side of the body. It is obvious that these chains may combine and form most complex patterns.

The therapeutic consequences are no less important, for the links in these chains react on each other: thus, treating a joint may normalize a muscle trigger point, or vice versa; treatment of one trigger point may affect others in the chain, as does treatment of a joint in a key region. In chronic cases an immobile fascia or scar may be highly relevant – and relevance is decisive. The key to this, however, is a deeper understanding of function (dysfunction).

The functional approach

From the previous chapters it should be obvious that the decisive first step in diagnosis is to decide whether we have to approach the patient's problem in the conventional, i.e. pathological, way or whether we should approach it according to the principles of functional pathology.

1. The first and fundamental task in classification, and hence also in diagnosis, is whether we have to deal (mainly) with pathology or dysfuncton.
2. Function (physiology) is as real as is anatomy (pathology).
3. Pathology can be defined as a rule both as to localization and nature. Function on the other hand is the result of the correlation and interplay of a whole chain of different structures of various localization.
4. Even where there is structural pathology there are also changes in function which cause clinical symptoms.
5. The clinical picture correlates mainly with the changes in function, much less with structural pathology. Very frequently indeed pathological changes do not manifest themselves so long as function is not impaired. On the other hand, changes in function by themselves may cause very marked clinical changes in the absence of any (structural) pathology.
6. For the same reasons even clearly diagnosed pathology can be clinically irrelevant (disc herniation at CT, spondylolisthesis, scoliosis, etc.), whereas the dysfunction which can usually be diagnosed only by clinical means can be of decisive importance.
7. If we directed our therapeutic efforts at the pathological changes our therapy would fail in such cases; on the other hand, even if the pathological changes are important, we still may improve the patient's condition if we improve function – for this is exactly what can be achieved by rehabilitation. It is, however, necessary to be aware of the limits of what can be achieved.
8. The diagnostic task in pathological diagnosis is to localize the lesion exactly and to determine its nature (principle of localization).
9. The diagnostic task in dysfunction is to determine the pathogenetic chain and to assess the correlation and relevance of the individual links (holistic principle).
10. The mechanism producing pain due to pathological changes corresponds to the nature of the pathology in the case; if, on the other hand, function is changed, the mechanism is mainly due to increased tension as a result of dysfunction.
11. If therapy is successful in conditions caused by pathological changes, it is continued until the lesion has healed, or the decision to operate is taken.
12. If therapy is successful in changes due to dysfunction, we shall probably decide to treat another link of the pathogenetic chain. If we

Table 4.3 Chain reactions

Body area and function	*Findings*	*Parts affected*
Lower extremity – gait: stance phase, extension (impaired flexion)	Increased tension ↕	Toe and foot flexors, triceps surae, hamstrings, glutei, piriformis, pelvic diaphragm, lumbar erector spinae
	Tender attachment points ↕	Calcaneal spur, Achilles tendon, fibular head, ischial tuberosity, coccyx, iliac crest, trochanter major and spinous processes L4–S1
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Small joints of foot and ankle, fibular head, sacroiliac joint, low lumbar spine
Lower extremity – gait: swing phase, flexion (impaired extension)	Increased tension ↕	Extensors of the foot and toes, anterior tibialis, hip flexors, adductors, recti abdominis, thoracolumbar erector spinae and upper neck extensors
	Tender attachment points ↕	Pes anserinus, patella, symphysis (upper and lateral aspect), xiphoid
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Knee, hip, sacroiliac joint, upper lumbar spine and thoracolumbar junction
Trunk: body statics	Increased tension (in muscle pairs) ↕	SCM: short craniocervical extensors, scaleni + deep neck flexors + digastrici: trapezii + levatores scapulae, iliopsoas + recti abdominis: erector spinae + quadratus
	Tender attachment points (referred pain) ↕	Posterior atlas arch and transverse processes, spinous process of axis, linea nuchae, medial end of collar bone, hyoid, upper and vertebral margin of scapula, xiphoid, symphysis, lowest ribs, iliac crests
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Craniocervical junction (TMJ), cervicothoracic junction, upper ribs, thoracolumbar junction, lumbosacral and sacroiliac junction
Lifting the thorax at respiration	Increased tension ↕	Upper sections of abdominal muscles, pectorales, scaleni, SCM, levatores, trapezii, short extensors of the craniocervical junction, levator scapulae and trapezius
	Tender attachment points ↕	Posterior atlas arch and transverse processes, spinous process of axis, linea nuchae, medial end of collar bone, upper margin of scapula, sternocostal junctions and upper ribs
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Craniocervical junction, cervicothoracic junction, upper ribs, thoracic spine
Upper extremity – prehension, impaired flexion	Increased tension ↕	Finger and wrist extensors, thenar, supinators, biceps, deltoideus, supra- + infraspinatus, upper fixators of the shouder girdle, interscapular muscles
	Tender attachment points ↕	Proc. styloideus + lateral epicondyle, attachment of supra- and infraspinatus, attachment points of levator scapulae and the spinous process of axis
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Elbow, acromioclavicular joint, mid-cervical spine, cervicothoracic junction, upper ribs

Table 4.3 Chain reactions (continued)

Body area and function	*Findings*	*Parts affected*
Upper extremity – prehension, impaired extension	Increased tension	Finger and wrist flexors, pronators, subscapularis, pectoralis, SCM, scaleni
	Tender attachment points	Medial epicondyle, medial end of collar bone, sternocostal junction, Erb's point, transverse atlas process
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Carpal bones (carpal tunnel), elbow, glenohumeral joint, cervicothoracic and craniocervical junction + upper ribs
Head and neck, feeding, mastication, speech	Increased tension	Masticatory muscles, digastricus, SCM, short extensors of the craniocervical junction, trapezius, levator, deep neck flexors, pectoralis
	Tender attachment points	Hyoid, posterior atlas arch and transverse process, spinous process of axis, linea nuchae, upper margin of scapula, angle of upper ribs
	Joint dysfunction (blockage)	Temporomandibular joint, craniocervical junction, cervicothoracic junction

Table 4.4 Chain due to nociception

On the ventral aspect	*On the dorsal aspect*
SCM, scaleni	Short neck extensors, splenii, semispin. cap., upper trapezius
Pectoralis major upper part	Longissimus, serratus ant.
Subscapularis	Infraspinatus, teres minor
Pectoralis minor	Rhomboidei
Oblique abdominals	Longissimus
Short adductors	Glutei, biceps femoris
Short toe extensor	Short toe flexors
Biceps	Triceps
Pronator	Supinator
Finger flexors	Finger extensors

have to treat the same lesion again, we should first consider whether there is not a more important lesion which we have missed or underrated the first time. To change treatment each time is the routine approach.

13. In pathological conditions, success is achieved by effective drugs (pharmacotherapy), or possibly by surgery. In dysfunction, success depends on the correct choice of the relevant link, or links, of a chain at the right moment.
14 From what has been said, it follows that the functional approach is much more difficult. We may compare pathology to the 'hardware' and dysfunction to the 'software' of the motor system.
15. Therefore whoever only treats dysfunction at the point where pain is felt is lost – or rather his patient is.
16. Because changes in function are reversible in nature it can be expected that, if adequately treated (and the case is not complicated), the effect of treatment is immediate, giving the impression of a 'miracle cure', which, however, can be predictable.
17. The relationship between cause and effect usually presents no major problem in conditions caused by structural pathology. On the other hand, it can be very subtle in changes due to dysfunction; what was originally the cause may become secondary and vice versa. Chronic pain of any origin will produce changes in motor patterns or stereotypes which, in turn, will cause dysfunction perpetuating pain. Chronic joint movement restriction and trigger points cause impaired mobility of the fasciae, which in turn produce joint movement restriction and muscular trigger points.
18. Statistical methods are very useful in well-defined pathology and should be mandatory in this field. It is, however, much more difficult to apply them in changes of function. Even for diagnosis, the same clinical condition (e.g. headache) can be the result of a long chain of various disturbances, the relevance of each link constantly changing. In therapy, if we have treated one link successfully, it would be nonsensical to repeat the same treatment. If,

therefore, there are still symptoms left, we have to treat another link in the chain. If the patient is then without symptoms, this by no means implies that the first treatment was of no avail. However, this is very difficult to assess by statistics.

19. Psychology is important in every type of patient for its influence on the autonomous nervous system, e.g. stress. In dysfunction, however, psychology is part of the pathogenetic chain because the locomotor system is the effector of our mental activity, the organ of voluntary movement. This is further borne out by the fact that pain is the most constant symptom, and that tension and its relaxation play a very important role. It is, however, necessary to decide how relevant the psychological factor is in each case and how amenable to treatment.
20. Modern technology enables us to diagnose pathological lesions much more effectively, even if irrelevant, and also to make them objective. In dysfunction, technology is usually of little use and very cumbersome. Clinical skill remains decisive. This, however, is considered 'subjective'.

Problems of differential diagnosis

There are two main categories: the first concerns headache, visceral pain etc., which may be due either to disturbed function of the vertebral column or to some other lesion of the locomotor system such as muscle spasm, or to visceral disease. This category covers the whole field of medicine, and the problem will frequently have to be solved with the collaboration of specialists in the relevant branches of medicine.

The second category concerns lesions in the locomotor system which may be due either to disturbed function or (mainly or partly) to structural changes (pathology). This involves differential diagnosis in the locomotor system itself, i.e. the main object of our therapy; errors in differential diagnosis in this category are most unfortunate and lie entirely within our responsibility.

In general terms, the pitfalls are inflammatory, metabolic or neoplastic diseases. Some screening tests should be performed as a routine procedure (erythrocyte sedimentation rate, uric acid level and X-ray pictures). However, particularly in the initial stage of the disease, it is usually impossible to recognize the true nature of the condition, and such patients may be just as well treated with reflex (physical) therapy, including manipulation, as with analgesics. The great advantage of the up-to-date techniques described in this book is that they cannot harm the patient.

If it is impossible to recognize pathology in the initial stages, the course of the disease should give sufficient warning; the most important signs are repeated relapses, the decreasing effect of all therapeutic measures and progressive deterioration. There is one important warning note to sound: however desirable it is to test immediately after treatment, a positive result, i.e. immediate improvement of objective findings, and subjective relief, do not preclude pathology, including tumours, because of concomitant blockage and other reflex changes that are susceptible to adequate therapy.

In the case history described below, recurrent blockage irrespective of manipulation led us to suspect (correctly) a tumorous growth.

Case history (A. F., born 1915)

This patient underwent surgery for a subcutaneous tumour on the left hypothenar, which caused pain and, the same year, for a Dupuytren's contracture of the fourth finger on the left hand. In spring 1959, he complained of pain in the back of the neck, with stiffness. The pain gradually increased and the patient was admitted to hospital in May 1961; pneumomyelography (PMG) was negative. By autumn, four manipulations had given no relief. When again admitted on 13 October, the patient held his head slightly bent forward and rotated to the right. All rotation, especially to the left, was impeded by pain. Erb's point was painful on the right; spinous processes C2–C4 were painful on palpation. There was a broad hyperalgesic zone on the back of the neck. The right hand showed a static (functional) tremor. At PMG with 30 ml of air by lumbar route with the patient seated and bent forward, it was clear that at C2 the spinal cord was markedly displaced in a dorsal direction. The air penetrated in front of the cord and from there under the arch of C1. The fluid showed typical albuminocytological dissociation. A root syndrome appeared after PMG, surprisingly, in the C8 segment. Diagnosis was a neurinoma on the ventral aspect of the cord, partially intradural: at operation a neurinoma of the root of C2 (right), which protruded into the intradural ventral cord space, was removed. The patient was relieved of unbearable pain soon after operation, although slight pain persisted.

I now list some typical pitfalls and suggest how they may be avoided. If relapses occur regularly at the same segment of the spine, despite preventive measures (including remedial exercise), the principal cause will be visceral disease affecting that segment, tumour, or some other pathology of corresponding localization. When sacroiliac blockage recurs in young patients we must consider the possibility of ankylosing spondylitis. In women after the climacteric, osteoporosis must be borne in mind.

Differential diagnosis is particularly difficult but important in the acute stage after injury. There are cases in which we can achieve immediate relief, but it is essential to rule out major trauma such as fracture, luxation, torn ligaments or muscles and muscle sheaths, and haematoma.

Abnormal function may be due to anomaly, in which case direct treatment is useless and futile –

another reason why X-ray examination is desirable. Once the anomaly is recognized we must try to attain compensation or substitution of impaired function.

The most frequent diagnosis requiring differentiation is that of disc prolapse, with or without pathology. This problem is dealt with in Chapter 7.

Because the most prominent symptom in our patients is pain, it is important to differentiate between physical, psychological and partly psychological pain. There is an unfortunate tendency in the medical profession – although an understandable one – to dismiss pain as psychological if no physical signs are present. However, as most doctors are not familiar with the examination of disturbed locomotor function and its reflex changes, it is my belief that they simply fail to recognize the most frequent cause of pain. If the patient is able to give a fairly precise description and localization of his pain, I feel one should be reluctant on that account to regard it as merely psychological. As we have already seen, in doubtful cases the physical and psychological components will be distinguished during the treatment, when repeated comparison of (changing) physical signs and the patient's own assessment of them will provide objective criteria.

There is a special problem, however, in cases of masked depression, which frequently take the outward form of vertebrogenic pain and may even cause lesions by exaggerated muscle tension and a cramped posture, in particular in the cervical region, with headache as the principal complaint; low-back pain is also frequently presented.

The diagnosis cannot be established at the first examination but, here again, the course of treatment should alert the therapist to the possibility that there is something more than pain due to disturbed locomotor function. Once we take into consideration the possible existence of masked depression, we should enquire into any history of depression in the family and the patient's own past. The most important symptom is disturbed sleep: characteristically, the patient falls asleep normally but wakes within a few hours and cannot go back to sleep. Here the decisive criterion is the effect of antidepressive drugs; if the underlying cause of the 'vertebrogenic' pain is masked depression, the symptoms will clear up.

A brief warning must be given here: subarachnoid haemorrhage and acute wry neck in a labile patient may be difficult to distinguish. In some cases of acute wry neck with nausea, vomiting, and a panic reaction, and when there is pain at head anteflexion – all symptoms provoked by the autonomic nervous system – lumbar puncture is mandatory. Conversely, the principal symptom in subarachnoid haemorrhage may be acute neck pain, and the main sign on examination may be restricted anteflexion of the head.

Another warning must be issued, concerning intracranial tumours, particularly of the posterior fossa, with occipital headache and a forced head position which can easily be mistaken for wry neck, as in the following case.

Case history (F. M., born 1914)

This female patient was an unskilled worker. From September 1961 she complained of headaches starting in the nape of the neck, causing vomiting. Relief after manipulation lasted about a month. At control examination there was marked local pain of the wry-neck type and a very painful spot on the C2 lamina to the right, which neither manipulation nor injection obliterated. Two months later the patient was holding her head forward and to the left. Trying to correct this posture, we found no typical blockage but a defensive reaction, suggesting intracranial hypertension. There were no neurological findings, the eye fundus was normal and the EEG negative. However, pneumoencephalography showed a massive occipital conus, and the forced position of the head returned. Some of the air penetrated the third ventricle which was dislocated to the left. Carotid angiography on the right revealed a vascularized tumour in the parietal zone, parasagittal to the right and probably a meningioma. The patient underwent surgery.

Muscular pain due to myofascial tender points is probably what has been described as benign polymyositis (Currie, 1981), and is now accepted as a nosological entity, 'fibromyalgia'. This is a chronic systemic disease affecting mainly women between 30 and 50 years of age. It attacks numerous muscle groups on both sides, almost symmetrically, and is combined with a sensation of intense fatigue. There is morning stiffness not unlike true rheumatism and there is disturbance of non-REM sleep, which induces a state of depression. On palpation, muscular tender points seem rather hypotonic and dough-like; it is important to realize that muscles are tender at palpation only when tonus is abnormal (the examiner must know how to palpate!). The following laboratory findings are significant: a lowered level of ATP and phosphocreatinine; at biopsy the muscle fibres have a moth-eaten appearance; muscular de-contraction is sluggish; microcirculation in the capillaries is impaired, causing hypoxia, and the EEG shows disturbance of non-REM sleep. Tricyclic antidepressants are the treatment of choice; physical exercise is recommended to improve circulation, but it does not help to relieve pain. The usual analgesics and corticoids are ineffective. In our experience, light (not painful) massage at the hands of a sensitive physiotherapist gives most relief.

To conclude this chapter on differential diagnosis, and diagnosis in general, I must stress that diagnosis of disturbed function of the locomotor system is a new field of clinical medicine, and as such is still a diffficult one. Any pathological lesion is first made manifest by disturbed function. Moreover, patients referred for pain due to 'mere' disturbed function are mostly outpatients who cannot be examined as thoroughly as those in a hospital ward. The physician in charge of such cases must always be aware of the innumerable pitfalls around him; no danger is greater than that of over-assurance. This chapter on differential diagnosis cannot be more than a warning.

5

Indications for treatment

Indications for treatment should be the result not only of clinical diagnosis but mainly of pathogenic analysis, determining which lesion is most important at a given moment and is therefore likely to be the most effective object of therapy. Every measure we take should thus result from a fresh examination, to keep up to date with the course of the patient's condition. For if our therapy is determined by the principles set out here, it is likely to be effective and at control examination the condition of the patient should have changed, implying a change in further treatment. If the patient's condition is unchanged, treatment was not adequate and should not be repeated without good reason. A series of repetitive therapeutic measures of the same type is more often than not out of place. Critical assessment of the preceding treatment and constant correction of planned therapeutic measures are essential.

It should be pointed out again that this concerns pathogenesis and not conventional clinical diagnosis. Structural pathology must first be ruled out or be found irrelevant to the case. For example, if the patient suffers from headache or pain at the shoulder and if my analysis shows that this is the result of dysfunction of the cervical spine, this will be the objective of treatment. If, however, dysfunction of the cervical spine is due to a forward-drawn posture standing, and disappears when the patient sits, the cause must be sought at the pelvic girdle, or even at the lower extremity. Hence treatment should start only after complete examination.

Methods of treatment

1. Manipulation.
2. Traction.
3. Soft tissue manipulation:
   (a) skin stretch
   (b) connective tissue stretch, pull or pressure
   (c) shifting of fasciae
   (d) post-isometric relaxation
   (e) exteroceptive stimulation.
4. Reflex therapy:
   (a) massage
   (b) local anaesthesia – needling
   (c) electrical stimulation
   (d) acupuncture
   (e) treatment of scars
   (f) other methods of physical therapy
   (g) soft tissue manipulation versus reflex therapy.
5. Remedial exercise.
6. Correction of faulty statics.
7. Immobilization (supports).
8. Pharmacotherapy.
9. Surgery.
10. Regimen.

Manipulation

Manipulative treatment is indicated if there is movement restriction (blockage) of a joint or a spinal mobile segment, and if this is considered relevant to the patient's symptoms.

Bearing this in mind, many of the questions frequently asked can be answered easily: what about spondylosis, disc prolapse, scoliosis, juvenile osteochondrosis, spondylolisthesis, osteoporosis, or ankylosing spondylitis? The answer is straightforward: these conditions do not form the objective for manipulative treatment. Nevertheless, if in such conditions movement restriction (blockage) is found and considered harmful, then it should be treated with adequate manipulative techniques.

To give some examples: as the pathogenic importance of spondylosis is questionable, if movement restriction is the main disturbance of function, the patient's symptoms will probably resolve after manipulation. In disc prolapse concomitant blockage may cause the patient's condition to deteriorate considerably, so that after treatment of the blockage the clinical condition may be greatly improved. To what extent this will happen cannot be easily foretold, but it is always worth trying, provided that we use the right technique. Scoliosis is certainly not an objective for manipulation, as in itself the condition does not usually cause pain. If a patient with scoliosis feels pain, and blockage is present, it is probably the cause of that pain and should be treated. Manipulation is indicated if blockage interferes with remedial exercise. In both juvenile osteochondrosis and osteoporosis, stiffness (immobility) is harmful, and normal mobility improves trophicity. Adequate gentle mobilization techniques are therefore indicated to restore mobility. Spondylolisthesis (and many other anomalies such as basilar impression) cannot be influenced by manipulation, but in their final stages are more often than not symptom free. Blockage can be, and frequently is, the true cause of symptoms. In ankylosing spondylitis movement therapy is indicated, and mobilization techniques are most appropriate; they have to be applied, however, to those segments that still show some degree of mobility.

The reason for these somewhat sweeping statements is that the basic techniques described in this book are very gentle and also very effective for mobilization, using muscular facilitation and inhibition (neuromuscular techniques), i.e. the inherent forces of the patient. It is most unfortunate that in the minds of most people, physicians and laymen alike, manipulation is tantamount to thrusting techniques – techniques that should rather be the exception.

It cannot be over emphasized that if movement restriction is severe, if there is much pain and muscle spasm, if several segments or an entire section of the spinal column is affected, then thrusting techniques are ruled out, for they are not only too violent, but more often than not ineffective as well, whereas mobilization techniques capable of dealing with muscle spasm overcome movement restriction gently. With a few exceptions we never begin treatment with a thrusting manoeuvre, and if manipulative treatment is required frequently, thrusting techniques would be definitely harmful.

After this eulogy of gentle mobilization let us turn to the real role of thrusting techniques. The most important occasion for their use is when, after mobilization, the experienced therapist has the impression that restriction has not been entirely overcome in (preferably) a single segment, because there is still some resistance to be felt, or a pain spot remains tender (this tenderness usually disappears when restriction has been removed). This remaining symptom is then treated by a high-velocity thrust, the segment or joint being well prepared for this manoeuvre by the preceding mobilization. The thrust should succeed with the minimum of force, and if it does not the therapist should desist. It is as if he asks the structure he is manipulating whether it is ready to accept a thrust or not; if it is ready, it will 'click' or 'pop' with the greatest ease, but if this does not happen the manipulator should desist and go back to gentle mobilization. Another situation in which a thrust is useful is that of very slight and painless blockage, with minimum muscular spasm, which is nevertheless thought to be clinically relevant because, for example, it is in a key region. A thrust is the quickest way of dealing with this. It can be seen from Figure 4.3 (p. 93) what slight force is applied in an expertly performed high-velocity thrust.

In this connection it is worth quoting Stoddard's (1961) system of recording degrees of joint mobility (Figure 5.1).

0 = No mobility – ankylosis; not suitable for manipulative treatment.
1 = Severe restriction; only mobilization techniques to be applied.
2 = Slight restriction; both mobilization and thrust techniques can be used.
3 = Normal mobility; best left alone, but if there is movement restriction in some directions while in others the joint is free, treatment in a free direction can be useful (Maigne, 1968), and is

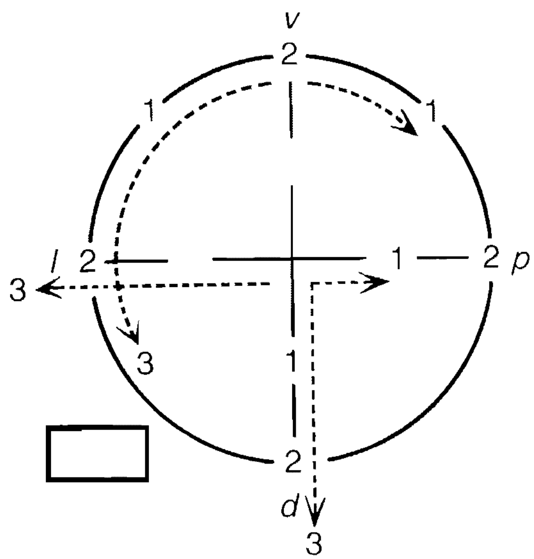


Figure 5.1 The degree of blockage: here the segment C7–T1 is blocked at rotation and side-bending to the right (severe restriction) and at side-bending to the left and back-bending (slight restriction). By drawing in an arrow extending beyond the circle it is possible to indicate hypermobility (After Stoddard, 1961)

usually very gentle (the 'indirect method' of the American osteopaths).

4 = Segmental hypermobility; all types of manipulative treatment, particularly thrust techniques, should be avoided.

From the technical point of view we distinguish between techniques which produce relative shift of articular facets and those which produce distraction (gapping). As a rule the latter are the most effective.

Contraindications

This problem is given much space in the medical literature, but in my opinion it is rather a pseudo-problem. With up-to-date techniques no harm should ever ensue from manipulation, and in fact the problem boils down to the need to avoid technical mistakes. To put it briefly, what is contraindicated is faulty technique.

What are the crucial faults? These are (1) the predominant use of thrust techniques; (2) applying a high-velocity thrust before the patient is properly relaxed and before taking up the slack (see Chapter 6); (3) trying to force manipulation of any type against painful muscle spasm or in a direction that causes pain; (4) thrust techniques should be avoided in cervical back-bending and rotation, because of possible impingement on the vertebral artery; (5) thrust manipulation should not be repeated at short intervals (less than 1–2 weeks).

In this connection I must also stress that too insistent examination of mobility in a painful direction can be positively harmful, and at the craniocervical junction even dangerous.

The discussion of contraindications derives from the fact that serious complications have been described in the literature, even with a fatal outcome (Grossiord, 1966; Lorenz and Vogelsang, 1972; the Memorandum of the German Association of Manual Medicine, 1979; Krueger and Okazaki, 1980; Dvořák and Orelli, 1985). Basing their calculations on the results of a questionnaire sent to doctors of the Swiss Association of Manual Medicine, the last two authors compute the number of serious complications after manipulation (thrust techniques) at 1:400000. By far the most important cause of serious complication is undoubtedly damage to the vertebral artery.

Unfortunately, it is an almost constant feature of this literature that the technique responsible for the damage is not described – as if postoperative complications were described with no details of the operation technique used. There is one example quoted by Dvořák and Orelli (1985), however, which seems to me so characteristic that I shall comment on it here:

A female patient of 35 collapsed while attending a funeral and suffered from wry neck for 3 weeks afterwards. 'She was manipulated three times within 1 week by a qualified chiropractor (the patient was supine and the manipulation consisted of rotation, reclination and extension of the head)'. This was followed by a short period of unconsciousness and later by tetraplegia; artificial respiration had to be applied and maintained for 36 hours. Recovery took several weeks and was complete 4 months later.

Thrust techniques in acute wry neck (torticollis) are questionable in themselves, but to use the dangerous combination of 'rotation, reclination and extension' is courting disaster (see de Kleyn's test, p. 120). Another grave mistake is the use of thrust techniques in short succession for painful conditions which do not show improvement; complications occur most frequently with such repetitions.

From this description of a possibly dangerous 'technical mistake' something like a contraindication can be deduced: if it is a mistake to perform manipulation in a painful direction, then manipulative therapy must be discarded altogether if we produce pain in all directions. In fact, in mere disturbance of function (i.e. the objective of manipulative therapy) pain is never found in all directions at once; distraction as a rule brings relief, and therefore pain in all directions at once is usually a sign of pathology and manipulation is out of place.

For obvious reasons manipulation of hypermobility is undesirable, but not manipulation of a blocked segment in an otherwise hypermobile patient.

This brings us to another category of 'contraindications' which is often strongly emphasized: tumours, in particular those with destructive changes; acute inflammatory conditions (such as tuberculosis); fracture, etc. It is clear that no one in his senses would try to treat this type of pathology by manipulation; on the other hand, we know that, particularly in the initial stages of such conditions, diagnostic error is often unavoidable. The specialist sees such patients in hospital, at a later stage, when the diagnosis is already easier. Nevertheless, using adequate gentle techniques, the patient should come to no more harm than from the administration of analgesics – and suffer fewer side-effects. To make the point even clearer: if in a case of diagnosed pathology concomitant blockage is considered harmful to the patient's condition (as it frequently is), there is no reason why this blockage should not be treated if we know how. I have myself given manipulation in acute decompensation of (benign) posterior fossa tumour, with excellent temporary results. Blockage at the craniocervical junction can cause great deterioration in patients with insufficiency of the vertebral artery, and should be treated by expert mobilization. It is most unfortunate that this condition is considered by many to offer a contraindication, simply because technical errors in this situation are particularly disastrous.

The course of manipulative treatment

In a routine case which is neither very severe nor very acute we treat those restrictions of movement which we think clinically important, in particular those in key regions, even if painless (i.e. clinically latent). After treatment the patient is told she may expect some unpleasant reaction at the end of the day, or during the next day or two, and if possible is advised about what to correct (or avoid) in her daily regimen. About 2 weeks is a reasonable interval for control examination, the organism having had time to react and to adapt itself to restored mobility.

In a way the control examination is almost more important than the first examination; our diagnostic conclusions on first examination might be called a working hypothesis (except for very simple cases), a hypothesis on which we base the first therapeutic steps; it is at the second examination that this hypothesis is verified and we decide on a plan of treatment.

If the patient feels clearly improved it is likely that the conclusions reached at first examination were well founded, and we proceed to treat what remains to be cleared up. We may invite the patient for re-examination after 3 or 4 weeks, and if all goes well, again after 6 weeks. However, even if improvement is steady, we should follow up the patient for several months, in view of the typical chronic and relapsing course of these disturbances.

If the patient feels no improvement at the second examination, the first question must be: did she feel better for a few days, or not at all? Treatment sometimes produces a very marked but short-lived effect. At re-examination two distinct conditions may be found: (1) the findings are the same, i.e. treatment has given no results or (which is not much better) the condition has relapsed; (2) our original findings have been corrected but new factors are now producing similar symptoms.

In the latter case, we can consider the patient improved even if her complaints (her pain) seem to be the same. There is even a highly characteristic pattern in the cervical region: the lesions tend to move in a caudal direction from one treatment to the next, until they disappear.

In the former case, however, we must ask ourselves whether the first diagnosis was correct, or complete; whether we did not overlook an underlying condition which may have produced relapse (blockage at a key point at the other end of the spinal column, an awkward position at work, etc.); or whether the case is not altogether more serious than it appeared at first.

If the case is very severe, i.e. if the blockage is hard and painful, and there is restriction of larger sections of the spinal column, then this type of treatment is insufficient and repeated mobilization is required, i.e. two or three times a week. In such cases we should always teach the patient self-treatment (mobilization) which she can perform several times a day.

If manipulation has brought no relief at all, nor any change, it may be given another chance, but only after careful re-examination and reassessment of the whole case, because the most likely reason is diagnostic error. If the effect is always good but short-lived, followed by relapse, we must seek the underlying cause. This then becomes our main concern (e.g. cardiac ischaemia in recurrent lesions in the upper thoracic spine), for to go on treating movement restriction in such cases would be more than useless.

Obviously, as a rule, more serious cases will not be treated by manipulation alone and can be expected to have a chronic course. It is then important to follow up the patient for a considerable time, 6 months or more, at intervals.

The possibility of indicating manipulation for the purpose of prevention must also be considered. True, manipulation is indicated only if we think the movement restriction is clinically relevant. On the other hand, when administering manipulative treatment we should never overlook blockage in key regions, because this is most likely to cause relapse. In other words, we indicate manipulation for clinically latent blockage in key regions in order to prevent relapse. This is in effect introducing the preventive aspect into therapy, a regular feature of rehabilitation. Bearing this in mind, there is a strong case to be made for manipulative treatment, for example, in children, physically very exposed individuals, etc. (see Chapter 8).

Traction

Traction is essentially a form of manipulation, but unlike other methods it is generally accepted in traditional medicine. Within the framework of manipulative techniques, traction of the lumbar and cervical spinal column has a specific role: it is particularly useful in true radicular syndromes and in the lumbar spine whenever the diagnosis of disc lesion is made. In fact, if traction relieves symptoms in the lumbar region, then the diagnosis of disc lesion is corroborated. In both the cervical and the lumbar region traction can be very useful in such conditions as acute wry neck and acute lumbago. The essential technical details are given in Chapter 6.

There is one important point to be made, however: whatever our opinion of the usefulness of traction, it is essential to test each case and apply traction only where it gives relief. If there is no relief, we must first modify the technique and then desist if it still fails. One of the reasons why traction is sometimes badly tolerated is blockage, which must first be treated by manipulation before traction can be applied (e.g. in radicular syndromes). It is our opinion that manual traction techniques given in Chapter 6 are much better than those with the aid of special tables.

Soft tissue manipulation

Soft tissue, in particular the deeper layers of connective tissue in muscles and fascia, is closely related to the motor system, both anatomically and in function. It is the function of soft tissue to be stretchable while able to resist stretching, and to be shifted (even to a considerable degree) while yet able to resist shift. Changes in soft tissue have usually been considered to be reflex changes, i.e. secondary to changes in articular and muscular function. This is not always the case, however, particularly in chronic cases and in metabolic or endocrine disorders (the tissues forming a 'terrain' or constitutional factor). In all soft tissue lesions it is possible to detect a (pathological) barrier that can be overcome by adequate treatment, thus restoring function in the same way as in restricted joints or muscles in spasm. If there are significant hyperalgesic zones (HAZ), and in particular increased resistance when shifting fascia, and, of course, trigger points (TrPs), it is advisable to treat such soft tissue lesions before performing joint mobilization (manipulation), as the treatment itself may have considerable mobilizing effect.

1. Skin stretching: this method is specific in hyperalgesic skin zones. It has an effect similar to that of some massage techniques applied to the skin, like rolling a fold of skin (Kibler, 1958) (the 'pince roulée' of Maigne or the technique of Leube and Dicke (1951)), but unlike these techniques it is absolutely painless, much less time-consuming, and can (and should) be used by the patient himself. Skin stretching should only be indicated for increased tension in the skin surface or, more precisely, for increased resistance to stretching over a specific area of the skin. It can be applied to a very small area, such as the hyperalgesic fold between the toes in a radicular syndrome, or the skin over a periosteal pain point, with very good effect. Being entirely painless, it may be applied even to hyperalgesic skin in causalgia.
2. Connective tissue stretch: in the deep layer of connective tissue, and particularly in subcutaneous tissue, in taut muscles, and above all in scars, we can form a fold between our fingers (or the whole hand) which engages the barrier created by tissue tension. Where a fold cannot be formed, pressure by the fingers may engage the barrier.
3. Whenever we find restriction of mobility of the deep layers of connective tissue against bone (mainly in the deep fasciae), restoration of normal mobility is indicated. This also applies to the scalp, to adjacent bones connected mainly by soft tissue (metacarpal and metatarsal bones) and even to the ribs and the fibular head).
4. Post-isometric relaxation (PIR): here, too, the barrier is first engaged by stretching the muscle to the point where minimal resistance is encountered. This method, which will be described in detail in Chapter 6, has a similar effect to that of the spray and stretch method (Travell and Simons, 1983) and appears to be a specific method to obtain muscle relaxation. It is effective not only in the treatment of pain points (trigger points) in the muscles, but also of many, if not most, pain points on the periosteum, if these are points of attachment of muscles with increased tension, or points of referred pain originating in the muscle. It is (with a few exceptions) completely painless and the patient can (and should) be taught self-treatment. It is clearly effective only if there is increased tension in particular TrPs in the muscle; otherwise it is useless. An effective alternative is stimulation of the antagonist (reciprocal inhibition).

Exteroceptive stimulation

The skin surface with its abundance of nerve receptors is frequently underrated. As a result of civilization it is largely deprived of natural stimuli by clothing, and one of its most sensitive regions, the feet, by shoes. The most useful way to stimulate is by stroking of varying intensity, which must be carefully chosen to suit the condition. Changes in muscular tonus, both increased and lowered, most frequently require this treatment. Some chronic pain points (e.g. epicondyles) respond to this treatment, even if everything else has failed. Another indication is relative increased or decreased surface sensibility over a certain area, most characteristically the sole of the foot. Self-treatment is easy and includes walking barefoot and playing with small objects.

Reflex therapy

This acts on the same tissues and structures as manipulative therapy, but uses more traditional methods, principally employed by physical therapists. It acts particularly upon reflex changes in the soft tissues.

Massage

This term covers a great variety of techniques which have developed from time immemorial; they are applied to the soft tissues and even to the periosteum. It is not within the scope of this book to deal with massage in any detail. Rationally applied, i.e. from the clinical point of view, it should be used when and where changes are found in the tissue, changes that consist mainly in altered tension. The experienced masseur adapts his technique so as to give relief, i.e. to lessen tension in the muscles as well as in the skin and the connective tissues. Deep fricton may be applied to pain points on the periosteum.

Bearing this in mind, it would seem that massage is a universal method applicable in all reflex changes produced by pain (nociceptive stimulus); indeed, it is widely used in this way. Some techniques are pleasurable, giving immediate relief and being very popular with patients. There are other massage techniques which are painful. Unfortunately, the effect of massage is usually only short-lived, whereas the procedure is very time consuming. It is, moreover, a purely passive form of treatment, demanding almost no cooperation from the patient. We therefore prefer to indicate massage only as a preparation for other, more active and more effective methods of treatment, and not as the sole therapy.

Local anesthesia – needling

One of the most widely used methods of treating painful lesions is local anaesthesia, or needling. It may appear unorthodox to deal with these two methods together, yet one does not simply use local anaesthetics to relieve pain for the short period during which the anaesthetic has effect; the popularity of local anaesthesia is due to the fact that its effect far outlasts the direct (pharmacological) effect of the anaesthetic, and seems not to be dependent on it; in fact, Kibler (1958) uses sodium bicarbonate, and even subcutaneous air or gas have been used. Direct proof has been provided by Frost *et al.* (1980) in their 'controlled double blind comparison of Mevipacain injections versus saline injections for myofascial pain', showing that, if anything, the physiological saline solution was more effective. The common denominator of all these methods is, of course, the use of the needle. The effect, however, appears to depend very much on the needle touching the painful structure exactly, if possible so as to reproduce the pain of which the patient complains, whether an anaesthetic is used or not. If we succeed in finding the exact spot, we produce analgaesia immediately, whether we use local anaesthetic, a saline solution, or simply a dry needle (Lewit, 1979).

Local anaesthetics are of course necessary if we want to induce anaesthesia of nervous structures, for example in nerve-root infiltration or epidural infiltration in radicular pain.

One special method using local anaesthesia is that of producing blobs on the skin by intracutaneous application within a hyperalgesic skin zone. Here again a similar or more intense effect can be obtained by using distilled water.

It is interesting that, just as after manipulation, so after successful local anaesthesia or dry needling, the immediate relief we obtain is often succeeded the next day by a painful reaction, after which the therapeutic effect establishes itself. This treatment should therefore not be repeated before 6 or 7 days have elapsed. Repetition is indicated if the method has proved successful, yet some pain remains.

Electrical stimulation

Here we obviously face a variety of methods with similar effects, which are apparently interchangeable. To these must be added methods of physical therapy such as transcutaneous electrical stimulation, and other forms of electrotherapy which produce a similar effect on skin receptors and in the subcutaneous tissue. They have to compete, too, with other traditional methods including not only massage, but poulticing, cupping, capsicum plasters, etc. The clinician has therefore a wide range of choice, the 'ideal' method being painless, without risk, without side-effects and if possible applicable by the patient herself.

Acupuncture

It would be burying one's head in the sand not to mention the ancient method of acupuncture in this context, the more so as it is now widely used and discussed. There can be no doubt that acupuncture, too, achieves its results by evoking reflex mechanisms. Difficulties arise the moment we attempt closer analysis and classification of the mode of action. The orthodox acupuncturist indicates treatment according to disease, without reference to the pathogenesis, although the more 'enlightened' admit that acupuncture should be used in cases of disturbed function rather than in structural pathology. The choice of acupuncture points according to the viscera and of 'meridians' without clinical examination of these points is based purely on tradition and not on scientific verification. For scientific analysis, therefore, it will be necessary to examine not only the complex method as a whole, but its simpler elements, one by one.

One such element is the effect of the needle; dry needling was reintroduced to modern medicine by Travell and Rinzler (1952) and I myself proved the analgesic needle effect (Lewit, 1979) in 271 out of 312 applications of the needle to pain points, in 241 patients. There is sufficient clinical evidence of the efficacy of the treatment.

On the other hand, there appears to be a growing tendency even among modern Chinese doctors to choose their points not according to the traditional 'meridians', but on the basis of the segmental theory of innervation. Instead of needling, electrical stimulation is also being introduced (Chang Hsian Tung, 1979). Melzack (1975), on the other hand, has tried to establish a far-reaching analogy between the pain and trigger points of Travell and Rinzler (1952) and the traditional acupuncture points. Gunn *et al.* (1976) found that of 100 acupuncture points chosen at random, 70 were motor points in muscles. Many acupuncture points are attachment points of muscle tendons which can be treated by post-isometric relaxation if they are tender (e.g. the head of the fibula, the Che gu (4 equ L14) point as the attachment point of the adductor pollicis brevis).

Gaymans (1982) was able to show that by pressure on acupuncture points he could facilitate or inhibit muscles. There seem to be interesting correlations between acupuncture points and the motor system.

On careful examination it seems that many acupuncture points can be tender at palpation, that increased tension can be palpated at their site and that the skin over them may show increased resistance to stretching. In other words, if clinical examination of acupuncture points were to become a routine, a more rational application of the treatment would ensue. This is borne out, too, by the results of electrical measurement of skin resistance at the sites of acupuncture points.

The importance of such a rational approach would be that it might enable us to indicate cases in which acupuncture is really the method of choice, and preferable to other methods acting through reflex mechanisms.

Treatment of scars

It is curious that as a rule acupuncturists seem to be unaware of perhaps the most rewarding effects of needling (local anaesthesia) in the treatment of scars. This is based on the Huneke phenomenon. The problem is one of correct diagnosis; when and under what conditions is a scar (usually a quite irrelevant one) a focus which can become the cause of a lesion that would not normally be connected with it?

Under what conditions should we consider the possibility and look for such scars? (1) If the patient relapses and there is no other apparent reason either in the segment or elsewhere in the locomotor system; (2) if our findings seem too insignificant to explain the case history; (3) if the cause of the scar (often an operation wound that did not heal properly, or suppuration) coincides with the time when the present symptoms started or became much worse.

We first have to look for an HAZ round the scar by examining skin drag (when stroking) and by skin stretch; we then examine for tender spots on deep palpation, with increased resistance to shifting ('adhesions'). To produce the Huneke phenomenon we may first stretch the skin, stretch a fold of deep scar tissue, or we may then infiltrate or apply the needle to the pain spot within the scar. If treatment is successful both the resistance and the pain spot within the scar should disappear, and the lesion for which the patient is being treated (headache, radicular pain, etc.) should then improve markedly, and with lasting effect.

Other methods of physical therapy

Technical progress has provided physical therapy with many approaches that cannot but act on receptors in the soft tissues: these include the laser, the magnet, ultra-short waves, etc. These are methods based on modern physics, yet the way they act upon the organism, presumably via the nervous system, is as yet little understood. Again, it is clinical experience, i.e. empirical data, that will decide whether these methods will prove to be a real advance, or just another fashion.

The more traditional methods of applying heat and cold, water (hot and cold) etc., will always have their use, but cannot be dealt with in this context.

Soft tissue manipulation versus reflex therapy

Compared with other methods of reflex (physical) therapy, soft tissue manipulation makes most of those structures in which pain in the motor system is felt, and which react to nociceptive stimulation, accessible to treatment with our hands. Technically it makes use of the barrier phenomenon for diagnosis, and also of the release phenomenon (see Chapter 6) for therapy. Dealing with manipulative therapy, it is logical to compare all methods which, in the last resort, act on the same structures.

There is one basic difference between our hands and all other instruments or methods at our disposal: the treating hand also senses, i.e. it provides us with information about every stage of our therapy and enables us to correct our approach. In other words, it offers a feedback situation that no other method can provide. In fact, once we sense that release has taken place, and know how to pursue it to the desired end, we know that the patient's pain has been relieved. The difference between massage and soft tissue manipulation is that massage ignores the barrier and release phenomenon, and with its rapid movements it fails to achieve myofascial release.

Remedial exercise

Having dealt with methods of treatment indicated mainly to combat pain in the motor system we may now turn to those concerned directly with locomotor function. Here remedial exercise has a prominent role. There are two principal types that concern us here. In the first type the patient uses her muscles to restore joint mobility, i.e. self-mobilization techniques; these are described under the heading of Mobilization and manipulation techniques, to which they belong, as are techniques of post-isometric muscle relaxation and even soft tissue techniques carried out by the patient herself.

Here I am concerned only with the second type of remedial exercise, intended to correct locomotor patterns or stereotypes, or muscular imbalance, which is frequently the real cause of painful disorders in the 'periphery' of the locomotor system.

In disturbed function of the locomotor system the objective of remedial exercise is a faulty motor pattern or stereotype which has been diagnosed and is considered relevant to the patient's problem. Without this diagnosis and subsequent assessment of the importance of the faulty stereotype in the pathogenesis of the symptoms, remedial exercise is simply a waste of time. Herein lies the role of the physician, the technical aspect being left to the physiotherapist. The doctor, who is familiar with the diagnosis, will of course be also able to evaluate the results achieved by the physiotherapist. This is very important because remedial exercise can be not only very time consuming but also extremely frustrating.

The emphasis is thus placed on diagnosis, but as a rule this can be established only after the acute pain has been treated as otherwise the patient's movements are so distorted that it is impossible to say what is attributable to pain and what reveals faulty movement patterns.

The second criterion for indicating remedial exercise is the relevance of the faulty stereotype to the patient's problem. Here the decision is not as simple as the indication of manipulation for movement restriction or needling if a significant pain point is found. Remedial exercise is always time consuming, and time should not be wasted.

Faulty movement patterns are extremely frequent, moreover, and to embark on a course of remedial exercise in every case would be most unrealistic. We therefore indicate remedial exercise where we think the faulty movement patterns are so important that without correction, relapse of the painful condition is inevitable. Indeed, it is frequently indicated precisely on account of relapses. Nevertheless, there are cases where we can be sure, without waiting for the patient to relapse. One criterion is the degree of muscular imbalance; in other cases we must consider the conditions under which relapses occur: if a patient suffers from lumbago on stooping or lifting weights, and her movement pattern in stooping and weight lifting is bad, then obviously she has to be taught to correct this fault. The same is true of carrying weights, of sitting at the typewriter, or of standing for long periods. The most disastrous of all faulty patterns, however, is faulty respiration: severe incoordination of respiration may jeopardize the result of any treatment of the locomotor system.

To make remedial exercise as effective as possible, and to make it a routine procedure, it is essential to limit the goal as strictly as possible. We should not attempt to teach patients 'ideal locomotor patterns', but only to correct the fault that is causing the trouble. If we do this, it is possible in most cases to obtain results within a few weeks, even after a few sessions. If we try to achieve more at the outset, it may take months or years.

It is no less important to know how and when to indicate remedial exercise than to know the limits of its possibilities. Unlike manipulation or local anaesthesia, remedial exercise requires the active and intelligent cooperation of the patient, and this is by no means always easy to achieve. Locomotor patterns can be extremely firmly fixed and if the patient is no longer young, it can be very difficult to change them. Even more important is the question of motivation. If the patient is not really interested in improving her condition, the physiotherapist is simply wasting his time. It cannot be sufficiently emphasized, however, that the art of the good physiotherapist consists almost as much in motivating his patient as in his technical competence.

In addition to motivation, intelligence plays a great part and its lack can be a seriously limiting factor. Here I must remind the reader of what was said in Chapter 2 about individuals incapable of forming good motor patterns. There are people of high intelligence who are almost handicapped the moment locomotor skills are called for – and here we may fail even with an intelligent and willing patient.

Finally, the physical condition of the patient may be a limiting factor: heart disease, a high degree of obesity, weak abdominal musculature after repeated operation for hernia, decompensating scoliosis and other conditions may all restrict the effectiveness of remedial exercise.

Despite these limitations, remedial exercise should constitute the most important task of the physiotherapist; we should therefore single out for remedial exercise those cases that are most significant and rewarding, so that he does not waste his time too much on the passive procedures such as massage, and the many forms of electrotherapy.

One might ask whether and under what conditions this type of remedial exercise should be prescribed for purely preventive reasons. This is a reasonable consideration in view of the unfavourable conditions under which the locomotor system develops in technically advanced countries, producing imbalance of muscle groups, frequently in children. This is almost an insoluble difficulty at present, mainly because group therapy is not easy to arrange. Certain yoga techniques, respiration exercises in particular, can be taught in groups; the 'spinal' yoga exercises may also be considered. A possible solution of this problem are the back schools which have been established in a number of countries, a development which should be greatly encouraged.

Treatment of faulty statics

The diagnosis of faulty statics has been described in Chapters 3 and 4. In so far as the cause is muscular imbalance or external influences, faulty statics must be treated accordingly. The most important is a forward-drawn posture due to dysfunction of the muscles of the pelvic girdle (see Chapter 8, p. 258).

Here we are concerned with obliquity, particularly in the pelvic region, and whether to correct it by a heel-pad or by raising one buttock in the sitting position. This is a more important decision than would appear at first sight: it is effective only if the aid is constantly used, i.e. if we are aiming at a permanent change in function. Such a decision can be straightforward, for instance, if the difference in leg length is due to fairly recent trauma. In flat foot on one side only, we can see the effect of an arch support if the patient stands with her weight on the outer edge of the sole, and we observe that this straightens the pelvis.

In the majority of cases, however, obliquity develops slowly during growth, and as it increases compensation develops and assessment is impossible without exact X-ray analysis such as that described in Chapter 3. However, indication of static correction can never be a question of X-ray diagnosis alone, but must be decided on clinical grounds.

Clinically, static pain is characterized by a chronic course, as a rule deteriorating under conditions of static load, i.e. standing or sitting. On examination we expect signs of pelvic obliquity and deviation, and pelvic shift (see Chapter 3), and correction should bring about clinical improvement. As shown, however, spinal statics can be checked reliably only by X-ray under standard conditions; hence it would usually be incorrect to indicate static correction on clinical grounds alone. If clinical and X-ray findings are in agreement, we are justified in indicating correction.

There are some practical points that must be stressed here. The first is the immediate reaction to a heel-pad. If a thin sole of about 1 cm is put under the foot of a normal subject, and she is told to put her weight equally on both feet and keep her legs straight, she will object. A subject with pelvic obliquity may respond to this situation in three different ways: she may find it positively comfortable, she may feel no difference, or she may object. In the first two cases we can expect the patient to tolerate correction well from the outset, and she should be instructed to wear the pad in her house-slippers as well as in her outdoor shoes. In the last case, however, there may be an unfavourable reaction, and time is needed for the patient to adapt. She should be told to stop using the pad if the pain increases; she must try to adapt to the correction gradually, and must be checked up on at regular intervals of a few weeks.

It is not a matter of indifference which type of correction is used. A heel-pad fitted into the shoe is practical, but has the disadvantage that the shoe fits less well. If possible, it is better to lower (shorten) the heel of the other shoe. This is advisable only where the difference is not greater than 1–2 cm. Where the difference is greater, the whole sole must be thicker on the side of the short leg so as not to make too much difference between the position of the two feet.

If the pelvis is level, and there is thus no apparent difference in leg length but obliquity at the base of the vertebral column has to be corrected, we shall find that obliquity is the same whether the patient is sitting or standing. Here it is advisable to prescribe correction (a thin board) under one ischial tuberosity when the patient is seated, in addition to the heel-pad when standing.

The most frequent and most serious fault in sitting, of course, is excessive lumbar kyphosis due to hypermobility of the lumbar spine. If we do not prescribe supports we should advise the patient to sit in the oriental manner, with feet crossed and knees apart, or on her heels in the Japanese way. Another position is that advocated by Brügger (see p. 246), in which the pelvis is rolled forward and the thoracolumbar spine much better balanced, or simply to raise the back of the seat, like a saddle.

Immobilization and supports

In acute lesions of the locomotor system, muscle spasm clearly indicates that rest and immobilization is required. This can be particularly evident after acute trauma, when the healing of damaged tissue makes immobilization imperative. Immobilization itself becomes a problem, however, once the condition becomes chronic, and if we aim at full recovery, i.e. the restoration of normal function, immobilization presents an outright obstacle. Thus immobilization, for us, can never be more than a temporary measure in preparation for rehabilitation, i.e. improvement of function. Only in cases where there is no hope of functional recovery can permanent immobilization be indicated, as a necessary evil.

Unlike immobilization, however, supports need not greatly interfere with mobility while protecting the patient against static overstrain. Unfortunately, static overstrain is extremely frequent in working conditions in technically advanced countries, and hypermobile subjects with lax muscles and ligaments frequently find it diffficult to adapt, in particular if, as in most modern means of public transport, jolting is added.

We therefore recommend car drivers to use an inflatable cushion for the small of the back; hypermobile subjects suffering from headache can wear a soft supporting collar while riding in a bus or underground train; elderly or obese patients with weak abdominal musculature can wear a firm abdominal belt. For patients with ligament pain in the pelvic region a firm pelvic belt worn mainly at night (Cyriax, 1977) is very helpful (see pp. 250–251 for details). Most of these supports should only be worn under conditions of static performance, and not while moving (except for the abdominal belt).

Pharmacotherapy

As we are dealing with disturbances that mainly concern the function of the locomotor system it is easy to see that pharmacotherapy can act only within certain limits. It is difficult to imagine a drug that could correct faulty functioning of a restricted spinal segment, or a faulty pattern of respiration or weight lifting. On the other hand, disturbed function in itself is not tantamount to disease and pain. It also causes reflex changes which are felt as painful, and therefore drugs that reduce reflex segmental reactions to nociceptive stimulation and can raise the threshold of pain can be most useful, particularly if we find the response to disturbed function excessive. It is, therefore, sometimes useful to prescribe drugs that lower the response of the autonomic nervous system and, if pain is acute, analgesics of the non-steroidal anti-inflammatory type should be administered. Opiates should be avoided, but sedatives are often to be recommended.

It has become fashionable to combine analgesics with myorelaxants, and there are drugs available that combine the two approaches. These may be used advantageously in cases where muscle tension is a prominent feature, but they should not be prescribed indiscriminately. In patients with a tendency to hypermobility, and a flabby musculature, even if they have painful muscle spasm (trigger points) at the site of the lesion, these drugs can have an adverse effect, increasing the existing muscular imbalance and laxity. In such cases only specific treatment of the muscles showing increased tension is indicated.

Where there are signs of depression or a suspicion of masked depression, the administration of mild antidepressives can be most rewarding, and we should not hesitate to give them a fair trial.

As a rule the application of corticoids is not indicated in disturbances of function. The popular practice of local application of corticoids to pain points (on the periosteum, etc.) should never become a routine procedure. Pain points usually react to local anaesthesia or dry needling; if they are the attachment points of muscles they react to post-isometric muscle relaxation, or to other forms of reflex therapy, or to soft tissue manipulation. Corticoids should be tried only if these far more physiological methods (which produce no side-effects) have failed. If the corticoids do not show the desired effect they should never be administered repeatedly.

Surgery

If the clinical condition of the patient is due to disturbance of function alone, there should be no question of surgical intervention. However, disturbed function may be the consequence of an anatomical lesion requiring surgery; it will frequently be our task to decide whether this is, in fact, the case. The most frequent condition in which the question arises is that of root compression and other sequelae of disc herniation, a condition in which we may often succeed by conservative measures aimed at restoring function, but where it is important to decide when surgery is likely to be more successful (see pp. 279–280). Another case is that of pathological hypermobility, e.g. in spondylolisthesis. This condition in itself can be clinically mute and compatible with perfect health; however, in the evolutionary stage there may be considerable symptoms due to pathological hypermobility, which may constitute an indication for surgery. This is even more likely in hypermobility due to a free os odontoideum.

Regimen

This is probably the most important and most effective approach both to treatment and to prevention of disturbed function in the locomotor system. I have left it to the last because it is not a therapeutic measure in the true sense of the word, and there is a special chapter devoted to the question. However, as I have pointed out elsewhere, one of the important aspects of taking down a case history is to discover the possible source of the patient's trouble in his daily regimen and we should be able to advise him on how to avoid the most harmful habits. Indeed, if we succeed in detecting these important clues, we should be able to give him very useful advice after the first examination.

Strategy and tactics

Recent progress in understanding chain reactions should greatly change our approach to therapy: we do not treat each lesion (e.g. restricted joint or TrP) we find, nor leave it out, but unless the case is acute and we are in a first aid situation and cannot make a detailed examination, we should not touch anything before we have examined the whole patient.

The next step is an analysis to determine: (1) the chain or chains we have found and their relevance; (2) the relevance of the individual links of these chains; and (3) the choice of the first step.

To determine the relevance we must assess the severity of the lesion, whether it is at a key region, its importance for the case history, and whether it is a joint, muscle or fascia. For diagnostic reasons ('out of curiosity') we may ask whether a scar or an extremity joint is important or negligible. I might never find this out if I started with some other link and the patient improved. If I start with the scar and the patient significantly improves, I know that this scar was relevant, but if I had not started with the scar, I might never have found out. If no effect is noted, no harm was done, but I know that the scar was not relevant.

Having successfully treated the whole chain, there may still be a local lesion which has not improved. This will then have to be treated. The link which has been found to be most relevant for the principal chain becomes, too, the principal object of rehabilitation. At control examination the correctness of the first choice will be assessed.

Conclusions

Indicating methods of therapy is the practical application of all that has been said in the theoretical parts of this book. As symptoms are usually the result of several factors, we have to single out each time the factor or lesion that we think the most important at the moment, while we have the patient before us, and also which lesion we think is most accessible to treatment.

If we succeed in our intentions, a different therapeutic approach will probably be needed when we next see the patient. Our aim is not to promote one type of therapy but to improve function and relieve symptoms by the most adequate and efficient method. This involves a very difficult problem – that of evaluation. It is hard to say whether the patient has improved because of manipulation, remedial exercise, or needling. On the other hand, to carry on with manipulation when movement restriction is no longer important, or to continue needling when there is no pain point to justify it, is out of place. However, in typical situations this need not be an obstacle, if statistics are not held to be the only criterion of success. If an acute appendicitis is cured after the removal of the inflamed organ, no statistical evaluation is required. If, after manipulation, mobility is restored in a segment and remains good after several control examinations, then we have achieved what can be achieved by this method. If a pain point disappears after needling or post-isometric relaxation of the muscle and does not recur, or if a patient has learned how to normalize respiration and does not slip back into her old habits, then something has been achieved even if there remains another lesion which still causes symptoms and has yet to be treated.

This may seem an unusual and unorthodox approach, but it is also a demanding one, for it precludes routine procedures and knows few 'routine' patients. It is highly rewarding, however, both for patient and for physician.

6

Therapeutic techniques

In the preceding chapters the importance and the diagnosis of disturbed function of the locomotor system have been explained, and I have described the clinically significant reflex changes involved and indicated the most important therapeutic methods. As it is impossible to describe all these techniques in detail in this chapter, I here confine myself principally to manipulative techniques and the specific forms of remedial exercise, with a few ancillary techniques.

Manipulation

The sole aim of manipulation is to restore normal mobility mainly of joints, including joint play, but also mobility between soft tissue layers, or soft tissue and bone. Two major types of manipulation can be distinguished: (1) mobilization techniques; and (2) thrusting techniques. I will start, however, with a few general principles.

The positioning of the patient

The patient should lie (or sit or stand) so that she can relax, so that the joint to be treated is accessible, and so that one of the articulating bones is either fixed by the patient's own weight or can easily be fixed by the therapist. The height of the manipulation table from the floor should be adjustable as required; in general, it should correspond to the distance of the therapist's fingertips from the floor when he stands erect with arms hanging loosely down and fingers stretched.

The position of the therapist

This is in many ways decisive for the therapist's technique. He must be comfortable in order to be relaxed, and his relaxation is essential in order to procure relaxation of the patient. As a rule the direction in which the therapist's hand moves continues the line of his forearm, but whenever possible the movement should come from the whole body; it often comes from the feet, as in throwing the discus. The therapist's movement must never be forced, cramped or exhausting; if he is easily tired he must be making a technical error. For manipulation of the spinal column the body of the therapist and that of the patient must move in harmony, like a couple of dancers; this is the secret of gentle, flowing and elegant technique and is also valid for examination.

Fixation

One of the bones articulating in the joint being manipulated should be fixed while the other is mobilized. In extremity joints it is usually the proximal joint that is fixed, i.e. supported by the table or by the body of the therapist. For effective fixation it is advisable to move only one joint. In the spinal column fixation is achieved by correct positioning ('looking') and where possible by direct contact with the therapist's hands. Good fixation of the pelvis can be obtained if the patient sits astride the table.

The position of the joint and the direction of treatment

The joint to be treated must not be in a position in which the capsule and the ligaments are overstretched, i.e. it must not be locked. The direction of treatment (manipulation) may correspond to the impaired joint mobility or to joint play, i.e. to relative shift or distraction (Figure 6.1).

According to Kaltenborn (1976) the direction of joint play is not purely haphazard, and depends on

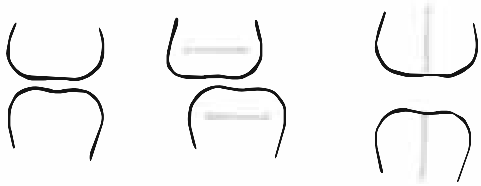


Figure 6.1 Possible directions of joint play

whether the concavity of the joint is proximal or distal (see Figure 2.6, p. 14). In the former case, shift of the distal partner, which has to be restored, is in the opposite direction to the impaired movement, whereas in the latter case the shift of the distal partner is in the same direction as impaired mobility. For this reason the first phalanx should be shifted mainly in a palmar direction (if flexion is restricted) and the carpal bones against the radius in a dorsal direction if palmar flexion is restricted (see Figure 6.3, p. 162).

Taking up the slack (engaging the barrier)

This is a crucial step before treatment begins, whether merely stretching of soft tissue or shifting a fascia, post-isometric muscle relaxation, or treatment of a joint. We try to bring the joint to the barrier, i.e. close to end range either of normal function or, more frequently and particularly in extremity joints, of joint play. Distraction of the joint is helpful. In the spinal column it is not always possible to make the distinction between mobility and joint play, the movement of a single mobile segment (in itself impossible to achieve by active movement) playing to some extent the role of joint play. The barrier or end-position is never reached suddenly in normal movement; sudden resistance in the end-position is a sign of blockage. We know that we have taken up the slack the moment we sense the first slight increase of resistance. This must be carried out very gently, with the patient relaxed. The most important source of error is to mistake active resistance by the patient for the sign that we have taken up the slack. This invariably happens if we cause pain – something to be avoided at all costs.

Manipulation proper

After taking up the slack we have two main means of restoring restricted movement: (1) by gently springing the joint in end-position (mobilization); or (2) by making a thrust from end-position.

Mobilization

At the first slight increase in resistance while we are taking up the slack (engage the barrier), we make sure we have indeed reached the end-position, by slightly decreasing the range of movement and then increasing it again, to establish whether we meet resistance at the same point; in other words, we spring the joint in end-position, which is exactly what we do in passive mobilization. Repeating this procedure several times will show that even in a normal joint the range of movement increases, i.e. we reach the barrier (take up the slack) after a longer interval. In a restricted joint this increase will be much more abrupt. There are two mistakes to be avoided in this type of springing (repetitive) mobilization: (1) we must be careful to remain in end-position and not return to the neutral position of the joint, i.e. the range of the springing movement must be small and very well controlled; (2) springing back is even more important for the restoration of mobility than is the pressure we exert; therefore even if the range of movement increases, we must never increase our pressure. The joint must be allowed to move back almost to the initial end-position. In this way the range of springing will increase but never the amount of pressure we exert.

This type of mainly passive mobilization is effective in joints that are not excessively fixed by muscle spasm when blocked, such as the sacroiliac and acromioclavicular joints, and many extremity joints. It is less effective in the spinal column, however, and here passive mobilization is used mainly as a preparation for thrusting techniques, and as after-treatment. To make mobilization of the spinal column fully effective we have learned to use techniques of muscular facilitation and inhibition (neuromuscular techniques).

Mobilization using neuromuscular techniques

Some techniques aim at specific muscles or muscle groups, while others have a more general effect.

Isometric contraction of muscles in tension, followed by relaxation – isometrics (Mitchell *et al.*, 1979) or, as I prefer to call it, PIR – post-isometric relaxation. Unlike the widely used technique developed by Kabat (1965), we use only minimal resistance during the isometric phase. After the slack has been taken up, the patient exerts only a minimum of pressure in the opposite direction from that of the movement restriction, holding it for about 10 s. She is then told to 'let go', and the operator waits, or even repeats the 'let go!', until he feels that the patient has truly relaxed. Only then does he carry out his movement in the direction of the restriction – but then only to the point where the slightest resistance is felt, i.e. only as far as the patient's relaxation will allow. It is important to profit from her relaxation as long as the range of movement increases spontaneously; this may be for 10 s or even longer. When the therapist feels no further relaxation the procedure is repeated from the newly gained position: the ground that has been won must not be lost again. If relaxation has been satisfactory, the time allowed for isometric resistance may be slightly reduced, but if relaxation is insufficient, resistance may be prolonged for up to half a minute. This procedure can be repeated for as long as the therapist continues to observe increasing range of movement, but usually three to five repetitions suffice. I have to stress at this point that lengthening of a muscle or increased range of movement owing to relaxation must be achieved exclusively by the patient's relaxation which is only monitored by the therapist, never by passive stretch! Relaxation is an active process: 'we cannot relax the patient'.

Antagonist inhibition – By stimulation of the antagonists it is possible to achieve inhibition of muscles in spasm (harbouring TrPs) as effectively as by PIR. This method has been unduly underrated, asssuming that it is effective only if considerable force is used, then giving the impression that the therapist has to struggle with the patient. This is avoided very simply: the patient puts up only moderate or slight resistance (in the direction of the antagonists) and the therapist uses rhythmic intermittent stimuli. This is so easy that we now combine PIR with rhythmic antagonist stimulation (with the patient in the same position).

Direct repetitive rhythmic muscle pull, under certain conditions, to produce mobilization directly, e.g. the therapist causes rhythmical contractions of the scalenus in order to mobilize the first two ribs or of the psoas to mobilize the thoracolumbar junction.

These techniques are applied to specific muscles or muscle groups.

The following techniques have a far more generalized effect.

Respiration (see p. 27 *et seq.*) – It is of great practical significance that, as a rule, inhalation has a facilitating and exhalation an inhibiting effect on muscles. Therefore, it is usually appropriate to combine inhalation with isometric resistance and exhalation with relaxation. However, there are important exceptions to this rule: during retroflexion of the thoracic spine, maximum exhalation produces additional mobilization of the thoracic spine into retroflexion by contraction (facilitation) of the thoracic erector spinae, while in a kyphotic position of the thorax deep inhalation produces mobilization into flexion. Even more important is the mobilizing effect of respiration during side-bending (Gaymans, 1980), due to alternating facilitation and inhibition of individual segments of the spinal column (see p. 27). As the even segments are facilitated during inhalation and inhibited during exhalation, in these segments we combine the isometric phase with inhalation, and relaxation with exhalation; in the odd segments this is reversed. To be effective, respiration must be sufficiently slow, and deep. The intense facilitative (inhibitory) effect on muscles of 'respiratory synkinesis' (see pp. 28–29) can be usefully applied, e.g. in isometric cervical or lumbar traction.

Eye movements – These facilitate the movement of the head and trunk in the direction of the patient's gaze and inhibit movement in the opposite direction. This holds for lifting the head and trunk as well as for stooping and rotation; it is not true for side-bending, but looking up facilitates straightening up from side-bending. Eye movements should not be exaggerated, however; according to Gaymans (1980) maximum excursion has an inhibitory effect.

About using the force of gravity for PIR, see p. 210.

Combinations – It is obvious that these methods lend themselves to useful combination, in particular PIR with respiration and eye movements. This has the enormous advantage of automation: instead of telling the patient to 'press with minimum force – only a few grams', we now tell her to look to the right and breathe in slowly (if rotation to the left is restricted), and then to look to the left and breathe out, thus automatically producing the correct resistance during the isometric phase, followed by relaxation. For the mobilization of side-bending in an even segment, after taking up the slack we ask the patient to look up and breathe in slowly, and then to look down and breathe out.

I now come to some of the problems of correct combination, which is not always an easy matter. As looking up facilitates inhalation and inhibits exhalation, and looking down has the reverse effect, looking up must not be combined with exhalation nor looking down with breathing in. We must also bear in mind that looking up facilitates retroflexion and looking down facilitates anteflexion (stooping), which may or may not be useful in a given case. Thus in mobilizing side-bending in an even segment it will be useful to proceed in the manner described in the preceding paragraph. If, however, we wish to mobilize an odd segment, it would be wrong to tell the patient to look up and breathe out during the isometric phase, because looking up inhibits exhalation. It could be equally wrong to tell the patient to look down, for that would inhibit the straightening-up reaction needed during the isometric phase, while the situation would be even worse if the patient looked up during relaxation. Therefore we do not combine respiration with eye movements in mobilization of side-bending in an odd segment. In the cervicothoracic junction it is essential for the neck to be held in retroflexion during the mobilization of side-bending. It is therefore very convenient to combine looking up with inhalation, but not looking down with exhalation because the patient will bend her neck forward if she looks down.

It is very important that the patient breathes slowly, so that both the isometric and the relaxation phase are long enough. It is therefore useful first to tell the patient, for example, to look to the right and only a moment later to tell her to breathe in slowly; similarly, to tell her to look first to the left and only then to breathe out slowly. If a patient finds it difficult slowly, she should be told to hold her breath for a few seconds at the end of inhalation. However, a patient with such bad coordination that slow breathing (no more than 4 s) cannot be attained, must be taught to breathe correctly, because such faulty respiration is incompatible with normal functioning of the motor system. If our combinations are well thought out, they not only improve the technique by what we may call automation, but they also increase its effectiveness by the summation of stimuli; frequently two or three repetitions are sufficient to restore normal mobility.

Thrusting

This technique consists of a fast but not forceful movement of small amplitude, starting from end-position (i.e. after taking up the slack). A barrier seems to give way, and as a rule we hear a 'click'. Immediately afterwards we sense hypotonia and observe increased mobility.

The thrust must be applied only after the slack has been taken up completely, and this is possible only if the patient is completely relaxed. There are three technical pre-conditions: (1) we must be able to sense the moment of complete relaxation; (2) the patient having relaxed properly, the end-position is reached (the barrier is engaged) with a minimum of force; (3) the thrust must start from the end-position, i.e. we must never release tension before delivering the thrust, as when we lift the arm before delivering a blow – the typical beginner's error, because it corresponds to a type of movement we are used to. Here, however, it is a crucial mistake, because it enables the patient to contract his muscles and in this way to thwart our manoeuvre, which is effective only if the patient's musculature is taken by surprise (see Figures 2.7, 2.8 – pp. 14, 15).

With these conditions fulfilled, thrusting manipulation is never forceful; as can be seen from Figure 4.3 (p. 93), the thrust corresponds to a weight of not more than 1000 g. Although the high-velocity thrust is typical of thrusting techniques, there are situations in which a relatively slow increase in pressure ('low-velocity thrust') may suffice to obtain complete release and even the 'click'; indeed, we may obtain the click at times during mobilization and even just by engaging the barrier and waiting for complete relaxation.

Testing

Immediately after treatment, whether this consists of mobilization or thrusting techniques, the effect must be checked by testing (see Chapter 5).

Records

Methods of documentation are legion: diagrammatic, typed, variously coloured, etc., and every practitioner will adopt the one he or she finds most suitable. The essential is that in every case the technique used and its precise location, side and direction are recorded. Without this documentation it is impossible to evaluate results, to learn from failure or to deal with possible complications as described in the literature.

After-treatment

It is essential to advise the patient after the first treatment, so that he knows what he may do and what he should avoid. It is particularly important to tell him whether he shoud rest completely, or on the contrary, he should move about. He ought to know that there may be a painful reaction during the next 1 or 2 days. If possible give him some some simple specific exercises. If possible, the patient should have a comfortable rest after treatment. If there is serious pain, an analgesic should be prescribed and a further appointment arranged.

After these general remarks, I will now deal with the individual joints.

Extremity joints

In the manipulation of extremity joints we use almost exclusively techniques aimed at restoring joint play. As examination of joint play is technically identical with the mobilization of these joints, I describe both here.

Interphalangeal joints

For mobilization (and examination), dorsopalmar and laterolateral shifts and distraction can be used. The therapist fixes the proximal phalanx between the thumb and forefinger of one hand, either against the table or his own body, while with the thumb and forefinger of his other hand he mobilizes the distal phalanx in the required direction. It is advisable to keep one's fingers at right angles to the shifting movement, and at the same time to apply distraction, which makes the shifting movement easier and more effective.

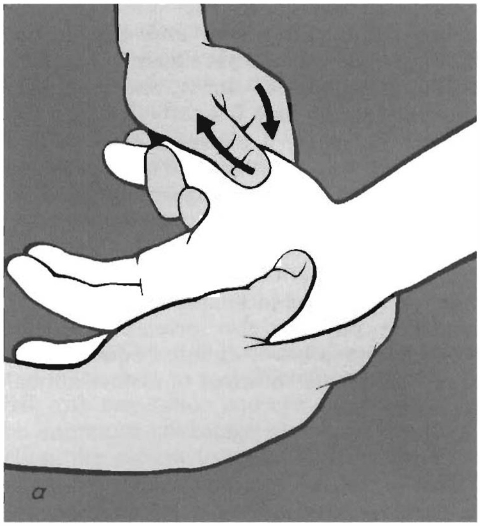
Metacarpophalangeal joints

These joints are almost spherical, and therefore rotation can be used as well as dorsopalmar and laterolateral shifts and (of course) distraction. While with one hand the therapist fixes the patient's palm against his own body or the table, he may carry out any of these shifts with the other. By far the most effective manoeuvre, however, is traction, which can also be used as a thrust (pull). It is a simple method to teach patients for self-treatment.

The carpometacarpal joint of the thumb

This is the only carpometacarpal joint which is highly mobile, and of all the finger joints it is probably the most susceptible to symptoms. Treatment is therefore important. The therapist must first fix the trapezium between the thumb and forefinger of one hand. To find the trapezium he should first palpate the styloid process of the radius; distal to this there is a groove which corresponds to the scaphoid, and then the wrist broadens again; this is the site of the trapezium. With the thumb and forefinger of the other hand, the therapist grasps the first metacarpal bone as close to the joint as possible, so as to examine joint play between the two. For mobilization it is better to grasp the end phalanx of the thumb with the little finger of the hand that moves the first metacarpal, so as to pull it and thus distract the joint. This can be done with the patient's hand in pronation or supination (the therapist changing hands accordingly). This traction makes the shifting movements of joint play much more effective.

If traction is sufficiently strong the therapist can produce a gapping effect (without fixation of the trapezium) by a slight (low-velocity!) thrust in a palmar direction, with the patient's hand in supination, and in a dorsal direction with the hand in pronation. If the therapist is using traction only (with or without a thrust), any fixation of the wrist will suffice; this technique is then very suitable for self-treatment. Mobilization can also be carried out by PIR, which is both effective and extremely gentle: while the therapist applies very slight traction, the patient is told to resist with the least possible force for about 10 s, after which he is told to 'let go'. Without increasing the force of his traction the therapist watches the patient relaxing, and repeats the procedure three to five times (Figure 6.2).



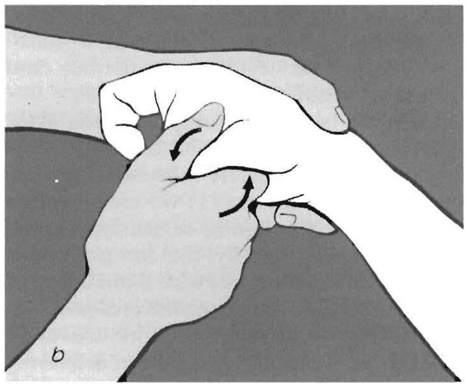


Figure 6.2 Treatment of the first carpometacarpal joint: (*a*) in supination palmar shift of the first metacarpal; (*b*) in pronation dorsal shift; both under considerable traction

The wrist joints

If palmar flexion is restricted, we must restore joint play by moving the carpal bones in the radiocarpal joint in a dorsal direction. The therapist grasps the supinated hand of the patient close to the radiocarpal joint, fixes the distal end of the forearm against his own knee or the table, and produces a dorsal shift of the wrist (Figure 6.3). This technique is well suited for self-treatment. If ulnar flexion is restricted the same technique can be used, but pressure should be applied mainly at the ulnar end of the radiocarpal joint, i.e. against the pisiform bone.

If dorsal flexion is restricted, joint play must be restored by moving the distal row of the carpal

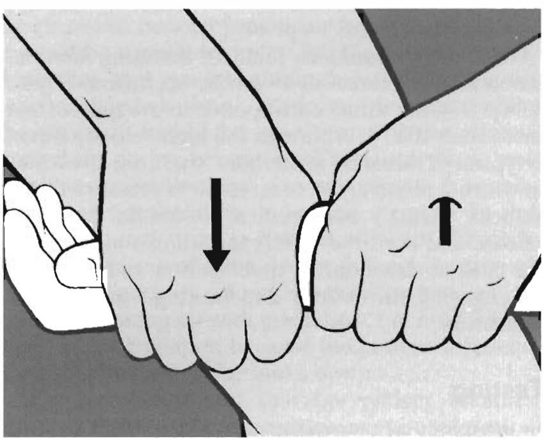


Figure 6.3 Dorsal shift of the carpal bones against the forearm: mobilization of the radiocarpal joint

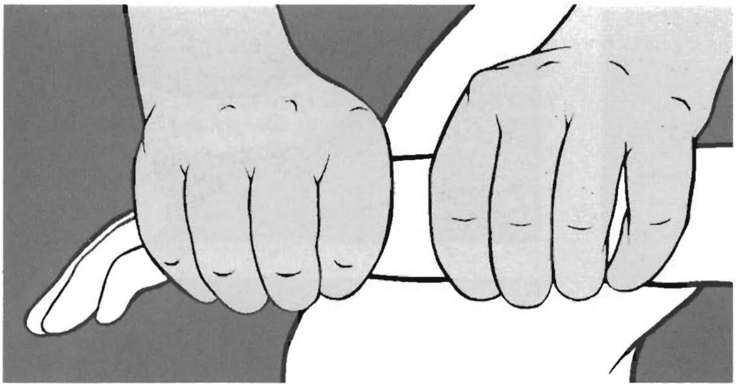


Figure 6.4 Palmar shift of the distal row of carpal bones against the proximal row; mobilization of the mid-carpal joint

bones against the proximal row, in a palmar direction (Figure 6.4). The therapist grasps the patient's hand in pronation, round the proximal end of the metacarpal bones, fixes the distal end of the forearm against his own knee or the table, and produces a palmar shift of the distal row of the carpal bones against the proximal. Again this is an ideal technique for self-treatment. If radial flexion is restricted owing to blockage between the scaphoid and the trapezium, the same technique can be used but the pressure is applied mainly at the radial end of the mid-carpal joint.

There is a simple way to locate the radiocarpal and the carpometacarpal joints exactly: if we extend the wrist against the forearm, the skin fold on the dorsal aspect is at the level of the carpometacarpal joint, and if we flex the wrist the skin fold on the palmar aspect is at the level of the radiocarpal joint.

The most specific and also the most important technique is that of shifting one carpal bone against its neighbour, in a dorsal or palmar direction. This is particularly important in the carpal-tunnel syndrome (see p. 267).

The examination technique is simple: one carpal bone is grasped between the thumb and forefinger of each hand, and the therapist moves the two adjacent bones against each other in the dorsal and palmar direction, respectively. For diagnosis it is crucial to use the minimum of force, because under normal conditions friction here is so negligible that the slightest possible pressure will produce some movement. The question of fixation is therefore less important here, although the therapist must support the patient's hand to ensure that it is completely relaxed. If no movement can be felt when this minimum force is applied, there is restriction; the use of greater force renders diagnosis impossible.

This technique can also be used for mobilization, but the following method is preferable, as it provides better fixation. The therapist places both thumbs on the dorsal aspect of one carpal bone and both forefingers (one above the other) on the palmar aspect of the adjacent carpal bone; he then exerts slight pressure, as with pincers shifting one bone against the other. He then reverses the direction of the shift by placing both thumbs on the palmar aspect and both forefingers on the dorsal aspect of the same two bones (Figure 6.5). The movements are rhythmic and repetitive. Obviously, this movement can also be effected with a single hand, the thumb on one and the forefinger on the next carpal bone; in this way the patient can be taught to practise self-treatment (see p. 200).

To locate single carpal bones exactly we must start with one and feel our way to the next. I have already shown how to locate the scaphoid and the trapezium (see p. 162). The capitate forms the most prominent point of the wrist at palmar flexion. The triquetrum lies below the pisiform. (The latter can be mobilized against the triquetrum to both sides as well as proximodistally.)

This technique can be used both for diagnosis and for treatment, not only for the carpal bones themselves but also for the carpometacarpal joints and the intermetacarpal joints. Technically it is, of course, most important to place the fingers on adjacent bones; if the therapist places his fingers too close together (on the same bone) by mistake, he will obtain no movement, while if they are too far apart (so that there is a bone in between) there will be too much mobility. The range of shift between two adjacent carpal bones is only slight.

In addition to these shifting techniques there is a distraction technique with high-velocity thrust which is very effective and entirely innocuous if correctly applied (Figure 6.6). The therapist stands in front of the patient, who is seated with her arm stretched forward and downward. The therapist places both thumbs on the patient's distal bone (where restriction has been found), and both hands round the wrist, with the hand in pronation. The slack is taken up by a very gentle pull in the direction of the long axis of the patient's arm, and the wrist is then slightly dorsiflexed over the therapist's thumbs. The thrust

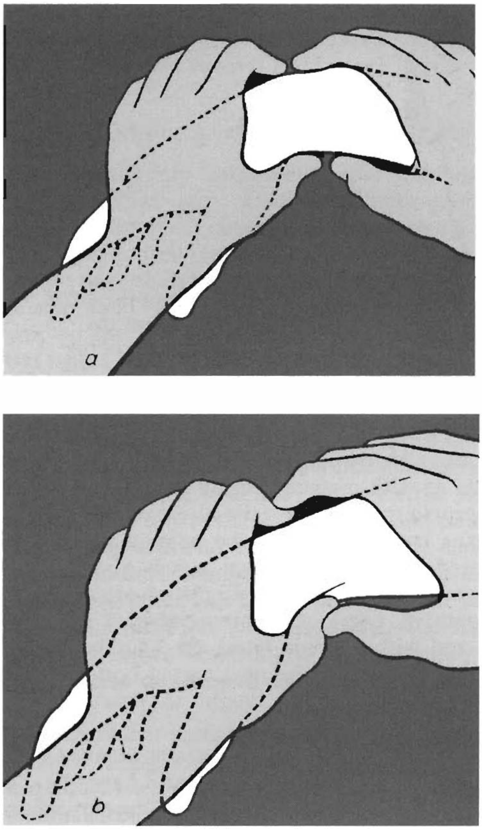


Figure 6.5 Shifting one carpal bone against the next: (*a*) examination; (*b*) mobilization by shearing

is delivered by a sudden pull exactly along the axis of the patient's arm, producing distraction of the joint. There are two mistakes to be avoided: (1) traction must not be released before the thrust is delivered; and (2) no further dorsiflexion at the wrist must occur during the thrust (pull).

The distal radioulnar joint

This is the last joint that can be treated at the wrist, depending for its function on the upper radioulnar joint. For both examination and treatment the technique is broadly that already described for single carpal bones: the therapist grasps the end of the radius and the ulna each between the thumb and forefinger of one hand, producing a dorsal or palmar shift. For treatment he places both thumbs on the dorsal aspect of the radius and both forefingers on the palmar aspect of the ulna, to produce relative shift. After a few repeated rhythmic mobilizations he reverses the pincer movement by placing both thumbs on the dorsal aspect of the ulna and both forefingers on the palmar aspect of the radius.

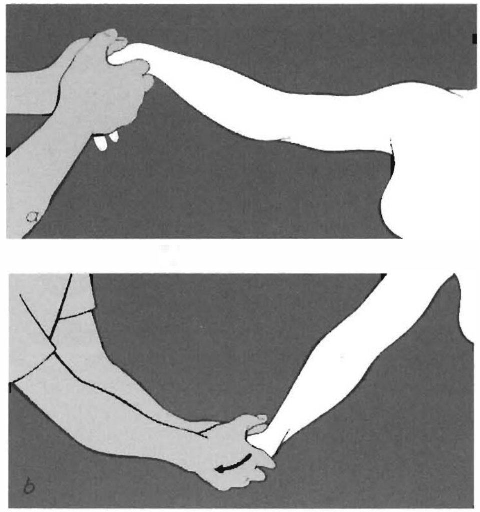


Figure 6.6 Traction high-velocity thrust on the os capitum: (*a*) finding the os capitum and making contact; (*b*) taking up slack and delivering the thrust

The elbow

Here mobilization is used mainly for the treatment of painful epicondyles (in combination with muscle relaxation). The most important techniques are distraction and lateral gapping (springing) which is also significant for diagnosis.

Distraction

The patient lies supine, the arm to be treated flexed at the elbow (Figure 6.7). The therapist fixes the patient's forearm against his shoulder and places the hand that will perform the traction on the forearm, close to the elbow. With his other hand on the arm, close above the elbow, he fixes the patient's arm to the table from above. Traction is carried out along the long axis of the arm by the hand on the forearm;

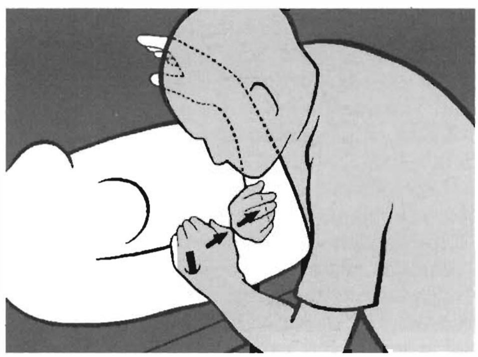


Figure 6.7 Traction of the elbow joint

it is greatly enhanced if the therapist presses the thumb of the other hand (close above the elbow) against the hand exerting the pull, and at the same time increases the flexion of the elbow by pressing his shoulder against the patient's forearm; this produces leverage at the elbow, the therapist's thumb serving as the fulcrum.

Lateral gapping (springing) (Figure 6.8)

The patient may be seated or supine, with the affected arm stretched out but not overstretched (the elbow must not be locked). The therapist stands facing the elbow (from the radial or ulnar side) and with one hand above the wrist fixes the forearm against his body; with the other hand he takes the elbow from the side, the thumb above and fingers below. Pressing this hand gently against the elbow from the side, he takes up the slack, and with a gentle extra push springs the joint, producing gapping of the point on the opposite side. If the radial epicondyle is painful, as a rule there is no springing (or it is impaired) in the ulnoradial direction, while if the ulnar epicondyle is painful we sometimes find restricted radioulnar springing.

For the purpose of mobilization, springing is repeated rhythmically. The same technique is also used to deliver a high-velocity thrust after taking up the slack (in a radial or ulnar direction). Fast shaking is most effective. For self-treatment see Figure 6.70, p. 200.

There are two important technical details: the therapist stands at the level of the elbow joint so that the hand springing the joint or delivering the thrust is supported by his trunk, i.e. the movement originates in the therapist's pelvis or even in his legs; and the hand grasping the patient's forearm is there for fixation only, and must not be (mis)used for leverage.

If a high-velocity thrust in a radial or ulnar direction is not successful, a thrust can be applied

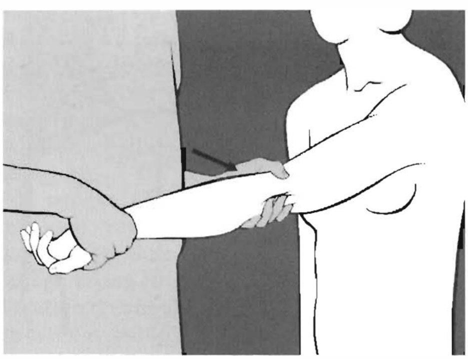


Figure 6.8 Springing the elbow in a radial direction

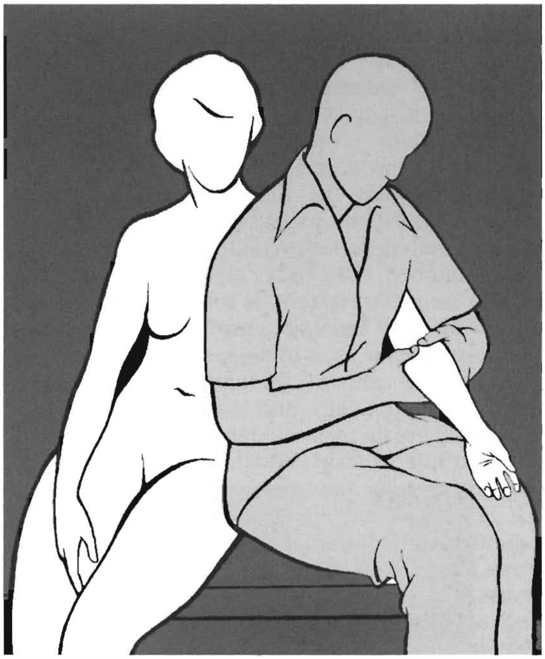


Figure 6.9 Shaking mobilization of the elbow joint into extension

against the head of the radius with the thumb, from the dorsal aspect, the arm being stretched. This technique may be too violent, and we have introduced instead an equally effective gentle rocking technique. The patient is seated or supine; the therapist grasps the outstretched arm with both hands, just above the elbow, holding it in maximum supination and shaking it gently and rhythmically while the patient is fully relaxed (Figure 6.9).

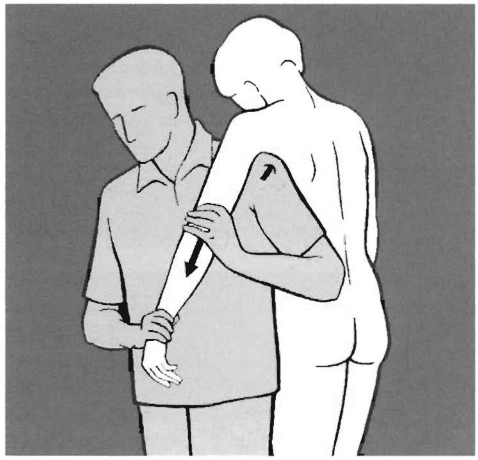
Sachse (personal communication) achieves a similar effect by rhythmic stabilization: with the patient seated and the elbow flexed, the therapist holds the patient's upper arm with both hands, fixing the hand in his armpit, and tells her to extend and flex the arm rhythmically, while he resists the patient's movements.

The shoulder joint

Where we find a typical capsular pattern (see p. 115), mobilization techniques are practically useless and even the usual traction techniques give little or no result. Surprisingly, what we might call isometric traction brings relief of pain and may even improve mobility. It is best for the patient to stand or to sit (Figure 6.10*a*); the therapist places his right shoulder under the right axilla (or the left under the left), pressing against the patient's thorax. He grasps the affected arm with one hand above the wrist and the other above the elbow, and tells the patient to resist traction very slightly and then to breathe in slowly and then to hold her breath. After this the patient is told to let go and to breathe out slowly. If relaxation is satisfactory the therapist feels the patient's arm lengthening – but he must not pull. This procedure is repeated about three times, according to the degree of relaxation achieved. It is important that the therapist should prop his shoulder against the patient's thorax, not the arm, which is semi-abducted. With the axilla over the top of a cushioned chair-back, this technique is very suitable for self-treatment. It is useful if the patient is taller than the therapist. Another technique, with the patient supine, is as follows: she abducts her arm as far as she can; the therapist places a buttock between the patient's arm and chest, exerting a slight pull on the arm to take up the slack. The patient is told to resist, breathe in, hold her breath, and then to relax and breathe out (Figure 6.10*b*).

If abduction only is restricted, and we find at examination that joint play is impaired when we spring the head of the humerus against the scapula from above (see Figure 4.40, p. 115), we restore joint play as follows: the patient sits with her arm abducted; the therapist places his shoulder under the patient's elbow, so that the arm is horizontal. He then places one hand (with the radial aspect) on the head of the humerus from one side, while the other hand touches the fossa glenoidalis of the shoulder-blade from the other side. With slight pressure of one hand against the other he takes up the slack and then springs the joint, producing a translatory movement (Figure 6.11). He then changes hands and springs the joint in the opposite direction. By raising one elbow and lowering the other, the therapist may spring the joint in an oblique direction, thus finding the direction of maximum restriction, and then treating it.

This technique is both easy and effective. Care must be taken, however, to have the therapist's hand located exactly at the head of the humerus, and his other hand at the fossa glenoidalis.



(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 6.10 (*a*) Traction of the shoulder over that of the therapist, in the direction of the long axis of the arm; the patient may sit or stand. (*b*) Traction of the shoulder in the direction of the long axis of the arm, over the therapist's hip, the patient supine

The acromioclavicular joint

To free this joint, the most important technique consists of springing it in a ventrodorsal and a craniocaudal direction (Figure 6.12). The patient is supine, the therapist standing by the side of the table. To carry out ventrodorsal springing he places his (right) thenar eminence against the (right) clavicle, fixing the patient's shoulder with his other hand. He now applies gentle pressure against the clavicle from above, and then releases it. If joint play is normal, he will feel the clavicle spring back and will both feel and see movement between the end of the clavicle and the shoulder. This springing is absent in acromioclavicular blockage. To restore it, the therapist repeats this gentle push with his thenar

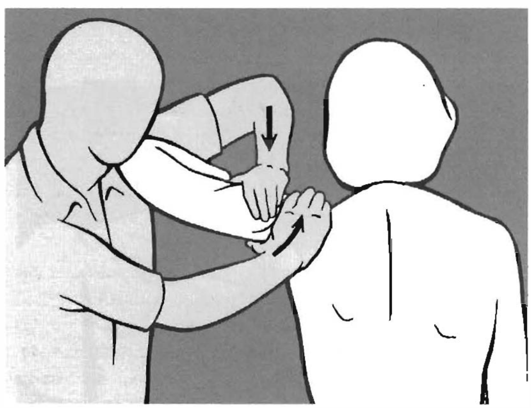
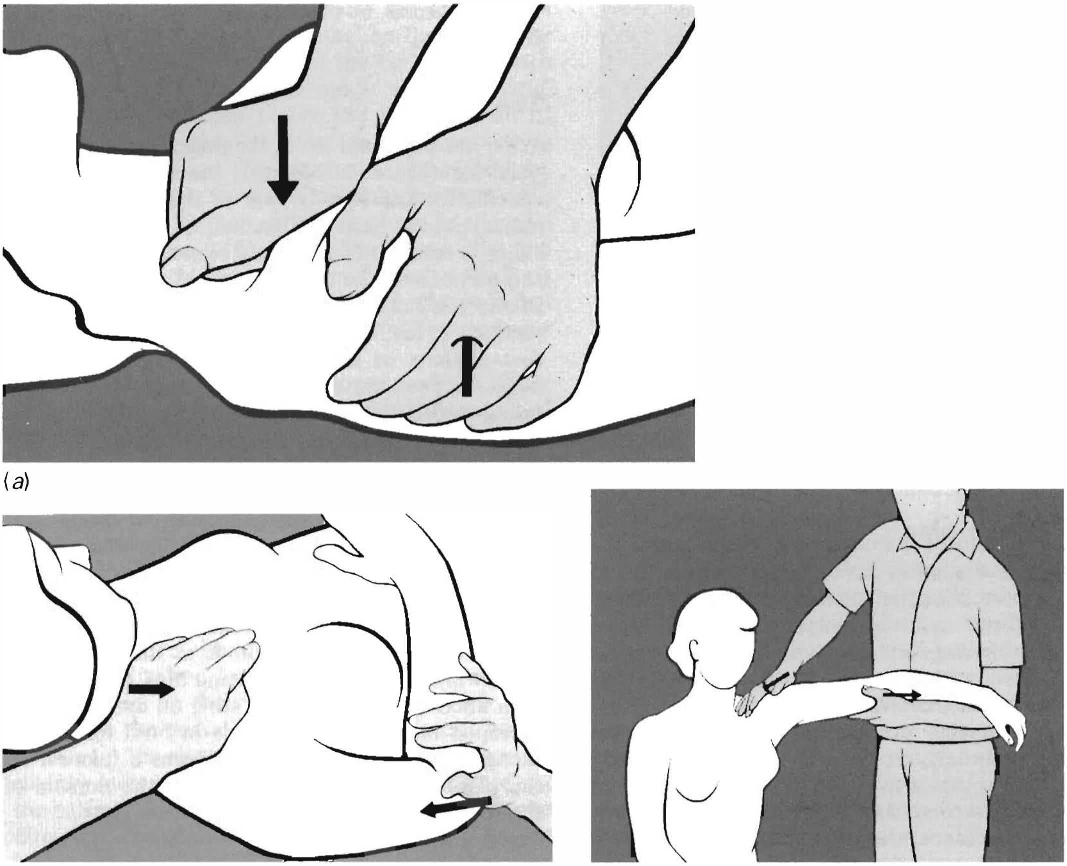


Figure 6.11 Translatory mobilization of the shoulder joint using both hands in opposite directions, the patient seated



(*a*)

(*b*) (*c*)

Figure 6.12 Mobilization of the acromioclavicular joint by springing the clavicle against the acromion in (*a*) a ventrodorsal and (*b*) a craniocaudal direction. (*c*) Traction mobilization of the acromioclavicular joint

eminence, without ever increasing force, and then releases it. After about five repetitions at the rate of two per second, he usually senses some springing; after 15–20 repetitions the range no longer increases.

For craniocaudal springing, the therapist at the side of the table fixes the bent elbow from below with his cupped hand, placing the thenar eminence of the other hand on the clavicle from above and giving a slight springing push followed by release, at the rate of two per second. If he neither feels nor sees springing between the clavicle and the shoulder, he repeats the manoeuvre, as for dorsoventral springing.

It appears that it is the springing back that frees the joint, and therefore the worst mistake is to increase pressure if no springing has been felt (as though trying to release a spring by pressure on it). Treatment should always be applied in both directions, as movement may be blocked separately in each.

Another useful technique is that of traction mobilization (Figure 6.12*c*). The patient is seated on a low stool, with the therapist on the side of the lesion, behind the abducted arm. He grasps the arm above the elbow and with the thenar eminence of the other (right) hand on the (left) clavicle he fixes the lateral end of the clavicle by slight pressure from above. He applies traction through the arm, which is slightly raised, abducted and drawn forward, making a gentle movement of rotation; he may sense a distinct cracking sound under the hand fixing the clavicle.

The sternoclavicular joint

Simple blockage of this joint without arthrosis is relatively rare. The most effective technique is gapping the joint: with hands crossed, the therapist places one pisiform against the medial end of the clavicle from below, and the other pisiform against the manubrium of the sternum from above. By slight pressure parting the hands, the slack is taken up; the

Figure 6.13 Springing the sternoclavicular joint with crossed hands

therapist then springs the joint into distraction (Figure 6.13).

The shoulder-blade

The shoulder-blade lies flat on the thoracic wall and although there is no articulation, it is freely mobile because of the synovial bursae. Although there cannot be blockage of the type found in articulations, there may be some restriction (binding); mobilization can therefore be useful.

The patient lies prone with her head turned towards the therapist at the side of the table (Figure 6.14). The therapist grasps the head of the humerus in both hands – one above and the other below – round the patient's shoulder, and carries out a circling movement. With the upper hand he may exert some pressure on the moving scapula from above, or on the contrary he may lift the scapula from the thorax with his fingertips. It is important that the movement the therapist imparts to the scapula over the patient's shoulder should come from the trunk, so that both his hands perform as a single unit.

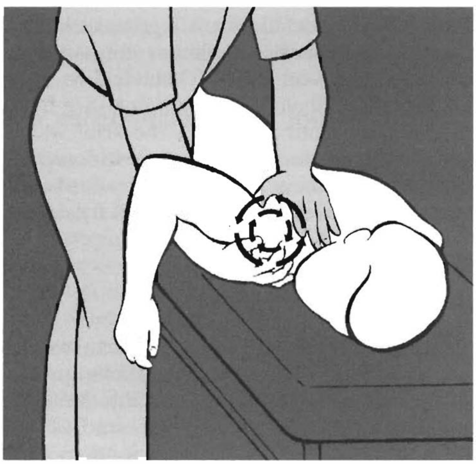


Figure 6.14 Mobilization of the shoulder-blade against the thoracic wall (also useful for rib mobilization)

The toes

What has been said about the finger joints is equally valid for the toes. However, the condition that is specific for the foot is pain in the metatarsophalangeal joints; here the technique that gives most relief is traction in a slightly plantar direction. For this manoeuvre the therapist grasps the first phalanx of the toe between his thumb and the flexed first phalanx of his forefinger, which is placed under the first phalanx of the patient's toe. With the other hand he fixes the corresponding metatarsal. After taking up the slack he increases traction simultaneously with some plantar flexion, using the first phalanx of his flexed forefinger as a fulcrum. Although there is no real thrust, or only a very low-velocity thrust, a click can frequently be heard. This is a simple technique, but care must be taken not to press the joints, which are very tender.

A technique that patients find agreeable consists of spreading the metatarsals fan-wise (Figure 6.15). To do this the therapist stands at the foot of the table while the patient sits facing him, on the table, with knees bent and heels resting on the table. The therapist takes the metatarsals in both hands, the thenar above while the fingers form a fulcrum on the plantar aspect; he then spreads the dorsum of the foot.

The tarsometatarsal joint and the joints between the tarsal bones

The term 'Lisfranc's and Chopart's joint' is frequently used for these joints. As a rule it is better to diagnose and treat specifically the joints between single tarsal bones as well as the tarsometatarsal joints. A very effective technique for treating Lisfranc's joint (all the tarsometatarsal joints) and Chopart's joint (the articulation between both the cuboid and navicular bone with the talus and calcaneus) together is as

Figure 6.15 Spreading the metatarsals fan-wise.

follows (Figure 6.16). The patient lies supine with the leg bent at the knee, the heel on the table. The therapist stands at the side of the table and grasps the patient's leg above the ankle with one hand, from above. He then places the radial aspect of the other hand parallel either to Lisfranc's or to Chopart's joint on the plantar aspect from the medial side of the foot, and takes up the slack with slight pressure; he then springs the joint in a cranial direction (Figure 6.16). He should know that the proximal end of the fifth metatarsal (which is prominent) lies more proximal than the proximal end of the first metatarsal, so that his index finger follows an oblique course.

The following techniques correspond to those described for single carpal bones: for diagnosis of joint play the therapist fixes the proximal bone (most frequently a tarsal bone) between thumb and forefinger, while the thumb and forefinger of his other hand grasp the base of a metatarsal bone, to examine dorsoplantar shift. To carry out this manoeuvre exactly it is best first to take up the slack in a dorsal direction, springing the joint in the same direction, and then to take up the slack in a plantar direction and again spring the joint in end-position.

For mobilization, however, it is better first to place both thumbs on the plantar aspect and both forefingers on the dorsal aspect of two adjacent bones, to take up the slack by slight pressure, and then by slightly increasing and then releasing pressure (at the barrier) rhythmically to mobilize the joint in one direction. The position of the thumbs and forefingers is then reversed to perform mobilization in the same way in the opposite direction (see Figure 6.5, p. 164).

This is an almost universal technique which may be used for the tarsometatarsal joints, the joints between the cuneiform bones and the navicular, and between the navicular and the cuboid and the calcaneus. The most frequent site of restriction is, however, the second, third and fourth tarsometatarsal joints.

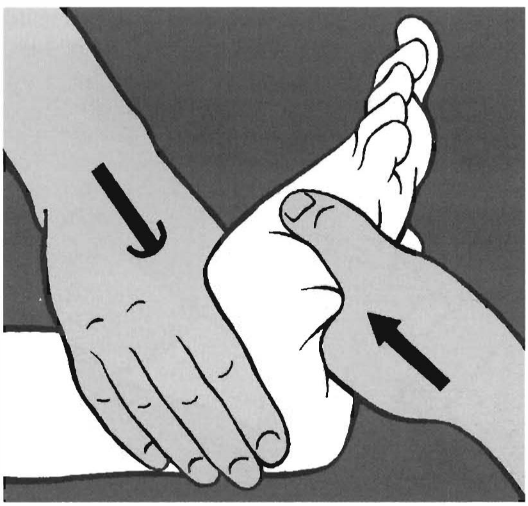


Figure 6.16 Mobilization of the tarsometatarsal and transverse tarsal joints (After Sachse, 1973)

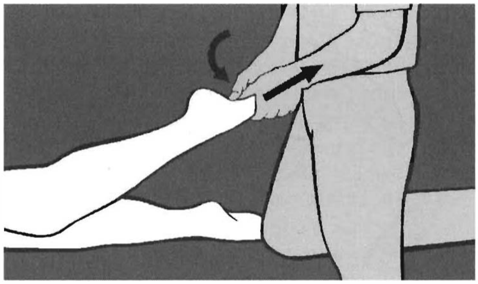


Figure 6.17 Traction manipulation (mobilization) of the tarsal bones by thrust or by rhythmical shaking

After this shifting technique a similarly 'universal' traction technique should be employed (Figure 6.17). The patient lies prone, her legs slightly bent at the knee. The therapist puts the fingers of both hands round the patient's instep with both thumbs on the plantar aspect of the distal of two adjacent bones (e.g. on the base of the third metatarsal). He takes up the slack by slight plantar flexion and traction along the long axis of the foot, and can then deliver a thrust by a sudden pull. Recently I have developed a technique that is gentler, more effective, and agreeable to the patient; this consists in simply shaking the foot rhythmically up and down rather fast (several shakes per second), while maintaining traction. This must be done with a relaxed hand, so as to sense the optimum rhythm. A few seconds of this shaking mobilization is suffficient. It can also be used to treat the cuneiform, the cuboid and the navicular.

The subtalar joint

This joint is formed by the talus, the calcaneus and the navicular. To examine joint play and mobilize the joint, the therapist grasps the patient's instep with one hand and cups the other round her heel (Figure 6.18); the patient is supine. With this grip the therapist can perform most of the possible movements between the calcaneus and the forefoot: lateral flexion, relative rotation, plantar flexion and dorsal flexion of the instep.

A very effective traction technique has been developed for the posterior part of the subtalar joint (Figure 6.19). The patient is supine with the heel over the free edge of the table; the therapist stands at the foot of the table and grasps the leg above the ankle, with one hand, from the side, his thumb above the medial malleolus, for fixation. The other hand cups the heel from the medial aspect and pulls it in a distal and upward direction. After taking up the

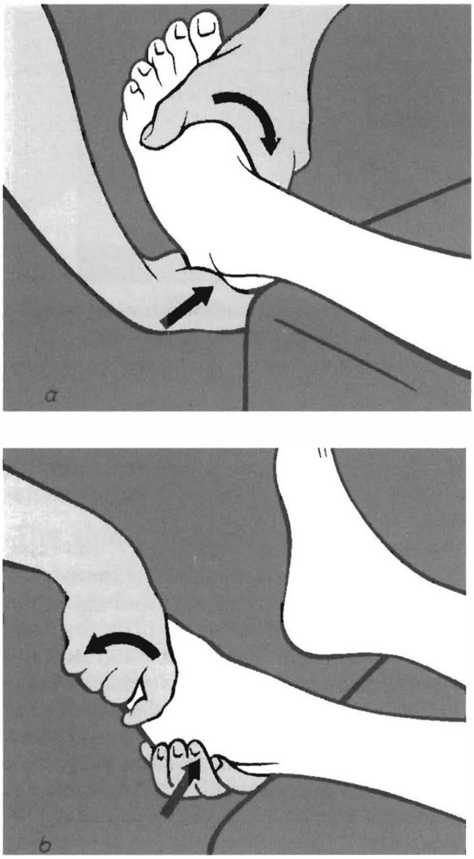


Figure 6.18 Examination of mobility (mobilization) of the calcaneus against the instep in a (*a*) medial and (*b*) lateral direction

slack he may mobilize or deliver a thrust to gap the posterior part of the talocalcaneal joint.

The ankle joint

Here joint play consists of a relative anteroposterior shift of the talus against the fork formed by the distal end of the tibia and fibula. For examination and mobilization the patient is supine, the knee slightly bent and the heel on the table (Figure 6.20). The therapist stands alongside the leg and grasps the heel in one hand, supporting the foot with his forearm to hold it at right angles to the leg. He then takes up the slack by slight pressure from above and springs it rhythmically in the same direction.

There is also a very effective traction technique (Figure 6.21). The patient is supine with legs stretched; the therapist stands at the end of the table and grasps the patient's instep with clasped hands, the thumbs parallel on the sole to stabilize the foot at right angles to the leg. He must take care not to hold the foot in maximum dorsiflexion because that

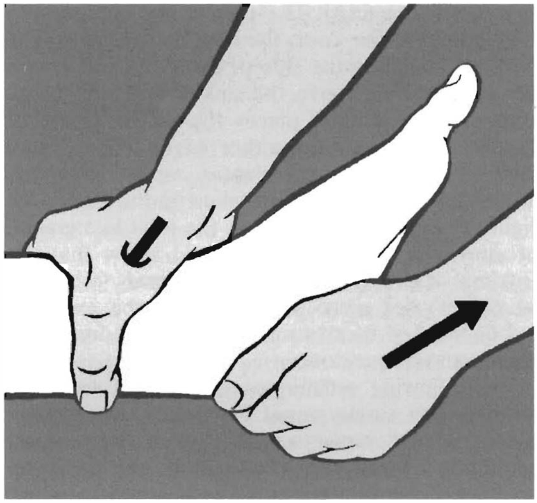


Figure 6.19 Gapping the subtalar joint by pulling on the heel

could lock the ankle joint. He now takes up the slack by a slight pull along the long axis of the leg, and then makes a thrust in the same direction, as a rule obtaining a 'click'.

An alternative technique is to grasp the forefoot with one hand and the heel with the other, carrying out traction; in this case the subtalar joint is also treated. In both cases the most common mistake is exaggerated dorsiflexion of the foot, and too much force applied to taking up the slack.

The tibiofibular joint

For diagnosis, as for mobilization, we move the fibular head on the tibia in an anteroposterior direction, as on the circumference of a circle (Figure 6.22). The patient is supine, the knee bent and the foot on the table. The therapist sits so as to fix the

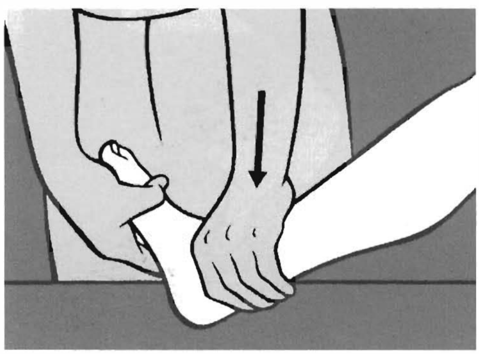


Figure 6.20 Examination of joint play and mobilization of the ankle joint by springing the leg against the heel

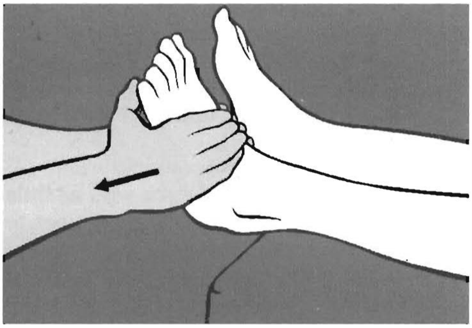


Figure 6.21 Traction manipulation of the ankle joint

patient's toes with his buttocks, grasping the fibular head between thumb and forefinger; with the other hand he fixes the tibia below the knee. With his fingers round the fibular head he makes a dorsal and ventral shift round the tibia, to determine which direction is most restricted. For mobilization he takes up the slack in the restricted direction and rhythmically springs the end-position. It is useful to reinforce the thumb at the fibular head with the thumb of the other hand, which follows the rotatory movement round the tibia. The same effect can be achieved by sustained moderate pressure after engaging the barrier to obtain myofascial release.

The knee joint

The technique of examination and restoration of joint play begins with the patella: with the leg extended and the quadriceps muscle relaxed, the patella should be freely mobile against the femur in all directions. If there is restriction, there is no real blockage; what we find is some resistance, as though the patella was moving over an uneven or rough surface. This sensation is even more marked if some pressure is applied to the patella from above. While the patient lies supine with the leg stretched at the knee, the therapist grasps the patella between the thumb and fingers of one hand, while the other hand exerts slight pressure from above with the thenar eminence or with the thumb. With both hands acting in unison, the therapist now moves the patella so as to sense where the roughness lies; he then slightly increases pressure so as to smooth out the roughness, without causing pain. After a few repetitions he feels that roughness and resistance have subsided. At this moment, too, the patient feels considerable relief. This technique can be taught to patients for self-treatment.

The knee joint can be treated first by (dis)traction techniques (Figure 6.23). The simplest is to lay the patient prone on a mat on the floor, the knee bent at right angles. The therapist (standing) puts one foot on the thigh just above the knee and grasps the leg with both hands round the ankle, pulling it in a vertical direction.

As at the elbow, lateral springing to gap the joint on the medial or lateral aspect is an important technique (Figure 6.24). The patient lies supine, the leg stretched but not over-stretched. The therapist stands by the table alongside the affected knee; with one hand he grips the patient's ankle, lifting it slightly above the table. With the other hand supported by the trunk he exerts slight pressure at the level of the joint space to take up the slack, and then springs the joint medially. In order to spring the joint laterally, the therapist must sit on the table between the patient's legs, facing the knee joint. Fast shaking is the most effective mobilization.

To apply a slight thrust, which is sometimes useful, we use this technique but first ask the patient to bend and stretch the knee; while the patient actively stretches the joint the therapist delivers a slight

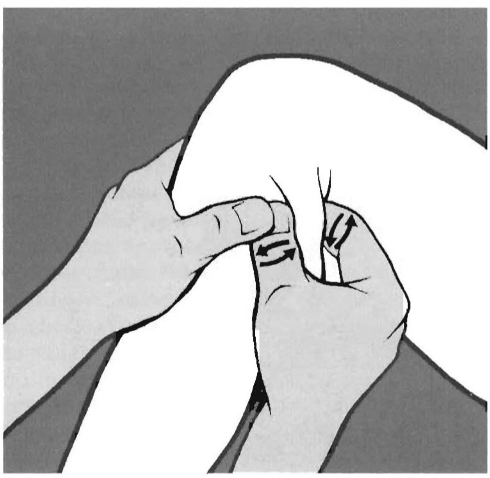


Figure 6.22 Mobilization of the fibular head against the tibia

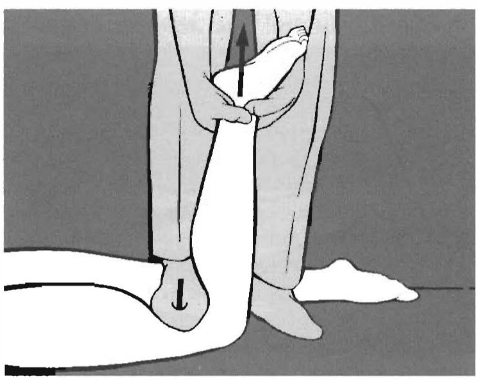


Figure 6.23 Knee traction with the patient prone

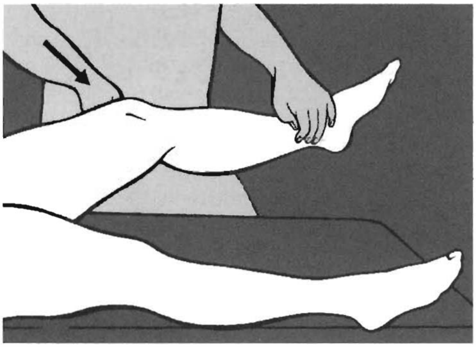


Figure 6.24 Lateral springing (gapping) of the knee joint

thrust at the knee joint, with his hand, in a medial or lateral direction while fixing the heel with his other hand.

As with the elbow, it is important that the therapist should stand at the level of the knee, so that the hand that springs the joint is supported by the movement of the trunk; the hand that grasps the heel is there for fixation only, and should never deliver a thrust.

The hip joint

This joint, as an almost ideal ball-and-socket joint, hardly allows shifting movement. I therefore only describe traction techniques here; they are the most important and the most effective. Traction may be carried out either along the long axis of the leg, or in the direction of the femoral neck.

In the former case (Figure 6.25), the patient is supine with a strap fixing the pelvis. The therapist stands at the foot of the table; a strap passing round his waist is fastened round the patient's leg above the ankle. With both hands on this strap, the therapist takes up the slack by very slight traction, the leg being in 10 degrees abduction, flexion and rotation at the hip joint. When he feels that the patient has relaxed he delivers a high-velocity thrust by pulling suddenly with both hands and trunk, thus pulling the femoral head slightly out of the socket. (This movement is only of a few millimetres, as visualized by X-ray.) When traction is released there is a tiny thud.

The following technical details are important: (1) the therapist should take up the slack with as little force as possible, i.e. by waiting for the patient to relax or by beginning with PIR; (2) the therapist must not release his pull before giving the thrust; (3) he must not squeeze the ankle with his hands.

I use traction by PIR much more often than this high-velocity thrust. As the force used in the former is minimal, strapping is unnecessary. Grasping the patient's heel the therapist tells her to resist traction, i.e. to pull up her leg with minimum force and hold this movement for about 10 s. Towards the end of this isometric phase the patient should breathe in; she is then told to 'let go' and to breathe out. All that the therapist now feels is that the leg lengthens by relaxation, without any further pull. This manoeuvre is repeated three to five times.

For traction in the direction of the femoral neck the patient is supine and the buttock is on the edge of the table, forming a fulcrum (Figure 6.26). The therapist sits on a stool by the side of the table, the patient's leg over his shoulder, with bent knee. He now grasps the patient's thigh with both hands, his forearm in the groin, and gives a slight oblique pull in the direction of the femoral neck. The patient puts up slight resistance by pulling the bent leg in the opposite direction, with the pelvis (i.e. in the direction of the opposite shoulder). The patient holds this resistance during slow inhalation, then she holds his breath, after which she is told to 'let go' and breathe out. Again, during relaxation the thigh is felt to lengthen (give) slightly. This technique is much less effective when passive pull only is used, with or without thrusting.

The difficulty with this technique lies in making the patient understand what to do during the

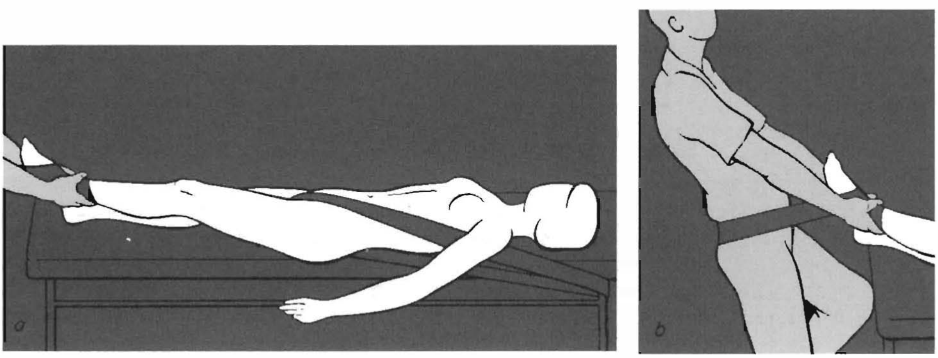


Figure 6.25 Traction of the hip joint along the long axis of the leg, using two straps: (*a*) fixation of the patient with one strap; (*b*) applying the second strap

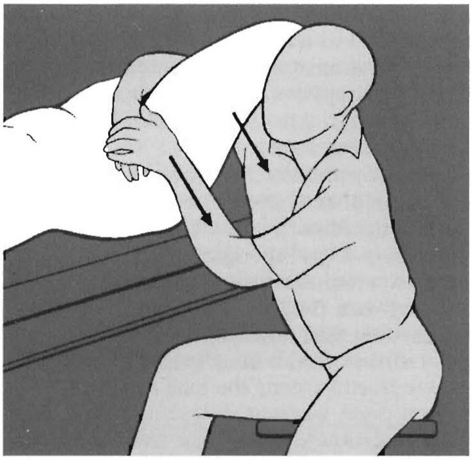


Figure 6.26 Traction of the hip joint along the axis of the femoral neck, over the edge of the table

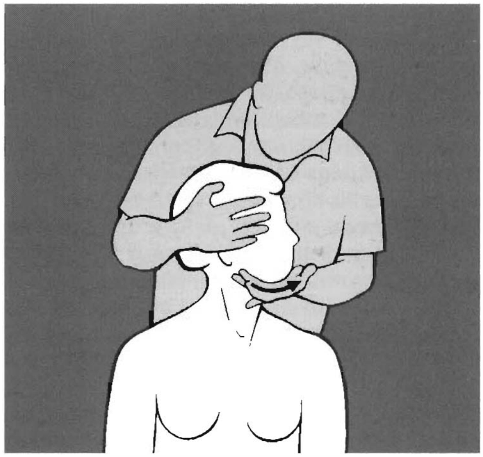


Figure 6.27 Mobilization of the temporomandibular joint

isometric phase, for it is not just that she has to flex her hip. She has at the same time to pull her hip up in a cranial direction but not to flex the knee. To achieve this, it is best if the therapist demonstrates this movement by passively flexing the patient's knee and pushing the hip upwards. Only when the patient has fully understood this, can she do it actively. During relaxation it is most important for the patient to let the therapist bear the full weight of her leg on his shoulder. Once the patient has fully understood and learned how to do this, anybody with whom the patient lives or who is at hand can replace the therapist, as all he does is to hold his hands in the patient's groin.

As the lower extremity is accessible to both the patient's hands, many of the techniques described are useful for self-treatment.

The temporomandibular joint

For treatment, laterolateral movements of the jaw are most convenient, and again PIR provides the gentlest and most effective technique (Figure 6.27). The patient is seated, with her head turned to one side; the therapist stands behind her, stabilizing the patient's head against his own chest. The patient is told to open her mouth, i.e. to let her chin drop; the therapist cradles the mandible from the side, between two fingers, moving it to the opposite side, towards his chest. When he has taken up the slack he asks the patient to breathe out during the isometric phase and in during relaxation (see p. 29). During relaxation the mandible moves in the direction of the affected joint. The procedure is repeated three to five times.

A good alternative is simple traction. With a thumb on the molars on each side of the mandible, and the bent forefinger on the chin, the slack is taken up by pressure on the molars from above. The patient resists this pull during exhalation and relaxes during inhalation.

Most frequently, however, movement restriction is dominated by spasm of the masticatory muscles which have to be relaxed (see Post-isometric relaxation, p. 211).

The spinal column

The principles set out at the beginning of this chapter also hold for the spinal column. There are, however, some specific technical points to be dealt with; for instance, it is obviously more difficult to move a single mobile segment than a single extremity joint. Furthermore, it is more difficult to distinguish joint play from functional movement in the spinal column. As it is not possible to move a single segment actively, passive movement represents as it were joint play. This difficulty applies particularly to shifting techniques, and less to distraction. Techniques that produce gapping thus clearly use joint play for their effect, (e.g. rotation in the lumbar spine, dorsoventral thrusts in the thoracic spine). Because of this relative difficulty in moving single joints we distinguish specific and non-specific techniques.

There are several ways of achieving a specific effect: the ideal way, although not always practicable, is direct fixation of at least one partner (this can always be done in an extremity joint). Another way is to apply 'locking' techniques if leverage is used; this is to great advantage, for example, when moving the head in order to manipulate the cervical spine, or the legs and pelvis in order to mobilize the lumbar spine. To make such a technique specific we must try to 'lock' all the segments except for the one we wish to manipulate. The principle of 'locking' consists of bringing into an extreme position the segments we do not move, under a certain degree of tension. The mechanism is either apposition of bony structures or tension of ligaments. Even here, however, we have to take up the slack to make any type of manipulation effective. It can thus be seen that the 'locking' is only relative, and if leverage is forceful, treatment will never be specific. Leverage is, of course, very advantageous, but it must be applied with very little force to make locking techniques effective. It is, therefore, preferable to rely on fixation rather than on locking.

Locking is achieved mainly by a careful combination of side-bending and rotation, making use of coupled movements. Lordosis in the lumbar spine means that there is side-bending coupled with rotation in the opposite direction; hence we achieve locking by rotation and side-bending in the same direction. In kyphosis the opposite is true, and we therefore have to combine side-bending and rotation in the opposite direction. In the thoracic spine, side-bending is always coupled with rotation to the opposite side (in scoliosis, rotation is always to the same side) and therefore locking entails side-bending and rotation to the same side. In the cervical spine there is always side-bending and rotation to the same side, and here we achieve locking by side-bending and rotation to the opposite side.

An obvious way of achieving some degree of specificity is by direct contact. Clearly, a vertebra may be fixed by direct contact in at least one direction: for instance, by fixation of a spinous process from the side we prevent rotation of that vertebra in the opposite direction. If we exert pressure, spring a vertebra or apply a thrust, some of the force will be effective at the site where it is applied. Indeed, chiropractors believe that a high-velocity thrust applied with sufficient energy acts like a hammer on an uncemented brick wall, throwing one brick out and leaving all the rest in place.

To achieve the maximum specific effect, a combination of leverage and locking techniques with direct contact and fixation is most commonly used. However advantageous these techniques, they are effective only if leverage and locking are applied exactly to the site where the other hand makes contact.

From this it would appear obvious that the hand that makes contact fixes or moves the vertebra in a direction opposed to the direction of leverage applied by the other hand. This is usually true, but there are certain techniques in which both hands move in the same direction, as a single force, the segment below the treated vertebra being fixed by positioning (e.g. the pelvis fixed by the patient sitting astride the table). This type of technique gives considerable leverage, and must depend mainly on locking. It is used most frequently in pure traction techniques which, although they are without risk and are certainly effective, are of doubtful specific effect unless very gently applied.

There are also non-specific techniques that can be useful in mobilizing longer sections of the spinal column. Such a generally non-specific but widely used technique is that of traction along the long axis of the spine. Its importance and indication have been discussed in Chapter 5 (p. 150).

In order to avoid confusion it is important to distinguish between traction along the long axis of the spinal column and distraction of intervertebral joints. This distinction is clearest in the lumbar region, where traction along the long axis acts on the intervertebral discs, whereas distraction of the apophyseal joints is produced by rotation round that same axis. In the cervical spine, on the other hand, traction along the long axis affects the discs and the joints.

The lumbar spine

Traction techniques

Intermittent manual traction is the most important of these methods. If the patient can lie prone it is best if she provides her own fixation by holding on to the end of the table. The therapist grasps both the patient's legs just above the ankle, and with slight traction makes sure that she is completely relaxed. He must then establish the correct rhythm of traction, in order to localize the effect in the low back. If the rhythm is too slow, the patient's whole body will move slightly, up and down, on the table. By quickening the rhythm the therapist will find at which point only the legs and pelvis move while the low back remains still, like a nodal point in a standing wave. When this rhythm has been found, the patient feels the intermittent traction exactly in the low back. This should be done with little force, but once the rhythm is established each pull may be reinforced and occasionally something like a thrust delivered.

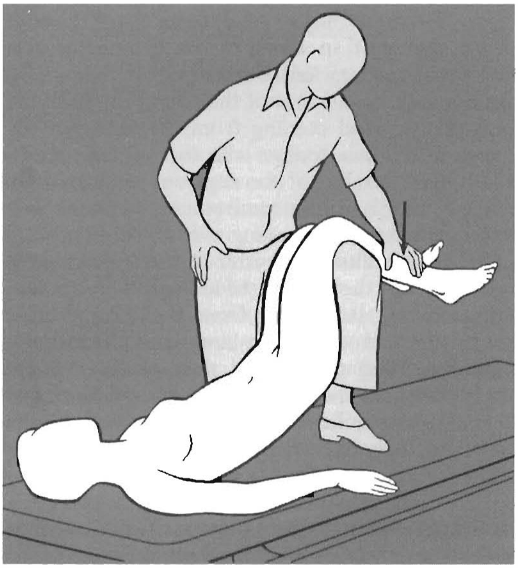
It can be also very useful to apply rhythmic traction by one leg only, if the patient feels relief. Obviously this method implies manual traction only. The therapist must avoid squeezing the legs above the ankle.

If the patient cannot stretch out, as is often the case in the acute stage, intermittent traction is carried out in kyphosis (Figure 6.28*a*). For this the patient lies on her back with her legs bent at the hip and knee. If the table is adjustable it should be as low as possible. The therapist stands at the side of the table, his foot on it, so as to have his knee and thigh under the patient's flexed knees, using her legs as a lever. Exerting pressure on the patient's ankles from above, he lifts the patient's pelvis with a rocking motion, making sure that she is relaxed with her buttocks clear of the table. By increasing and lowering the pressure upon the ankles intermittent traction in kyphosis is achieved (at a rhythm of about two per second). Obviously this technique works only if the therapist's lower leg is longer than the patient's thighs; it is usually necessary for him to keep his shoe on, and perhaps place a little board under the foot. As in the acute stage of lumbago and root pain, kyphosis is frequently the relief position; if well tolerated, this technique plays the role of first aid.

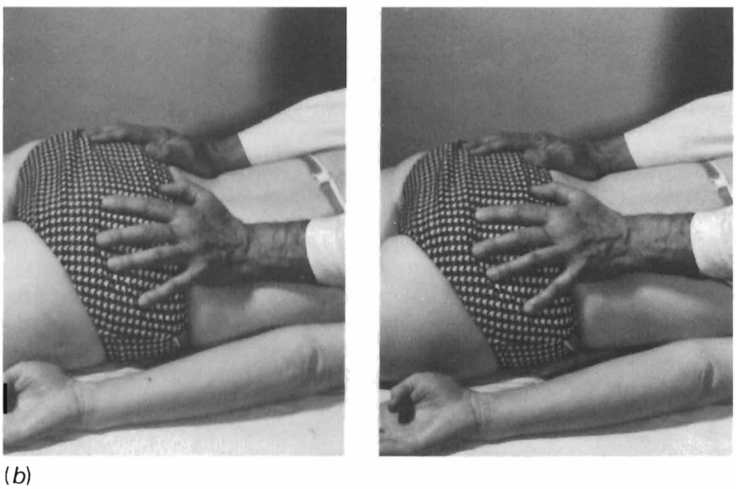
There are two very effective and gentle traction methods that make use of PIR. For the first the patient lies prone (Figure 6.28*b*), with her head near to the end of the table. The therapist stands at the head of the table and puts the heel of his hands on the patient's buttocks from above. He tells the patient to breathe out slowly and deeply, and feels resistance increasing. The patient is then told to take a slow, deep breath, and as she does so the buttocks move down and the lumbar spinal lordosis flattens. This is followed by long, deep exhalation and again the buttocks tend to move upwards. The therapist resists this movement, which is followed by relaxation or a caudal movement of the buttocks during inhalation. Resistance to each upward movement of the buttocks during exhalation increases the intensity of the traction. This resistance is even more effective if intermittent.

As an alternative: the therapist stands at the side of the patient and produces traction with his crossed hands, one over the low thoracic spine and the other on the sacrum.

For traction with PIR in kyphosis, the patient is prone over the end of the table, her legs hanging down from the hips; the table should be high enough for the feet to be clear of the floor; if the feet do touch the floor, the legs must still hang relaxed. The therapist stands at the side of the patient's low back, placing the heel of one of his crossed hands on the sacrum (from above) and the other from below on the spinous process of a lumbar vertebra, according to the site where traction is required. He now tells the patient to give slight resistance to the traction he applies by a slight push on the sacrum, in a caudal direction, and with the other hand in a cranial direction. The patient is told to breathe out slowly and then to 'let go' and breathe in. This technique can be used for self-treatment, the patient raising her buttocks while breathing out, and dropping (relaxing) them while breathing in. The effect of



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.28 (*a*) Traction of the lumbar spine in kyphosis (supine). (*b*) Isometric traction of the lumbar spine (prone): left, increased resistance during exhalation; right, the buttocks move in a caudal direction during inhalation exhalation is, however, much less intense in lumbar kyphosis then in the prone lordotic position.

There are many well-known methods of traction performed on special tables, including intermittent traction, but none can compete with manual traction by a skilled therapist. There is one principle that must be stressed, however, both in manual and especially in table traction: it must not be painful. If the patient feels discomfort, the therapist must find a position in which traction is well tolerated, or else abandon it. Pain during traction is frequently due to blockage in the lumbar spine or the sacroiliac joints; this calls for treatment.

Manipulation

In manipulation it is useful to begin by using the springing technique described for the examination of retroflexion in individual mobile segments (see pp. 102–103). The patient lies with both hips and knees flexed. The therapist leans his thigh against the patient's knees, fixing the spinous process of the upper vertebra of the treated segment with one finger, reinforced by the fingers of the other hand placed over it. He now tells the patient to press her knees slightly against the therapist's thigh (but not so hard as to push him away) and to breathe in and then to hold her breath. At the end of this isometric phase the patient is told to 'let go' and breathe out. While the patient relaxes the therapist has the impression that the hands on the spinous process are sinking into a hollow, as the mobilized spinal segment moves into lordosis. The procedure is repeated from this position, about three times (see Figure 4.16, p. 103).

The most popular manipulative technique is probably that of rotation, with the patient lying on her side (Figure 6.29). She should be in a 'neutral' position, i.e. neither in flexion nor extension. The leg that lies on the table is not fully extended while the other is bent at the hip and knee, so that the foot is fixed by the slightly bent knee on the table; the other knee is bent and projects over the edge of the table. The therapist stands in front of the patient so as to fix the flexed knee with his thigh. Passing his hand over the patient's hip, he fixes it with his forearm while with the ulnar aspect of the hand he fixes the part of the lumbar spine that is caudal to the lower vertebra of the segment being treated; one or two fingers are used to fix the spinous process of that vertebra. In this way he can completely fix the lumbar spine, up to the segment to be treated. The elbow of the therapist's other arm lies on the patient's shoulder (unless the patient is much taller than the therapist, in which case it lies on the arm below the shoulder) and it is helpful if the patient slings this arm round that of the therapist. With the thumb of the hand coming from the shoulder the therapist establishes contact with the spinous process of the upper vertebra of the segment to be treated. Obviously if this is the lumbosacral segment it is sufficient for the hand passing over the patient's hip to fix the pelvis alone. In order to take up the slack it is best to tell the patient to look in the direction of mobilization (i.e. away from the therapist) as far as he can and to wait for complete relaxation at the barrier. With the patient thus positioned, the therapist fixes the shoulder (or arm) from above and tells the patient to look towards him and breathe in slowly, and to hold his breath; the therapist resists rotation (in the opposite direction from mobilization). The patient is then told to look in the direction of mobilization and to breathe out slowly. In this way the range of rotation automatically increases,

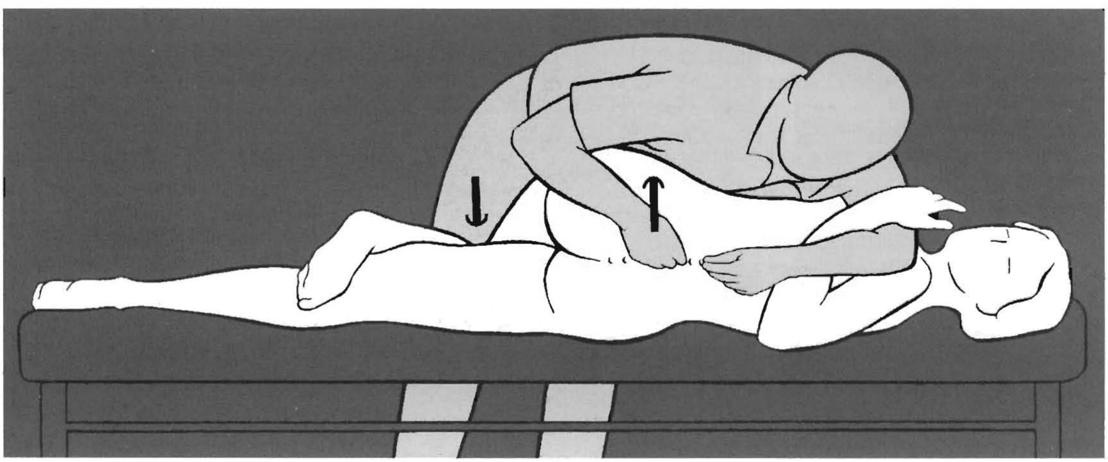


Figure 6.29 Rotation mobilization or thrust manipulation of the lumbar spine with the patient on her side, in neutral position

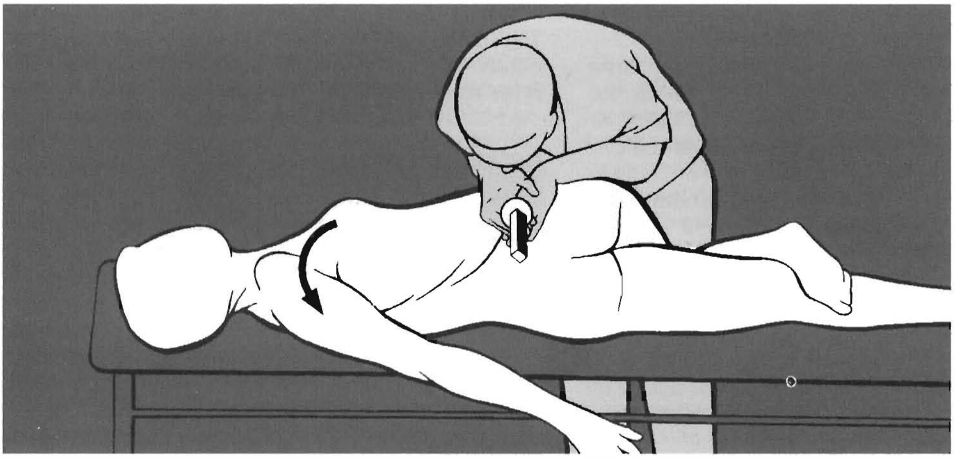


Figure 6.30 Active repetitive mobilization of the lumbar spine with the patient lying on her side

and a new position is reached and fixed by the therapist. The procedure is repeated about three times. Quite frequently a spontaneous 'click' is heard during relaxation. When the slack is taken up (and end-position is reached), he may make an additional thrust against the shoulder.

This is a fully automatic mobilization technique, the patient resisting while looking towards the therapist and breathing in, and relaxing when looking away from him and breathing out. It should be the basic technique used in extension restriction. It produces gapping of the upper intervertebral joint and can be used throughout the lumbar spine and even at the thoracolumbar junction.

A repetitive technique from the extreme position reached by relaxation can be used, as a modification. With his hand over the patient's buttocks to maintain fixation, the therapist tells her to turn to and fro; he may even reinforce the fixing hand by the other (Figure 6.30).

The other technique of similar importance is mobilization in flexion (for flexion restriction, Figure 6.31). The patient again lies on her side, but in a somewhat kyphotic position, the leg on the table flexed at the hip and knee. The other (upper) leg hangs over the edge of the table (except where the straight leg raising test is highly positive, in which case she bends the leg so as to fix the foot at the knee of the lower limb). The therapist first fixes the pelvis in an oblique position, i.e. not perpendicular to the table but tilted forward so that the weight of the hanging leg enhances kyphosis. The therapist uses his other hand to pull forward the arm on which the patient is lying, so as to increase kyphosis still further. This must be done with great care, so as not to straighten the pelvis, i.e. not to return it to the perpendicular. This position is essential for the success of the technique.

The therapist fixes the patient's leg with his thigh, passing his forearm over the hip, the hand pointing in the direction of the caudal vertebra of the segment to be treated. With the elbow of the other arm against the patient's shoulder, the therapist tells the patient to look to the ceiling in order to obtain rotation of the trunk away from himself, to take up the slack. The thumb of the hand over the shoulder fixes the spinous process of the upper vertebra from above, by a downward pull with the distal phalanx of the thumb. Again, if the therapist is not tall, it is better for the patient to sling her arm round the therapist's, so that the therapist can exert pressure against the patient's arm below the shoulder. In this position the patient is told to press her hip slightly against the therapist's hand so as to lift both hip and leg, and to hold this pressure for about 10 s, while breathing in and to hold her breath. She is then told to 'let go' and breathe out and, as she relaxes, the hanging leg and hip

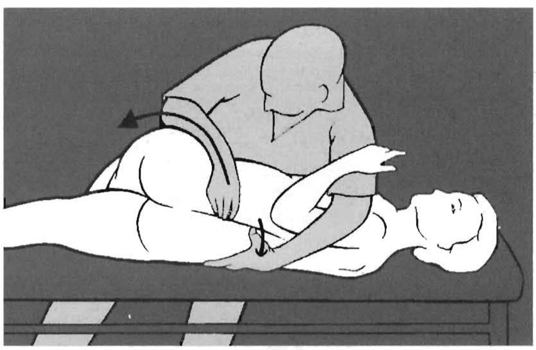


Figure 6.31 Mobilization or thrust manipulation of the lumbar spine with the patient on her side in kyphosis, the lower leg bent and the upper hanging down over the edge of the table

produce further hip rotation and lumbar kyphosis, and the therapist can feel the distance between his hands increasing. This procedure can be repeated three to five times. If the slack has been taken up, the hand on the patient's hip may also give a thrust in the same direction. In every case, the thumb on the spinous process must maintain fixation.

How this technique can also be used for muscular relaxation and self-treatment is described later in this chapter (see Figure 6.115), it also serves stretching.

The technique produces some degree of rotation and gapping of the joints and effects traction with anteflexion and great muscular relaxation. For this reason it is advisable to use this flexion technique in disc lesion, for both flexion or extension restriction on the painful side.

There are very many other techniques in use, particularly thrusting manipulation in a dorsoventral direction with the patient prone or on her side, but they do not seem to me to be of such value as to be worth describing here.

The pelvis

The only joint that is treated by manipulation is the sacroiliac. For mobilization, excellent results can be achieved with movements in two almost perpendicular planes, the sagittal (nutation of the sacrum in relation to the innominate) and the horizontal (gapping the dorsal part of the sacroiliac joint by springing the ilium against the sacrum). As there are no muscles to move or fix the sacroiliac joint, the simple passive repetitive technique with a minimum of force is always effective, provided that there is no structural change present.

For mobilization in the sagittal plane, the patient is prone, while the therapist stands at the side of the table, facing the patient's pelvis, and with crossed hands places one pisiform on the posterior superior iliac spine from below, and the other on the caudal end of the sacrum (Figure 6.32*a*). With slight pressure he takes up the slack and can now spring the joint not so much by pressing his hands downwards as by separating them, again with very little force. It is most important that after slightly increasing his pressure the therapist releases it, even if at first there is no response in the blocked joint. After about five repetitions with no increase in force he should begin to sense movement, and mobility is usually restored to normal after about 15 repetitions. The technique should be performed at one or two moves to the second. The following points are important: the pisiform moving the sacrum must be at the caudal end, just above the coccyx, otherwise the lever is too short; and taking up the slack implies bony contact – the therapist must move bone, not skin. Therefore first the soft tissues are very slightly shifted until a barrier is reached between the soft tissues and bone. The most serious mistake is to increase pressure before any movement has been felt. Apparently, it is the release of pressure that makes the joint spring.

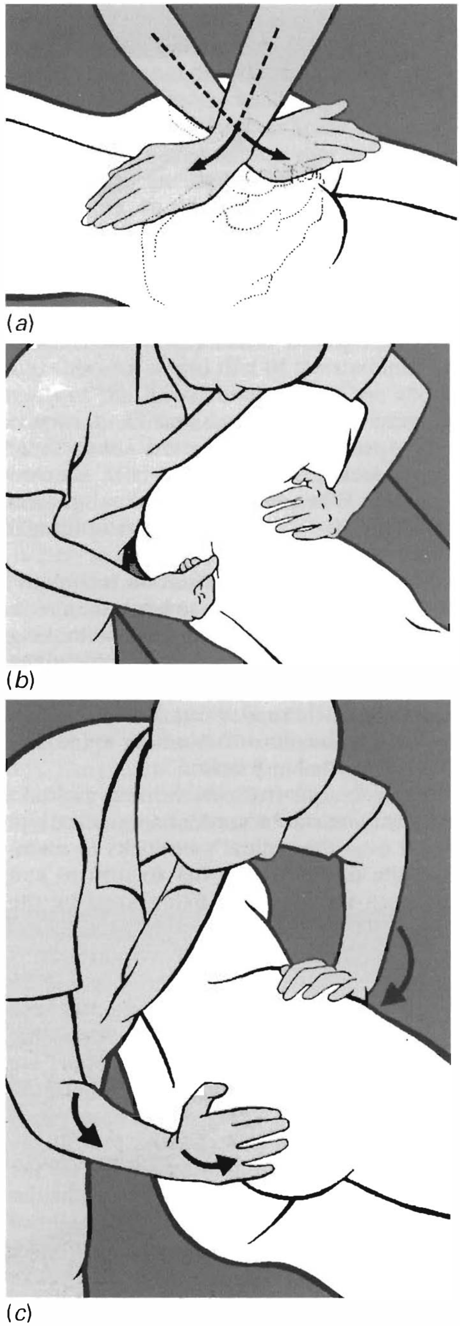


Figure 6.32 (*a*) Mobilization of the sacroiliac joint, with crossed hands (also used for examination). (*b*) Mobilization of the upper part of the sacroiliac joint. (*c*) Mobilization of the lower part of the sacroiliac joint

For mobilization in the horizontal plane, a diagnostic technique (see Figure 4.10, p. 98) can be used, with the patient lying on her side. Once again, all I have said about applying minimum pressure and the importance of releasing it is valid. There is one important detail to be borne in mind: although the therapist moves the anterior superior iliac spine, he must not rotate the pelvis, but should only produce gapping of the posterior part of the sacroiliac joint; the patient's upper or both bent knees must lie on the table, and the therapist must therefore push the iliac spine downwards and backwards with his forearm obliquely pointing (and sliding) in a ventro-craniomedial direction. Using this technique he may also apply a thrust after taking up the slack.

If the upper part of the sacroiliac only is involved, this structure is most effectively treated with the patient lying on the other side, the lower leg slightly bent, the upper knee (or both bent knees) on the table. The therapist sits below the patient's buttocks, facing her head; with one hand he exerts pressure against the anterior superior spine in a dorsal direction, the thumb of his other hand producing counter-pressure on the base of the sacrum, just below the posterior superior spine, in a ventral direction, rhythmically springing the ilium against the sacrum (Figure 6.32*b*).

If it is mainly the lower end of the sacrum which is involved, the patient lies in the same position but the therapist sits above her pelvis. With one hand he grasps the superior iliac spine and with the ulnar aspect of the other hand he makes contact at the caudal end of the sacrum; rotating both hands in opposite directions he produces nutation of the sacrum against the ilium (Figure 6.32*c*).

Kubis (1970) has described another thrust technique in the sagittal plane (Figure 6.33). The patient lies on her side, one leg on the table stretched and the other bent at hip and knee, with the foot stabilized by the knee beneath it. The therapist stands at the side of the table, facing the patient's pelvis, and fixes the knee with his thigh while rotating the shoulder away from himself. He now makes contact with his pisiform (or the first phalanx of the bent forefinger) pressing on the caudal tip of the sacrum, to take up the slack in a dorsoventral direction, and delivers a thrust in the same direction. There are two important technical points to be noted: the therapist's forearm delivering the thrust must lie in the direction of the thrust, which means that he must bend over the patient; and pelvic rotation must be avoided, the thrust being only dorsoventral.

This technique produces an anterior shift of the end of the sacrum against the ilium which is fixed because the patient is lying on it; the result is a movement of nutation round a frontal axis at S2, acting on the joint on the side on which the patient is lying.

For treatment of symphyseal shift we have decided not to use 'reposition manoeuvres', as we are now aware of palpatory illusion (see Figures 4.10, 4.11, p. 98) and rely successfully on soft tissue techniques, i.e. moving the buttocks (deep fasciae) in a cranial direction, or sustained slight pressure at the site of hypertonus of the buttocks.

Innominate shear dysfunction (Greenman)

Here, what can be called a 'reposition manoeuvre' is always very successful. On the side of 'outflare' (see p. 99), i.e. where the anterior superior iliac spine (ASIS) is flatter and more lateral, the therapist adducts the thigh with the hip and knee bent at right angles (see Figure 4.13) until the slack is taken up. The patient is then told to exert slight counter-pressure into abduction for about 10 s after which relaxation into adduction takes place; this is repeated two to three times. This can be followed by intermittent resisted adduction (antagonist inhibition). On the opposite side ('inflare') where the ASIS is more prominent and medial, the slack is taken up

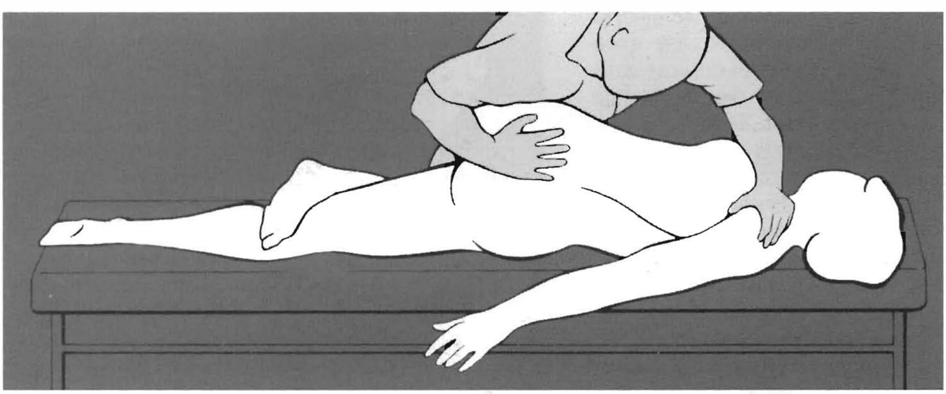


Figure 6.33 Thrusting technique in a dorsoventral direction, against the tip of the sacrum (After Kubis, 1970)

in abduction like in Patrick's test (see Figure 4.41) and adduction resisted for about 10 s; relaxation into adduction follows. This is repeated two or three times, and may be followed by intermittent antagonist inhibition.

The coccyx

In the majority of cases of a tender coccyx, PIR of the glutei maximi (see Figure 6.123) is very effective, and can be administered as self-treatment. It is only in exceptional cases that manipulation per rectum is necessary; even when carefully performed this is unpleasant and even painful. It is a very effective technique, yet the mechanism is still obscure; the sacrococcygeal junction is not a true joint, and there is no movement restriction.

For manipulation the patient lies prone with her heels rotated outwards, or is on knees and elbows. The therapist inserts his forefinger into the rectum, first ascertaining whether the levator ani is not tense on both sides; if it is, he must relax it by massage or PIR of the glutei maximi which contract and relax at the same time as the levator ani. Then by moving the coccyx he finds the exact site of the sacrococcygeal synchrondrosis. He may now move the coccyx in a dorsal direction, or simply exert pressure on the sacrococcygeal synchrondrosis with the inserted finger and the thumb on the end of the sacrum. After two or three repetitions he must determine whether the coccyx is still tender or not.

The thoracic spine

Here there are no pure traction techniques such as we use in the lumbar and cervical regions. A manoeuvre frequently practised by laymen perhaps provides the nearest thing to traction: the patient (standing or seated) crosses her arms over her chest, with her hands on her shoulders or face. The therapist stands behind her and passes his hands round the patient's body to cup the further elbow, pressing the patient's thoracic spine and ribs against his own chest, to take up the slack. He then straightens up imparting a thrust to the patient's elbows, in an upward direction, at the same time pressing her closer to his own chest. This unsophisticated and non-specific technique is quite harmless unless the patient suffers from severe osteoporosis.

As stiff increased kyphosis is probably the most frequent disorder in the thoracic region, back-bending mobilization is probably the technique most frequently called for. In order to make full use of the patient's own musculature it is possible to employ not only PIR but also the active contraction of the erector spinae during maximum exhalation.

For the first technique, the patient sits facing a wall, leaning both knees and her crossed arms against the wall, her head against her arms. The therapist stands behind her, putting the heel or just a finger of one hand on the spinous process of the caudal vertebra of the stiffest segment, and tells the patient to relax into extension so as to take up the slack. The patient then is told to press her back gently against the hand at the spinous process and to breathe in slowly. A slight increase in kyphosis follows at this stage. The patient then is told to hold her breath, to straighten up again and to breathe out as much as she can. The therapist uses just his fingers to indicate the point into which the patient should breathe out, without exerting any pressure: maximum lordosis is achieved by the synkinetic contraction of the patient's back muscles. Not only is this technique very comfortable for the patient, but it lends itself readily to self-treatment, as soon as the patient has realized which segments she must breathe into (Figure 6.34). This technique, which is not quite specific, is particularly suited for treatment of stiff thoracic kyphoses.

For specific extension mobilization in the thoracic spine (Figure 6.35), the patient lies on her side with her hands clasped behind her head; the therapist stands in front of her, his shoulder and upper arm leaning against the patient's elbows, his forearm under the arm lying on the table. If the patient can bring her elbows together in front of her neck, the therapist may grasp them with one hand. The forefinger of his other hand is placed on the spinous process of the caudal vertebra of the blocked segment. He now moves the patient into retroflexion (as at examination), so as to take up the slack. At this point he tells the patient to press her elbows

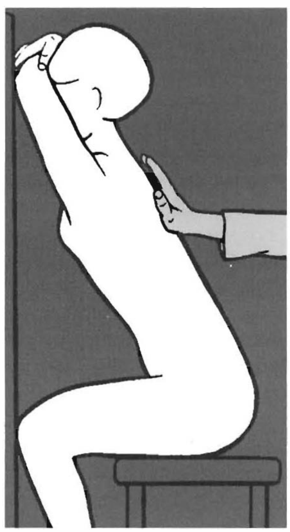


Figure 6.34 Mobilization of the thoracic spine into extension sitting (exhalation)

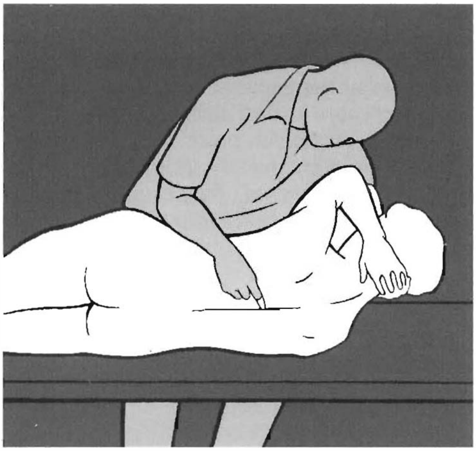


Figure 6.35 Mobilization of the thoracic spine into extension with the patient lying on her side (exhalation)

slightly into anteflexion (the therapist resisting) and to breathe in slowly. As in the preceding technique, a slight increase in kyphosis is unavoidable at this stage. After this the patient is told to relax and achieve maximum exhalation, especially at the point where she feels the therapist's finger. As exhalation reaches the maximum, the thoracic spine moves spontaneously into retroflexion. The procedure is repeated about three times.

Before proceeding to describe thrusting techniques in the thoracic spine I will deal with mobilization into flexion. Flexion restriction is usually found where the kyphotic arch of the thoracic spine is flattened, which is most frequently the case in the upper thoracic region and also at the thoracolumbar junction.

A very convenient way of mobilizing into flexion is provided by the examination technique (see Figure 4.22, p. 105). The therapist thus moves the patient into anteflexion with the summit of the arch at the point where his finger is placed; he tells the patient to look up and breathe in, and then to look down and breathe out. This procedure is repeated three to five times.

For the upper thoracic spine, where restricted anteflexion is relatively frequent, there is another mobilization technique that is particularly effective. It is applied on the side where muscular spasm (TrPs) in the spinal erectors is found. The patient (Figure 6.36) sits on the table and the therapist stands behind her; with one hand he grasps the patient's head, his palm on the occiput on the side of the lesion (i.e. he uses the left hand if the lesion is on the right). He moves the head into anteflexion, side-bending and rotation to the opposite side to take up the slack. With the thumb of the other hand he fixes the transverse process of the lower vertebra of the segment to be treated. He then tells the patient to look towards the side of the lesion and to breathe in slowly, then to look in the other direction and breathe out. This procedure is repeated about three times.

To restore side-bending we use the same technique as for examination (see Figures 4.23, 4.24, p. 106), the only difference being that the thumb is placed on the spinous process of the caudal vertebra to fix it, and not at the interspace for palpation. For mobilization we make use of the alternating muscle facilitation and inhibition described by Gaymans (1980).

The patient is seated on the table, her legs hanging over the side; the therapist stands behind her with one hand round her ribs and the thumb on the side of the spinous process. The other hand is placed on the patient's neck (for the upper thoracic), shoulder (for the mid-thoracic), or under her axilla (for the lower thoracic spine), and bends the patient's trunk sideways so as to take up the slack. If an even segment is being treated, the patient is told to look up and breathe in, the therapist then feeling increased resistance to the side-bending; after a slow deep breath the patient is told to hold her breath and then to relax and breathe out (but not to look down, which would involve bending forward). During this exhalation the therapist must wait until he feels resistance to slacken; the range of side-bending automatically increases. In the odd segments facilitation and inhibition are reversed: the patient is told to breathe out slowly (after breathing in), the therapist feeling resistance to side-bending. When

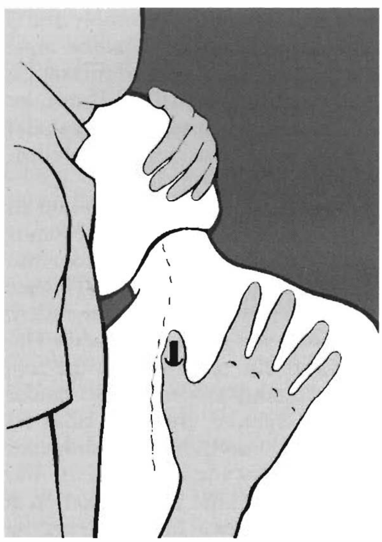


Figure 6.36 One-sided mobilization of the thoracic spine into kyphosis, the patient seated; the transverse process is fixed with the thumb

exhalation is complete she is told to breathe in slowly, and towards the end of inhalation resistance to side-bending slackens and the range of movement increases. This procedure is repeated two or three times.

In very broad shouldered patients, when a therapist with small hands has difficulty in reaching the spinous process with his thumb, we described (Chapter 4, Figure 4.24) a suitable technique: the therapist stands at the side of the patient using her far (raised) elbow for side-bending; the thenar and thumb of his other hand form a fulcrum. During mobilization he has to stabilize the patient's thorax with his own trunk, leaning back and bending his knees.

There are several important technical points to note: the therapist must never force side-bending, but wait for it to increase spontaneously, and only follow the patient's relaxation with his hands. This usually occurs towards the end of breathing in or out. The effect of this phenomenon decreases in a caudal direction, particularly in those segments where resistance increases during exhalation, to be followed by relaxation during inhalation. This is probably because the stability of the thorax as a whole increases during inhalation. The other point to watch, as I pointed out when describing examination technique, is that the hand which stabilizes the thorax from the side must create a strong fulcrum, the palm lying in the axillary line and the therapist's forearm being perpendicular to the lateral chest wall. Even if the patient is broad shouldered and the therapist has small hands, his thumb still reaches the spinous process during side-bending, owing to rotation of the vertebrae. In everyday practice the therapist rarely counts to see whether he is dealing with an odd or an even segment, but simply starts by telling the patient to look up and breathe in; if resistance increases during inhalation and relaxation follows during exhalation, he is satisfied. If not, he tries the reverse procedure, beginning with exhalation. This technique is also very useful for mobilization of the rib, but not to deliver a thrust.

For mobilization in rotation the patient should sit astride the end of the table while the therapist stands behind her at the end, passing one arm under the patient's axilla to grasp the opposite shoulder (Figure 6.37). A slightly kyphotic position is recommended, to make the spinous processes more prominent. The other hand is placed with the palm against the ribs and the thumb on the spinous process of the caudal vertebra of the treated segment, from the side. To achieve good fixation the therapist's arm is abducted so that the forearm follows the direction of the thumb, and the palm stabilizes the ribs. If fixation is adequate little locking is needed. The patient is now told to look toward the side to which mobilization is being carried out taking up the slack in this way. The patient is then told to look to the opposite side, breathing in slowly, to hold her breath (the isometric phase), and then to look the other way again, breathing out slowly. During this relaxation phase the range of mobility increases spontaneously. The procedure is repeated two or three times.

The following technical points are important: fixation should be such that the thumb at the side of the spinous process of the caudal vertebra remains in place. When the patient looks towards the side of mobilization, therefore, her eyes and head should naturally turn as far as the clasped hands behind her head allow, in the direction of rotation; the trunk, however, should only relax, and not actively press. The trunk must always rotate about its own axis.

The same technique can also be used to deliver a thrust, after the slack has been taken up, i.e. at the end of the relaxation phase, if it is thought advisable. In this case the therapist may increase kyphosis and slightly side-bend the trunk in the direction opposite to that of rotation, to obtain better locking. If the fixation is good and the patient relaxed, this is not absolutely necessary.

This technique is used mainly in the low thoracic spine and the thoracolumbar region, but it can also be applied to the lumbar spine.

There is another very effective and less specific technique for mobilization as well as to deliver a thrust for manipulation of the thoracic spine into rotation (Figure 6.38); the therapist's hand on the patient's shoulder rotating her, and the thumb or the pisiform of the other hand on the transverse process, acting in the same direction. Careful locking is essential. The patient is seated as for the preceding technique and the therapist grasps the far shoulder, with his arm across the patient's chest, from behind.

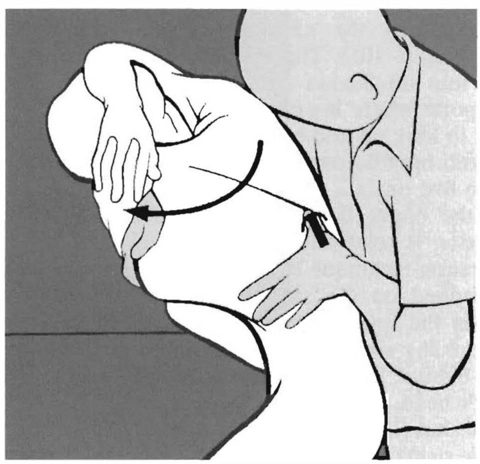
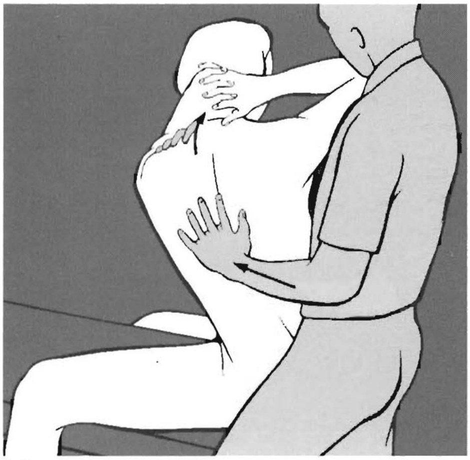
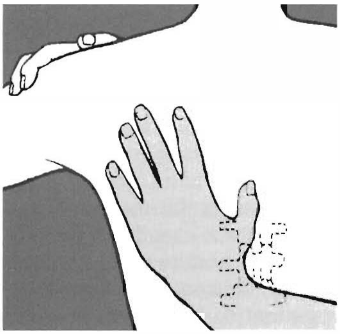


Figure 6.37 Rotation mobilization (manipulation) in slight kyphosis, with the lower vertebra of the tested segment fixed by the therapist's hand and thumb



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.38 (*a*) Rotation manipulation of the thoracic spine, the patient seated with her trunk leaning slightly backwards, rotated and bent to the same side, both the therapist's hands acting in that direction. With the patient sitting erect, the same rotation technique can be used to manipulate a rib, contact being made at the angle of the rib instead of at the transverse process. (*b*) Detail of (*a*)

He now obtains locking by side-bending and rotation to the same side, so that the arch so formed culminates at the site of the segment to be treated. Rotation of the trunk must be carried out about the vertical axis of the trunk, the head remaining fixed. This is achieved by the therapist bending the patient sideways, using his elbow on the patient's chest and his hand on the shoulder; he must stand behind the patient with his legs well apart, so that he himself can rotate around the patient. After taking up the slack he has two options: for mobilization he tells the patient to look in the opposite direction and slowly to breathe in, hold her breath and then to look in the direction of mobilization as far as she can and breathe out. This is repeated two or three times. Or he delivers a thrust by further increasing rotation at the patient's shoulder, simultaneously giving a push to the transverse process in the same direction.

The following technical points are important: the axis of rotation is the patient's trunk, and her head must not deviate from side to side. Only a little side-bending is needed and is performed by means of the hand across the patient's chest, not by the therapist bending his own trunk sideways. The thrust is delivered by the therapist rotating his own body from the legs and pelvis, so that both his hands act exactly at the same moment. As there is no fixation from below, only very little force must be used. Instead of his thumb, the therapist may use his thenar or pisiform. Mobilization alone is, however, usually sufficient, as muscular spasm and hence also muscular relaxation are decisive at the thoracolumbar junction.

A technically simple but not very specific technique for mobilizing the thoracolumbar junction has been suggested by F. Gaymans (unpublished observations), making use of the rhythmical pull of the psoas (Figure 6.39). The patient lies on her side, with the upper hip bent at right angles. The therapist stands at the side of the table so as to resist further flexion of the patient's knee with his own thigh. He now tells the patient to look as far to the opposite side as she can, producing rotation of the head and trunk; at the same time the patient pushes her bent knee against the therapist's thigh. Alternatively, the therapist may tell the patient to resist with her knee while he himself rhythmically pushes it into extension. Mobilization is obtained by the trunk rotation and the rhythmical pull of the psoas muscle at the upper transverse processes of the thoracolumbar junction in an opposite direction. The technique should be performed at about two pushes per second. This technique is ideal for self-treatment, the patient resisting rhythmical knee flexion with her outstretched arm.

Thrust techniques

First a very gentle yet very effective traction technique: the therapist stands behind the seated patient with a cushion between his chest and the patient's back, so that the top edge of the cushion fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra of the segment to be treated. He now threads one arm through the patient's axilla and with the forearm and palm stabilizes the patient's head and neck on one side. The other hand reaches across the patient's chest to grasp her far hand. He now pulls that hand through the other axilla, at the level of the upper edge of the cushion. By pulling in a dorsal direction on the hand in the axilla and on his own arm in the patient's axilla, the slack is taken up; the thrust follows as the therapist straightens his chest, thus pushing the cushion forward and at the same time slightly lifting the patient with his chest and arms (Figure 6.40).

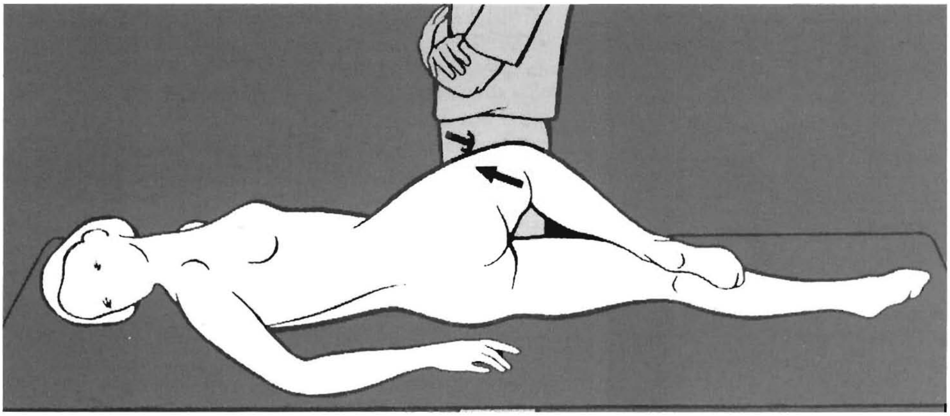


Figure 6.39 Rotation mobilization of the thoracolumbar junction with the patient on her side, looking to the opposite side during rhythmical isometric contraction of the right iliopsoas

The following technique is very widely used. The patient is supine, her hands clasped behind her neck and both elbows touching in front of the chin (Figures 6.41 and 6.42). The therapist stands by the side of the table and grasps both elbows with the hand nearer to the patient's head, turning the patient towards him. He bends the middle finger of the other hand so that the fingertip touches the palm, and applies the middle phalanx of the bent finger to the transverse process of the caudal vertebra of the blocked segment on the near side, and the thenar eminence to the transverse process of the far side, the spinous process lying in the groove between the bent middle finger and the thenar eminence. After this the therapist turns the patient on to her back so that she is lying on the hand making contact at the transverse processes; with the hand grasping the elbows the therapist now brings the thoracic spine into kyphosis, which culminates exactly at the site of the contact hand. He has now two alternatives: (1) he may further increase flexion so as to take up the slack, telling the patient to breathe in and out (this can be repeated as a preparatory mobilization), and deliver the thrust into flexion during exhalation; or (2) he may slightly bend the thorax back (or let it fall back) over the fulcrum formed by the hand under the patient's back (but never so far as to let

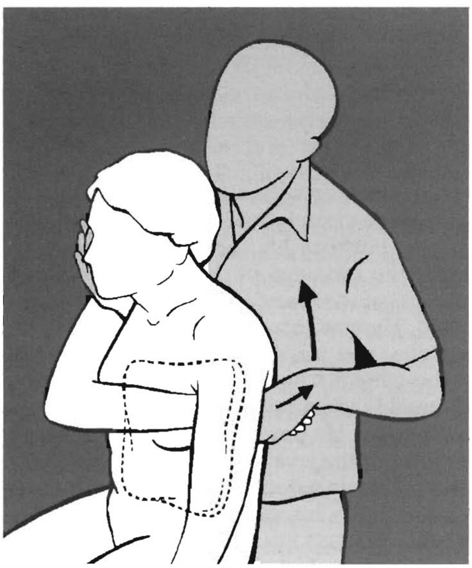


Figure 6.40 Traction thrust technique applied to the thoracic spine, using a cushion, the patient seated

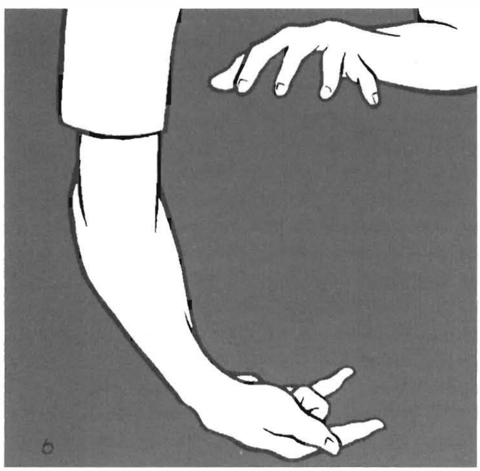


Figure 6.41 Position of the therapist's hands during manipulation of the thoracic spine with the patient supine

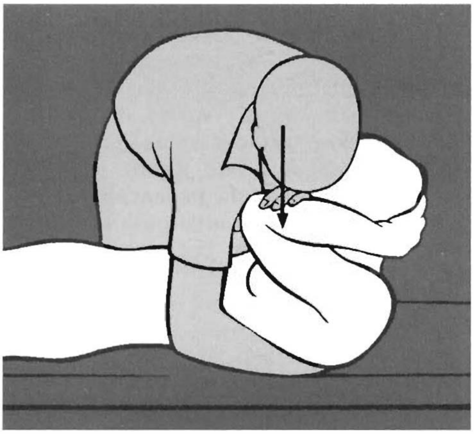


Figure 6.42 Manipulation of the thoracic spine with the patient supine

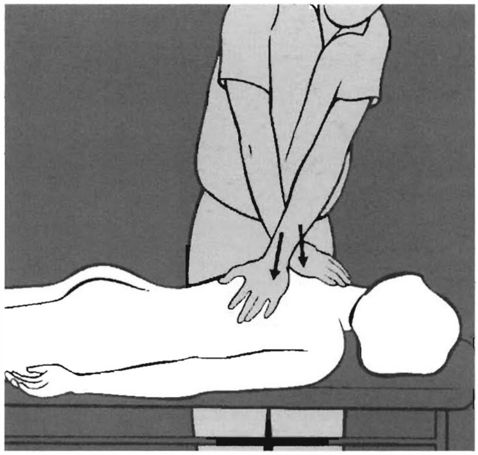


Figure 6.43 Manipulation with crossed hands making contact on the opposite transverse processes of two adjacent vertebrae, with the patient prone

the shoulder-blades touch the table!) in order to take up the slack, asking the patient to breathe in and out slowly (this may be repeated) and then deliver the thrust in the same direction, during exhalation.

It may be difficult for the patient to bring her elbows together, in which case instead of clasping her hands she should hold them with the fingertips just touching. Another possible difficulty is that some therapists begin to feel pain in the middle finger; they should use the cushion technique (see Figure 6.40), or try a piece of India rubber in the crook of the middle finger.

Because of their simplicity and popularity, direct thrust techniques applied to the thoracic spine, with the patient prone, must be described. No sophisticated locking technique is involved, and there is no question of distinguishing flexion and extension. The thrust must be directed at the caudal vertebra in the blocked segment, producing (like all posteroanterior thrusts) gapping or distraction of the intervertebral apophyseal joints, which are almost in the coronal plane in the thoracic spine. The springing technique described for examination, with the patient supine (see Figure 4.15, p. 103), can be used after taking up the slack.

Another technique can be used both for mobilization and for a high-velocity thrust, producing some rotation as well. The patient lies prone, and the therapist by the side of the table crosses his hands, placing the pisiform of one hand on the transverse process of one vertebra and that of the other hand on the transverse process of the adjacent vertebra (Figure 6.43). He takes up the slack by slight direct pressure and while the patient breathes out he may deliver a thrust to produce gapping of the articulation on the side of the hand moving the caudal vertebra of the blocked segment, in this way restoring rotation to that side. Instead of delivering a high-velocity thrust, he may simply gently increase his pressure, springing the joint while the patient breathes out. This type of mobilization can be carried out as a non-specific treatment, in the rhythm of respiration, in one segment after the other, rather like massage.

All the techniques described for the thoracic spine are applicable from T3 down; the cervicothoracic junction requires techniques that are described in the section on the cervical spine. Rotation techniques are the methods of choice in the thoracolumbar region.

The ribs

The technique I myself use most frequently, particularly for the upper ribs, is a modification of the diagnostic technique of Kubis through the shoulder-blade (see Figure 4.26, p. 107). It is also used by Mitchell *et al.* (1979) with the patient supine. As presented here, it closely resembles the mobilization technique of the thoracic spine into extension (Figure 6.44). The patient lies on her side, the upper arm raised over her head, with the elbow bent. The therapist standing at the side of the table puts one palm against the patient's elbow and the fingers of the other hand on the rib to be treated. By pushing the elbow back, using the hand fixing the rib as a fulcrum, he takes up the slack into retroflexion. At this point the patient is told to press against the therapist's hand slightly, slowly breathing in. She is then told to 'let go' and breathe out for as long as possible, directing her breath to the rib in question. When maximum exhalation is reached, retroflexion

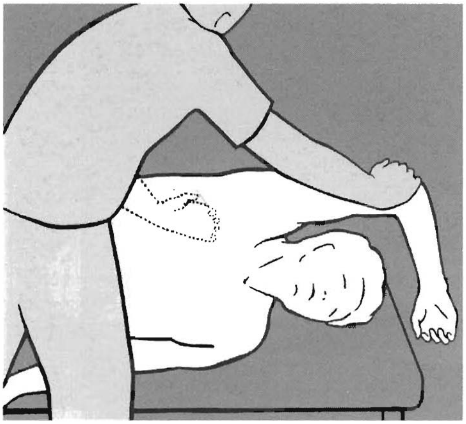


Figure 6.44 Rib mobilization into dorsal flexion during exhalation, the patient on her side

increases spontaneously, the therapist only monitoring the release. This procedure is repeated about three times.

Again, as in diagnosis, the shoulder-blade is no obstacle to the fixation of the rib during retroflexion. The first rib, however, can be neither treated nor diagnosed in this way, while the second rib is the most difficult. The ribs to which this technique is most frequently applied are the third, fourth and fifth. It is technically important to raise the upper arm vertically to obtain a pure movement of retroflexion as, if this is not the case, one easily obtains rotation, which is highly undesirable. Maximum elevation of the shoulder is therefore necessary; if there is pain in the shoulder this may prove to be an obstacle, and therefore I frequently begin with treatment of the shoulder itself (a necessity in any case if there is a shoulder lesion) before going on to treat the ribs.

Some gentle mobilization may be obtained while examining the 'overtake phenomenon' (see p. 107) (which is frequently found at the second to fifth ribs). The therapist has both thumbs on the relevant rib on either side, about 5 cm lateral to the sternum, resisting rib movement from above, with very little force, during inhalation; he exerts slight pressure from above during exhalation (mainly on the side that is 'overtaken', i.e. restricted). As a rule the overtake phenomena disappear immediately.

The technique described for mobilization of the shoulder-blade (see Figure 6.14, p. 168) can also be used for the ribs. The therapist lifts the shoulder with the hand that has grasped it from below, while the other hand on the shoulder-blade exerts some pressure on the scapula from above, using the medial edge of the scapula as a fulcrum. By moving the scapula up and down, increasing pressure to the ribs during exhalation, mobilization can be achieved. If correctly applied, patients like this technique.

If we find, on comparing the two sides, that one rib is restricted during exhalation, the following technique (Greenman, 1979) is useful: the patient lies supine, while the therapist standing at the side of the table places his thumb on one of the upper ribs from above, close to the sternum. The patient is told to breathe in and out; during maximum exhalation the therapist lifts the patient's trunk into slight anteflexion and gives a little push on the rib from above, with his thumb. For treatment of a lower rib the therapist's thumb must lie more laterally on the arch of the rib, and during exhalation the patient's trunk is not only lifted into anteflexion but is also bent to the side of the rib being treated.

If inhalation is restricted, Greenman (1979) makes use of muscle pull. In the region of the two upper ribs he uses the pull of the scalenes, for the middle ribs the pectoralis and for the lower ribs the serratus lateralis. The patient is supine and muscle pull is obtained by resisted side-bending of the patient's head (scalenes), by resisted adduction of the arm (pectoralis) and by raising the arm against resistance (serratus). The therapist's other arm reaches across the patient's neck or chest with the fingers exerting a mobilizing force against the lateral arch of the blocked rib from below, or fixing the adjacent lower rib from above during inhalation. For this the therapist bends the patient's neck or further arm towards himself, producing side-bending of the neck and thorax towards himself. If several ribs are restricted it is important to treat the 'key' rib; this is the uppermost of the group if inhalation is restricted, and the lowest if exhalation is affected.

There are three ways of applying a high-velocity thrust. In the first, the patient is supine with her arms crossed over her chest and hands on her shoulders, the arm on the side of the rib to be treated lying uppermost. The therapist stands at the opposite side of the table and grasps the far shoulder or upper arm so as to turn the patient's shoulder towards himself. He now applies the thenar eminence to the angle of the blocked rib (Figure 6.45). To do this effectively he must have his thumb in opposition, for only then is the thenar eminence contracted and firm (Figure 6.46). With his free hand the therapist now grasps the upper arm lying beneath the one he used to turn the patient towards himself and turns her away on to the thenar eminence of the contact hand, so that the angle of the rib forms the most prominent point of the back. Having stabilized the patient in this position, the slack is taken up by the patient's own weight, and she is told to breathe in and out. During exhalation the thrust is delivered through the upper arm, vertically towards the therapist's thenar eminence lying beneath (Figure 6.47).

The following technical details are important: when he turns the patient away from himself the therapist must turn her over the mid-line, i.e. over the spinal column, and at the same time keep the

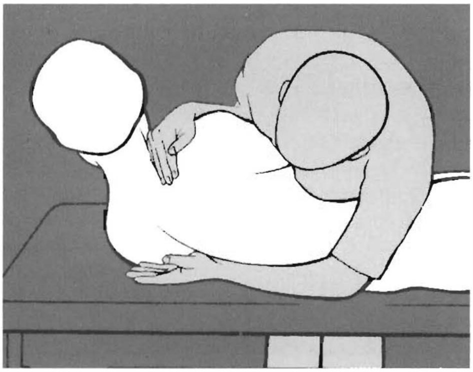


Figure 6.45 Manipulation of the ribs with the patient supine, preparatory phase: the therapist turns the patient towards himself

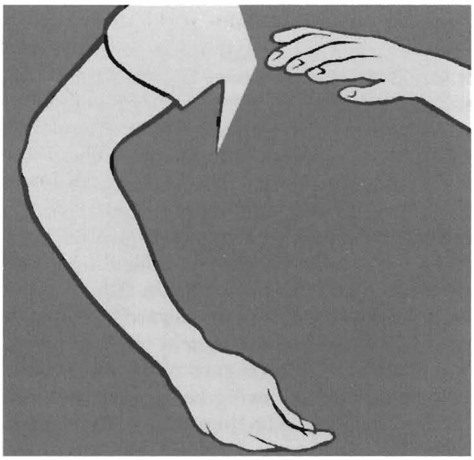


Figure 6.46 Position of the therapist's hands during manipulation of a rib with the patient supine (full opposition of the thumb!)

upper thoracic spine in flexion. At that point the contact hand must be in maximum supination so as not to make contact between the rib and the bony base of the first phalanx of the thumb, instead of the muscular thenar eminence.

A similar but harder thrusting technique is performed with the patient prone, her head turned to the side of the rib to be treated (Figure 6.48). If this is an upper rib, the patient's arm hangs down over the edge of the table in order to produce abduction of the shoulder-blade; otherwise it may lie parallel to the patient's trunk. The therapist stands at the side of the rib to be treated and applies the pisiform of one hand to the angle of the rib. He may now reinforce this hand by grasping it just above the wrist with his other hand. The slack is then taken up by pressure of both arms and the thrust is delivered during exhalation. It comes from the

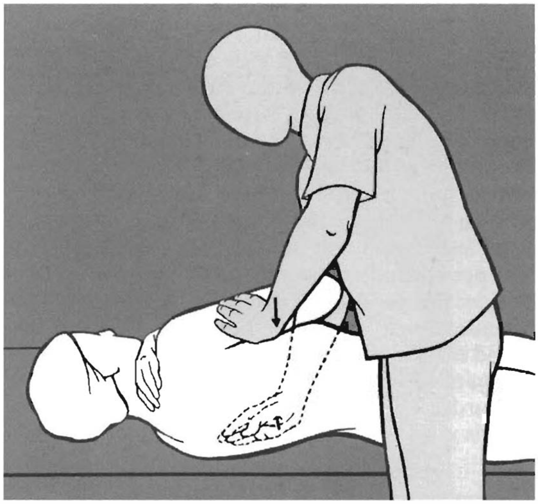


Figure 6.47 Delivering the thrust through the patient's upper arm vertically towards the therapist's thenar (see Figure 6.46) in contact with the angle of the rib

therapist's trunk and shoulders, vertically from above.

For the lower ribs a different thrust is frequently more effective, using a technique closely similar to manipulation in rotation restriction of the thoracic spine (see Figure 6.38). For this the patient sits astride the end of the table, while the therapist stands behind her, his feet well apart, and passes his arm under the axilla of the opposite side, to grasp the shoulder on the side of the rib to be treated. The thumb of the other hand is on the angle of the rib, with the forefinger encircling it. By rotating the patient round her body axis the slack is taken up and the thrust follows by the therapist simultaneously increasing rotation at the shoulder while the

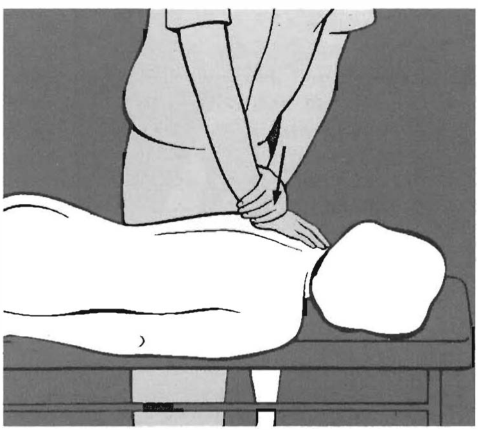


Figure 6.48 Thrust manipulation at the angle of a rib, with the patient prone

contact hand on the rib delivers a push or a pull in the same direction.

Treatment of the first rib: as in diagnosis, the treatment of this rib differs from that of all the others. For mobilization I use a technique that is as simple as it is effective: the therapist stands behind the patient seated on the table, and stabilizes the neck or shoulder from the side. He places his other hand on the side of the patient's head, on the side of the lesion, and tells her to resist a rhythmic push (two per second) delivered softly and gently from the side; this produces a rhythmic contraction of the scalenus which mobilizes both the first and the second rib. This is a technique ideally suited for self-treatment (Figure 6.49).

In order to deliver a thrust, the springing technique is most effective. It is also useful for diagnosis and mobilization. The therapist stands behind the seated patient, supporting her back against his own chest while one hand supports the head; the first phalanx of his other forefinger is placed on the first rib from above; with slight pressure downwards he takes up the slack. Quick repetitive springing (shaking) can now be applied, or a thrust delivered in the same direction during exhalation (Fiure 6.50).

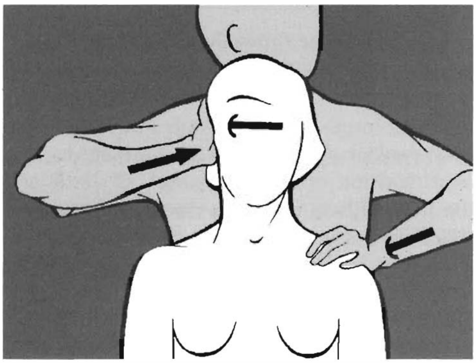


Figure 6.49 Repetitive mobilization of the first and second ribs by isometric rhythmic contraction of the scalenus

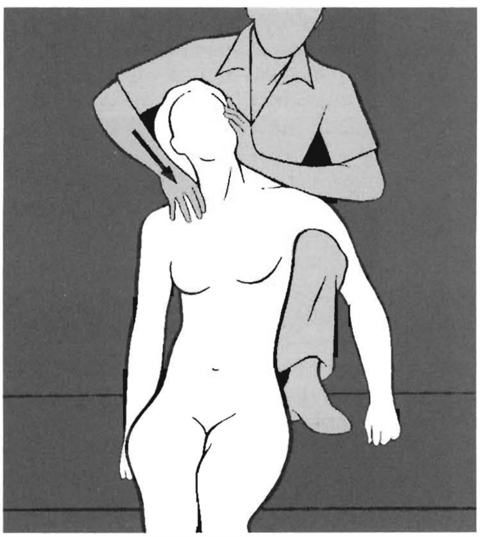


Figure 6.50 Springing and thrusting manipulation of the first rib

The cervical spine

Traction

Manual traction can be performed with the patient supine or seated; in the former case the head must project over the edge of the table. As the method of choice is automatic isometric traction, requiring very little force, the therapist simply cradles the head with both hands, and tells the patient to look up towards her brow while breathing in; when he sees the sternomastoids and scaleni automatically contract, and at the same time feels resistance against traction, he tells the patient to hold her breath, and then to look down towards her chin while breathing out and relaxing. During this relaxation the therapist feels the patient's neck lengthening (Figure 6.51*a*).

So as to enhance relaxation and to give comfort, the therapist may prop the patient's head up above his thighs and move both his hands on either side of her neck from the shoulders up toward the occiput carrying out massage and traction at the same time.

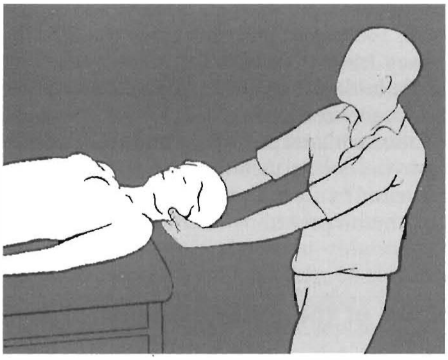
If the patient is seated (Figure 6.51*b*), the therapist stands behind her, drawing her against his chest to facilitate relaxation. He then takes her head in both hands, his palms on her cheeks, thumbs at the mastoid and elbows on her shoulders, without exerting pressure. He gives the same order as before; he does not see the sternomastoids contract, but feels increased resistance even more strongly than in the former position, and feels the neck lengthening during relaxation.

As it employs PIR, manual traction is both gentler and more effective than mechanical traction. The latter may be applied with the patient supine on a table tilted downward towards the feet, or sitting with a sling pulling upwards. It is most important that the pull should be exerted on the occiput and not on the chin.

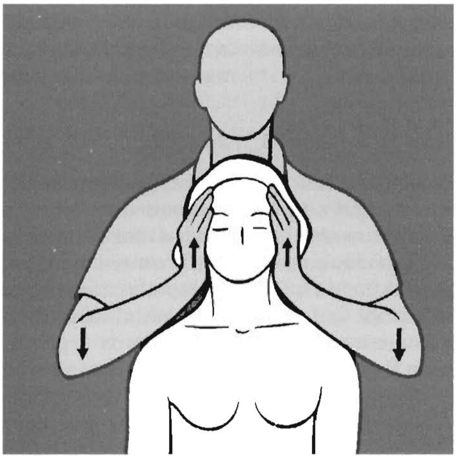
Mobilization

Side-bending

This can be carried out with the patient seated or supine. The phenomenon of alternating fixation and relaxation during breathing in and out can be effectively used for the cervical spine. The therapist stands behind the patient, using the radial aspect of



(a)



(b)

Figure 6.51 (*a*) Traction with the patient supine: very gentle (isometric) traction with both hands cradling the patient's occiput. (*b*) Traction of the cervical spine with the patient seated: the therapist rests his arms on the patient's shoulders

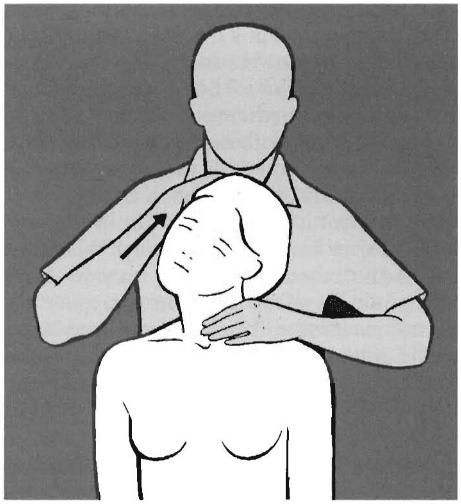


Figure 6.52 Side-bending mobilization with the patient seated

one hand and a forefinger to fix the transverse process of the lower vertebra of the segment being treated, while his other hand on the other side of the patient's head bends her head and neck so as to take up the slack into side-bending (Figure 6.52). In the even segments (C0, C2, C4), resistance increases during inhalation and we can therefore achieve greater facilitation by telling the patient first to look up and then to breathe in slowly. After this she is told to look down and breathe out slowly, unless we prefer to keep the neck in slight retroflexion (in the lower cervical spine, if the patient is seated), in which case it is better to tell her to 'let go' or 'relax' and then to breathe out.

In the odd segments (C1, C3, C5), the patient is only told to breathe out slowly (after taking a short breath), and then to breathe in slowly and deeply.

A technique which is identical with that described for examination (see Figure 4.30, p. 110) can also be used. The therapist takes up the slack in the segment where he has diagnosed restriction, and feels increasing resistance as the patient looks towards her brow and breathes in (in the even segments) or breathes out (in the odd segments). After this he waits until he feels resistance disappear during exhalation and looking towards the chin or inhalation respectively, and encourages the patient to relax into side-bending. If he makes the crucial mistake of forcing side-bending, the effects of spontaneous relaxation will be lost. This technique is applicable for segments C1–C6. The manoeuvre is usually repeated once or twice.

Side-bending supine as described in Chapter 4 (Figure 4.30*b*) starting with exhalation is the technique of choice for mobilization of the atlas/axis; more than one repetition is only exceptionally required.

The techniques for side-bending mobilization of the cervicothoracic junction are the same as for diagnosis (see Figure 4.31). Throughout the cervicothoracic junction inhalation increases resistance to side-bending while exhalation has a mobilizing effect. The patient is therefore told first to look up and then to breathe in slowly, and after inhalation to relax and breathe out (if she was told to look down, she would bend her head forward and thus 'unlock' the cervical spine and lock the cervicothoracic junction). Care must be taken to hold the patient's head in the side-bending position, using the fingers, maintaining retroflexion and rotation to the opposite side while the upper vertebra is fixed by the therapist with the thenar eminence of the same hand. The thumb of the other hand meanwhile fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra of the segment being treated.

It is technically easier (though less comfortable for the therapist) to carry out this mobilization with the patient lying on her side. He holds the patient as during diagnosis (see Figure 4.34, p. 113). Standing in front of the patient, the therapist cradles the head and neck in his forearm, with his elbow on the table or slightly above it. He now tells the patient to look up to her forehead, and to breathe in slowly. After inhalation the patient is told to hold her breath and then to relax and to breathe out slowly. When the therapist feels the relaxation he has only to move his elbow slightly forward, following the patient's relaxation, and his hand will automatically move the patient's head into lateral flexion, retroflexion and rotation in the direction opposite to the side-bending.

With both these techniques (the patient lying on her side, or seated), it is possible to deliver a thrust after taking up the slack, and this also after mobilization. If the patient is seated the thrust is delivered by the thumb against the spinous process, the hand holding the head and neck providing the fixation. If the patient is lying on her side, it is the hand cradling the head and neck that delivers the thrust in the same direction as mobilization, while the thumb on the spinous process provides the fixation.

Rotation

This is carried out with the patient seated. Again the technique is basically that of examination (see Figure 4.32*a*, p. 112). While the therapist fixes the arch of the lower vertebra of the treated segment between thumb and forefinger, he rotates the head in the direction of mobilization until the slack is taken up. He then tells the patient to look up and to breathe in slowly, to hold her breath and then to look down and to breathe out, obtaining automatic mobilization in the restricted direction, while he maintains fixation of the lower vertebra. This is repeated two or three times. (Looking up and breathing in slightly increases resistance against rotation while looking down and exhalation brings about relaxation.)

If this very gentle technique is not sufficiently effective, it is possible to tell the patient after the slack has been taken up in rotation, to look in the opposite direction to mobilization and to breathe in, then to hold her breath, and to look in the direction of mobilization and to breathe out. This method seems very logical, but is frequently too forceful.

For rotation in the cervicothoracic junction the patient is seated, while the therapist stands behind her and fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra of the segment to be treated, placing his thumb on the side from which the head and neck are rotated. He holds the patient's head with his arm, from above, so that his elbow is in front of her forehead and his little finger at the arch of the upper vertebra of that segment. He rotates the head to take up the slack, then tells the patient to look in the direction away from rotation and to breathe in and hold her breath. She then looks in the direction of mobilization and breathes out. This manoeuvre is repeated from each new position gained (see Figure 4.32*d*). With the same technique it is possible to deliver a thrust by increasing head rotation and traction, the thumb providing fixation at the spinous process.

Mobilization of the occiput against the atlas

This is performed by exactly the same techniques as used in diagnosis. In this segment the facilitating effect of inhalation and the inhibitory effect of exhalation on muscle activity is the greatest, and this is true for all directions.

Anteflexion (see Figure 4.37, p. 114)

Using the same technique, the therapist bends the head forward to take up the slack; he then tells the patient to look towards her forehead and breathe in. The therapist resists the patient's automatic head retroflexion. After inhalation the patient is told to look downwards and to breathe out slowly; head anteflexion automatically follows. This is repeated two or three times.

Retroflexion (see Figure 4.36, p. 114)

After taking up the slack with the head rotated and in retroflexion, the therapist asks the patient to do no more than to breathe in slowly. He will sense increased resistance to retroflexion, then he tells the patient to breathe out slowly and let the head fall back. (In this case, looking up during the first phase would interfere with increased resistance to retroflexion, while looking down during the relaxation phase would interfere with retroflexion.) For relaxation into retroflexion it is wiser not to rotate the patient's head more than 45 degrees: the patient relaxes better and we avoid the odious combination of retroflexion with maximum rotation of the cervical spine.

Side-bending (see Figure 4.35, p. 114)

After taking up the slack with the patient's head rotated and side-bent, the therapist tells her to look towards her brow and to breathe in slowly; he will feel increased resistance to side-bending. After holding her breath the patient is told to look towards her chin and breathe out; towards the end of exhalation the patient spontaneously relaxes into lateral flexion. (See also gravity PIR of the sternomastoid muscle, Figure 6.96.)

Rotation

With the patient seated, the therapist brings the head into maximum rotation, with the minimum of force, taking up the slack and stabilizing the head, in axial rotation, against his chest. He now tells the patient to look up and to breathe in slowly, while he feels increased resistance to rotation. The patient is then told to look downwards and breathe out; during or towards the end of exhalation, rotation of the head increases almost spontaneously. In this case looking up and down is better than looking first to one and then to the other side, because less force is produced.

After atlas mobilization, the therapist should make sure that the TrPs of the short extensors crossing the posterior arch of the atlas and at the upper end of the sternomastoid have disappeared; this is the most important criterion of successful treatment of this segment.

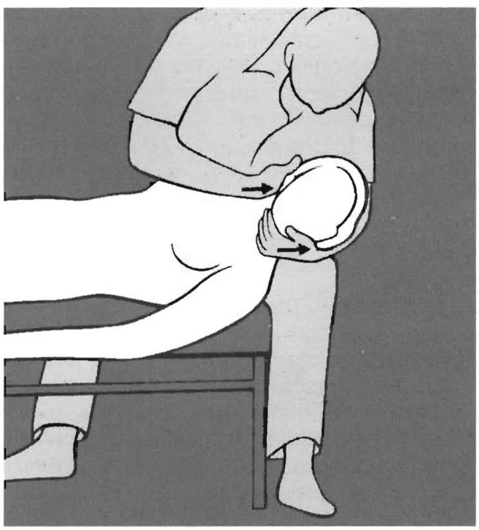
Thrust techniques

With few exceptions, cases of serious complications after manipulation occurred after high-velocity thrusts had been used in the cervical region. Further scrutiny showed that manipulation had been applied with force, without first taking up the slack. This is an extremely faulty technique, and to make matters worse a combination of maximum rotation with retroflexion was employed. The logical consequence is that, of the large number of techniques to choose from, we avoid those that produce much rotation and particularly rotation in retroflexion. The most important and frequently used techniques are those in which the thrust is delivered in the direction of traction, in a cranial direction; with the apophyseal joints tilted at about 45 degrees from the horizontal plane in the mid- and lower cervical spine, and almost horizontal at C0, C1 and C2, traction produces gapping of these joints, in addition to distraction of the intervertebral discs.

Traction high-velocity thrust applied to the cranial vertebra of the blocked segment, with the patient supine

The patient's head is over the edge of the table, with the therapist facing and cradling it from above with the occiput on his forearm and the fingers on the patient's chin. With the radial surface of the first phalanx of the forefinger of the other hand he makes contact with the transverse process of the upper vertebra of the treated segment, side-bending the cervical spine only so far as not to slip over the transverse process (if the upper vertebra is the atlas, very little side-bending is needed because the transverse processes of the atlas are longer and naturally jut beyond the others. The lower the transverse process, the further we bend the cervical spine). The patient's head can be very slightly rotated away from the therapist, but care must be taken not to rotate so far that the segments we want to treat are locked. In the position described (Figure 6.53*a*), the therapist takes up the slack by giving a slight pull with both hands in a cranial direction, after which the thrust is delivered either (1) with both hands giving a pull (push) in the same direction, or (2) delivering the thrust into traction with a slight lateral flexion towards the therapist. In both cases the two hands must operate as a single unit. The thrust must therefore come from the therapist's trunk, over the shoulders to the hands, whether pure traction is applied or traction with side-bending. This technique can be used for C1–C5.

(*a*)



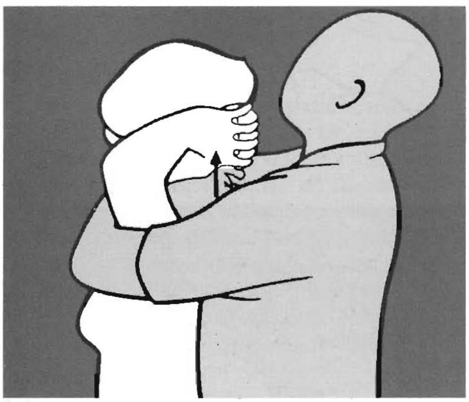
(*b*)

Figure 6.53 Traction thrusting manipulation of the cervical spine with the patient supine: (*a*) contact is made at the transverse process of the upper vertebra of the segment treated, or (*b*) at the mastoid process for C0/1, with the head rotated

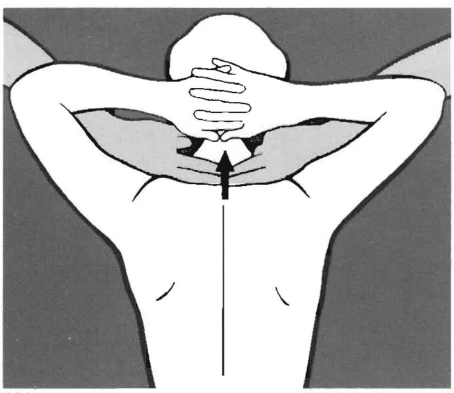
For the occipitoatlantal segment the therapist rotates the head so as to lock the atlas/axis at about 45 degrees, and makes contact at the mastoid process. If he wants to apply lateral flexion at the same time, he must bear in mind the rotation of the head, i.e. the side-bending must be at right angles to the sagittal plane of the (rotated) head (Figure 6.53*b*).

Traction low-velocity thrust applied to the cranial vertebra of the blocked segment, with the patient seated (Figure 6.54)

The patient sits on the table with her hands clasped behind her head and the elbows far apart. The therapist stands behind the patient and threads his forearm through the triangle formed by the patient's upper arm and forearm, first on one and then on the other side. He makes contact with both forefingers and middle fingers crossed on the spinous process of the upper vertebra of the segment to be treated. The patient is now told to relax and let her head fall forward. The thrust is delivered by the fingers increasing their pressure in a forward and upward direction. This technique is most easily applied to the segments C4–C7. Below this the therapist's fingers become ineffective; they merely produce a slight pull of the cervical spine in an upward direction, while the thrust is given by the operator's breastbone against the spinous process of T1 or T2. Both these traction techniques are safe and if correctly applied are very gentle. However, they are not absolutely specific, because the thrust is given to the upper vertebra of the blocked segment, while the lower vertebra is not fixed. Traction may therefore affect some of the more caudal segments; this need not, however, be considered harmful.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.54 (*a*) Traction manipulation of the cervicothoracic junction; (*b*) application of the fingers

Rotation thrust with the patient seated (Figure 6.55)

The patient sits on a low stool; the therapist stands behind her, passing one hand and forearm in front of the patient's face (brow) so that the elbow is in front of the forehead and the hand below the occiput, the little finger clasped round the arch of the upper vertebra of the blocked segment and the occiput comfortable against the therapist's chest. The neck is thus held in a kyphotic position. With the thumb of the other hand, the therapist fixes the spinous process of the lower vertebra of the segment on the side opposite to the direction in which the head is rotated, so as to keep it in neutral position. The arm round the patient's head now rotates it and the upper vertebra of the blocked segment, so as to take up the slack, the thumb of the other hand holding the spinous process of the lower vertebra in mid-position. The thrust is then delivered with the

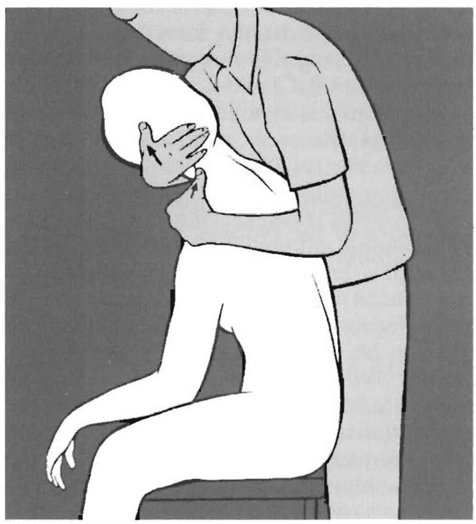


Figure 6.55 Rotation thrusting manipulation of the cervical spine with the patient seated, under traction, in kyphosis with the therapists's thumb flexing the lower vertebra of the treated segment at the spinous process

hand round the patient's head, mainly into traction in a cranial direction, slightly increasing rotation at the same time.

This technique is highly specific, as the lower vertebra is fixed; if this fixation is correct, rotation is only moderate and there is always kyphosis and traction during the thrust. This means that the technique is quite safe.

Self-mobilization

Self-treatment – self-mobilization – constitutes a link between manipulative therapy and remedial exercise. As the modern mobilization techniques making use of muscular facilitation and inhibition are already based on the active cooperation of the patient, it is logical that the trend should be to teach the patient increasingly how to deal with her problems herself.

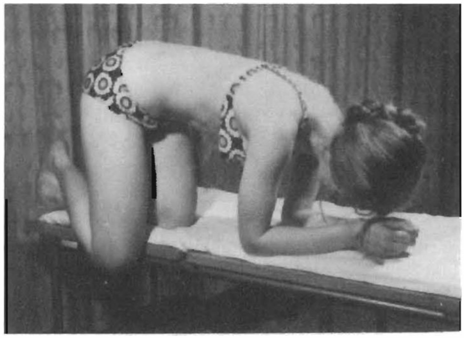
To use one's own muscles to move one's spine, even with considerable force, is nothing new. Indeed, the usual movements performed in physical training – somewhat forceful, fast and non-specific – do more harm than good. Movement restriction goes hand in hand with muscle spasm protecting the blocked segment. Forceful movement suddenly applied to that segment is likely only to increase spasm, with the result that the normal and hypermobile segments will be mobilized, while the affected segments will be fixed even more firmly by muscle spasm.

Self-mobilization must therefore be as gentle and slow as the mobilization techniques we use, moving the segment after the slack has been taken up; it must also be as specific as possible. Precise clinical diagnosis and indication are mandatory.

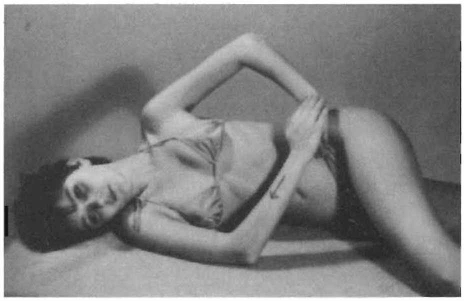
Self-mobilization of the sacroiliac joint
(Sachse and Schildt, 1989; Figure 6.56*a*)

The patient is kneeling on the table, close to the edge, her trunk supported on her elbows. One knee hangs over the edge of the table, with the instep supported just above the heel of the other foot. In this position the patient must relax so that the pelvis slopes obliquely downwards from the ilium, which is supported by the knee on the table. In this way the slack is taken up at the sacroiliac joint of the supported side. The moment the patient senses tension in the region of her sacroiliac joint, she makes a very small downward springing movement with the knee over the edge of the table, moving in a vertical direction and thus mobilizing the sacroiliac joint on the supported side.

Another very effective technique is derived from mobilization lying on the side (see Figure 4.10, p.98). Lying on her side with her lower leg extended, the patient stabilizes her pelvis with the knee of the upper flexed leg on the table. She now puts the wrist of her upper hand on her upper spina iliaca anterior



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.56 (*a*) Self-mobilization of the left sacroiliac joint (after Sachse); (*b*) self-mobilization of the sacroiliac joint with the patient lying on her side

superior, so as to produce rhythmical springing pressure in a ventrocranial direction, and reinforces it with the other forearm and hand, in the direction of mobilization; this produces gapping of the sacroiliac joint (Figure 6.56*b*). In itself, this is an easy manoeuvre, the difficulty lying in the need to teach the patient to exert pressure in the correct direction, and not to use force.

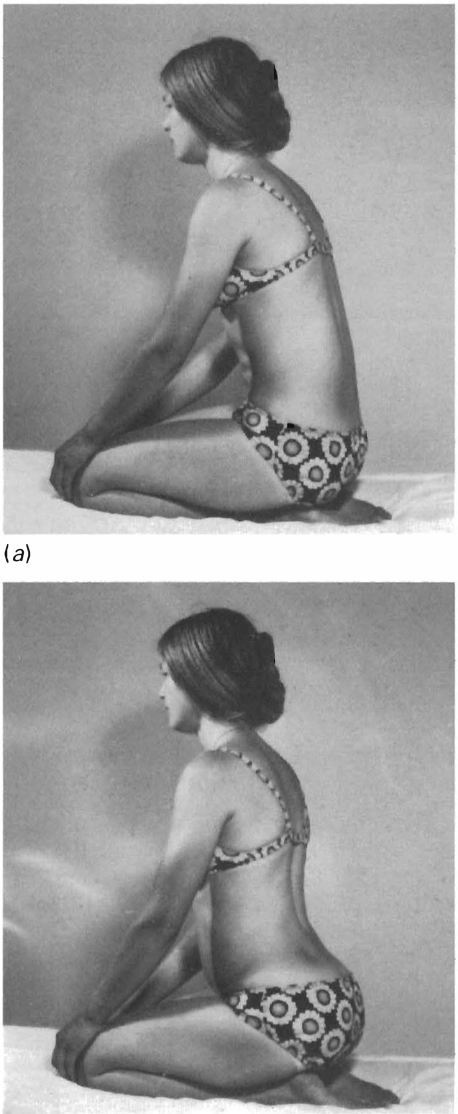
Self-mobilization of the (lower) lumbar spine, ante- and retroflexion (Figure 6.57)

The patient sits on her heels, supporting herself with outstretched arms resting on her knees. By contraction of the gluteal muscles (glutei maximi) she raises her pelvis, producing kyphosis of the lumbar spine; after relaxation the pelvis falls forward, producing lordosis at the lumbosacral junction. This exercise is important for training in the correct position of the pelvis while standing.

Self-mobilization of the lumbar spine, rotation (Figure 6.58)

The patient lies on her side near the edge of the table. The lower leg is stretched out, the upper leg bent at the knee so that the toes are hooked behind the lower leg. If self-mobilization is directed to the low lumbar spine, the toes rest below the knee of the supporting leg; if the upper lumbar spine, or up to the thoracolumbar junction is to be treated, the upper leg is supported above the knee and then the lower leg should be slightly flexed at the knee. With the hand that lies uppermost the patient holds the far edge of the table for stabilization, while the other (lower) hand lies on the (upper) flexed knee. The patient should turn her head to the side opposite to that of rotation; she may now exert pressure rhythmically with the hand lying on the knee, once or twice per second, producing repetitive mobilization; or she may exert slight pressure on the knee with this hand, from above, resisting her own pressure for about 10 s while breathing in, and then relaxing, breathing out and increasing rotation. This manoeuvre is repeated three to five times.

There is also a very effective gravity-induced exercise for self-mobilization, into rotation and flexion in the lumbar spine, which is identical with PIR of the lumbar part of the erector spinae and is described later (see Figure 6.115).



(*a*)

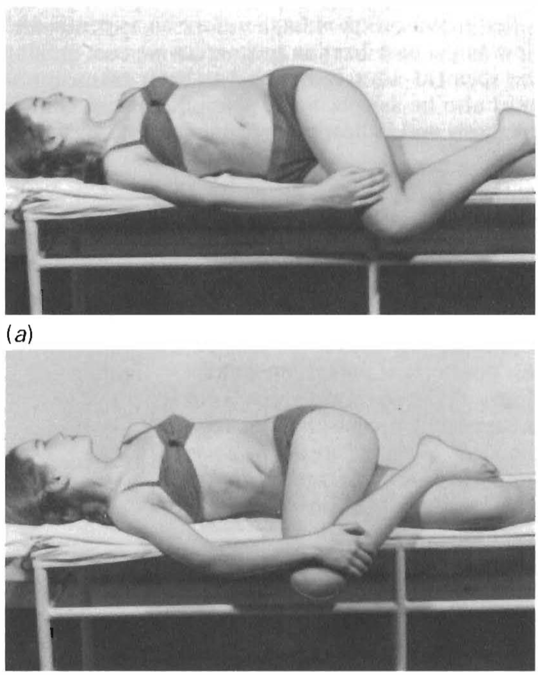
(*b*)

Figure 6.57 Self-mobilization of the lower lumbar spine: (*a*) anteflexion; (*b*) retroflexion

Self-mobilization of the lumbar spine into retroflexion and lateral flexion, standing

(Figure 6.59)

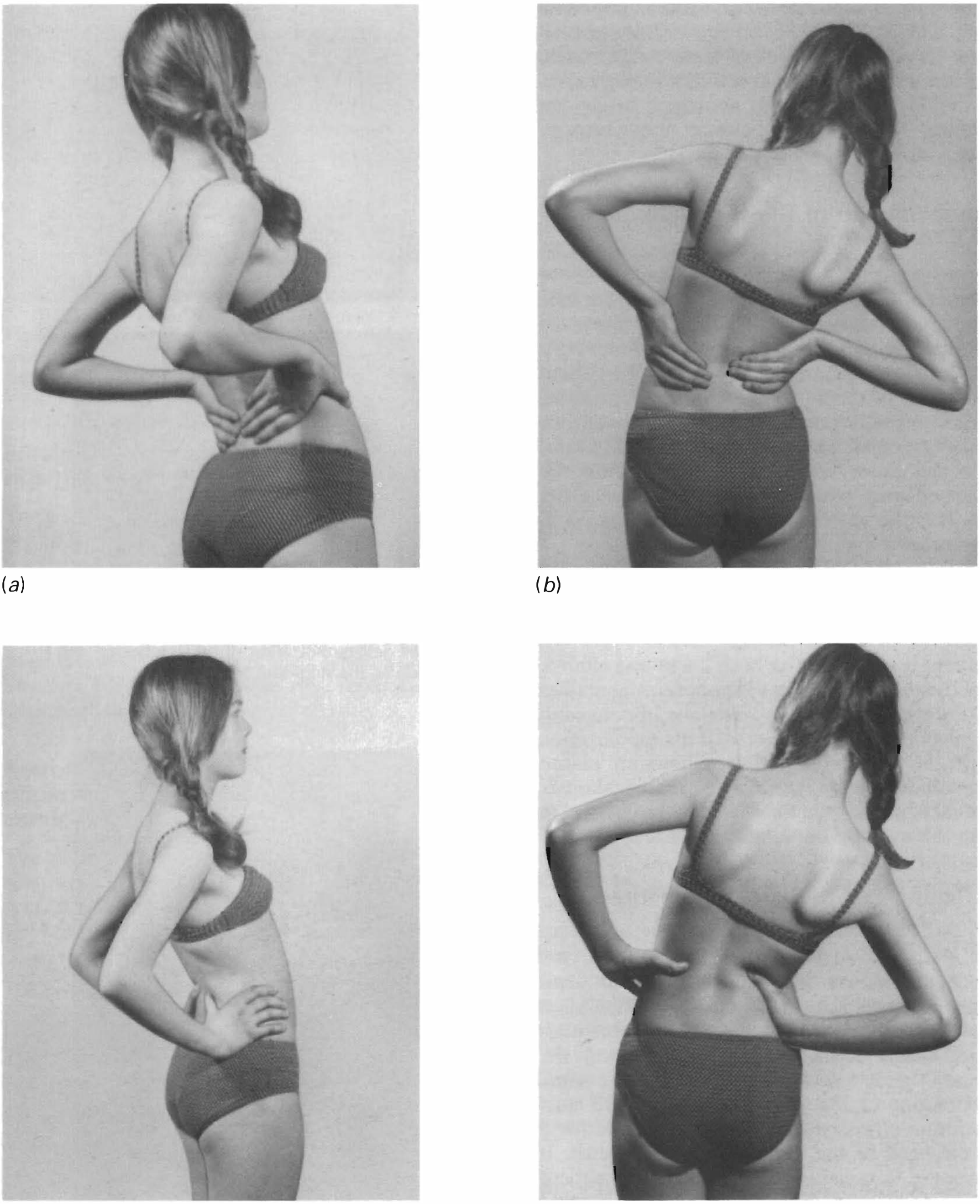
Here, fixation is decisive. The patient may either fix the upper vertebra of the segment to be treated, with the radial surface of her forefinger, from above; or she may fix the lower vertebra with the tips of her thumbs, thus creating a fulcrum. By back- or side-bending as far as to the fixation point (fulcrum) she takes up the slack, and then makes a slight repetitive movement, rhythmically springing the segment above or below the thumbs or forefingers respectively. Fixation from above (by the forefingers) is indicated if there is hypermobility above the segment treated, and from below (by the thumbs) if there is



(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 6.58 Rotation self-mobilization of the lumbar spine, the patient lying on her side: (*a*) lower, (*b*) upper lumbar spine



(*a*) (*b*) (*c*) (*d*)

Figure 6.59 Self-mobilization of the lumbar spine, the patient standing. Fixation of the upper vertebra of the treated segment from above, with the forefingers: (*a*) back-bending; (*b*) side-bending. Fixation with the thumbs from below: (*c*) back-bending; (*d*) side-bending hypermobility below. Obviously the lumbosacral segment is always treated from above. It is essential that any forceful movement of large range should be avoided; only the small, specific springing movement should be performed, above or below the fulcrum with the spine fixed below or above respectively, moving once or twice per second.

Self-mobilization of the thoracolumbar spine into rotation

This corresponds to the technique described above (see Figure 6.39, p. 184). The patient lies on her side with the lower leg stretched out and the upper leg bent both at the hip and at the knee, at about right angles. With her outstretched lower arm the patient fixes the thigh of the flexed leg from above, turning her head and neck into maximum rotation while looking at an object placed behind her back. In this position she exerts rhythmic pressure against the outstretched arm, with her knee, about twice per second. It is the rhythmic contraction of the psoas that produces the mobilization effect.

Ante- and retroflexion self-mobilization of the thoracic spine (Figure 6.60)

The patient is supported on both knees and elbows. Moving the thoracic spine into kyphosis she breathes in, then moves into lordosis while she breathes out to the maximum. The more cranial the mobilization required, the further forward the elbows are placed (and the chest lowered), while for mobilization at the thoracolumbar junction it may be better to perform the exercise on hands and knees.

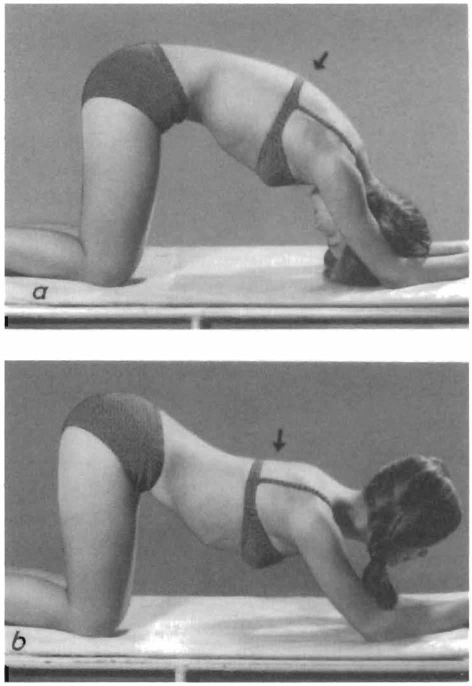


Figure 6.60 Self-mobilization of (*a*) anteflexion and (*b*) retroflexion of the mid- and lower thoracic spine

Retroflexion self-mobilization of the thoracic spine during exhalation (Figure 6.61)

The patient sits on the table with both arms stretched by her side and the hands in supination with the fingers spread fan-wise. She now breathes in lightly, then during maximum exhalation she bends her thoracic spine backwards, at the same time increasing supination of the hands. Care must be taken not to raise the shoulders and not to bend either the head or the lumbar spine backwards. If this exercise is correctly performed the patient should feel slight pain in the thoracic spine at maximum exhalation and retroflexion. A very good alternative is described on p. 180 (Figure 6.34).

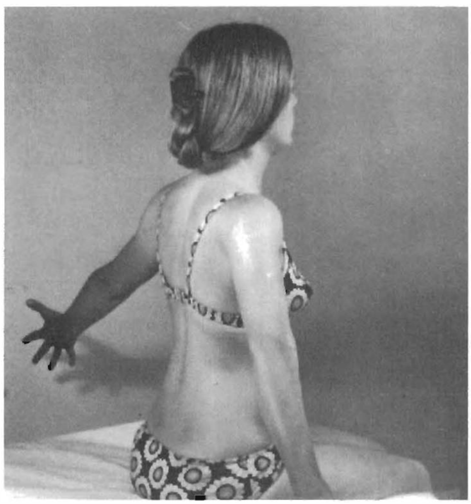


Figure 6.61 Retroflexion self-mobilization of the thoracic spine with the patient seated, using maximum exhalation and outward rotation of the arms, with fingers widespread

Anteflexion self-mobilization of the thoracic spine in inhalation (Figure 6.62)

The patient sits on her heels, bending forward so as to have her forehead on the table. In this position she breathes into her back. She easily learns how to direct inhalation into the stiff segments; this should first be checked with the therapist's finger, and then by the patient.

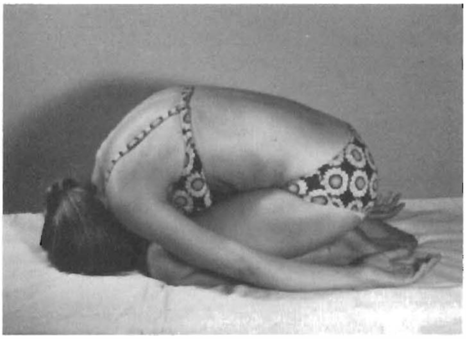


Figure 6.62 Anteflexion self-mobilization of the thoracic spine in inhalation, the patient squatting and bending forward

Inhalation self-mobilization of the upper ribs (Figure 6.63)

The patient is seated over the edge of the table with her knees apart, in anteflexion, and her head is turned towards the side to be mobilized. One arm hangs between the knees and the other at her side. In this position the ribs to be mobilized bulge slightly and if the patient relaxes her shoulder-blades, she feels some tension at the site (the slack is being taken up). She now breathes into those ribs, separating them during inhalation.

Retroflexion self-mobilization of the upper thoracic spine and the cervicothoracic junction (Figure 6.64)

The patient is seated, her back supported by the chair-back at the level of the lower vertebra (spinous process) of the segment to be treated. She now shifts her head and spine backwards, so as to take up the slack at this segment. By repeated rhythmical movements in the same direction she springs the segment into retroflexion, the head moving back horizontally.

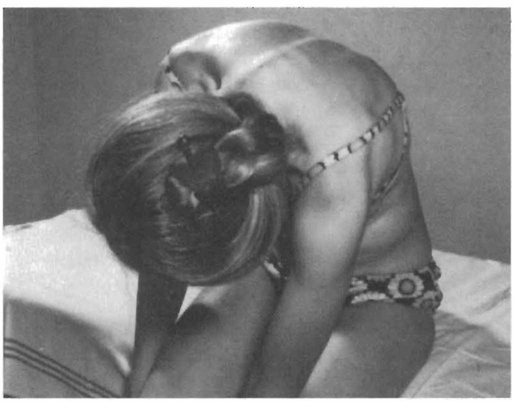


Figure 6.63 Inhalation self-mobilization of the right upper ribs

Rotation self-mobilization at the cervicothoracic junction (Figure 6.65)

Rotation of the outstretched arms with fingers spread wide has some mobilizing effect on the cervicothoracic junction; this effect is enhanced if each arm rotates in an opposite direction, one from supination into pronation and the other vice versa. This alone is not enough, however; the exercise becomes very effective if the head is also rotated, in the same rhythm as the arms and preferably facing the hand that is rotating into pronation (the thumb down). Care must be taken not to lift the shoulders, which should be relaxed. This technique should not be used if there is hypermobility in the upper thoracic region.

Self-mobilization of the first rib

This corresponds to the technique described above (see Figure 6.49, p. 188); the patient simply uses her own arm, resisting with head and neck the rhythmical impulses given by her hand.

Retroflexion and rotation self-mobilization of the cervical spine (Figure 6.66)

With the ulnar surface of both hands the patient fixes the lower vertebra of the segment to be treated. Now she either shifts her head back so as to take up the slack and then springs the segment into retroflexion by a small repetitive movement (see also Retroflexion self-mobilization of the upper thoracic spine and cervicothoracic junction); or she rotates her head to take up the slack and then makes rhythmical rotation movements springing (mobilizing) the segment into rotation. Instead of springing the segment into rotation, she may (after taking up the slack) look up, breathing in slowly, and then look to the side of the desired mobilization while slowly breathing out, automatically increasing the range of rotation. The exercise is repeated three times.

Side-bending self-mobilization of the cervical spine (Figures 6.67, 6.68)

The patient may place the palm of her hand against the side of her neck, so that the thumb is supported by the clavicle and the ulnar surface forms a fulcrum at the transverse process of the lower vertebra of the affected segment, using her other hand to bend the head to that side to take up the slack (Figure 6.67), a technique that is only suitable for segments C1–2 and C2–3. Alternatively, she may put her third

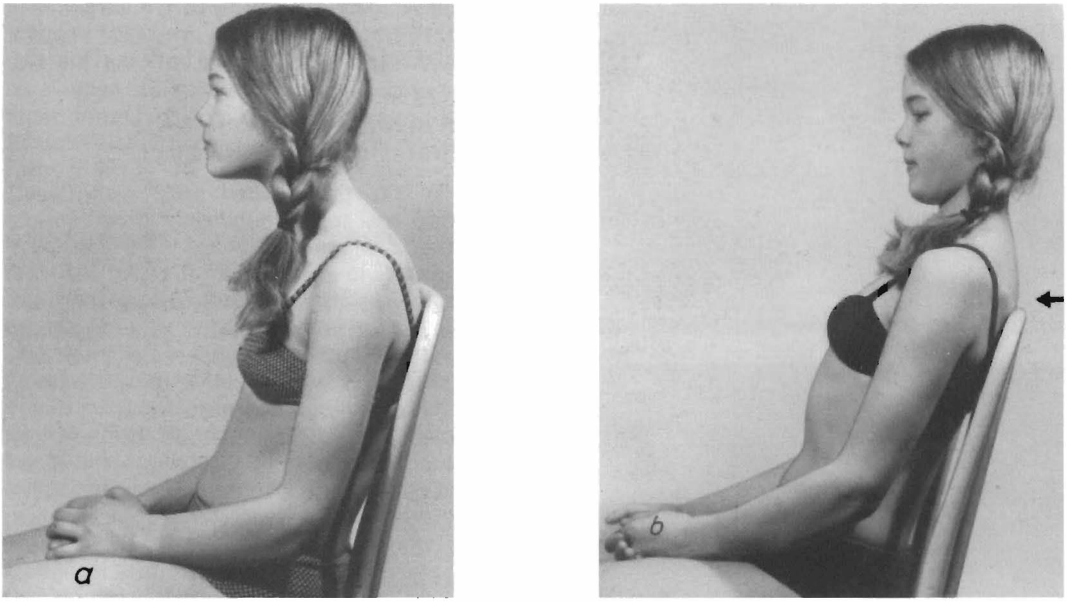


Figure 6.64 Ante- and retroflexion self-mobilization of the upper thoracic spine and the cervicothoracic junction, the patient seated on a chair with the back supported at the lower vertebra of the affected segment: the head and the spinal column are shifted (*a*) forwards and (*b*) backwards

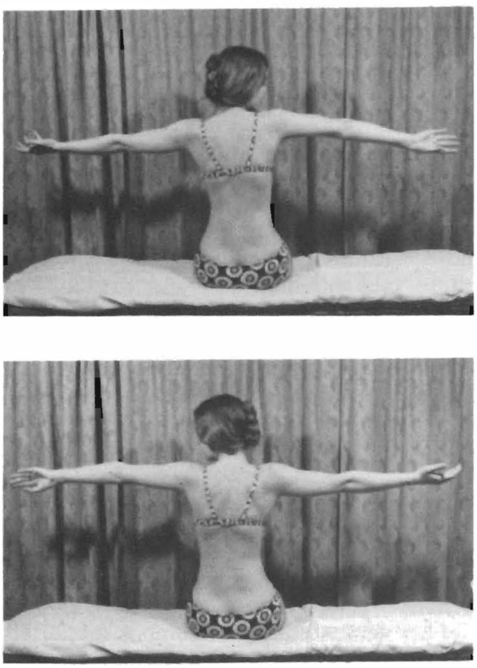


Figure 6.65 Rotation self-mobilization at the cervicothoracic junction, by a combination of rhythmic rotation of the arms in opposite directions, with the fingers spread, and head rotation in the direction of the pronated arm

and fourth fingers round her neck from behind, fixing the arch of the lower vertebra of the segment; with the other hand passing over the crown of her head she pulls it away from that side, over the fulcrum formed by her fingers, to take up the slack (Figure 6.68).

In both positions PIR is now applied, making use of the principle of alternating facilitation and inhibition during inhalation and exhalation (see p. 189). When treating an even segment the patient first looks up and breathes in slowly, holds her breath, and then relaxes while looking down and breathing out. For an odd segment she begins by breathing out slowly, relaxation taking place during inhalation. The exercise is repeated three times; care must be taken that side-bending is performed strictly in the coronal plane. With her fingers round her neck the patient may achieve good fixation down to C5, or to C6 if her neck is slender. The fingers should go round the posterior arch from behind one transverse process to the next.

Ante- and retroflexion self-mobilization between occiput and atlas (Figure 6.69)

The patient turns her head so as to lock the atlas/axis. To mobilize into anteflexion, she pulls her chin in to take up the slack, breathing out sharply through the nose, looking down, and making a brisk movement into anteflexion at the same time. To mobilize into retroflexion she lifts her chin to take up the slack,

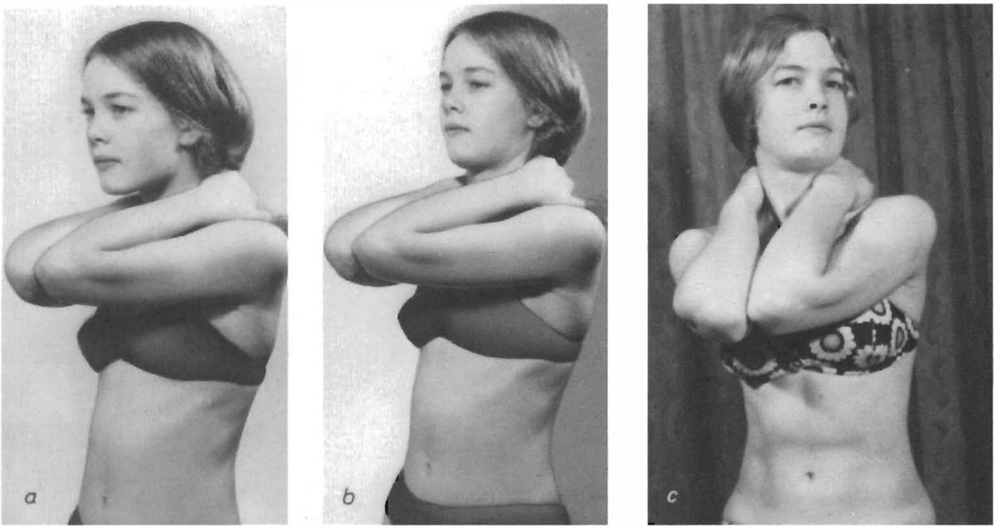


Figure 6.66 Rhythmic repetitive self-mobilization of the cervical spine, with the arch of the lower vertebra fixed by the ulnar edge of both hands: (*a*) forward shift; (*b*) backward shift; (*c*) rotation

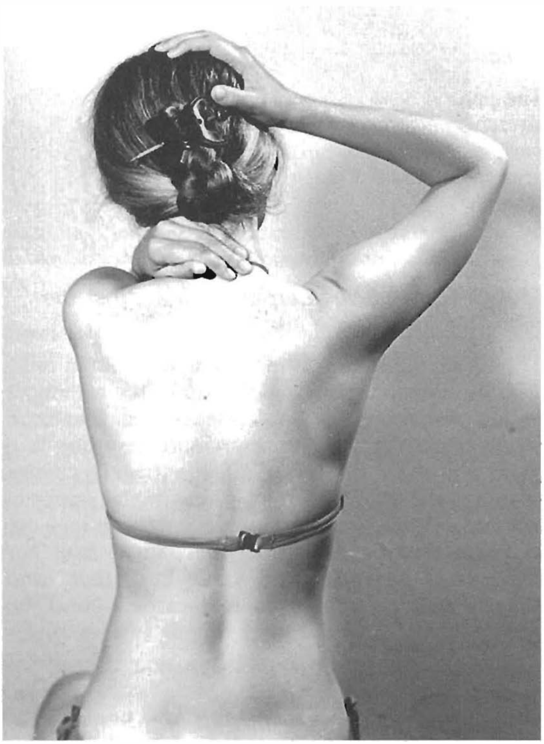


Figure 6.67 Side-bending self-mobilization of the upper cervical spine: while one hand side-bends the head to the opposite side, the other fixes the transverse process of the lower vertebra of the treated segment

Figure 6.68 Side-bending self-mobilization of the mid- and lower cervical spine: one hand fixes the vertebral arch while the other reaches over the crown to bend the head sideways

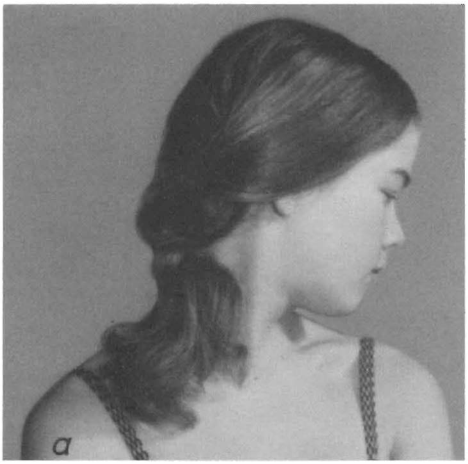
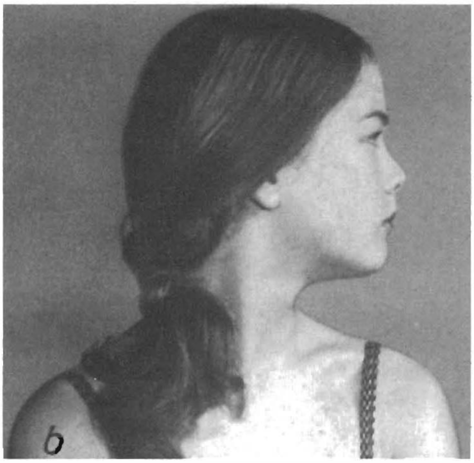



Figure 6.69 Self-mobilization between atlas and occiput with the head rotated (*a*) into anteflexion and (*b*) into retroflexion

looks up and breathes in sharply, making a brisk but slight movement into retroflexion. Care must be taken not to move the cervical spine below the axis.

Lateral flexion self-mobilization between occiput and atlas

The best technique is identical to gravity-induced PIR of the sternocleidomastoid muscle (see Figure 6.96).

Self-mobilization of the extremity joints

Obviously, self-treatment can also be applied to the extremity joints. This is particularly true for the lower extremities, because the patient has both hands free. I therefore deal only with a few instances of treatment of the upper extremity joints.

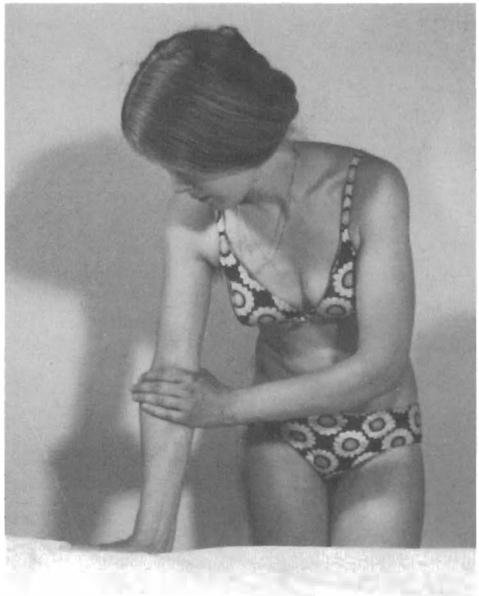


Figure 6.70 Self-mobilization of the elbow in a radial direction

Self-mobilization of the elbow in a radial direction (Figure 6.70)

The patient grasps the edge of a table, with the arm stretched in supination so that the thumb lies parallel with the edge of the table. The other hand grasps the elbow from the ulnar side, gapping (mobilizing) it by repeated rhythmical pressure or by a fast shaking movement in a radial direction.

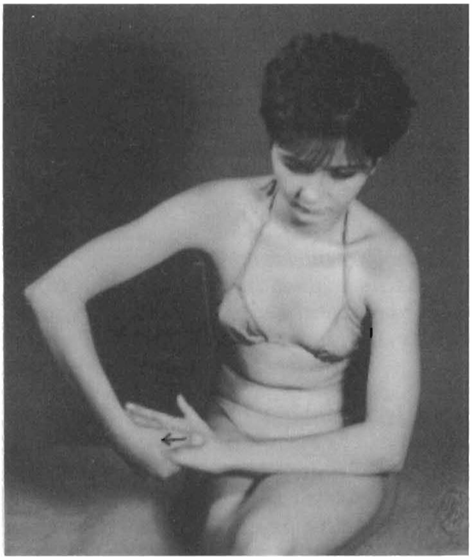
Mobilization of one carpal bone against the next (Figure 6.71; see also Figure 6.5*b*, p. 164)

The tip of the thumb is placed on one carpal bone (e.g. the os capitatum) and the tip of the forefinger on its neighbour (in this case the os lunatum), producing a slight shearing pressure resulting in a small shift (Figure 6.71*a*). If the fingers change position, the shift will take place in the opposite direction. Patients who find this too difficult may use a simple traction technique: the patient fixes her forearm against her knee, while her other hand grasps the carpal (or even metacarpal) bone she wishes to treat, between her thumb and forefinger (Figure 6.71*b*).

Traction of the fingers, including the first metacarpal

The distal phalanx is grasped by the little finger of the other hand, while the thumb and forefinger grasp the first phalanx or the metacarpal

(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.71 (*a*) Shearing self-mobilization of carpal bones, using thumb and forefinger. (*b*) Self-treatment of the carpal bones using traction

of the thumb. Traction and even mobilization can be applied to the metacarpophalangeal joints and the carpometacarpal joint of the thumb (see Figure 6.2).

Self-applied traction at the shoulder

This can be performed over the padded back of a chair, preferably by the technique of isometric traction and relaxation, the other hand grasping the arm above the elbow. The patient resists her own (slight) traction and breathes in against the back of the chair; she then relaxes and breathes out, distraction resulting from relaxation (see Figure 6.9).

Functional techniques

Two very gentle and surprisingly effective techniques of (osteopathic) 'indirect' manipulation should be mentioned. Their popularity is likely to increase in future. The term 'indirect' means that, unlike techniques described so far, the pathological (restrictive) barrier is engaged neither for diagnosis nor in order to obtain release. The first of these techniques has been termed 'functional'. This method attempts to find a relief position in which pathological tension (and pain) is relieved and to obtain good relaxation in this position. Once this is found and release is obtained tension (tenderness) gradually normalizes in every position.

This method is based solely on palpation and therefore it is difficult to present let alone illustrate in a textbook. At best this is an attempt to give an idea of what should be achieved by the method.

At palpatory examination of the lesioned segment with the patient seated, the thumb and the forefinger on both sides of the spinous process, increased tension is felt on one side, described as rotation (Greenman) (palpatory illusion owing to one-sided muscular spasm). Indeed, one of the fingers senses prominence and the other a groove. On bending forward, backward, to the sides and possibly at rotation, the examiner feels that in some positions this asymmetry increases, in others it disappears. We have to bear in mind that if the patient side-bends the joint on the side of lateroflexion moves into extension and that on the opposite side into flexion (see Figure 4.4), owing to coupled movement; this is also true for rotation.

Having localized the asymmetrical, lesioned segment with the patient seated, both hands clasped behind her neck, the examiner grasps both her arms above the elbows (see Figures 4.16, 4.17) and first brings the patient into the position in which asymmetry diminishes. This usually happens either in flexion or extension. In the latter, side-flexion to the side of spasm is added, as in this case side flexion amounts to further extension. If in this way good relaxation and symmetrical tension is achieved, the examiner first supports the patient in this position to enhance relaxation. With the patient well relaxed, he now slowly reduces back- and side-flexion, returning into relief position the moment tension reappears, repeating the manoeuvre until no more asymmetry recurs. Then he moves further into anteflexion until he notices that full flexion and side-bending to the opposite side no longer creates tension or tenderness, i.e. full release is obtained.

If, on the other hand, symmetry is obtained in flexion, the examiner moves the patient into side-flexion to the opposite side of spasm (of 'rotation'), supporting her in this relief position, and then proceeds gradually as described for retroflexion.

In the cervical spine the technique is similar. The examiner either stands at the side of the seated patient and can move the head with one hand into ante-, retro-, lateroflexion or even rotation. With the other hand he examines with the thumb and forefinger the tension and tenderness in the groove behind the transverse and articular processes, not far from the mid-line. Personally I prefer to stand in front of the patient with her forehead against my chest and have the fingers of each hand on either side of the spinous processes, and to move her head by raising and/or side-bending my chest.

With his fingers (or thumb) the examiner first has to find the site of increased tension and tenderness in neutral position. He then moves the patient's head so as to obtain extension or flexion, observing which movement increases and which relieves tension. If tension decreases in extension, he moves the head into extension and side-flexion towards the lesioned side, to find the position of maximum relief. In this position he gives good supprt to the patient in order to obtain maximum relaxation. He then continues in a similar way as at the trunk, moving gradually into flexion and even side-bending to the opposite side, by trial and correction until no position creates tension. If, on the other hand, tension is relieved by flexion, he moves the patient's head into anteflexion and side-flexion to the opposite side, and having achieved maximum relaxation he gradually moves into extension and side-flexion to the lesioned side, until no more tension recurs.

Obviously this technique is absolutely safe and very agreeable to the patient – and can be very effective, too. However, it is difficult to make it fully understood and to teach it by words alone or even by illustration. Only the experienced therapist can fully appreciate the procedure.

Strain and counterstrain

This method has much in common with the preceding ones in that it does not engage the barrier and attempts to obtain relief by correct positioning. In my experience it is most useful in acutely painful lesions in which the more typical type of manipulation fails. Indeed L. H. Jones, the author of the method, is quoted as treating a patient who because of psoas spasm was unable to straighten up from flexion and had great difficulty in finding any position of relief. Jones found, however, that relief could be obtained when the patient was 'nearly rolled into a ball in rotation of 45 degrees and 30 degrees of lateral flexion'. As all other attempts to help the patient had failed, Jones propped him up in this extreme position, treating another patient in the meantime. When he returned he found the patient could at long last straighten up.

In his original publication (1963) Jones explains the rationale of his method, which corresponds to what can frequently be observed in acute lesions: the patient is in a position of flexion and suddenly moves into extension. During this brisk movement he experiences pain and cannot return into neutral position. He remains flexed as though some tissue had not followed the brisk movement and got caught. If we now make the patient return into the flexed position and even exaggerate flexion, then wait and finally move slowly into neutral, we may free impinged tissues, and the patient may move freely again.

In practice we have to find the direction of relief. This is, of course, indicated by the patient, but Jones monitors pain points, most of which lie in the back muscles, on the sternum, on the abdomen close to the mid-line, or on the chest, usually on the left side. Tenderness of these points diminishes if the correct relief position is found. If this is achieved, we exaggerate this relief position slowly if the patient tolerates it (during exhalation), as far as he allows it, then hold the patient in this position for 90 seconds. After that we allow her to return very slowly, controlling the movement, back to neutral and even beyond.

This technique seems to work particularly well in acute cases; relief need not always be in flexion; it is also useful for treatment of painful lesions of the foot with no apparent movement restriction (pathological barrier).

Soft tissue manipulation

As in joints, we restore mechanical function of the soft tissue, i.e. its elasticity and mobility relative to other tissues or tissue layers. To understand the importance of soft tissue we have to bear in mind that the motor system is embedded in soft tissue layers, and that even muscles and muscle fibres have their sheaths of connective tissue. Indeed, motion of the motor system proper would not be possible if all its surrounding soft tissues, including skin, would not stretch or shift. These movements are quite considerable and must be diagnosed, for their disturbance can seriously jeopardize the function of the motor system, not just by simple mechanical action, but by reflex mechanisms. Diagnosis appears not to be difficult and treatment very effective, although there is an almost complete lack of hard scientific data.

The technique is characteristically uniform, which distinguishes it from the more usual massage techniques. Whether we wish to shift or to stretch, we first take up the slack (engage a barrier), and without much change in pressure (pull), release occurs after a few seconds; it may last from a few seconds to half a minute, and the therapist must sense it. There is no fixed rule as to its duration, but if the release process is cut short prematurely, we shall not obtain our full desired effect. However, during this period of release we may change both the intensity and the direction of pressure (pull) to achieve better results. It must not be forced, and the patient should never feel pain.

Skin stretching

As explained in Chapter 4 (p. 86), an area of the skin may be held between the fingertips or with the ulnar aspect of the crossed hands, from the little finger to the wrist (according to the size of the area involved), and stretched with a minimum of force, so as to take up the slack. On further stretching a springing resistance is felt. If there is a hyperalgesic zone (HAZ), the slack is taken up sooner and there is much less spring. If the therapist then holds the skin in this end-position, resistance weakens until normal springing is restored (Figure 6.72). The HAZ is usually no longer detectable. If the HAZ is a cause of pain, this stretching method is quite as effective as needling, electrostimulation and similar treatment. Moreover, it is entirely painless and can be used by the patient herself.

If the area is marked on the skin, the effect of treatment can be measured; M. Berger (personal communication, 1982) has constructed an electrical instrument that stretches the skin rhythmically with a constant force that can be recorded (Figure 6.73).

Stretching is particularly useful in small areas where it is difficult to fold the skin, as between the fingers or toes in root syndromes if there is an HAZ. Skin stretching is also very useful across the carpal tunnel.

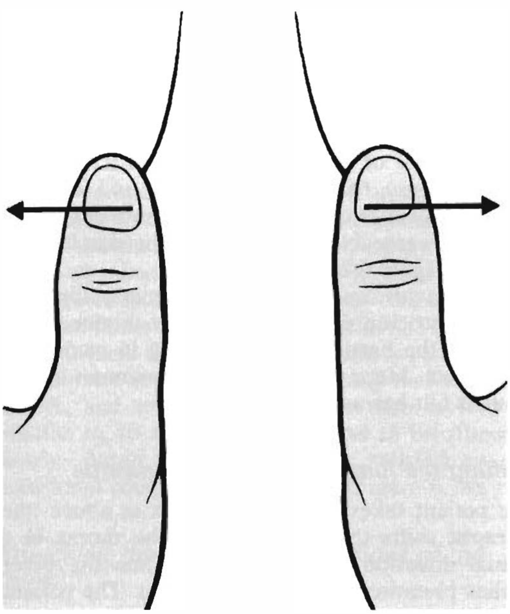


Figure 6.72 Skin stretching

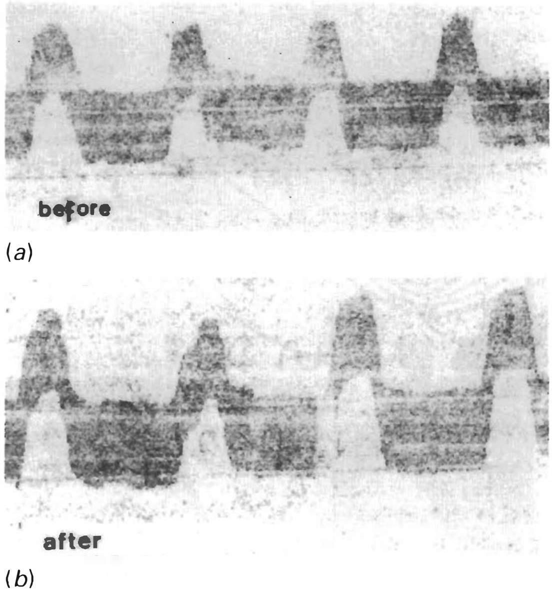


Figure 6.73 Dermatotensiogram recorded by Berger (personal communication): (*a*) before skin stretching, poor elasticity; (*b*) increased (normal) elasticity after stretching

Stretching a connective tissue fold (Figure 6.74)

Folds of soft connective tissue are taken between the thumb and forefinger of the two hands; in this way pull or stretch is produced and the slack is taken up. Care must be taken only to stretch, never to pinch. After a few seconds resistance gives and the tissue fold stretches until a new barrier is reached and normal springing is restored. This technique can be applied to subcutaneous tissue and to active scars with tender points and surrounded by an HAZ. It can also be used for short (taut) muscles. In the case of a large muscle such as the hamstrings, the fold is produced between the palm of one hand and the fingers of the other. This is the most effective way of obtaining muscle stretch while avoiding the stretch reflex (Figure 6.74).

Pressure

If a fold cannot be formed, slight pressure may be exerted with a finger (Figure 6.75). With little pressure the slack is first taken up, and after a short latency period the finger sinks into the deep layers until a new barrier is reached. This is most effective in superficial muscles including the erector spinae and the gluteus maximus; it can also be applied by a pincer movement in muscles in which TrPs are diagnosed in this way, as in the trapezius and the sternocleidomastoid. It is also useful in treating deep

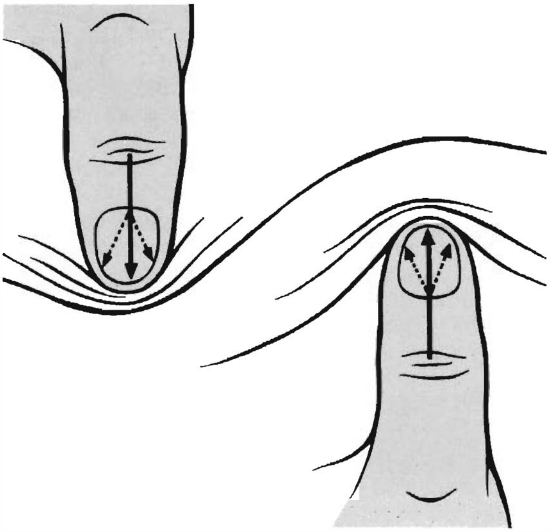


Figure 6.74 Folding connective tissue

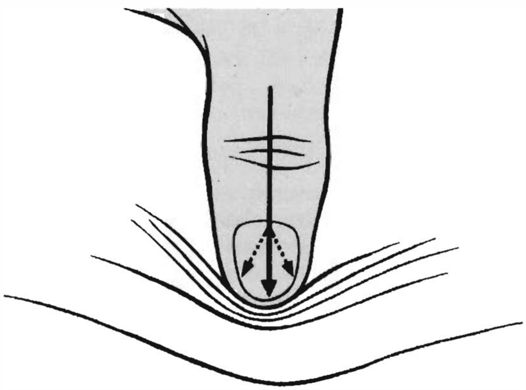


Figure 6.75 Pressing deep soft tissues

scars where it is impossible to form a skin fold. Pressure on muscles appears to have an inhibitory, relaxing effect and is an alternative to PIR.

Shifting (stretching) deep fasciae

The most important function restored by soft tissue manipulation appears to be that of mobility of the fasciae; this is bound up with tautness (shortening) of the muscles, established only after careful diagnosis of restriction. Changes in the fasciae are most characteristic in the chronic stage; it is important to know that the restricted side need not be the side where pain is felt. However, it is the asymmetry which is characteristic (the 'tight–loose complex'). For treatment of fasciae a combination of shifting

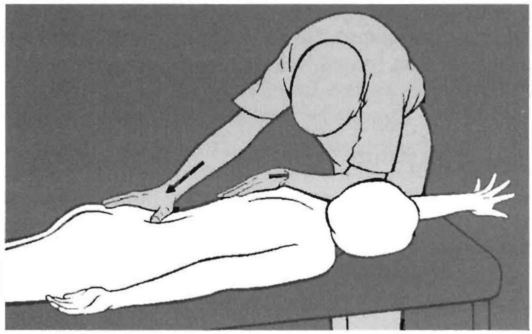


Figure 6.76 Stretching (shifting) the gluteal fascia

and stretching is usually applied. The rhythm is the same in every case: first we take up the slack, and after a few seconds the therapist feels the barrier give; myofascial release continues until the normal barrier is reached. Many of these techniques have been elaborated by R. Ward (personal communication, 1989). Some are described in detail below.

Shifting (stretching) the deep gluteal fascia from above

The therapist stands at the side to be treated; the patient is prone, her feet over the end of the table. He puts slight pressure against the mass of the glutei from above, and some pressure in the thoracolumbar area with the other hand. The patient is now told to press her toes upward against the edge of the table (on the treated side) and to stretch that arm above her head, with fingers extended; she must look towards the therapist and breathe out, to increase tension (exhalation increases tension in this situation, as in isometric lumbar traction). Then she is told to breathe in slowly; during inhalation, resistance slackens and release occurs. This manoeuvre is repeated two or three times. If there is no satisfactory release, the patient should be told to cough occasionally after inhalation. After treatment, which should be agreeable to the patient, the skin is often flushed (Figure 6.76).

The gluteals can also be shifted from below, and on the restricted side release can be obtained after engaging the barrier. Here breathing in or out has little effect. Mere pressure where maximum hypertonus is felt has a similar effect.

Shifting the lumbodorsal fascia upwards

The patient takes the same position as above; the therapist shifts the soft tissues of the thorax in a cranial direction with one hand, while the other applies pressure in the lumbar region. The patient is told to breathe in, to hold her breath, and then to breathe out; release occurs during exhalation.

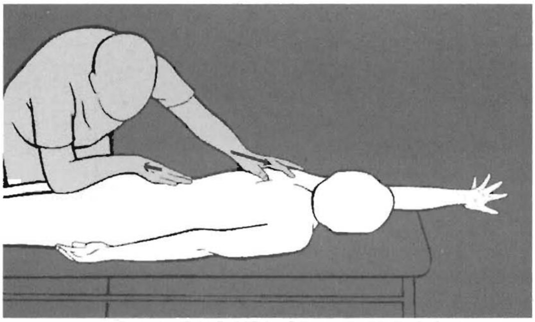


Figure 6.77 Stretching (shifting) the dorsal fascia over the shoulder-blade

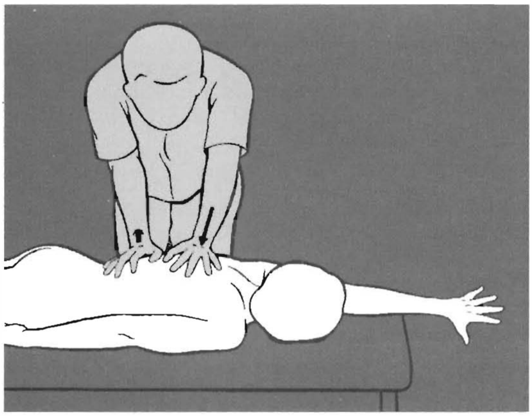


Figure 6.78 Stretching (shifting) the dorsal fasciae transversely

Again, if release is not satisfactory, a slight cough will improve it (Figure 6.77).

Shifting the tissues from side to side in opposite directions

First we compare the degree of shift attainable in the soft tissues; with one hand at the level of the shoulder-blades and the other at the waist, with the patient prone, we move the hands in opposite directions, and compare resistance. If there is any difference, the direction of restricted motion is treated. The patient looks towards the side on which shift is restricted in the thoracic region, while stretching that arm and fingers, and raises the toes. She then is told to breathe in, to hold her breath, and to breathe out slowly. Again, if release is not satisfactory, an occasional cough may be helpful (Figure 6.78).

Stretching the tissues on both sides of the trunk

Restriction may affect both sides of the trunk, in which case there is restriction of side-bending. To

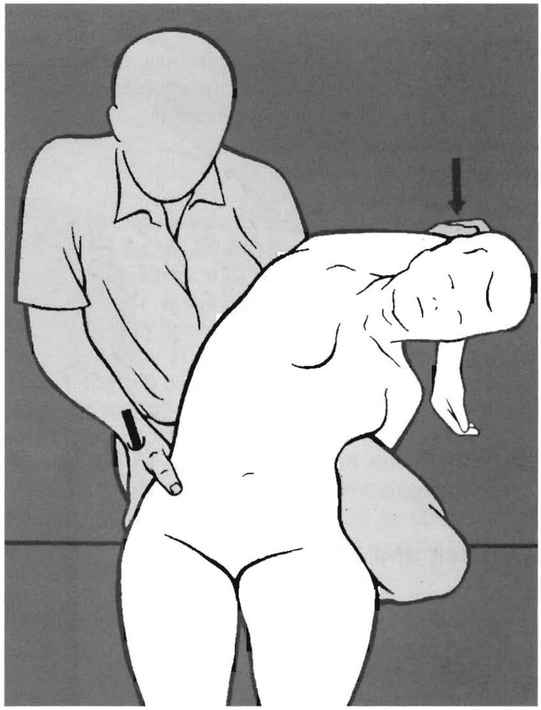


Figure 6.79 Stretching (shifting) the fascia over the lateral aspect of the trunk

examine and to treat this condition, the therapist stands behind the seated patient, slightly to the side to which side-bending must be performed. The patient puts her arm over her head, with the hand at the nape of the neck, on the side which is to be stretched. The therapist grasps the elbow with one hand while the other fixes the patient's hip from above. He bends her sideways over his own thigh so as to take up the slack. He then tells the patient to look up and breathe in (which increases resistance), to hold her breath, and then to relax and breathe out, to obtain release. This is repeated two or three times (Figure 6.79).

Treatment of fasciae on the ventral aspect of the trunk

With the patient supine we can shift the mass of the pectoralis from the side and compare the two sides. Restriction on one side can be treated in the direction of increased resistance, simply by engaging the barrier and letting the patient breathe in slowly, hold her breath, and then breathe out. Care must be taken that our fingers do not poke the patient's ribs but glide as on the surface of a barrel. Restriction there is frequently linked with TrPs of the subscapularis, the patient complaining of chest and (women) of breast pain.

In cases of deep pelvic or perineal pain, shifting of soft tissues over the edges of the pubic bone may be impaired on one side; to restore mobility we engage the barrier so as to obtain release, which follows after a short latency period.

The scalp

With the patient sitting, we can examine mobility of the scalp in relation to the skull, in all directions, and compare the two sides. One or two fingers (or the thumb) are sufficient to engage the restricted barrier, and after the typical latency period release follows, until normal mobility is restored. The therapist uses his free hand to fix the patient's head. Care must be taken not to let the fingers slip over the patient's hair. Restricted mobility of the scalp is a very important finding in patients with headache and/or vertigo and should never be missed.

The neck and the extremities

At the neck and the extremities there is great mobility of the soft tissues, if we apply rotational movement around their long axis. At the extremities and even at the cervicothoracic junction we can either move the whole mass of soft tissue in one direction, or twist one hand against the other, as when wringing a cloth. At the neck we may rotate soft tissues in the direction of the thumb or our fingers. In the former case we can act only upon a narrow strip, in the latter upon the greater part of the neck, as our diagnosis requires. The important point is how best to identify and engage a pathological barrier, and then to obtain release. A typical barrier is regularly found in the soft tissue close to periosteal pain points (mastoid processes, epicondyles, wrists, round the knees and ankles). The analgesic effect of normalizing such a barrier is most rewarding. At the neck, normalization of soft tissue mobility can greatly increase the range of cervical motion where restriction is usually attributed to joint dysfunction (Figure 6.80).

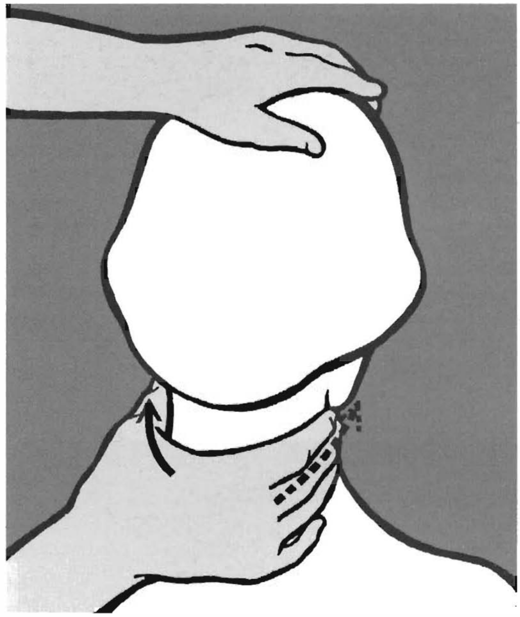


Figure 6.80 Rotation of soft tissues round the neck for treatment of restricted mobility

Some special soft tissue techniques

In root syndromes radiating to the toes and fingers there is not only an HAZ at the skin fold between the toes (fingers), but as a rule there is also increased resistance ('bind') if we try to move one metacarpal/tarsal bone against the next, in a dorsoplantar direction, in the affected segment. In such a case it is most effective to engage the barrier in a pincer movement, with both thumbs on one metatarsal and both forefingers on the other; slight pressure is maintained until release is felt. We then change the thumb and forefingers over, to restore mobility in the opposite direction.

In cases of painful calcaneal spur we may find that the soft tissue pad on the plantar surface of the heel is not readily shifted on one side. The therapist then applies soft tissue manipulation by pressing with his fingers or thumbs in the restricted direction (Figure 6.81). In cases of painful Achilles tendon (see p. 235) and pain at its attachment point, we also frequently find tenderness in the soft tissue between the tendon and the bones. In such cases the tissue must be stretched between two fingers; if there is increased resistance the tissue must be held in stretch until release occurs (Figure 6.82).

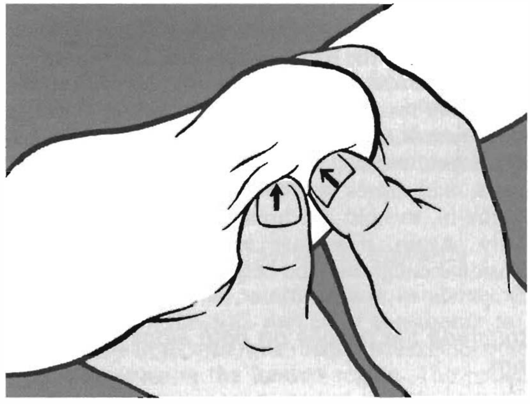
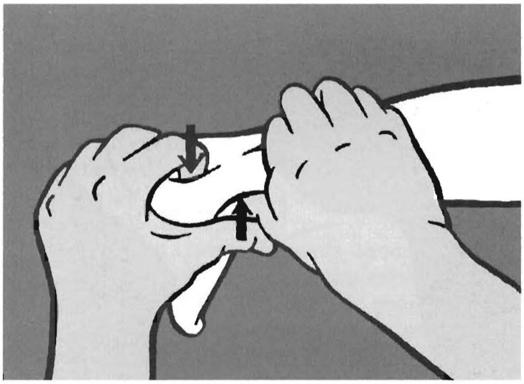


Figure 6.81 Shifting soft tissues at the heel pad



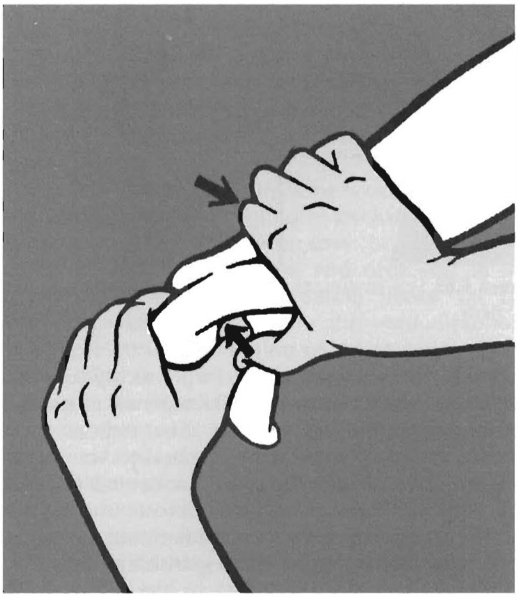


Figure 6.82 Stretching soft tissue beneath the Achilles tendon

Periosteal points

Even at periosteal points we can find pathological barriers, most frequently in the vicinity of attachment points of tendons and ligaments, i.e. where tension is created. If we shift the subperiosteal tissue close to the pain point, we find that shifting is restricted in at least one direction and that there is a hard (pathological) barrier. It is, however, necessary to compare it with a symmetrical painless area on the non-affected side. On examination of the epicondyles we may find it easy to shift soft tissues in all directions, but not, however, if there is (chronic) pain. In the direction of restriction we engage the barrier in order to obtain release. As only minimum force is used tangential to the pain point, this technique is painless, unlike periosteal

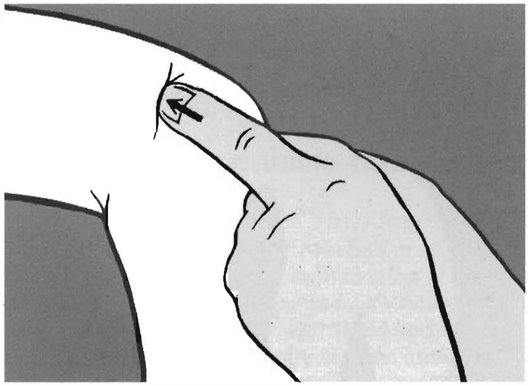


Figure 6.83 Examination (treatment) of soft tissue at the epicondyle

massage or deep friction, yet quite as effective and easier to control because we know exactly when the barrier has been reached and when full release is achieved (Figure 6.83).

What has been said above holds for most periosteal pain points, such as the anterior posterior iliac spines, the pes anserinus on the tibia etc. Special mention, however, has to be made of the spinous processes. Tenderness, as a rule, is found at their tip; however, on careful examination it is never exactly in mid-line but either on the right or the left side of the tip of the spinous process. On the tender side we then palpate increased resistance to pressure parallel to the spinous process, i.e. in a ventral direction. For treatment we therefore apply paravertebral pressure with our fingertip: after engaging the barrier with minimum force, release is obtained. Tender spinous processes are most frequently found in young hypermobile patients, but never when morphological changes like Baastrup's phenomenon are present in elderly patients. Another very frequently tender spinous process is at the axis. It is the lateral border which is tender and therefore one has to side-bend the patient's head to the non-painful side to find the pain point. There we shift the soft tissues overlying the painful area so as to find restriction, comparing the findings with the non-painful side. After taking up the slack in the restricted direction, release is obtained.

Self-treatment

The patient herself can easily perform stretching of an area of skin, folding of subcutaneous tissue including a scar, or even stretching of a muscle by this technique, provided that the site of the lesion is within reach of her hands. Shifting (moving) the scalp against the skull, or the pad of soft tissue on the heel, should present no problem, nor should twisting the soft tissue on the extremities (in the case of the

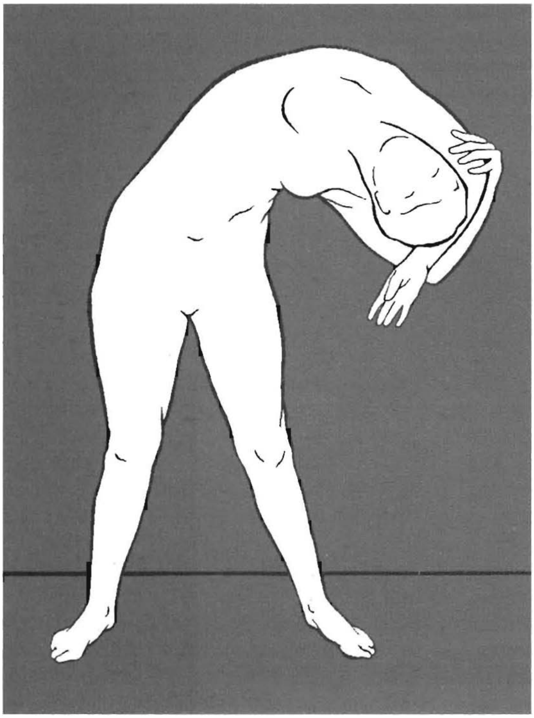


Figure 6.84 As for Figure 6.79; self-treatment

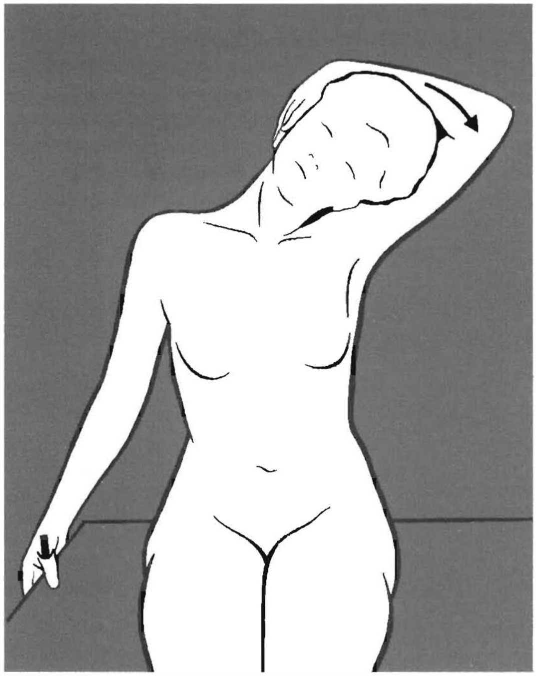


Figure 6.85 Self-treatment of short fasciae at the side of the neck

arms, using only one). Self-treatment of the trunk is more difficult, but there are many stretching techniques described in the literature (Anderson, 1980).

Nevertheless a few techniques are presented here. To stretch the fascia on one side of the trunk, the patient stands with her legs apart and puts one arm over and behind her head; she then grasps the elbow with her other hand, bending sideways and increasing the pull so as to take up the slack. Looking up, she breathes in slowly, holding her breath and thus increasing resistance to side-bending. She then looks down while breathing out; side-bending should increase. This is repeated three times (Figure 6.84).

To stretch the fascia at the side of the neck, the patient sits and stabilizes her shoulder by holding the edge of a chair or a bench with her hand. The other hand passes over the crown of her head, pulling it into side-flexion to take up the slack. She then looks up and breathes in, holds her breath, thus increasing resistance, and then relaxes to obtain release (Figure 6.85).

Exteroceptive stimulation – stroking (H. Hermach)

So far we have considered primarily nociceptive and proprioceptive afferents. We should, however, never forget that the entire body surface is richly supplied with receptors, which are mostly deprived of natural stimuli by clothing and shoes. The regions most generously represented in the cerebral cortex are the face, in particular the lips, the hands and the feet with the thumb and the big toe.

Clinical disturbance in the feet is characterized by inadequate reaction to mere stroking, which is perceived either as unpleasant, e.g. tickling, or there is next to no reaction, the feet giving the impression of being 'dead'. The two sides can also be asymmetrical. These changes as a rule go hand in hand with altered tonus of the soft tissues and muscles.

Changes in sensibility and tonus can be treated by exteroceptive stimulation – stroking. As this must be done repeatedly, self-treatment is required. First, however, the therapist must decide the correct intensity: it requires considerable experience to sense this.

Stimulation consists of a steady smooth movement of the relaxed and sensing hand in full contact with the body surface. Not only symmetry of perception and tonus including that of muscles is achieved in this way; both hypotonus and increased tonus are corrected as normalization is achieved.

For self-treatment the patient uses his hands or dry rough face flannels. We do not encourage brushes or massage flannels. For self-treatment of the hands we recommend a dish of rice or lentils in which the patient moves her fingers, or a smooth sphere (ball) rolled between the fingers; for the feet a bag filled with round pebbles or wooden beads on which the patient can stand is useful.

Therapy is thus applied to areas of changed perception of tactile stimuli. If every stroking by the therapist is perceived as unpleasant, the patient should start with self-treatment; it is then better for her to stroke herself until she can tolerate being touched by the therapist.

The treatment chosen depends on analysis of the dysfunction, i.e. we start where we expect the most important link of the pathogenetic chain. This can be an area of sudden change (see 'stratification syndrome', p. 138). In general, hypotonus is more likely to be the primary cause as it is frequently compensatory. Hypotonus should not be confused with relaxation: the former is flabby, the latter well sprung. Compliance of the patient is of paramount technical importance for intensity, rhythm and direction. Our aim is to achieve elasticity where flabbiness is found, or release of hypertonus. Much has to be learned by experience.

The direction in which stroking is carried out must be considered. Most frequently stroking is done in the direction of the long axis of the treated extremities and of the trunk and neck, i.e. in the direction of the principal muscle fibres. At the abdomen, where fibres follow different directions and where peristaltic motion of the intestines plays a role, the therapist must find the appropriate technique. If increased sensibility is due to disturbed digestion the hands have to move in circles. After abdominal operations with lowered tonus of the abdominal muscles both craniocaudal and transverse, laterolateral stroking is indicated. In the axillar and inguinal region where numerous muscles cross we recommend stroking both in the direction of the muscle fibres and in a perpendicular direction.

Active scars surounded by an HAZ with changed sensibility and tissue tonus are indicated for this type of treatment. It is particularly important to give treatment to the soles of the feet if there is increased or lowered sensibility – in order either to 'quieten' them or to 'wake them up'. The latter can be of particular importance in flat feet caused by dysfunction. Here repeated stimulation is usually required.

As changes in surface sensibility go hand in hand with changes in tonus we can infer that when we find changes in tonus, sensibility will be at least slightly altered. Hence exteroceptive stimulation can be regarded as a specific method of regulating the tonus of soft tissues and of muscles, even involving large areas, whether tonus is increased or lowered. It is therefore very useful to prepare the patient for remedial exercise.

Possible counterindications are skin disease and burns. Once the skin has recovered, adequate exteroceptive stimulation can be of great help to restore adequate function in skin receptors. Inadequate emotional reaction is a contraindication to some degree. The therapist has to keep calm and create confidence by letting the patient stroke herself until she feels comfortable and her anxiety subsides.

Post-isometric muscle relaxation (PIR)

PIR (MET) as described by Mitchell *et al.* (1979) is the most prominent of the mobilization techniques using muscular facilitation and inhibition. As it obviously acts on muscles with increased tension, I began to use it preferentially for the treatment of these muscles. This is at variance with Mitchell himself, who writes: 'Isometric contraction ... can be used for articular mobilization techniques. When isometrics are used for joint mobilization, maximal contractions are not desirable since they tighten, or freeze, the joints. Moderate contractions are much more appropriate for joint mobilization ... When a muscle and its fasciae must be stretched, hard maximal contractions are useful ...'.

In my experience, however, this method is as advantageous for muscle relaxation as it has proved to be for joint mobilization, if there is muscle spasm and particularly if there are trigger points (TrPs). If, however, a muscle or (especially) fasciae are short or taut, stretch is used to obtain myofascial release (see Soft tissue manipulation). The procedure I recommend is as follows: the muscle is first brought into a position in which it attains its maximum length without stretching, taking up the slack in the same way as in joint mobilization. In this (extreme) position the patient is asked to resist with a minimum of force (isometrically). This resistance is held for about 10 s, after which the patient is told to 'let go' (relax). It is now essential to wait until the therapist senses that the patient has indeed relaxed, after which he can usually obtain a greater range of movement by pure relaxation, not stretch. The time during which relaxation takes place can vary considerably, from several seconds to half a minute; the longer, the better: we should never cut it short, for relaxation is the real goal. Therefore it is essential to sense it.

If relaxation proves to be unsatisfactory, however, there is a simple and reliable way of improving it: by lengthening the isometric phase to as much as half a minute. However, if relaxation has been satisfactory from the start, it is possible to shorten the isometric phase. The procedure is repeated three to five times; the ground gained each time should not be lost during the following phase. If relaxation is good, the therapist senses that tension is, so to speak, 'thawing away', in which case repetition adds nothing to the result.

The good results obtained with PIR techniques as described here can be significantly improved by combining PIR with methods that affect the postural musculature as a whole, such as eye movements, inhalation and exhalation. Looking to the side facilitates rotation (but not side-bending!); looking up facilitates straightening up, and looking down facilitates stooping. Inhalation facilitates muscular contraction, whereas passive exhalation inhibits muscular activity and facilitates relaxation. There are important exceptions and modifications however (e.g. the jaw), attributable to respiratory synkinesis, i.e. when movement in one direction is coupled with inhalation while movement in the opposite direction goes with exhalation: thus, bending forward is usually linked with exhalation and straightening up with inhalation; it is difficult to breathe in while stooping, or to breathe out while straightening up. This is also true for side-bending and backward-bending (see Mobilization into retroflexion, p. 180, Figure 6.34). The following point is of practical value: at inhalation with the trunk in extension the deep back muscles relax, whereas during exhalation they contract (see Isometric traction, p. 175, Figure 6.28). This is important for the masticatory and submandibular muscles, the sternomastoids, scaleni, pectorales, quadrati lumborum, etc. See also 'Gayman's effect', p. 27.

Wherever possible, the force of gravity is used as described by Zbojan (1988), for isometric resistance and for relaxation. The force of gravity is used to give resistance, followed by relaxation. According to Zbojan, when gravity-induced relaxation is used alone, the contraction and relaxation phases should each last for 20 s. When combined with respiration, these phases should coincide with the respiratory phases. Gravity-induced PIR is a method of self-treatment right from the beginning.

The effects of treatment can be ascertained not only in the muscle treated, where trigger points and tension should have disappeared, but pain points, situated most frequently where the tendon is attached to the periosteum, will also have disappeared. At times, these pain points are more likely to be due to referred pain, in which case PIR is as effective as local anaesthesia or needling.

This method is highly specific in fan-shaped muscles whose fibres must be treated where increased tension is found. That is usually in the direction of painful attachment points (e.g. pain points on the ribs owing to TrPs in the pectoralis). Hence one reason for failure is insufficient specificity. This method is useless where there is no increased muscle tension. Therapeutic failure may also be due to an underlying cause producing renewed muscular tension, such as joint blockage or visceral disease in the corresponding segment.

Theoretically, Sherrington's post-isometric (medullary) inhibition cannot explain the effectiveness of this method, because of the long latency period. Compared with the classic method of Kabat (1965), not only is resistance much weaker, but active stretch is also avoided. The explanation of the excellent results furnished by this method may be sought in the fact that (1) during resistance of minimal force only very few muscle fibres are active, the others remaining inactive, while (2) during relaxation the stretch reflex is avoided, a reflex which is brought about even by passive and non-painful stretch. On the other hand, there are situations in which the patient experiences some pain during PIR and yet goes on relaxing (e.g. in 'ligament pain'). After the procedure, however, there is analgesia. This method demonstrates very clearly the close interrelation between tension and pain, and relaxation and analgesia.

This method is comparable with the 'spray and stretch' method of Travell (1976) but places greater emphasis on relaxation. Indeed, stretch is not essential, as lengthening is merely the proof of successful relaxation (decontraction). In some of the gravity-induced techniques, and in relaxation of the glutei, no stretch takes place. Stretch seems to be required only where there is true muscle shortening (tautness) due to connective tissue changes calling for soft tissue manipulation.

To show the effectiveness of our method, 351 painful muscle groups or muscle attachments were treated in 244 patients. There was immediate analgesia in 330 instances, whereas only in 21 was there no effect.

Recently, using intermittent resistance, we find it very useful to combine PIR with contraction of the antagonist: in the position the patient has reached by PIR, she presses lightly against moderate resistance by the therapist, in the direction reached by relaxation. He changes the counter-pressure rhythmically several times per second. The patient may also make a maximum movement in the direction of mobilization.

Treatment of individual muscles and points of attachment

The techniques described here are useful not only for therapy, but also for diagnosis.

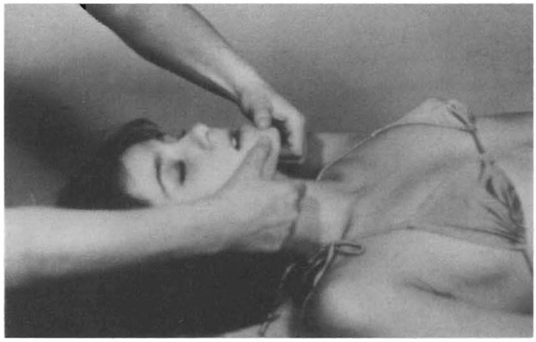
Tension in the masticatory muscles

Tension in the masticatory muscles (TrPs) can be palpated in the temporal region (the temporalis), while for screening, palpation through the cheeks with the muscles relaxed should reveal asymmetry. A healthy subject should be able to insert three knuckles between the upper and lower incisors. For accurate diagnosis of TrPs, which are often very tender, it is necessary to palpate through the open mouth. If this procedure is painful, the temporomandibular joint will also be tender on palpation, either owing to referred pain or because the external pterygoid attaches to the meniscus of that joint. The masseter


(a)


(b)

Figure 6.86 (*a*) PIR of the masseters, internal pterygoids and the temporal muscles; (*b*) self-treatment


(a)


(b)

Figure 6.87 (*a*) PIR of the external pterygoids; (*b*) self-treatment

lies in front of it, and TrPs here should be palpated by a pincer grip, with one finger inside the mouth and the other on the cheek. The internal pterygoid is palpated with a similar pincer movement, behind the masseter, above and behind the last molar, the palpating fingers holding the ramus of the mandible.

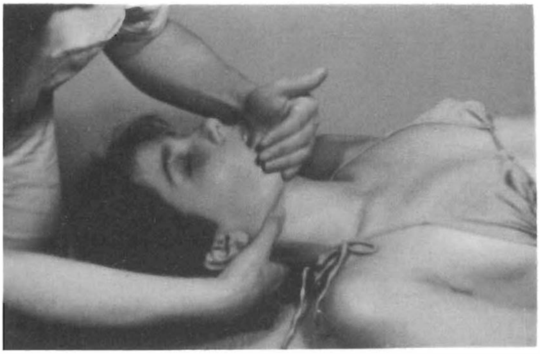
With the exception of the external pterygoid, PIR of these muscles is performed by first taking up the slack: the mouth is opened, then closed against isometric resistance with the minimum of force; relaxation comes with opening of the mouth. For this manoeuvre to be effective, respiratory synkinesis is essential. The patient is told to breathe out after the slack has been taken up by opening her mouth, then to open the mouth wide as in yawning, and take a deep breath (Figure 6.86*a*). If the muscles in question are the temporalis and/or the internal pterygoid, we may introduce deviation to the side during the relaxation phase, to the opposite side in the temporalis and to the same side in the pterygoid.

For self-treatment the patient sits at a table, one elbow on the table, with the hand propping her forehead; the fingers of the other hand are on the lower incisors. After opening her mouth to take up the slack, she breathes out; during inhalation she opens her mouth as wide as possible. The hand on the forehead should prevent anteflexion, which would interfere with maximum opening of the mouth (Figure 6.86*b*).

To treat the external pterygoid the patient is supine, her mouth slightly open. The therapist places his thumbs on the mandible from above; the patient is told to press her chin forward against his thumbs, while breathing in; she holds her breath, then breathes out, letting the chin drop back. For self-treatment she uses her own thumbs (Figure 6.87).

The main antagonist of the masticatory muscles is the digastricus which attaches to the hyoid. Increased tension is best diagnosed by shifting the thyroid cartilage from side to side. If tension is marked on one side, deviation of the cartilage to that side can even be seen.

For PIR the patient should be supine; with one hand the therapist resists the opening of the mouth while the thumb of the other exerts minimal pressure on the hyoid on the side of increased tension (deviation). The hyoid is palpated above and lateral to the thyroid cartilage. The patient opens her mouth



(a)

(b)

Figure 6.88 (*a*) PIR of the digastricus; (*b*) self-treatment

against very slight resistance and breathes in, holds her breath, and then breathes out and relaxes. During relaxation, tension in the digastricus will automatically give under the therapist's thumb where release is felt (Figure 6.88*a*).

For self-treatment the patient sits at the table, chin in one cupped hand, while the thumb of the other hand lies lateral to the hyoid on the tense side. During the resistance phase she slightly opens her mouth and breathes in, holding her breath and then relaxing while breathing out; she closes her mouth, while her thumb moves the hyoid very gently (Figure 6.88*b*).

If there is increased tension (TrP) in the mylohyoid muscle in the submandibular region behind the chin, self-treatment is the only possible approach. The patient presses the tip of her tongue against the hard palate while breathing in, and lets the tongue drop back while breathing out.

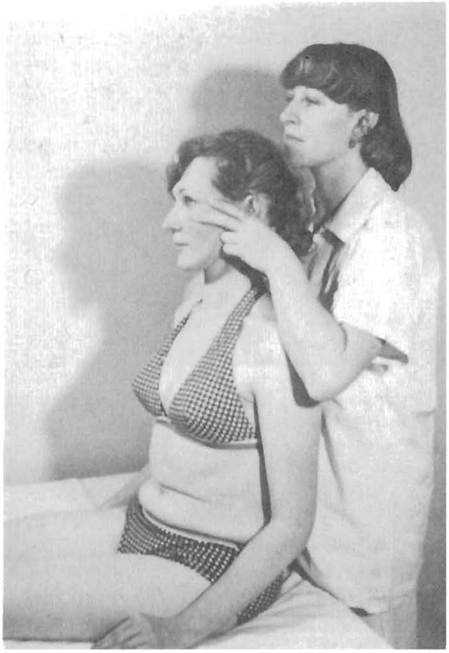
Tension in the region of the posterior arch of the atlas (Figure 6.89)

Tension and tenderness (TrPs) in this region, i.e. of the short extensors of the craniocervical junction, can be palpated only with the patient supine, her head in anteflexion. For treatment the patient sits on the table, with the therapist standing behind her, and leans against his chest. The therapist places both thumbs on the patient's occiput, with his fingers on the malar bones from above. To take up the slack, the therapist tilts the head slightly forward so as to draw the patient's chin in to her neck. He then tells the patient to look up and breathe in slowly, while resisting the patient's tendency to raise her head; the patient is then told to look down and breathe out slowly, leaning back and bringing her chin even closer to the throat (she must not bend forward). This manoeuvre is repeated about three times.

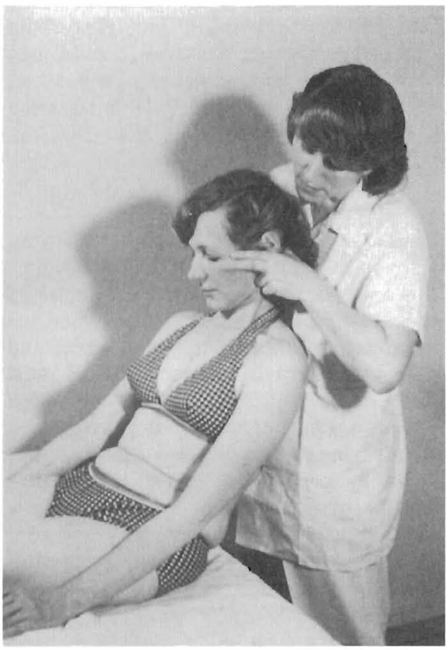
For self-treatment, the patient (Figure 6.90) uses her own hands, placing her fingers on the occiput and her thumbs on the malar bone. In order to bring the chin in towards the throat during relaxation, the patient must lean backwards over a low chair-back.

Tension in the levator scapulae (Figure 6.91)

The typical pain points are on the lateral surface of the spinous process of C2 and on the superior border of the scapula. TrPs are situated above the upper medial angle of the scapula on the neck. For treatment the patient is supine with her head at the end of the table and the elbow of the flexed arm raised above her head. The therapist exerts pressure on the scapula by pressing in a caudal direction against the elbow, fixing it with his thigh. Using both hands he now bends the head to the opposite side, raising and turning it very slightly in the same direction until the slack is taken up. This is felt sooner on the side of increased tension than on the other side. The patient then looks towards the side that is being treated, and slowly breathes in, while the therapist resists the automatic tendency to turn to that side. He then tells the patient to 'let go' and breathe out. During the ensuing relaxation the head is slightly moved sidewards and forwards. He may



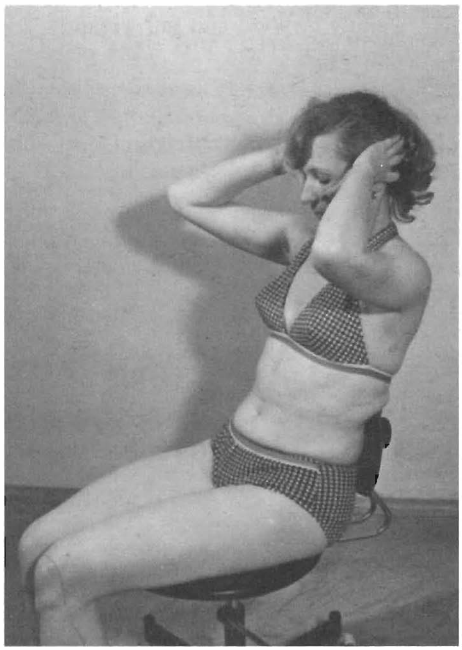
(a)



(b)

Figure 6.89 PIR of tension in the short extensors of the craniocervical junction: (*a*) resistance; (*b*) relaxation of the short extensors of the craniocervical junction

(a)



(b)

Figure 6.90 Self-treatment of tension in the short extensors of the craniocervical junction

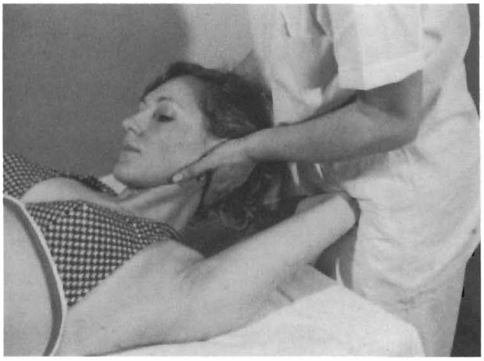


Figure 6.91 Examination and PIR of tension in the levator scapulae, with fixation of the scapula pushed down by the therapist pressing his thigh on the patient's elbow

Figure 6.93 Gravity-induced PIR of the levator scapulae and the upper part of the trapezius: left, with shoulders raised; right, with shoulders lowered

also tell the patient to pull one elbow up slightly, while he resists the movement, after which he again moves the head sideways and forward. This is repeated two or three times.

If, however, the patient cannot raise her arm to the utmost, the therapist stands at that side of the table to which relaxation is carried out. He pushes her shoulder down with one hand, while the other round the back of her occiput and neck produces side-bending, slightly forward and into rotation, so as to take up the slack. Then PIR takes place as described above.

Tension in the upper part of the trapezius muscle (Figure 6.92)

The upper trapezius should be treated if tender and taut. The patient is supine, while the therapist fixes the shoulder from above with one hand, side-bending the head and neck with the other hand so as to take

Figure 6.92 Examination and PIR of tension in the upper part of the trapezius

up the slack. He then asks the patient to look towards the side away from which the head is bent, resisting the patient's automatic tendency to move towards the side of the lesion; the patient must be told to breathe in during this manoeuvre, and to breathe out during relaxation; meanwhile the head is moved further to the side until the slack has again been taken up. Resistance may also be given against the shoulder, from above; in this case the patient is told to lift her shoulder against the resistance of the therapist, with the least possible force: after about 10 s she should 'let go'. The therapist should then bend the head and neck sideways again, to take up the slack. In both cases the procedure is repeated about three times.

The effect of PIR of the levator scapulae and the upper trapezius can be enhanced by antagonist stimulation: the patient, with the head in neutral position, leans against the hand of the therapist and resists slight pressure from the side to which relaxation took place; this pressure the therapist intermittently increases and decreases.

For self-treatment of both the upper trapezius and the levator scapulae, gravity-induced PIR is most effective. The patient sits against a low chair-back with both arms hanging down over it, to ensure straight posture. In this position she raises her shoulders while looking up and breathing in; after holding her breath she breathes out slowly while letting the shoulders drop (Figure 6.93). No good relaxation of these muscles can be obtained with rounded shoulders and the head drawn forward.

Tension in the scalene muscles (Figures 6.94 and 6.95)

In most cases tension of the scalenus does not cause direct pain but is of great clinical significance. As a rule the scalenes are tense if the other upper fixators

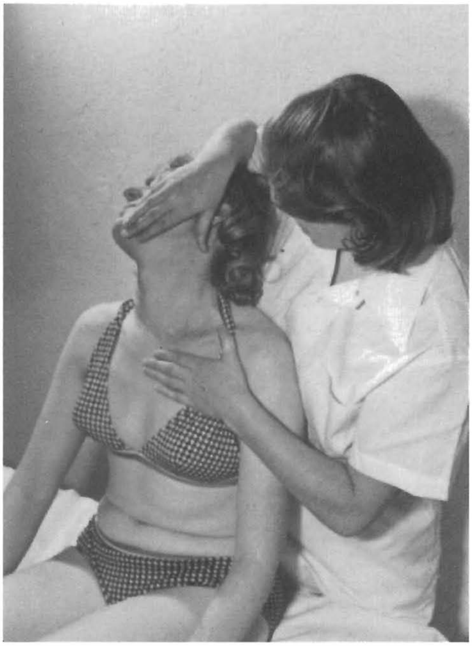


Figure 6.94 Examination and PIR of the scalenus

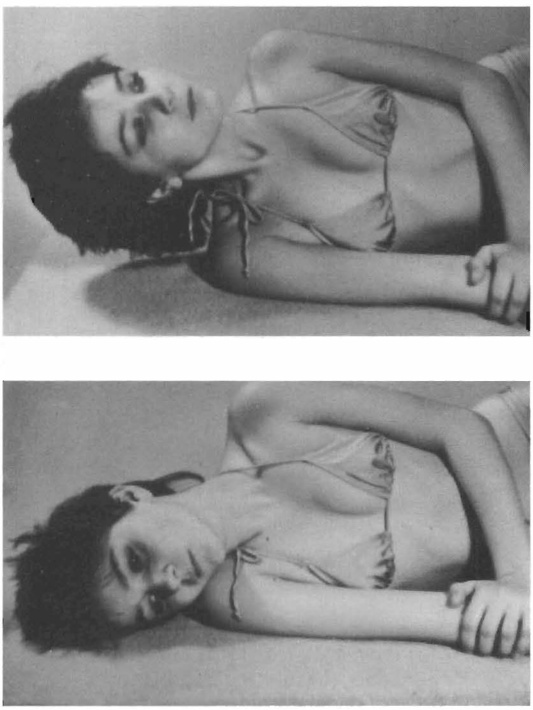


Figure 6.95 Gravity-induced PIR of the scaleni: above, with head raised: below, with head lowered

of the shoulder girdle are tense; they play a decisive role in faulty respiration, causing the patient to lift her thorax, and in the syndrome of the upper thoracic outlet. Tension in the pectorales and pain points at the sternocostal junction of the upper ribs seem to be connected with tension of the scalenes. This may explain why tension of the scalenes seems to produce a sensation of oppression in many patients, who thus feel great relief after PIR. Dysfunction of the first rib goes hand in hand with TrPs of the scalenus on the same side, corresponding to Erb's point. These can be abolished by PIR of the scalenus.

On examination, tension in the scalenus causes restriction of retroflexion of the rotated head to the opposite side. If there is marked cervical lordosis, tension of the scalenes may restrict side-bending of the head with the patient seated, simulating tension in the upper part of the trapezius.

For examination, as for treatment, the patient sits on the table, while the therapist stands behind her and supports the shoulder on the side to be treated, with one hand fixing the upper ribs of the same side by pressure on the patient's chest. With the other hand the therapist turns the patient's head to the other side, bending head and neck backwards so as to take up the slack. He now tells the patient to look to the side of treatment, resisting automatic movement with minimal pressure on the patient's temple, telling her to breathe in slowly; the therapist resists this inhalation by pressing the other hand against the patient's chest with considerable force. To do this his elbow should be raised and brought forward. After full inhalation the patient is told to look to the side of relaxation and to breathe out, letting the head and neck drop into retroflexion (he must not push!). This procedure is repeated about two or three times. There is perhaps no muscle that better lends itself to relaxation than the scalenus.

For self-treatment, gravity-induced PIR is effective. The patient lies on her side, lifting her head, looking up and breathing in; she holds her breath then slowly sinks back to the table while breathing out. This is repeated three times (Figure 6.95). If, however, respiration is at fault, correction of breathing is the method of choice.

Tension in the sternocleidomastoids
(Figure 6.96)

There is frequently a pain point at the medial end of the clavicle and at the transverse process of the atlas. There are, however, numerous trigger points to be found in the course of the muscle (the clavicular as well as the sternal division), particularly below the mastoid process, referring pain to the face and cranium. Tension in the sternocleidomastoid muscle may also produce tension in the subclavicular part of the pectoralis muscle.

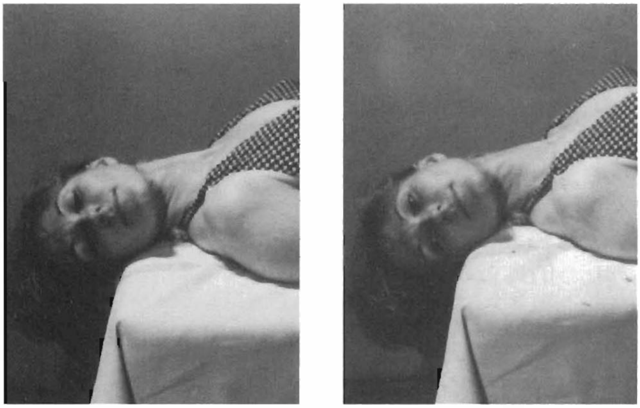


Figure 6.96 Gravity-induced PIR of the sternocleidomastoid muscle. Left: with her head turned to the side over the edge of the table, the patient breathes in and looks up, automatically contracting the sternocleidomastoid and slightly lifting her head. Right: she breathes out and relaxes, thus letting the head drop

For treatment of this condition, gravity-induced PIR is the most effective method. The patient lies supine, with her head rotated and resting over the edge of the table, the chin supported by the edge of the table, acting as a fulcrum. If the left sternomastoid is to be treated, the head is rotated to the right. In this position the patient is told to look up and to take a slow deep breath; during deep inspiration the sternomastoid muscle slightly contracts, lifting the head, which is pivoted on the edge of the table. In this position she holds her breath; after this she looks to the chin and during slow exhalation the patient relaxes, the top of the head is lowered, and a slight stretching of the sternocleidomastoid ensues. This manoeuvre is repeated about three times.

This technique gives excellent results in the treatment of a blocked atlanto-occipital joint, and can be used for self-treatment of this joint. It has a marked analgesic effect on painful or tender transverse processes of the atlas.

Tension in the pectoralis major

Increased tension (shortening) of the upper (clavicular) part of the pectoralis (Figure 6.97) results in a forward-drawn position of the shoulders. For both examination and treatment, the patient is supine, her arm abducted at right angles. The therapist stands at the side of the affected muscle; with his forearm he fixes the patient's sternum from above and palpates the tendon beneath the clavicle with his fingers; it should not be tense even at maximum abduction. The other arm brings the patient's arm into maximum abduction over the side of the table, to take up the slack. For treatment the patient is told to lift her arm against the therapist's hand, using little force, while breathing in slowly. Once the patient has found the correct direction of abduction, the force of gravity is sufficient to hold it, and the patient is ready for self-treatment: she is told to lift the fully abducted arm about 2 cm, breathing in slowly and to hold her breath. She then relaxes and breathes out slowly, repeating this procedure about three times. She should not relax suddenly, as this would cause brusque stretching.

If the sternocostal part of the pectoralis muscle is tense the patient tends to be round shouldered; full elevation of the arm is restricted (Figure 6.98), and the tendon in the axilla is taut on palpation, as well as tender. TrPs can be palpated by a pincer movement with the fingers between the muscle and the ribs, and the thumb on the surface of the chest. Fixation and treatment are similar to that prescribed for the upper part of the muscle. Once the patient has understood the correct position and direction, gravity-induced PIR is carried out by the patient herself.

(a)

Figure 6.97 (*a*) Examination and PIR of the clavicular part of the pectoralis. (*b*) (See opposite) Gravity-induced PIR (self-treatment) of the clavicular part of the pectoralis: top, inhalation and slight raising of the arm; bottom, exhalation and relaxation letting the arm fall b)

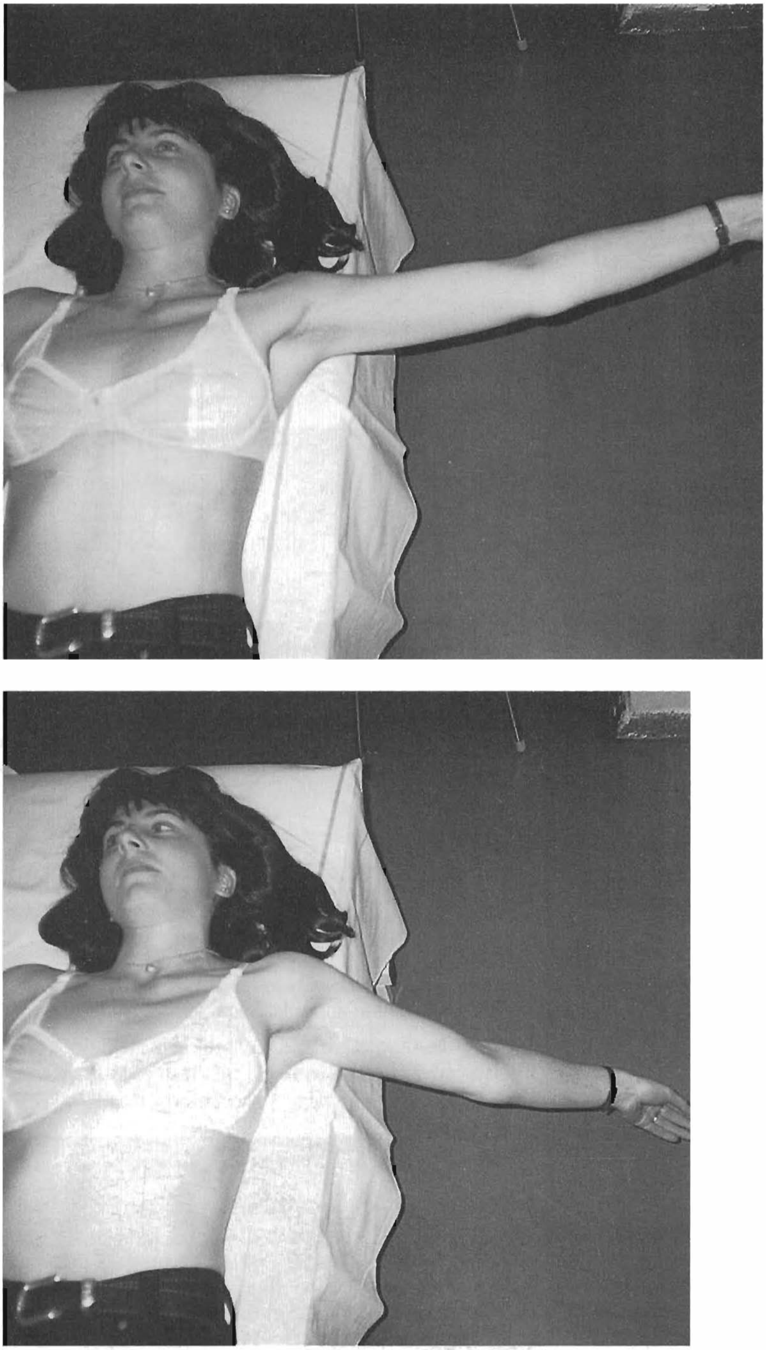
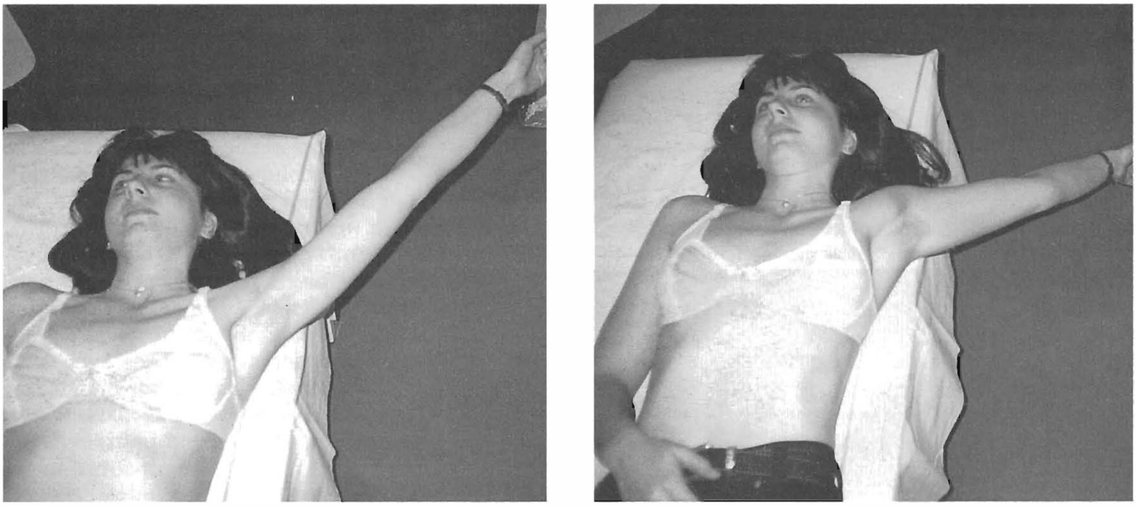


Figure 6.97 (continued)

Tension and TrPs of the pectoralis can also be effectively treated by stimulation of the antagonist, the latissimus dorsi. The patient is seated, the therapist standing behind her; she lifts her arm to the level of her shoulder with the elbow flexed. She resists the moderate intermittent pressure which the therapist is exerting against her elbow from behind.

(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.98 (*a*) Examination and PIR of the sternal part of the pectoralis major. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR (self-treatment) of the pectoralis major: left, inhalation and slight raising of the arm; right, exhalation and relaxation, letting the arm drop

Pain points on the ribs (Figure 6.99)

These points are found most frequently in the mid-axillary and mid-clavicular line, and their treatment is of particular importance. These pain points are the points of attachment of fibres of the pectorales and serratus muscles with increased tension. For treatment of pain points in the mid-clavicular line the patient lies supine; the therapist lifts the patient's arm to produce tension in those fibres that are directed towards the pain point. This can be palpated with the thumb at the pain point, and often is visible to the eye. Once the correct direction has been established, the therapist takes up the slack by elevation of the patient's arm. He then tells her to press gently against the hand holding the arm up and to breathe in against the thumb (or thenar eminence) on the pain point. This is followed by exhalation and relaxation of the arm into further

Figure 6.99 Specific treatment of pectoralis fibres attached to a pain point on a rib

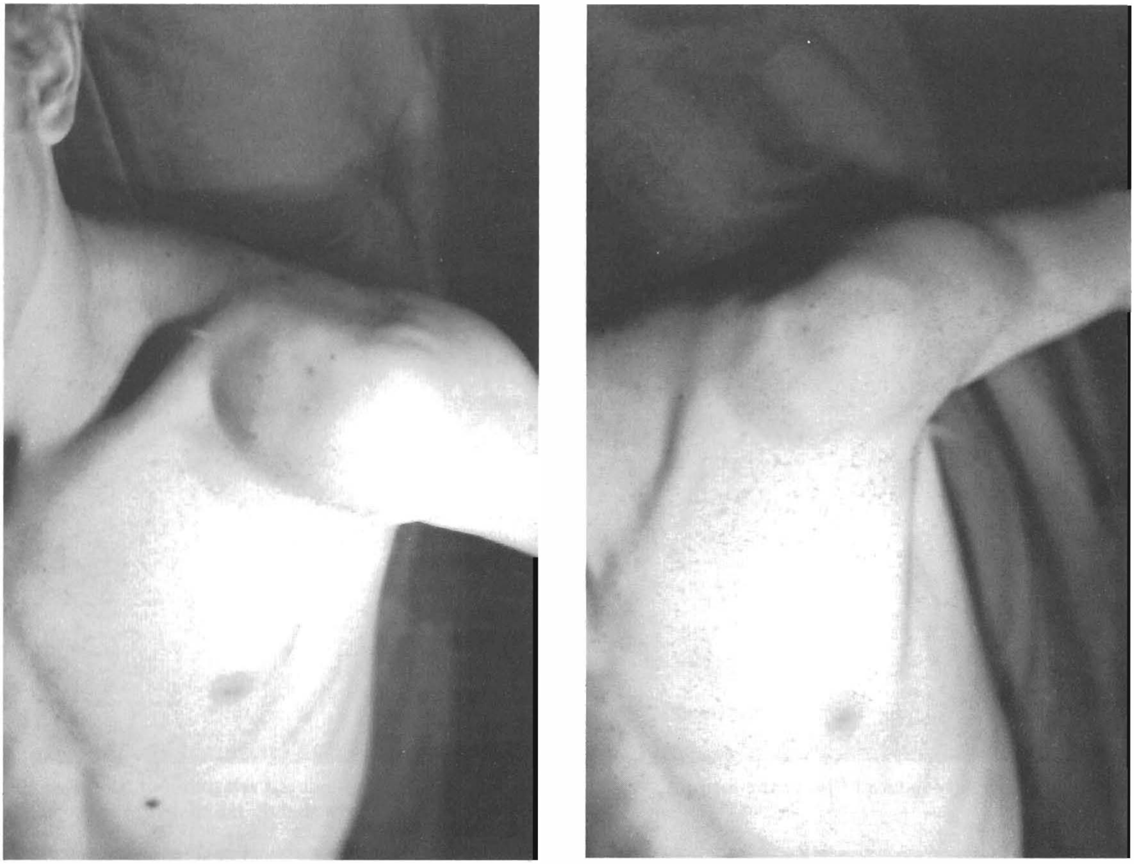


Figure 6.100 Gravity-induced PIR of the pectoralis minor: left, the shoulder over the edge of the table, raised; right, the shoulder lowered during relaxation

elevation. After two or three repetitions the therapist feels that the tension has disappeared, and this usually means that the tenderness at the pain point, too, has been abolished.

M. pectoralis minor (Figure 6.100)

This muscle attaches at the coracoid process and at the third to fifth ribs, where palpation can be painful. Increased tension produces forward-drawn shoulders and according to Hong and Simons can be a cause of the upper thoracic outlet syndrome. Pain from TrPs close to the attachment points at the ribs refers to the ulnar aspect of the upper extremity.

For treatment we use gravity-induced PIR. The patient is supine close to the edge of the table with her arm hanging down over the edge; the slack is taken up by the weight of the arm. She now raises her shoulder and arm while breathing in slowly, holds her breath and then lets the arm drop, breathing out and relaxing.

Tension in the serratus anterior (Figure 6.101)

This muscle attaches at the ribs in the axillar line, and there are painful trigger points close to and at these attachment points. For examination the patient lies on her side, the lower leg (on the table) stretched out while the upper is bent at the hip; the knee on the table stabilizes her trunk. The examiner raises the patient's arm so as to create tension at the painful attachment point at the ribs. The technique used for relaxation is similar to that shown in Figure 6.99 for the pectoralis. For self-treatment, gravity-induced PIR is useful. The patient lies on her side in the same position as during examination; she brings her arm into abduction with retroflexion, until she has taken up the slack. She then breathes in while raising the arm slightly (Figure 6.101, above), holds her breath, and then lets the arm drop back to the original position, while she breathes out and relaxes (Figure 6.101. below).

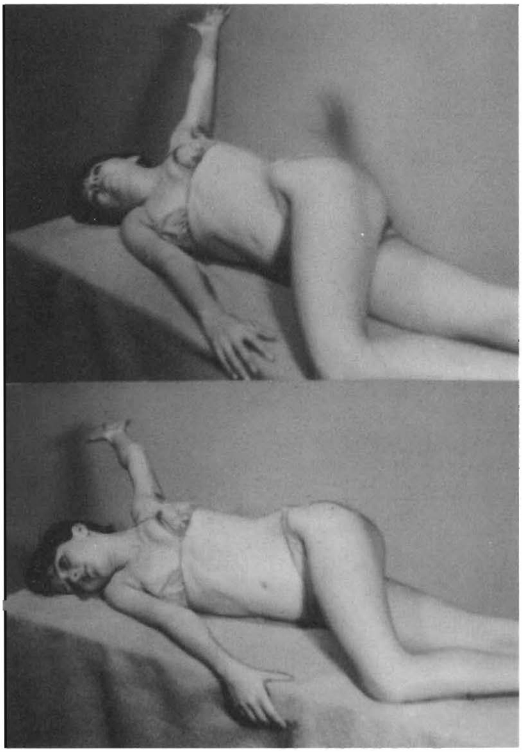


Figure 6.101 Gravity-induced PIR of the serratus anterior

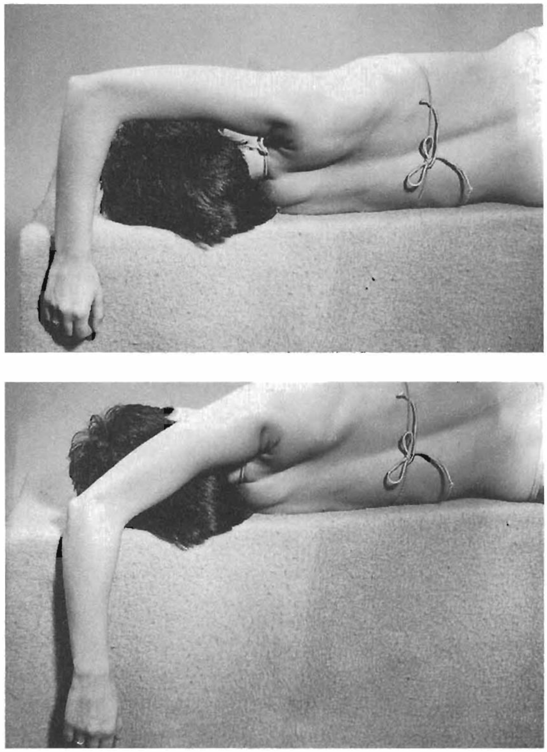


Figure 6.102 Gravity-induced relaxation of the latissimus dorsi: above the elbow slightly raised, below it drops

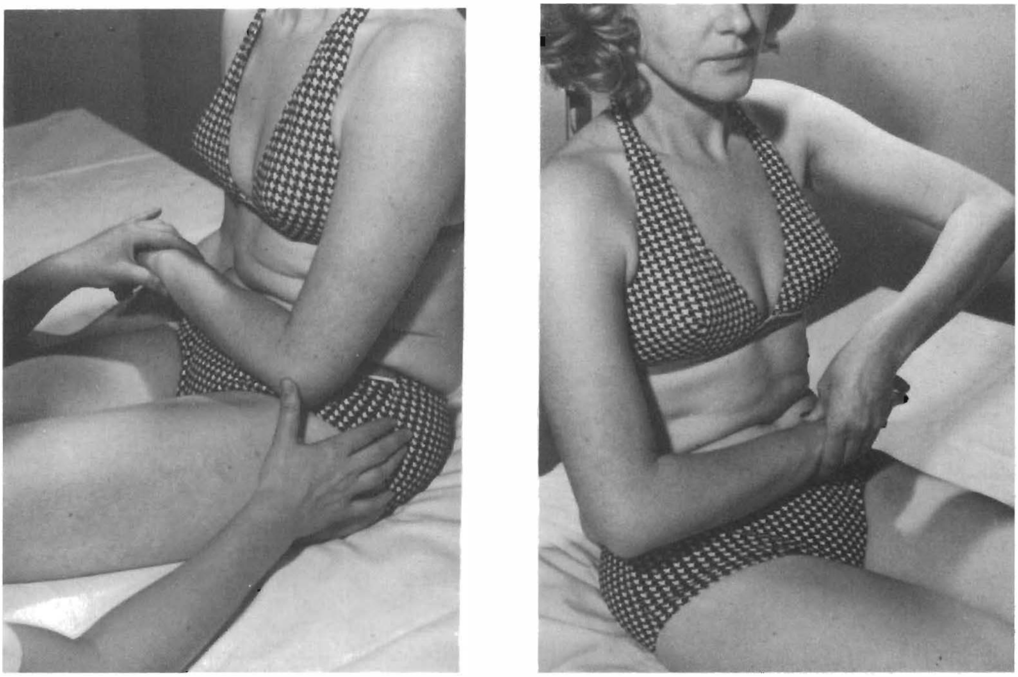
Musculus latissimus dorsi (Figure 6.102)

This muscle links the shoulder girdle to the pelvic girdle; it attaches at the humerus and together with the teres major adducts and extends the arm. There can be TrPs below the axilla and further down the back. Pain radiates from the shoulder-blade down the ulnar aspect of the arm. For treatment, gravity-induced PIR is most practical. The patient lies on her side, her back close to the edge of the table; above and behind her head she places her arm, bent at the elbow with the forearm hanging down. She now raises the elbow while slowly breathing in; after holding her breath she lets the elbow drop and breathes out.

Painful lateral humeral epicondyle

In addition to blockage at the elbow there is usually tension in the supinator, in the extensors of the hand and fingers, and in the biceps. If the supinator is tense (Figure 6.103) there is restricted pronation on the affected side. For treatment the patient may be supine or seated, with the elbow flexed and fixed by the therapist against the patient's trunk. He stands facing the patient and brings his forearm into pronation in order to take up the slack. The patient is then told to supinate with minimal force, the therapist resisting for about 10 s, after which he tells the patient to 'let go'. When relaxation is achieved, the therapist brings the forearm further into pronation until the slack has been taken up once more. After three to five repetitions there is usually no difference between the two sides, and pain should be reduced. For self-treatment the patient performs the therapist's movements with her own hands.

If the extensors are in tension, TrPs can easily be found at the forearm; the flexion of both wrist and fingers is restricted on the side of the tension, i.e. we compare how far the fingertips are from the forearm, on each side, at maximum combined flexion of the wrist and fingers. For treatment (Figure 6.104) the therapist places his palm on the back of the patient's hand and his fingers over her flexed fingers, taking up the slack into flexion of the fingers and hand. He then tells the patient to press her fingers slightly into extension; after resisting this pressure for about 10 s the therapist tells the patient to 'let go', increasing flexion of the wrist and fingers as far as relaxation allows. The procedure is repeated about five times. For self-treatment the patient places her thenar eminence and thumb over her flexed fingers,



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 6.103 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the supinator. (*b*) Self-treatment

(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 6.104 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the extensors of the hand and fingers. (*b*) Self-treatment bringing her wrist into flexion. She then continues in the same manner as the therapist.

If the biceps is in tension, extension of the elbow is (slightly) restricted. For treatment (Figure 6.105) the therapist extends the patient's elbow so as to take up the slack and asks her to exert slight counter-pressure for about 10 s, followed by relaxation into extension. This is repeated three to five times. For self-treatment the patient uses her own knee as a fulcrum; she may also use gravity-induced PIR by alternately lifting the forearm about 2 cm, holding this position for about 20 s, and then relaxing into extension for another 20 s.

(*a*)

Intermittent antagonist stimulation is both simple and effective with all three muscles involved in pain at the lateral epicondyle. The patient exerts moderate pressure in the direction of relaxation, against resistance by the therapist, rapidly and rhythmically increasing and lowering it.

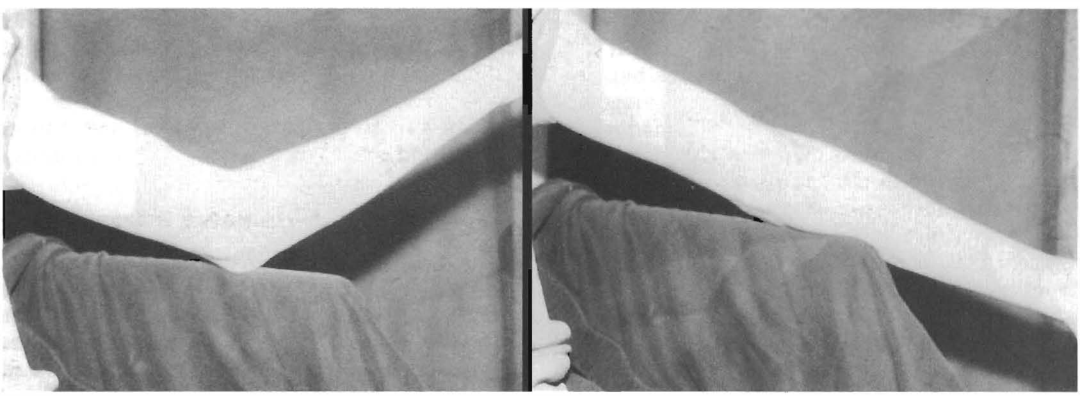
Painful medial humeral epicondyle

In this condition tension is felt in the flexors at the forearm. For treatment (Figure 6.106) the patient sits facing the therapist, with her elbow flexed and the hand in dorsiflexion at the wrist. The therapist threads his fingers between the patient's thumb and forefinger, from the radial to the ulnar side, with his thumb on the dorsal surface of the hand acting as a fulcrum. He thus takes up the slack into pronation by slightly pressing his fingers against the ulnar side of the patient's palm. He then tells the patient to resist this movement by slight counter-pressure into supination. After about 10 s the patient is told to 'let go', increasing pronation and dorsiflexion during relaxation. This procedure is repeated three to five times.

For self-treatment the patient holds the affected hand in the same way, but with her other hand she grasps the ulnar aspect of the hand being treated, on the palmar side, placing her thumb on the dorsal aspect as a fulcrum so as to take up the slack into pronation. She then repeats the therapist's movements.

Pain arising in the long head of the biceps

This should be diagnosed by raising the semi-flexed arm at the shoulder, against resistance. To palpate tenderness of the long tendon of the biceps between the tubercles and the cristae of the humerus is very misleading, because there are frequently painful attachment points of the subscapularis and the infraspinatus at both these structures.



(*b*)

Figure 6.105 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the biceps brachii. (*b*) Self-treatment

(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 6.106 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the flexors of the hand and fingers. (*b*) Self-treatment

For treatment (Figure 6.107) the patient sits in front of the therapist with her hand behind her back the dorsal aspect of this hand passing over the buttock on the opposite side. The therapist grasps this hand, bringing it into pronation to take up the slack. In this position the patient is told to apply slight counter-pressure (into supination), resisted for about 10 s by the therapist. The patient is told to 'let go' and relax into pronation and simultaneous extension at the elbow. This is repeated three to five times. For self-treatment the patient deals with her own hand in exactly the same way.

Pain arising in the m. triceps (Figure 6.108)

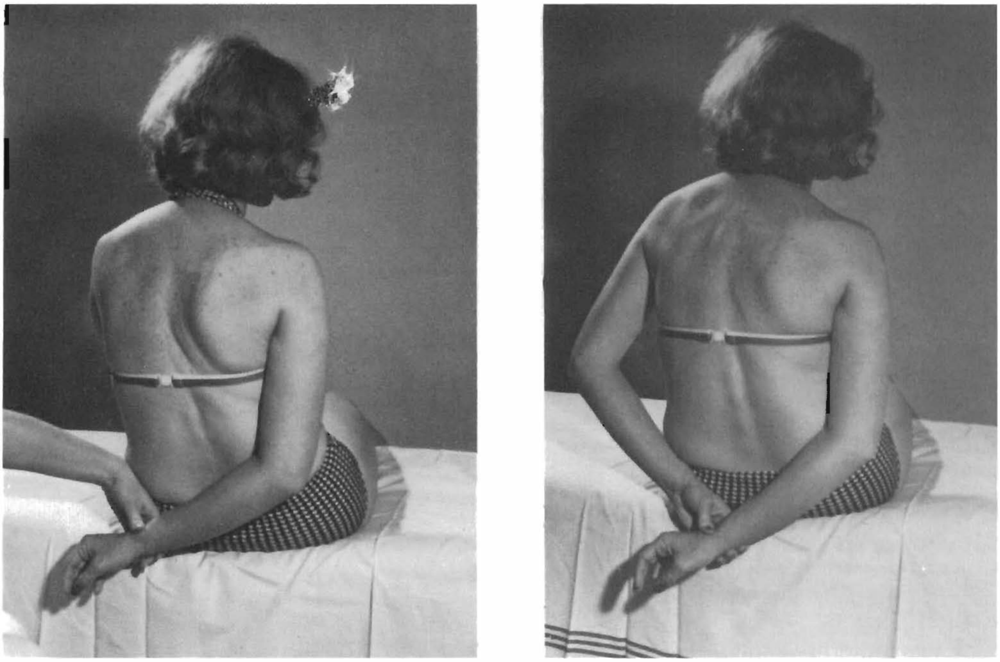
TrPs in the triceps may cause epicondylar pain. A TrP of the long head of the triceps, which attaches to the scapula, causes pain at the axilla (Krobot, 1994). This pain is provoked by pushing the arm against resistance. Treatment (self-treatment) is by gravity-induced PIR: the patient lifts her elbow above her head with the forearm horizontal; she now slightly raises her forearm for about 20 s, after that she lets it drop and relaxes for another 20 s. Rhythmic intermittent contraction of the biceps against little resistance will enhance the effect of relaxation.

Tension in the supraspinatus muscle

In this condition, abduction against resistance is painful and there is a TrP in the fossa supraspinata. For treatment the therapist stands behind the patient seated on the table (Figure 6.109) and brings the patient's flexed arm into adduction in front of her chest, to take up the slack. In this position the patient is told to exert slight counter-pressure into abduction and to breathe in; the therapist resists this pressure for about 10s, when the patient is told to 'let go' and breathe out. During this relaxation phase the therapist brings the arm further into adduction. This is repeated about three times. For self-treatment the patient does exactly the same, using her own hand.

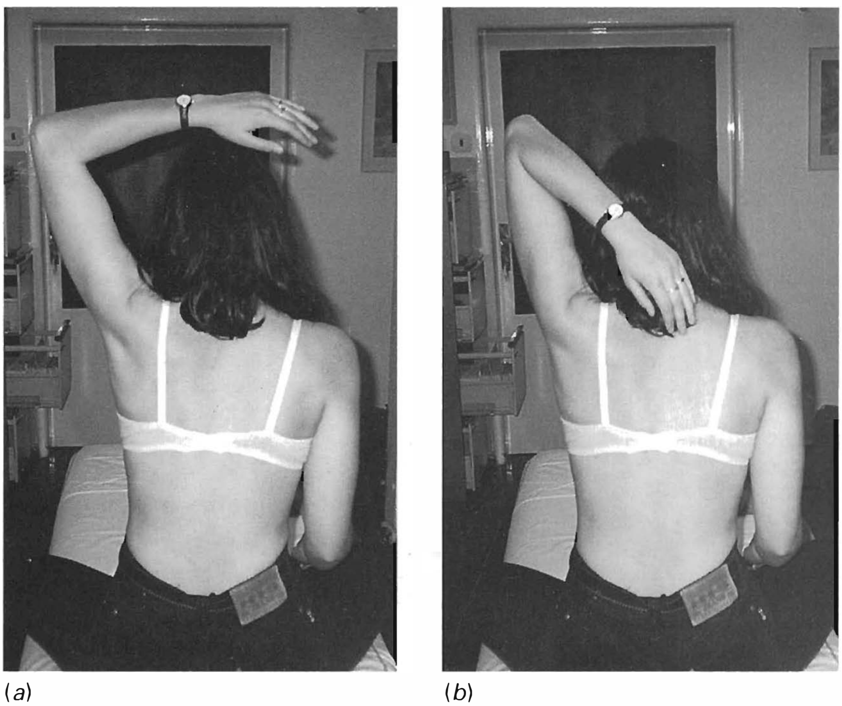
Tension in the infraspinatus muscle

In this condition external rotation against resistance is painful and there are TrPs in the fossa infraspinata. Here gravity-induced PIR is most advantageous (Figure 6.110). The patient lies supine with her arm in abduction over the side of the table and the elbow bent at right angles, the forearm pointing towards the hip. By relaxation the slack is taken up in internal rotation at the shoulder. The



(a) (b)

Figure 6.107 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the biceps if the long tendon is painful. (*b*) Self-treatment



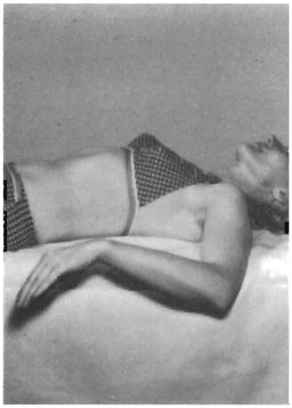
(a) (b)

Figure 6.108 Gravity-induced PIR of the triceps: (*a*) the forearm raised; (*b*) relaxation

(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 6.109 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the supraspinatus. (*b*) Self-treatment



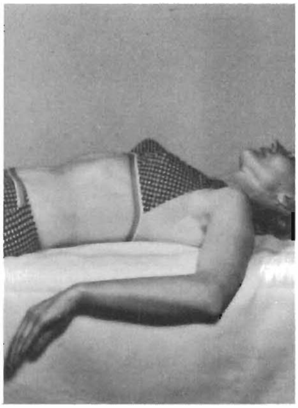


Figure 6.110 Gravity-induced PIR of the infraspinatus muscle: the arm is held over the edge of the table, in internal rotation. Left: the arm is slightly raised; right: it drops, relaxed

patient now lifts the forearm about 2 cm, holding it for about 20 s, then relaxing into internal rotation for another 20 s. This is repeated about three times.

Tension in the subscapularis muscle

If this muscle contracts, adduction and internal rotation result, i.e. the 'frozen shoulder' position. It appears that there is indeed a close relationship between the muscle and this condition, and that painful spasm of the subscapularis, with trigger points, accompanies frozen shoulder from the outset. Besides the clinical picture of 'frozen shoulder' with pain radiating to the wrist, there may simply be pain in the shoulder or the shoulder-blade, or even in the thorax (if this pain is on the left, it may imitate cardiac pain). There may be pain at the lungs, with respiratory restriction.

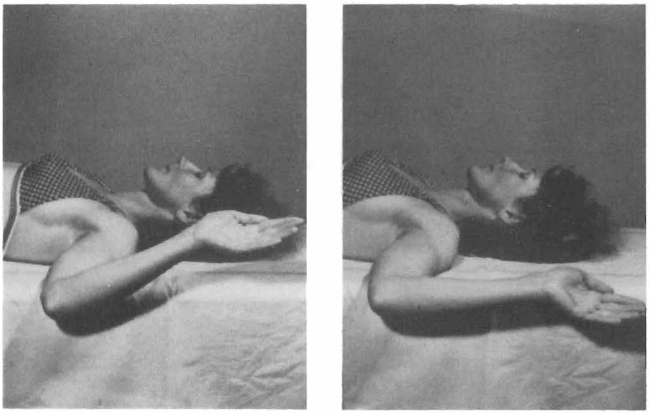
Direct palpation is essential for diagnosis. For this the patient is supine with the upper extremity in slight abduction. The therapist grasps the patient's hand and gives axial traction while with the fingers of the other hand he penetrates over the edge of the latissimus dorsi on to the ventral aspect of the scapula with the subscapularis muscle and its trigger points. The moment he touches the muscle, the patient will react on the affected side.

Here, too, gravity-induced PIR is the treatment of choice. The patient is supine, her arm abducted as far as her condition allows, the elbow flexed at right angles and the forearm in external rotation (Figure 6.111*a*), relaxed so as to take up the slack by the weight of the forearm. She now raises her arm about 2 cm and holds this position for at least 20 s, then relaxes into external rotation. If spasm is so severe that external rotation is too little for gravity to be effective in the supine position, the patient may lie on the affected side (Figure 6.111*b*). The procedure must be repeated three to five times. This is one of the few effective methods of dealing with a frozen shoulder.

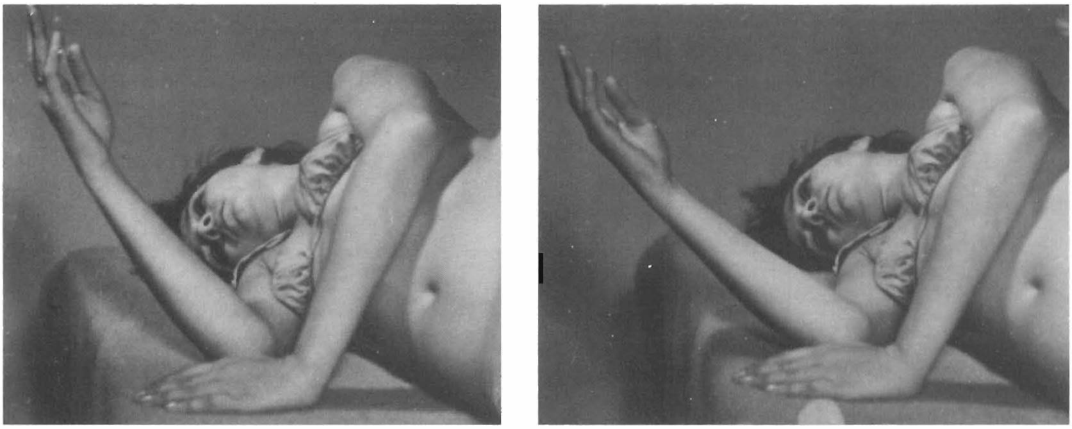
PIR of both the infraspinatus and subscapularis can be considerably enhanced by rhythmic pressure of little force against the patient's forearm, in the direction of relaxation. This is resisted by the patient.

Tension in the erector spinae

Increased tension and pain, including trigger points, are very frequent in all parts of the erector spinae



(a)



(b)

Figure 6.111 (*a*) Gravity-induced PIR of the subscapularis. The arm is held over the edge of the table, in external rotation. Left, the arm is slightly raised; right, it drops, relaxed. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR of the subscapularis in a frozen shoulder with severe movement restriction: left, the forearm raised in inward rotation of the shoulder; right, the forearm lowered in outward rotation of the shoulder

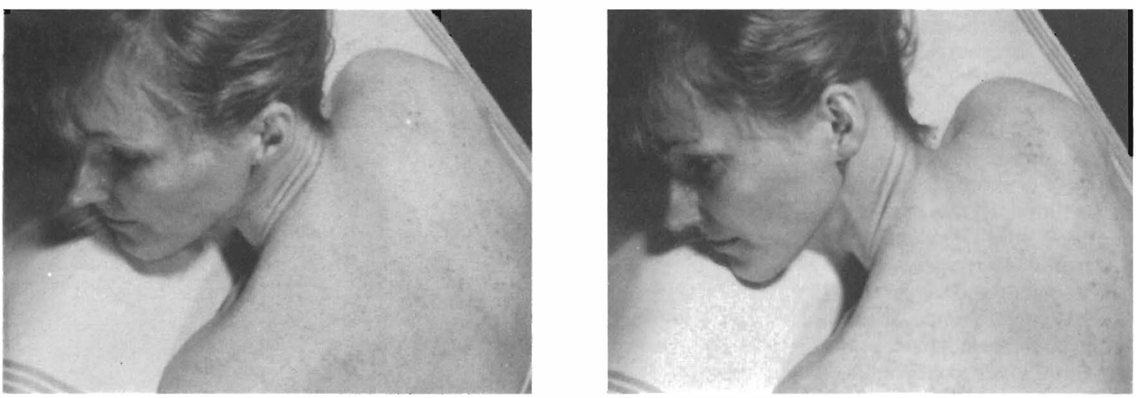


Figure 6.112 Gravity-induced PIR of the cervical and upper thoracic erector spinae: the rotated head over the edge of the table is (left) slightly raised (inhalation) and then (right) relaxed, whereupon it drops (exhalation)

muscle. If the muscle is shortened, full stretch is obtained by anteflexion, side-bending and rotation to each side.

Treatment of the cervical and upper thoracic part of the erector spinae

Here, gravity-induced PIR is useful and simple (Figure 6.112): the patient lies prone, her head only slightly over the end of the table and turned towards the side of intended treatment, so that it is supported between the chin and the mastoid process. If the cervical part of the muscle is to be relaxed, the head is only very slightly lifted, so that the cervical part contracts; this position is held for a while, the patient slowly breathing in. Then she relaxes, slowly dropping her head. If the upper thoracic part of the muscle is to be treated, the head is raised further, until contraction is felt. Again the patient breathes in slowly, while during exhalation she relaxes and drops her head over the edge of the table. This is repeated about three times.

The erector spinae of the cervicothoracic junction and in the upper thoracic region is also treated with the patient seated in front of the therapist. For the cervicothoracic region (Figure 6.113) the therapist fixes the shoulder on the side of treatment with one hand, while the other passes round the patient's head to bend it forward to the side and into rotation away from the affected side, until he has taken up the slack. The patient is then told to look in the opposite direction; the therapist resists the automatic counter-pressure while the patient breathes in slowly. The patient is then told to look to the side of rotation and to breathe out. This is repeated about three times.

For treatment of the upper thoracic erector spinae the technique is the same, except that the therapist does not fix the shoulder, but the upper ribs, in a manner similar to restricted anteflexion of the upper thoracic spine (see Figure 6.37, p. 182).

Figure 6.113 PIR of the cervicothoracic part of the erector spinae with the patient seated

Treatment of the lower thoracic and upper lumbar part of the erector spinae

The patient is seated (Figure 6.114), her hands clasped behind her neck. The therapist stands behind her and threads his arm under the axilla of the patient to the shoulder on the opposite side (the side of treatment), so as to obtain anteflexion, side-bending and rotation. The summit of the curve thus obtained should correspond to the point of maximum tension (trigger point). In order to achieve this the therapist supports the patient with his thigh, which acts as a fulcrum, placing his knee on the table on the side towards which the patient is bent and rotated. After taking up the slack in anteflexion, side-bending and rotation, the patient is told to look in the opposite direction and to breathe slowly into the top of the curve, while the therapist resists the automatic tendency for her to turn to the opposite side. After this, the patient is told to look towards the side of rotation and to breathe out, automatically relaxing over the therapist's thigh. This is repeated about three times, the free hand checking muscle relaxation.

For the last two techniques it is important to start with anteflexion down to the TrP to be treated and only then to side-bend, and to rotate the head – but only so far as to create tension in the erector spinae.

Figure 6.114 PIR of the thoracolumbar part of the erector spinae with the patient seated

Treatment of the low lumbar erector spinae

Gravity-induced PIR is most suitable, as it is also a method of self-treatment (Figure 6.115). Because the position is identical with that used for mobilization of the lumbar spine into flexion (see Figure 6.31, p. 177), this technique can also be used for self-mobilization of the lumbar spine. The patient lies on her side in kyphosis, the lower leg bent at the hip and knee, the upper hanging over the edge of the table bringing the pelvis into a forward-tilted position: she looks up at the ceiling in order to rotate the head and shoulder in the opposite direction from that of the pelvis. In this position the patient relaxes and the weight of the leg hanging down is sufficient to take up the slack of the low lumbar erector spinae. The patient then lifts the leg about 2 cm, breathing in slowly; during expiration she lets the leg fall slowly, increasing lumbar kyphosis and pelvic rotation. This technique may be usefully applied in the treatment of pain at the spinous processes, most frequently between L4 and S1; the painful side must lie uppermost. Here it is helpful if the therapist first fixes the tender spinous process from above, to give the patient the exact feel of the direction of the pull of the hanging leg.

For self-treatment of the erector spinae while seated, the following technique is effective (Figure 6.116): with her hand on the top of her head the patient brings head and trunk into a position of anteflexion, side-bending and rotation, treating the erector spinae on the convex side. The curve should culminate at the point where treatment is indicated. After taking up the slack, the patient looks in the opposite direction from the rotation, resisting the automatic movement in the reverse direction by the hand on her head, while slowly breathing in. She holds her breath and then looks in the opposite direction (that of rotation) and breathes out, automatically producing relaxation. The procedure is repeated about three times. Where gravity-induced PIR is used no other self-treatment is needed.

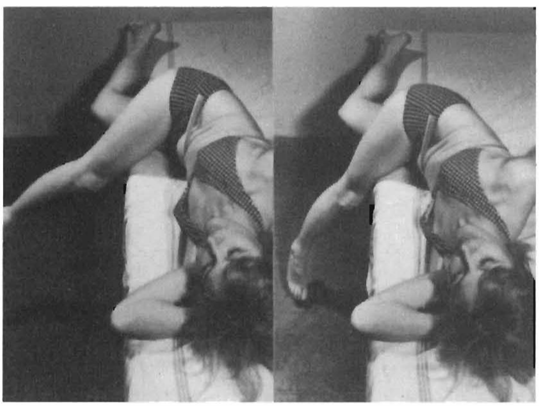


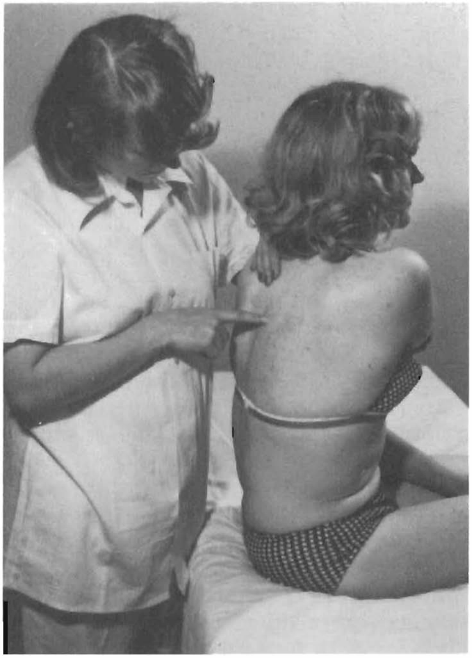
Figure 6.115 Gravity-induced PIR of the lower lumbar erector spinae with the patient on her side: left, the leg hanging over the side of the table is slightly raised (inhalation); right, the leg drops in relaxation (exhalation)

Figure 6.116 Self-treatment of the erector spinae, sitting: the hand on the head induces anteflexion, rotation and side-bending of the trunk, the curve culminating at the point where treatment is applied

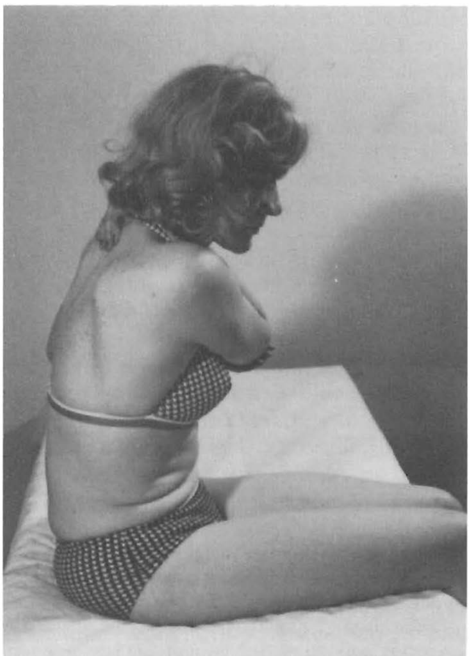
Pain close to the medial angle of the scapula in the middle trapezius

Pain close to the medial angle of the scapula with a pain point at this site is the rule in radicular syndromes in the upper extremity and is also frequently found in non-radicular cervicobrachial syndromes. For diagnosis the examiner adducts the patient's elbow towards the chest so as to create tension at the attachment point of the muscle at the scapula. Increased tension can frequently be seen, the muscle protruding like a ropy band: at this point a painful TrP can be found by snapping palpation.

Treatment follows the same technique as that for diagnosis (Figure 6.117). For this purpose the patient's elbow is adducted towards her chest in the horizontal plane, to take up the slack. She is seated in front of the therapist who tells her to give slight counter-pressure with her elbow and to breathe into



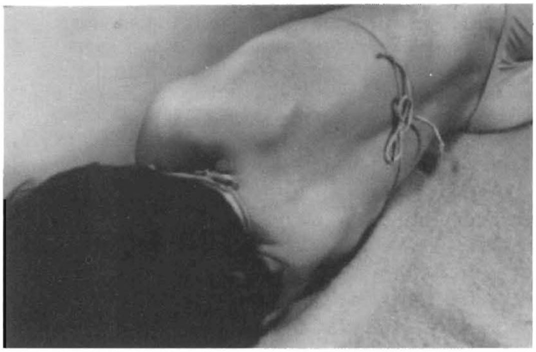
(a)



(b)

Figure 6.117 (a) Examination and treatment of tension in the middle trapezius. (b) Self-treatment

(a)



(b)

Figure 6.118 Gravity-induced PIR of the middle trapezius: the patient lies on her side with the arm over the edge of the table. (a) She raises her elbow slightly, thus contracting the middle trapezius, and breathes in; (b) she lets the arm drop, relaxes and breathes out

the painful area. She holds her breath, then relaxes and breathes out slowly. In self-treatment the patient uses her other hand against her elbow, in the same way as the therapist. Gravity-induced PIR may be even better. The patient lies on the non-painful side at the edge of the table, her arm hanging almost vertically over the edge. She now raises the elbow slightly, breathing in slowly; she holds her breath and then lets the arm drop while breathing out slowly (Figure 6.118).

Tension in the quadratus lumborum

For tautness of this muscle see p. 126 (Figure 4.54). TrPs should be palpated by a pincer movement of the thumb and forefinger, at the waist, comparing the two sides. The patient may be prone or supine; deep trigger points are better palpated with the patient lying on her side. Tension in this muscle may interfere with side-bending of the trunk, and cause pain at the lowest ribs and on the iliac crest. It is treated very simply by gravity-induced PIR (Figure 6.119).

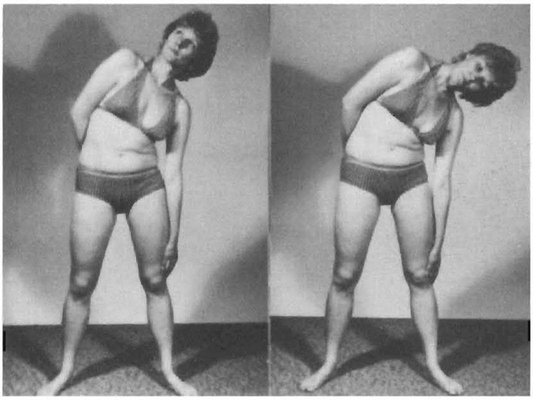


Figure 6.119 Gravity-induced PIR of the quadratus lumborum with the patient standing with legs apart, bending sideways: left, trunk slightly raised during inhalation and looking up; right, increased side-bending during exhalation, looking down and relaxing

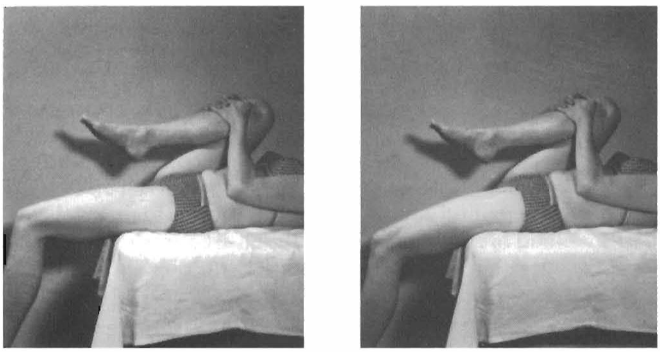
The patient stands with her legs apart and relaxes into maximum side-bending (taking up the slack). On looking up while taking a slow deep breath, her quadratus lumborum automatically contracts, slightly raising the trunk; when the patient looks down and breathes out slowly, the muscle relaxes and side-bending increases its range. This technique is particularly effective; however, it only works automatically if the patient has indeed completely relaxed when taking up the slack.

The iliopsoas muscle

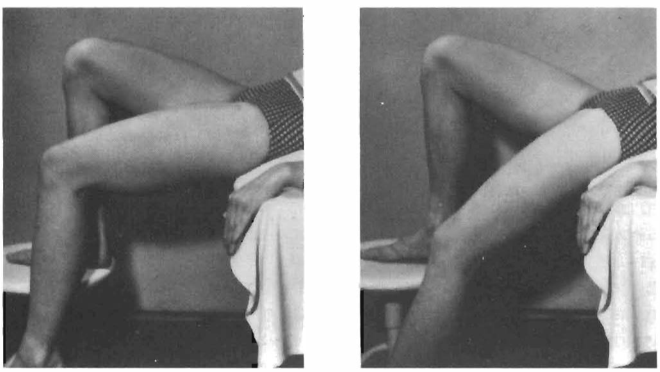
Increased tension (TrPs) in the psoas muscle is felt through the abdominal wall, parallel to the spinal column, while tension (TrPs) of the iliacus is parallel to Poupart's ligament in the innominate. For treatment (Figure 6.120) we use the same position as for examination (see Figure 4.52, p. 125), employing gravity-induced PIR. The patient is told to lift her knee slightly (about 2 m) and to breathe in slowly, and then slowly to let the knee drop while breathing out.

Tension in the rectus abdominis

Increased tension in the straight abdominal muscles may manifest itself in trigger points causing referred pain simulating visceral disease, as well as low-back pain. It may cause a forward-drawn posture and back-bending restriction. Direct palpation of the trigger points is best performed with a pincer

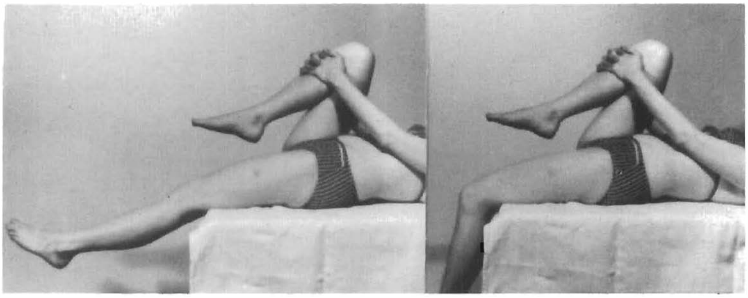


(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.120 (*a*) Gravity-induced PIR of the iliopsoas: the patient lies supine with her buttocks at the edge of the table, drawing one knee to the chest while the other leg hangs over the edge of the table. Left, the leg is slightly raised; right, she lets it drop, in relaxation. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR of the rectus abdominis: the patient lies supine with her buttocks at the edge of the table, her legs hanging over the edge. One is supported by a stool while the buttock of the free-hanging leg is raised by a cushion. Left, the leg is slightly raised at the knee; right, she lets it drop, in relaxation



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 6.121 Gravity-induced PIR of the rectus femoris: the patient's buttocks are near the edge of the table, one knee drawn to the chest while the other hangs over the edge of the table. (*a*) The leg is stretched at the knee for 20 s; (*b*) it hangs down relaxed for 20 s

movement by a hand on each side of the straight abdominal muscle; increased tension in the abdominal wall is easily palpated. It is also very easy to palpate the tender attachment points on the upper aspect of the pubic symphysis and the lower aspect of the xiphoid process and the adjacent parts of the lower ribs.

For treatment, gravity-induced PIR is most effective: the patient is supine with her buttocks at the end of the table, her legs hanging over the edge. A stool is placed under the foot of the side which is not being treated; the patient is then turned to that side, so that a cushion can be inserted under the buttock of the side to be treated, lifting this side of the pelvis. In this position the patient relaxes to take up the slack by the weight of the hanging leg. She then lifts the knee of that leg about 2 cm, holding it slightly raised during slow inhalation. After this she holds her breath, before letting it drop and breathing out slowly. This manoeuvre is repeated about three times (Figure 6.120*b*). This technique acts mainly on the insertions at the symphysis; if we wish to act primarily on the xiphoid process and the upper part of the straight abdominal muscle, it is better for the patient to raise her head and shoulders and breathe in, then let the head and shoulders drop while slowly breathing out. This exercise can be used for self-treatment, the patient performing it two or three times in succession.

Tension (TrPs) in the rectus femoris

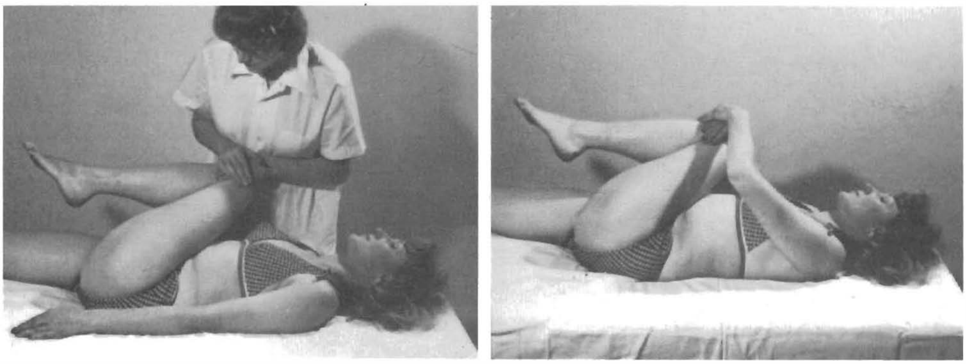
The femoral nerve stretch test is as characteristic here as for the L4 root syndrome and for pseudoradicular (reflex) symptoms caused by blockage at the L3/4 segment. In addition there are TrPs in the rectus femoris. For treatment, gravity-induced PIR is the simplest and most effective technique; the position is the same as for treatment of the iliopsoas, but instead of lifting her knee, the patient extends the knee and lifts the leg, holding it horizontal for 20 s. She then lets it drop into flexion and relaxes for another 20 s. This is repeated about three times (Figure 6.121).

Lumbosacroiliac 'ligament' pain

When ligament pain is tested, increased tension is usually found on the affected side, together with movement restriction into adduction (see p. 101). In this condition PIR is the treatment of choice (Figure 6.122): the patient is supine, the therapist at the opposite side of the table to the leg to be treated. The patient flexes that leg at the hip and knee; the therapist grasps the knee, bringing it into adduction and flexing the hip so as to find the position in which there is the greatest resistance to adduction and the most pronounced pain, whether this pain corresponds more to the iliolumbar or to the sacroiliac ligament. When the therapist has taken up the slack into adduction in that position, the patient is told to resist the pressure of his hand, slightly, for about 10 s, and then to 'let go'. During relaxation, adduction is increased (this may be painful, but if the patient goes on relaxing inspite of it, the pain is not clinically important) and when the slack has been taken up again the procedure is repeated from the newly gained position, three to five times. For self-treatment the patient uses her hands, one maintaining flexion at the hip while the other moves the knee into adduction.

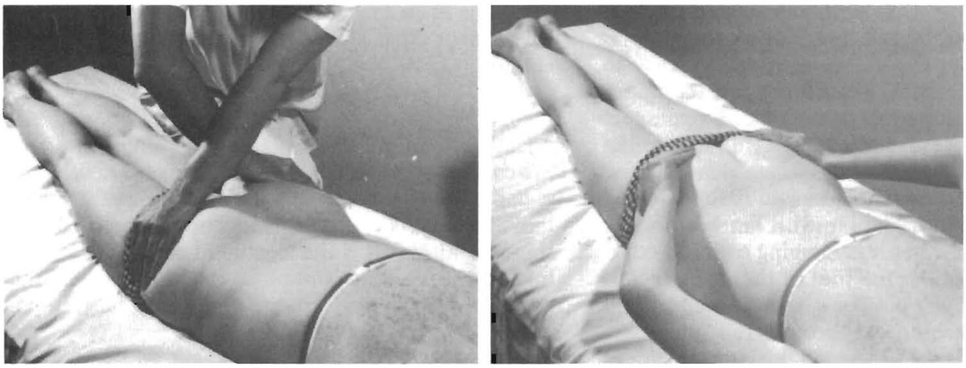
Painful (tender) coccyx

This condition is most frequently due to increased tension in the gluteus maximus and the levator ani. PIR of the gluteus maximus is the treatment of choice (Figure 6.123): the patient is prone, with the heels rotated outwards. The therapist crosses his hands, placing one on each buttock at the level of the anus. As a rule he feels increased tension but there is no tenderness. The patient is told to press her buttocks together with very little force and to



(a) (b)

Figure 6.122 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in muscles in cases known as ligament pain. (*b*) Self-treatment



(a) (b)

Figure 6.123 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the gluteus maximus, for tenderness of the coccyx. (*b*) Self-treatment

maintain this pressure for about 10 s, then to 'let go'. During relaxation the therapist feels the tension in the muscles diminishing. This is repeated three to five times, and palpation of the coccyx is then easier and usually painless.

For self-treatment the patient is supine, with her hands under her buttocks, feeling increased tension as she presses the buttocks together, holding the pressure for 20 s and then relaxing for another 20 s. As the gluteus maximus contracts and relaxes, so does the levator ani.

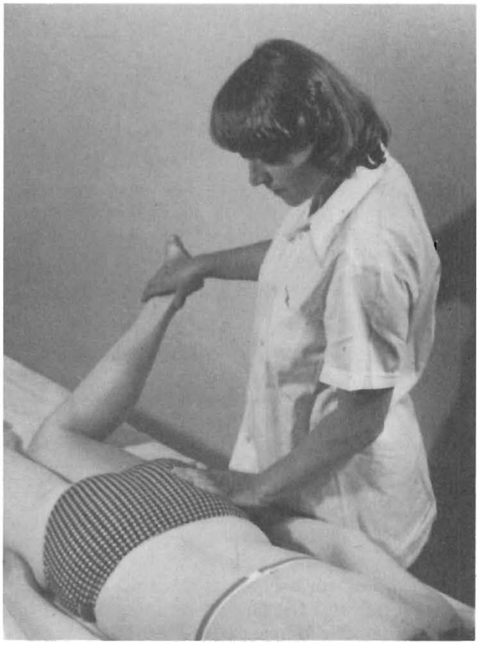
If this method fails, the cause is usually tension in the piriformis which must then be treated. In exceptional cases there is no increased tension, and the coccyx then has to be treated per rectum.

Tension in the piriformis muscle

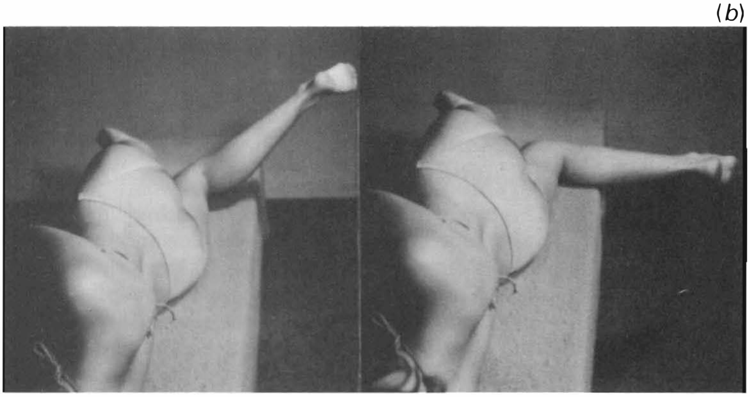
This is palpated as painful resistance above and medial to the greater trochanter. For treatment (Figure 6.124) the patient is prone with the knee bent at right angles. The therapist rotates the patient's leg outwards (i.e. internal rotation at the hip) to take up the slack, and tells the patient to give slight counter-pressure, which he resists for about 10 s before telling her to 'let go'. During relaxation, internal rotation at the hip increases. This procedure is repeated three to five times. For self-treatment, gravity-induced PIR is most useful: the patient is supine, her leg bent at the knee at right angles, rotated outwards; she now turns on to her side, so that the leg is horizontal. From this position she raises the leg a few centimetres, holds it there for 20 s and then lets it drop and relaxes for 20 s. This is repeated three times.

Pain at the ischial tuberosity

This symptom is caused by increased tension in the hamstrings; straight leg raising is restricted and there are TrPs in the muscles. Gravity-induced PIR is the most effective technique. The patient is prone, her legs hanging over the edge of the table. She lifts the affected leg for 20 s and drops it while relaxing for



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.124 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the piriformis. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR of the piriformis: the patient is prone, turned to the side of treatment, with the bent leg horizontal. Left, the leg slightly raised (20 s); right, relaxation (20 s) with the leg resting on the table

another 20 s, repeating this three times (Figure 6.125).

Intermittent stimulation of the antagonists greatly enhances PIR in cases of ligament pain and TrPs of the hamstrings, piriformis, the abductors and adductors. The patient exerts moderate pressure against the resistance of the therapist in the direction of relaxation, which he rhythmically changes.

Pain at the head of the fibula

This is due to tension in the biceps femoris, and is related to blockage of the fibular head. The patient is supine (Figure 6.126) and the therapist at the end of the table. With his right hand he grasps the right foot (or the left with his left), his thumb at the heel and little finger at the little toe, to be able to rotate the foot inwards. He then raises the stretched leg, moving it into adduction at the same time, and rotates the foot inwards until the slack has been taken up. From this position the patient is told to exert very slight pressure against the therapist's hand, pressing towards external rotation. The therapist resists for about 10 s before telling her to 'let go'. During relaxation he increases internal rotation of the foot, straight leg raising and adduction, to take up the slack, before repeating the procedure three to five times. Frequently, pain is felt at the fibular head during relaxation.

For self-treatment the patient stands with feet apart, the foot to be treated rotated inwards and propped against, for example, a table-leg. To take up the slack she takes a step forward with the other foot, producing some flexion of the hip by rotating

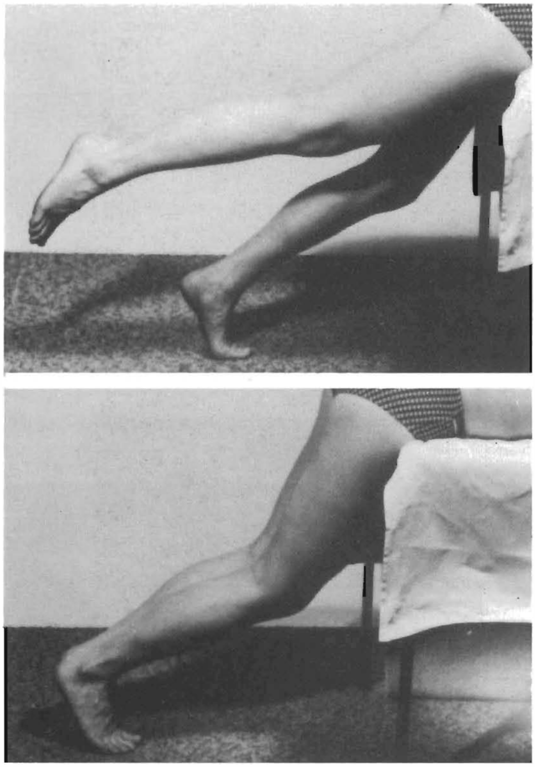


Figure 6.125 Gravity-induced PIR of the hamstrings: the patient lies prone, her legs dangling over the end of the table, touching the ground. Above, she raises one leg for 20 s; below, she drops the leg and relaxes for 20 s

Figure 6.126 Examination and treatment of tension in the biceps femoris, for tenderness of the fibular head

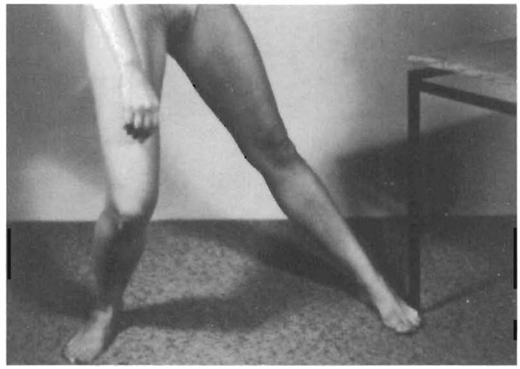


Figure 6.127 Self-treatment: the patient presses her inward-rotated foot against a table-leg, while the other foot enhances that rotation, with the knee slightly bent. She presses her foot against the table-leg, into external rotation (about 10 s) and then relaxes, increasing knee flexion in the free leg so as to increase inward rotation of the foot

her trunk. She then presses the foot against the table-leg into external rotation. After about 10 s she relaxes, increasing trunk rotation by bending the knee of the free leg (Figure 6.127).

A painful greater trochanter (TrPs at the adductors)

This is due to tension, mainly in the thigh abductors, most frequently with TrPs at the tensor fasciae latae but also in the gluteus medius. TrPs of the gluteus medius are found below the posterior aspect of the iliac crest, whereas TrPs of the tensor fasciae latae are below the superior iliac spine and close to the greater trochanter. In addition, the tensor fasciae latae may cause pain at the attachment at the upper margin of the patella, and the fascia lata and the iliotibial tract can be tender at palpation. The most frequent cause of pain at the greater trochanter is a painful condition of the hip joint.

For examination and PIR of the abductors the following technique should be adopted (Figure 6.128): with the patient supine, the leg on the painful side is brought into maximum adduction (taking up the slack) below the other leg, which is flexed. Standing on the far side, the therapist fixes the pelvis on the side of the lesion, from above, while his other hand moves the leg into adduction to take up the slack. The patient is told to exert slight counter-pressure, into abduction, for about 10 s, and is then told to 'let go', and the procedure is repeated three to five times.

Gravity-induced PIR is most useful for self-treatment. The patient lies on her side at the end of the table, the lower leg flexed at the hip and knee,

(*a*)

(*b*)

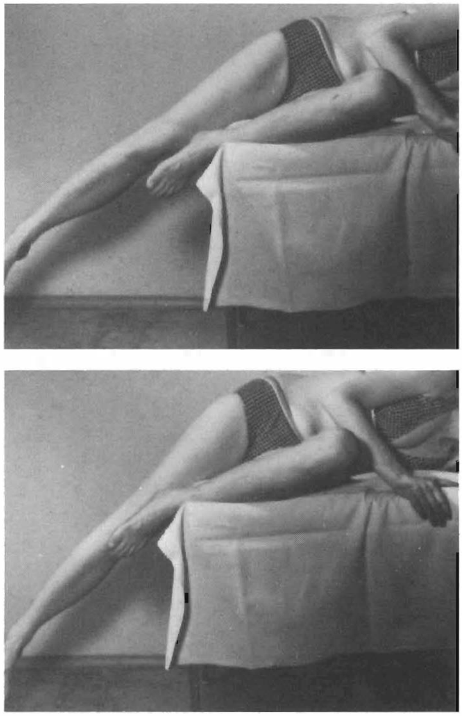


Figure 6.128 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the abductors, for a painful trochanter major.
(*b*) Gravity-induced PIR (self-treatment) with the patient lying on her side at the end of the table, the lower leg flexed, the upper hanging over the edge of the table: above, upper leg slightly raised; below, the patient has let the leg drop, relaxed

the upper hanging over the edge of the table. When the patient relaxes, the slack of the abductors is taken up by the weight of the hanging leg. The patient is then told to lift that leg about 2 cm and hold it in this position for about 20 s, and then to let it fall slowly and relax for another 20 s. This procedure is repeated about three times.

Tension in the adductors

Tension here causes pain in the pes anserinus on the tibia; this is frequently a sign of hip lesion, which should be treated first. If pain persists the following technique should be tried (Figure 6.129*a*): the patient is supine, close to the edge of the table; the therapist brings the leg on the lesioned side over the edge of the table, into maximum abduction and extension, taking up the slack. This movement is resisted by the patient for about 10 s, before the patient relaxes, and the procedure is repeated three to five times.

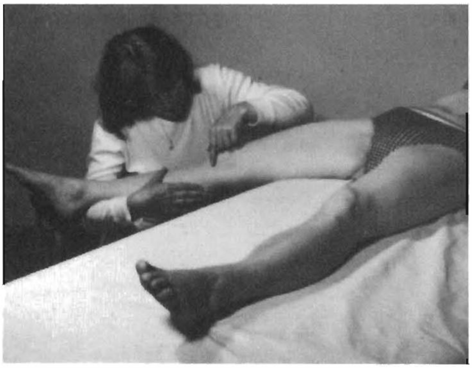
Tension in the short adductors is shown by a positive Patrick's test. If the tension is not due to some underlying factor, we use gravity-induced PIR. The patient is as during Patrick's test and relaxes the abducted and flexed lower extremity into abduction, under the influence of gravity, to take up the slack. She then raises the knee about 2 cm and holds this position for at least 20 s; she then relaxes into abduction, again for at least 20 s. The procedure is repeated three to five times, and the whole exercise should be performed two or three times a day (Figure 6.129*b*).

Tension in the toe extensors

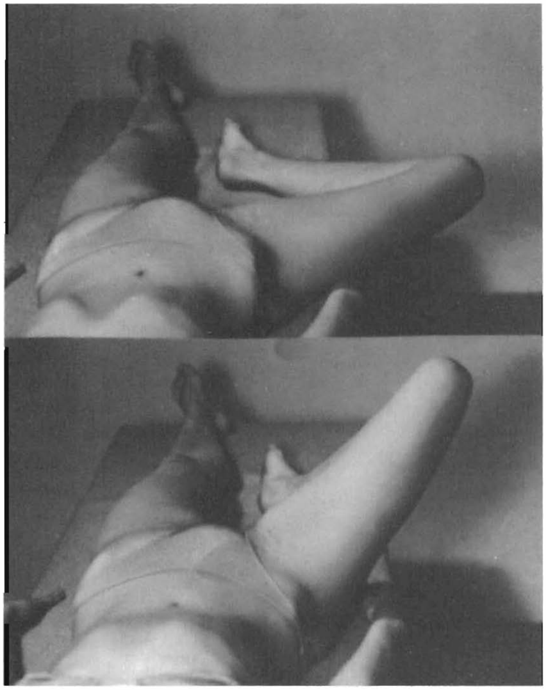
This is felt as pain on the anterior aspect of the tibia. With the patient seated or supine (Figure 6.130), the therapist places his hand over the toes to bring both foot and toes into maximum plantar flexion, to take up the slack. The patient is told to resist slightly for about 10 s then to relax, and the procedure is repeated three to five times. She may perform this manoeuvre herself.

A painful Achilles tendon

This is a sign of tension in the soleus muscle. For treatment the patient lies prone, with the knee on the lesioned side flexed (Figure 6.131). The therapist palpates the tendon to make sure which side of it is painful, and then brings the foot into dorsal flexion so as to create tension at the painful side, with the foot either in pronation or in supination. After the slack has been taken up, the patient is told to exert counter-pressure with minimum force for about 10s, then to relax; the procedure is repeated three to five times. During the relaxation phase dorsiflexion



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.129 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the adductors. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR of the short adductors: above, the knee is raised slightly (20 s); below, the knee drops into full abduction of the thigh, the patient relaxes for 20 s

(*a*)

(*b*)

Figure 6.130 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the extensors of the foot and toes. (*b*) Self-treatment

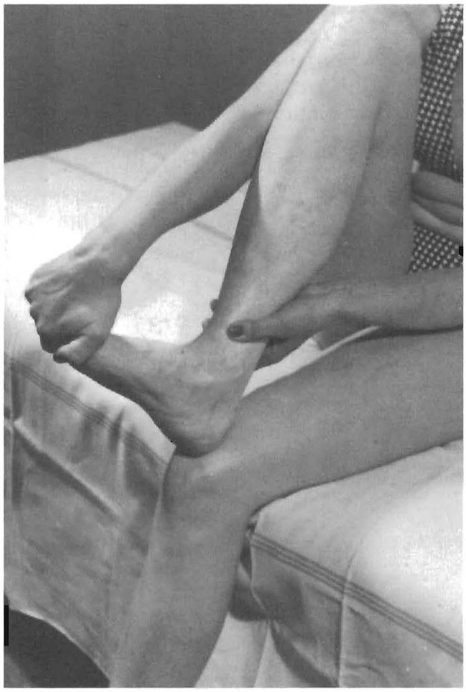
should increase noticeably, and the patient should be encouraged to cooperate to this end. For self-treatment the patient is seated, using both hands (Figure 6.131*b*).

Gravity-induced PIR is best achieved with the patient standing, her hands on the table; the affected leg is slightly in front of the other, and both knees slightly bent. By bending forward she takes up the slack into dorsiflexion; she then resists into plantar flexion for about 20 s, relaxing into dorsiflexion (Figure 6.131*c*).

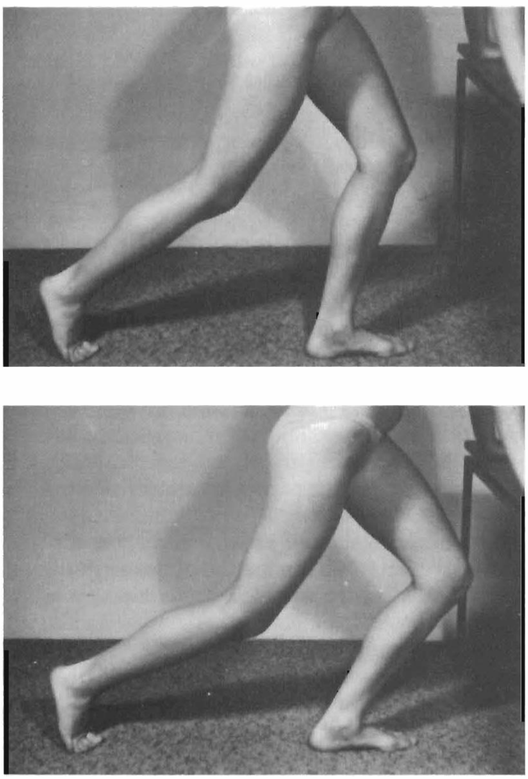
A painful calcaneal spur

This condition is due to increased tension in the muscles attached to the plantar aponeurosis with TrPs in the quadratus plantae and the short toe flexors. For treatment of this condition (Figure 6.132*a*) it is first necessary to treat movement restriction between the tarsal bones, etc. The patient is prone, with knees bent. The therapist grasps the foot, with one hand round the heel and the other round the distal part of the foot, producing dorsiflexion mainly of the metatarsals, and even of the

(*a*)

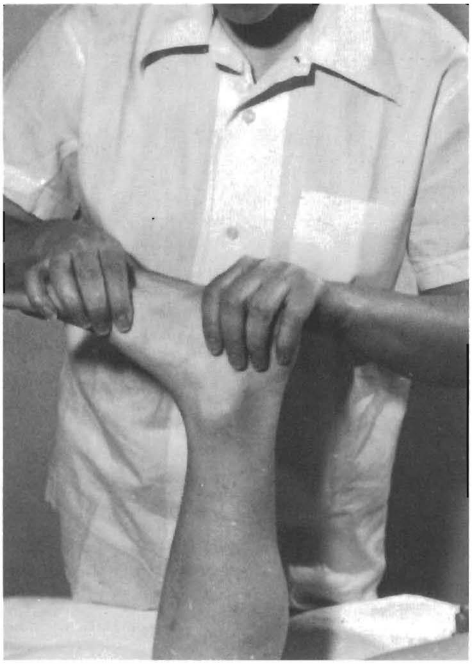


(*b*)

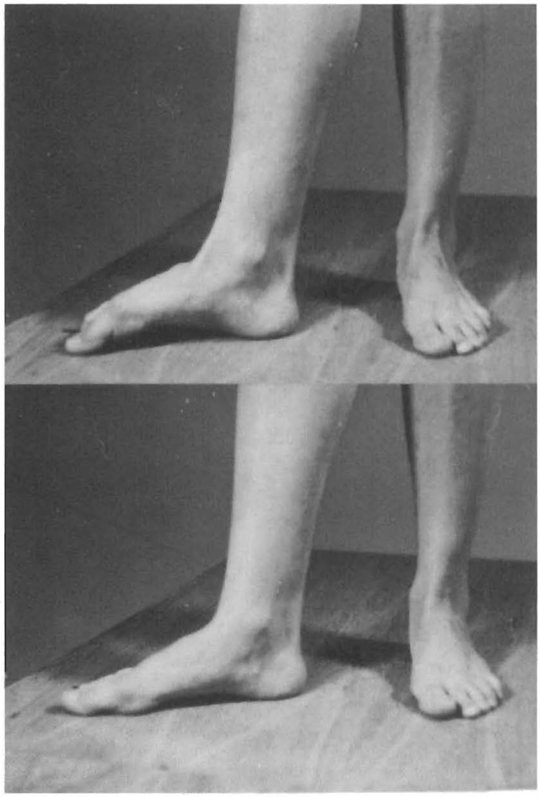


(*c*)

Figure 6.131 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the soleus, for a tender Achilles tendon. (*b*) Self-treatment. (*c*) Gravity-induced PIR of the soleus with the ankle in dorsiflexion: above, the patient resists dorsiflexion for 20 s; below, she relaxes into dorsiflexion for another 20 s



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.132 (*a*) Examination and treatment of tension in the plantar aponeurosis for a tender calcaneal spur. (*b*) Gravity-induced PIR of the plantar arch, standing: above, the patient arches her foot (20 s); below, she relaxes (20 s)

toes, in relation to the calcaneus, until tension is felt in the sole. The patient is then told to flex the extended toes, with little force, against the therapist's resistance, making as it were a 'hollow' foot. This is held for about 10 s, then the patient is told to relax and the procedure repeated three to five times. It is most important to avoid plantar flexion of the foot.

For self-treatment the patient is standing, putting some weight on the foot to be treated; she first arches the foot, drawing in her toes. After 20 s she relaxes this position, flattening the plantar arch (Figure 6.132*b*).

Remedial exercise

In the preceding part of this book, dealing with self-mobilization, post-isometric relaxation and soft tissue manipulation, there is great emphasis on self-treatment. The techniques presented could be regarded as a form of remedial exercise, with which they certainly have much in common.

The main task of remedial exercise in disturbed function of the locomotor system is to correct faulty movement patterns (stereotypes) that are relevant to the patient's complaints. The most important pathogenic mechanism, to be treated first, is motor imbalance between muscle groups, manifested by faulty movement or posture.

To do this it is essential to understand which muscular functions are at fault, and their mutual correlation: weakness, inhibition, hyperactivity, tautness, hypo- or hypertonus. Asymmetry must be taken into account, in particular concerning muscle tone.

If there is exaggerated activity of certain muscles, it is likely that they compensate the weakness of other muscle groups. On the other hand, marked tautness (shortening) of a muscle may inhibit its antagonist. However, motor function and dysfunction usually result from a chain reaction and there is probably no strict formula which can be applied to every patient.

This is why methods have been developed in recent years which do not attempt to train specific muscles or muscle groups, but aim to restore coordinated muscle function by what is termed 'sensory motor facilitation'. The patient has to balance on one foot; this is made more difficult on a wobble board: only by greatly improving motor coordination can he keep his balance – consequently some inhibited (weak) muscles will automatically come into play and some hyperactive and/or even taut muscles will be forced to loosen up.

We cannot deal with these methods in detail here, they have recently been published (*Rehabilitation of the Spine*, Liebenson, 1996). We may begin with training weak muscles.

There are some general principles to be observed: it is most important not to tire the patient. Twenty minutes may be the limit tolerated at first, increasing later to 50 minutes. The process of learning how to use inhibited muscles and correcting movement patterns is particularly tiring for the beginner; this is easily recognized by the therapist, as the patient's performance begins to deteriorate rapidly. It is obviously best to begin with simpler tasks and to train more complex movements later. Thus it is best if the patient first trains lying on the floor, and only later under the influence of gravity; again, it is easier for the patient to be seated, since it is much more difficult to fix the pelvis correctly while standing.

What the patient is taught must be practised at home, so that at a later stage she need not visit the physiotherapist so frequently. Finally, those activities should be trained that correspond to the daily activities required of the patient at work, etc.

As the techniques of relaxation and stretching hyperactive muscles have been dealt with under PIR and soft tissue manipulation, we may now proceed to the treatment of muscular weakness.

Training weak muscles

As explained above (see p. 121), there is no true paresis in our patients, weakness being the result of inhibition and disuse. It is therefore up to the patient to learn how to use these weakened muscles again. To teach the patient we should distinguish facilitation and training.

Facilitation implies creating the best conditions to train weak muscles. Here exteroceptive facilitation plays a prominent role. There is, as a rule, hypotonus of the weak (inhibited) muscle. By judicious stroking, normalization of the overlying skin symmetry can be achieved, the tonus of the weak muscle becoming the same as on the other side. Exteroceptive stimulation is not the only method; posture is also important, more in muscular hypertonus, however: sitting in a bent position causes hypertonus of most postural muscles. Straightening up greatly facilitates relaxation. Before training a muscle it is, of course, essential to treat every TrP.

Various methods of training of weak muscles will be dealt with separately. They have one feature in common, which is that the patient must be made aware of the inhibited muscle; she must feel it. This means that for a certain period the patient learns conscious control of the muscle, until correct function becomes automatic. One danger to be carefully avoided is tremor during training – this is a sure sign that the patient is exhausted.

The gluteus maximus

If we find this muscle weak, for instance if it contracts little, or only towards the end of the movement, in hip (hyper-)extension, prone (see Figure 4.45, p. 121), the most effective postural facilitation is to perform hyperextension with the foot in outward rotation. If even this fails, the patient trains by contracting the buttocks consciously and then extending the hip while keeping the glutei contracted. In severe cases, particularly if the lumbar erector spinae is hyperactive, it is important to reduce lumbar lordosis. For this the patient should place both forearms (or a cushion) under the abdomen, and contract the abdominal muscles. She then consciously contracts one buttock, lifting that leg very slightly so as not to contract the lumbar erector spinae and not to bring the lumbar spine into lordosis. The patient may be told to 'lift her leg and stretch it as far as possible', at the same time.

For strengthening the gluteus maximus it is most effective if the patient lifts herself from the seated position or if she walks with bent knees; in this way she can palpate her buttocks.

Having learned this, the patient is then taught to use both the glutei to control the position (tilt) of the pelvis (the most important postural function). The technique used for self-mobilization of the lower lumbar spine into ante- or retroflexion is appropriate here (see Figure 6.57, p. 194).

The gluteus medius

For facilitation the following method is most effective: the patient lies on her side, and as the gluteus is weak, she makes a 'false abduction' as described in Figure 4.46 (p. 122). After this the therapist performs maximum abduction, correctly, and lets the leg drop suddenly. At that moment the gluteus medius automatically contracts. The therapist repeats this manoeuvre, and now the patient herself palpates the automatic contraction of the gluteus medius with her own fingers. Once she has become aware of this contraction, and has 'got the feel of it', she is told to contract the muscle consciously, checking with her fingers (feedback) and thus achieving correct abduction, i.e. abduction using simultaneously both the gluteus medius and the tensor fasciae latae.

The recti abdominis

The test for this muscle is for the patient to sit up from the supine position, keeping the legs bent at the hips and knees. For coordinated contraction of the glutei maximi the patient may press her heels against a hard cushion or other obstacle; it is a grave mistake to fix the foot from above. If the patient cannot do this, without her lumbar erector spinae being too short, the abdominal muscles may be trained by the patient sitting with bent knees, and lying down slowly with her spine in kyphosis and her neck in anteflexion, the contracted abdominal muscles allowing the vertebrae to touch the table one after the other (eccentric contraction) (Figure 6.133). The exercise must be stopped the moment lumbar kyphosis cannot be maintained, and if the patient's feet are lifted from the table. After a few days or weeks of practice, the patient will be able to lie down correctly in this way, and then she will also be able to sit up by the same method.

It may be easier for the patient to start training her abdominal muscles just by lifting the pelvis while lying supine. A more difficult postural exercise is to contract the deep abdominal muscles in Brügger's relief position (see Figure 6.144, p. 246), contracting the abdominal muscles without raising her thorax. In order to restore the postural function of the abdominal muscles an effective manoeuvre is to bring the weight forward and back, at the same time contracting the abdominal muscles. Until this becomes automatic the patient can check by palpation.

The following exercises also train coordinated contraction of the glutei maximi and the abdominal recti.

The 'pelvic see-saw' (Figure 6.134)

The patient is supine with knees bent and feet on the table. By contracting her erector spinae she brings her lumbar spine into lordosis, and breathing quietly she relaxes the erector spinae while contracting both the abdominal muscles and the glutei maximi, bringing the lumbar spine flat on the table. Once she has mastered this phase the patient, with her lumbar spine still flat on the table, puts her knees together and lifts in kyphosis first the pelvis and then the lumbar spine, up to the low thoracic region, in caudocranial order. The lumbar erector spinae must be kept relaxed, the recti abdominis and glutei maximi contracted and the knees together. The patient then lies down again, reversing the order of the exercise, from the thoracic spine to the pelvis.

The 'cradle'

The patient lies supine, drawing her knees to her chest with her arms; she then pushes the knees against her clasped hands, thus lifting her pelvis and lumbar spine, and contracting the gluteal muscles. At the same time she lifts her head and chest, contracting the abdominal muscles. By rhythmic

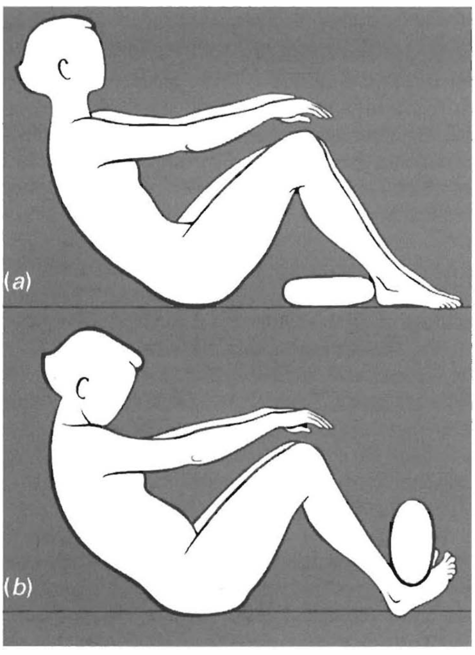


Figure 6.133 Training the recti abdominis by lying down from a sitting position, keeping the knees bent: (*a*) correct and (*b*) faulty

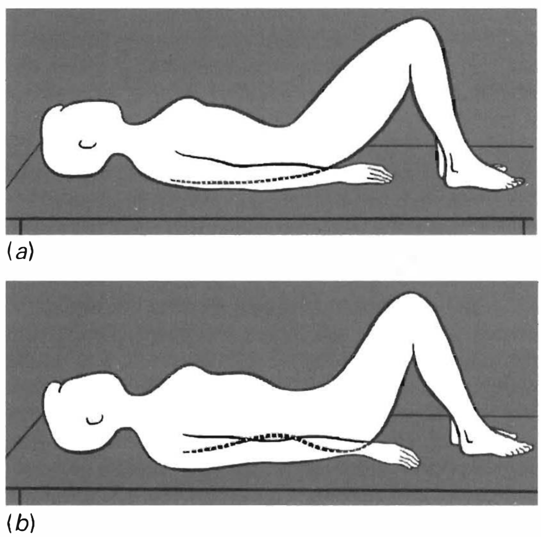


Figure 6.134 The 'pelvic see-saw': (*a*) bringing the lumbar spine into lordosis, supine: (*b*) lifting the pelvis and lumbar spine from the table, in kyphosis, and returning it to the previous position

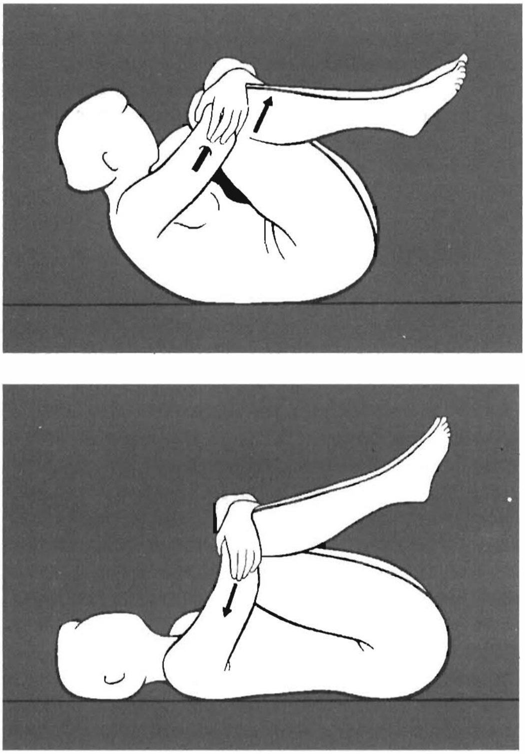


Figure 6.135 The 'cradle': above, the knees are drawn to the chest; below, the hips are extended against resistance by the arms, and the trunk lifted

pressure of her knees against her hands she swings herself into a sitting position, before dropping back to the first (Figure 6.135). At a later stage the patient may do this exercise without the help of her hands, which are stretched forward. Stronger gluteal and abdominal muscles, and their improved coordination, can be achieved in this way.

The pelvic diaphragm

The importance of the pelvic diaphragm can be compared to that of the abdominal muscles: both form the walls of the abdominal cavity, playing a vital role in posture and respiration. Unlike the abdominal wall, the pelvic diaphragm is hidden and therefore remains unnoticed. When eliciting the 'S' reflex (see p. 99) we find a TrP in the m. coccygeus. An indirect sign is hypertonus of the adductors.

For treatment it is advisable first to relax the adductors and flexors of the hip. To make the patient understand how to train the weak pelvic diaphragm, it is useful for her to learn to 'draw in' her navel, checking that movement with her fingers. Once she has understood this, she lies on her side with her fingers flat over her anus and tries to draw it in. This is not easy at first; therefore she should hold her nose with the other hand and inhale. After this resisted inhalation, it is easy for her to draw in the anal region. Once the patient has learned this, she can do it without inhalation. She then learns this manoeuvre while sitting and standing. She should never press the buttocks together.

This is an exercise women should perform as a routine after delivery, just as they should train the abdominal muscles.

The lower part of the trapezius muscle

This muscle has a key role in the correct fixation of the shoulder. The following exercise should be carried out to facilitate contraction (Figure 6.136): the patient sits on her heels and bends forward to rest her forehead on the table in front of her; the arms can be along the trunk, relaxed. In this position the medial border of the shoulder-blade diverges from the spinal column in a caudal direction. The therapist tells the patient to draw her shoulder-blade in a caudal direction, by contracting the lower part of the trapezius. Correctly performed, this movement brings the medial border of the shoulder-blade parallel with the spinal column, the lower angle being pulled in a caudal-medial direction. Once the therapist has palpated good contraction of the lower part of the trapezius, the patient should also palpate it with the thumb or index finger of her own furthermost hand (feedback). The shoulder-blades must not be drawn together.

Once the patient has mastered this procedure, she learns to do it lying prone, flat on the table, checking the contraction with her finger. She can then contract both the lower trapezii, lying with both arms by her sides in internal rotation. She slightly lifts both arms, then her head and neck, keeping the neck in line with the thoracic spine, the mandibles at right angles to the neck. If the lower trapezii are contracted, the upper trapezii remain relaxed owing

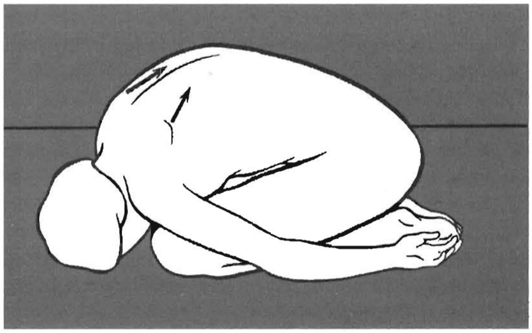


Figure 6.136 Squatting on her heels, trunk bent over thighs, the patient contracts the lower part of the trapezius

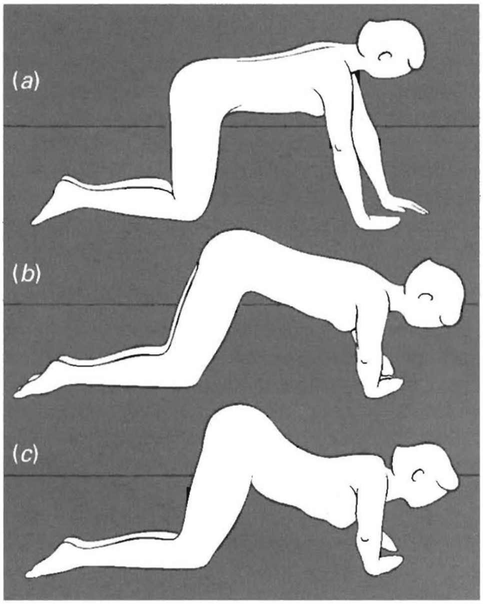


Figure 6.137 The patient on hands and knees for examination and training of the serratus lateralis: (*a*) first position; (*b*) arms bent (correct); (*c*) faulty position with arms bent

to reflex inhibition. The patient first relaxes the neck, then the arms and lastly the shoulder-blades.

Once the patient has learned to contract the lower part of the trapezius while prone, she can do the same upright (sitting or standing), again first checking up on the contraction with her fingers.

The serratus lateralis

To train this muscle (Figure 6.137), the patient is on hands and knees, with her weight mainly on the hands, which are in internal rotation, the fingers pointing at each other. The shoulder-blades must be kept well apart and the thoracic spine held in a straight line. The patient is then told to bend her arms at the elbows. Correct fixation of the trunk and shoulder girdle is most important: the shoulder-blades must be kept apart (by the serrati) and fixed from below by the lower part of the trapezii. The neck is held straight, in prolongation of the thoracic spine. Contraction of the abdominal muscles is necessary to keep the trunk straight; this is made easier if the patient breathes out while bending her arms.

On hands and knees (Figure 6.138) with a book resting on the occiput has a similar effect, training correct fixation of the shoulder girdle by contraction of the serrati laterales and the lower part of the trapezii, as well as by coordinated contraction of the neck extensors and deep flexors, the upper part of

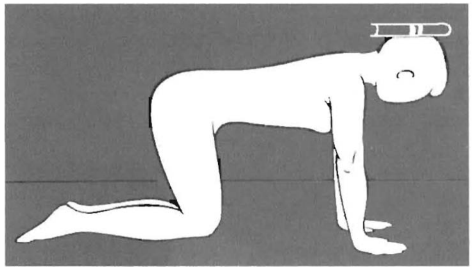


Figure 6.138 On hands and knees with a book on the occiput – correct position

the trapezii remaining relaxed and the recti abdominis contracted. The back and neck should be as flat as a board.

The deep flexors of the neck

The simplest exercise is head anteflexion against resistance: the patient is seated, her chin supported from below by the cupped hands, giving resistance to head anteflexion (isometric as well as isotonic resistance may be used).

A very effective exercise consists of drawing the chin in to the neck while sitting, with the thoracic spine bent backwards over the low back of a chair (Figure 6.139), repeating the movement several times.

Training for some of the most important stereotypes (movement patterns)

Standing on both feet

An important criterion for standing posture is that it should be stable, with the minimum of muscular

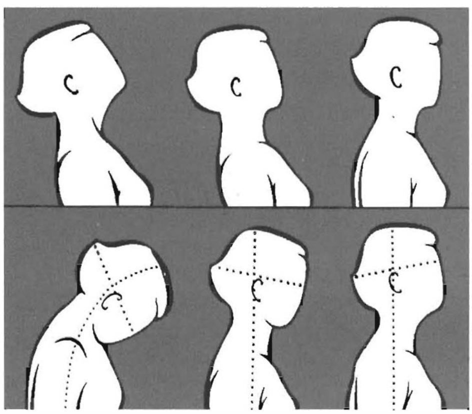


Figure 6.139 Training the deep neck flexors by drawing the chin in with the thoracic spine bent backwards over the low back of a chair

activity. This is particularly true for the trunk; there is always some activity at the level of the legs, thus implying that the feet are decisive. This is not a mere coincidence: together with the hands and the mouth they are related to the largest area of the cerebral cortex and are richest in sensory receptors. For this reason the active role of the feet in standing can hardly be overestimated. It is, however, jeopardized seriously by wearing shoes, causing what could be called 'chronic sensory deprivation'.

The key to training physiological standing lies in activation of the feet. In Chinese gymnastics the subject stands with his feet slightly apart and in inward rotation with slightly bent knees. This position greatly facilitates the activity of the toe flexors: the patient 'grips' the floor. Obviously this is easier to do without shoes.

The stability of this type of standing can be tested very simply; the examiner gives a slight unexpected push to the patient's trunk from in front or behind: if she stands the usual way with feet in outward rotation, she is likely to lose her balance. Standing with feet in slight inward rotation and bent knees, stability is greatly enhanced. This, however, is not the only effect: the pelvis will automatically be in a neutral position, thus greatly improving body statics, i.e. the posture of the trunk, head and neck.

Standing on one leg, or walking

Being an asymmetrical function this is useful to correct asymmetry. Standing on one leg is related to walking, which entails alternate standing on each leg. Some asymmetry is frequent, and as a rule we can distinguish the supporting leg, the one on which the subject puts more weight when standing at ease. The asymmetry should not be too marked, however. Both when standing on one leg and in walking, it is essential to activate the feet and toes. When standing the knee should slightly bend and the toes should grip the floor; when walking the heel should touch the floor first and then the toes be used for propulsion.

Alternate forward and backward shifting of the legs, supine (Figure 6.140)

The patient is asked to shift her slightly abducted leg 'into the distance' in the direction of its long axis. There is contraction of the gluteus medius and at the same time there is alternating contraction of the internal and external rotators of the hip. The abdominal and gluteal musculature provides fixation of the pelvis and lumbar spine. In this way the patient learns to fix her pelvis and trunk during leg rotation.

Rotation of the hip with the leg in abduction

The patient lies on her back with one leg abducted and pushed (as in the preceding exercise) 'into the distance'. The other leg is pulled up by the quadratus lumborum to produce pelvic obliquity. The gluteus medius of the abducted leg is contracted while the abdominal and gluteal musculature fixes the pelvis. In this position the patient rotates the foot and the leg (see Figure 6.140).

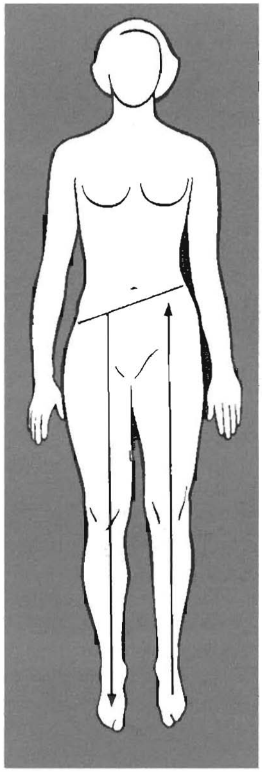


Figure 6.140 Alternate forward and backward shifting of the legs, supine

Flexion and extension of the upper leg, lying on the side (Figure 6.141)

The patient is in the same position as for the preceding exercise; she lifts (abducts) the stretched upper leg. During leg flexion at all joints (dorsal flexion of the ankle, bending hip and knee) there is also slight kyphosis of the lumbar spine, and during extension with all the extensors active, the lumbar spine moves into slight lordosis. Correct contraction of the abdominal muscles and the glutei should prevent hyperlordosis during extension. The therapist can help the patient by giving some resistance (during flexion) to the knee or the big toe; and during extension, to the heel, or to the big toe from below.

These exercises teach the patient coordination during walking.

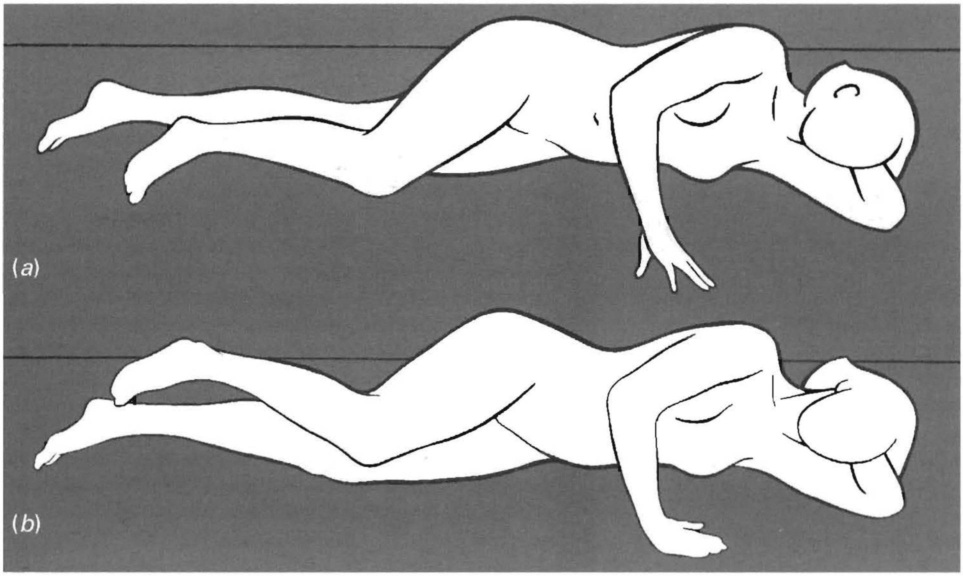


Figure 6.141 (*a*) Flexion and (b) extension of the upper leg, with the patient on her side

Standing on one leg (see Figure 4.75, p. 136): *correct fixation of the pelvis and trunk*

The patient first stands on both legs, and then puts her weight on one leg. She now has to fix both hip and pelvis. She then lifts the other leg by bending the hip and knee almost at right angles. She should be able to keep her pelvis horizontal without losing her balance. Correct fixation of the pelvis and trunk are required, for which the key muscle is the gluteus medius; the patient should palpate it on the side of the supporting leg. If she feels this contraction she should check up with both hands on the crest of the ilia, to make sure that the pelvis is horizontal.

Sitting (see Figure 4.68, p. 133)

Sitting erect on the floor, for trunk rotation (Figure 6.142)

The patient sits on her ischial tuberosities, the legs parallel and slightly bent, her hands clasped on the occiput. By coordinated contraction of the trunk musculature, the spinal column is held erect; correct fixation of the shoulder-blades is also essential. From this position the patient carries out axial rotation, bending neither backwards, forwards nor sideways. Good facilitation can be obtained if she looks to the side of rotation and upwards, breathing in during rotation to the side and breathing out during rotation back to neutral position. (In the kyphotic position it is the reverse: breathing out facilitates rotation). All that holds for trunk rotation while seated can be applied during trunk rotation standing, with legs apart.

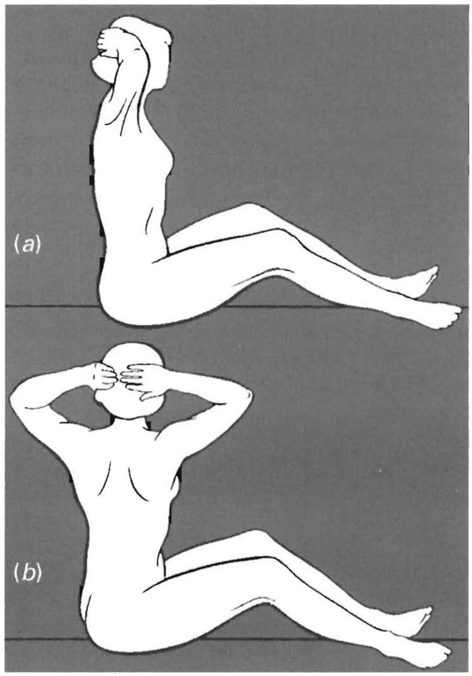


Figure 6.142 (*a*) Sitting erect on the floor. (*b*) Trunk rotation

Lateral movement of the thorax, sitting (Figure 6.143)

The patient is seated, preferably in front of a mirror, and moves her thorax to the side in the direction of

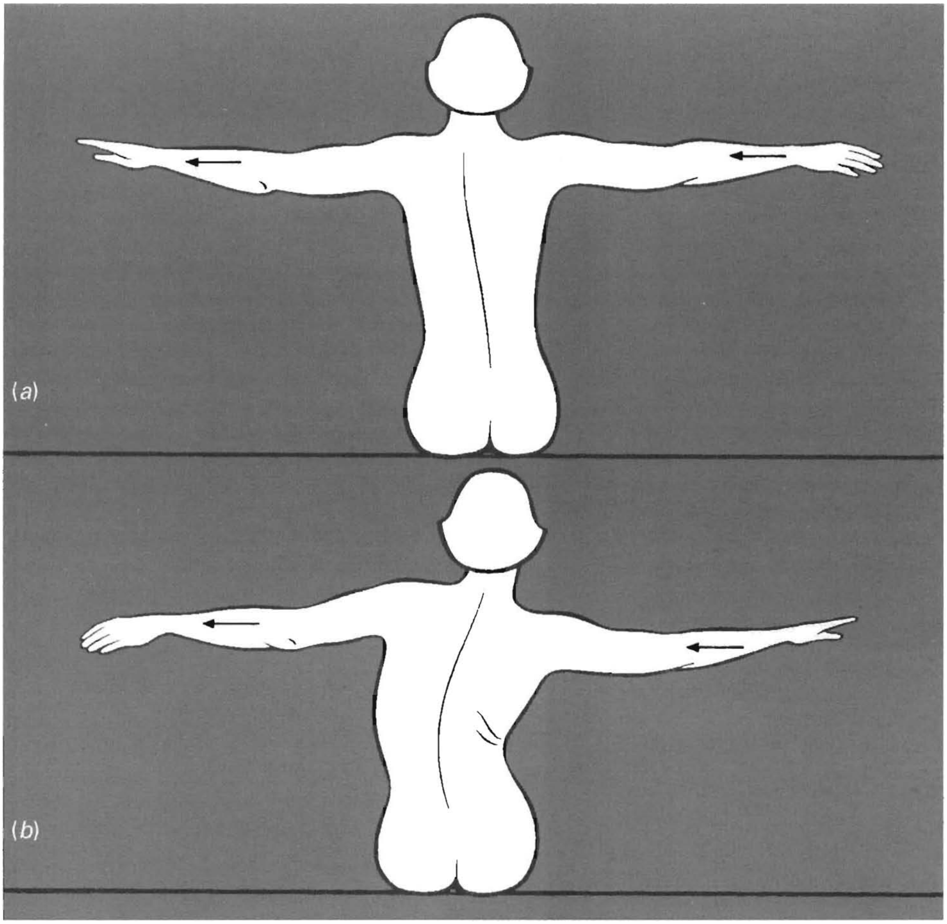


Figure 6.143 Lateral movements of the thorax with the patient seated: (*a*) correct and (*b*) faulty

the arms, which are held horizontally. She does this by correct control of her trunk musculature, chiefly the abdominal muscles, keeping the trunk straight and avoiding a crooked position. The therapist can facilitate this exercise by effecting resistance against the patient's ribs, first from one and then from the other side. Upright posture is also facilitated by breathing out on moving to the side and in while returning to neutral position; this is due to contraction of the oblique abdominal muscles.

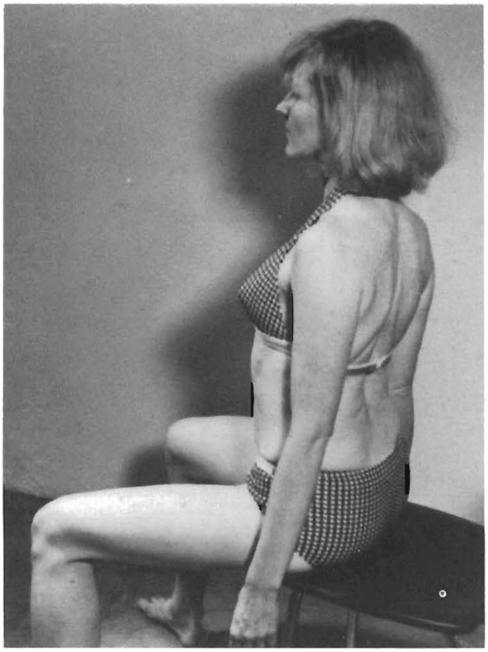
Controlling the pelvis while seated

The patient sits on a stool, facing a mirror (see Figure 4.68, p. 133). She first intentionally relaxes her abdominal and gluteal muscles, bringing the lumbar spine into lordosis. She then slowly contracts the gluteal and abdominal muscles to cause lumbar kyphosis. The shoulder girdle should move as little as possible during this exercise.

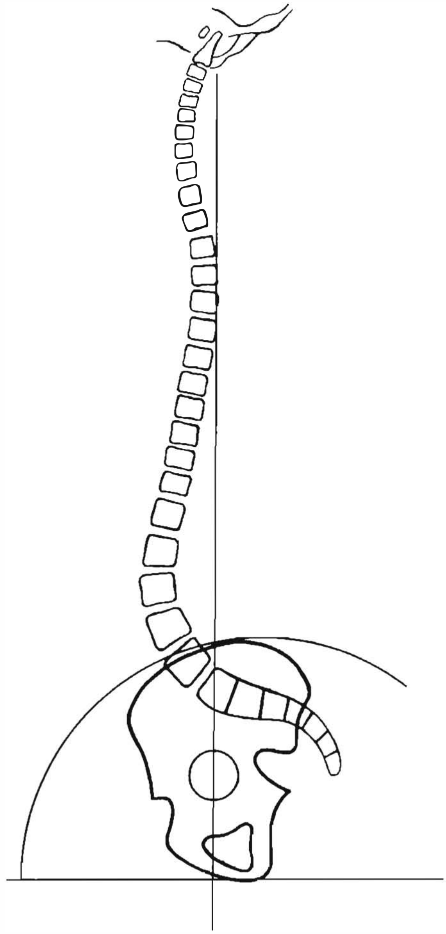
Brügger's relief position (Figure 6.144)

In a number of publications Brügger points out the deleterious effect of sitting in a kyphotic position, overloading the intervertebral discs, pressing on the sternum and the pubic symphysis and causing a forward-drawn neck, with hyperlordosis of the cranio-cervical junction. This creates increased tension in most of the postural musculature.

For maximum relief he has the patient adopt the following position: seated on the edge of a stool with the knees apart and outward rotated feet, resting her weight on her legs, she completely relaxes the gluteal and abdominal muscles; the pelvis is tilted forward, creating considerable lumbosacral lordosis with the abdomen protruding. Once the patient has found this position, the upper lumbar, thoracic and cervical spine straighten up, and all the postural musculature relaxes; the entire spinal column is apparently in balance.



(*a*)



(*b*)

Figure 6.144 (*a*) Brügger's relief position. (*b*) The usual kyphotic position (shading) and the relief position (black)

It is simple to test the immediate effect of this manoeuvre: while in the usual kyphotic position even moderate pressure on the upper trapezii, the pectorals, biceps, brachioradials, quadriceps and calf muscles is unpleasant if not positively painful; whereas in the relief position it is painless, and even as the therapist palpates them all of these muscles remain relaxed.

Whatever the theoretical implications of this rather extreme sitting position, it may represent a compensation for sitting in kyphosis, the position most people adopt if they relax their muscles without proper support. The fact remains that it frequently gives relief in particular to patients who easily 'flop' into a kyphotic sitting posture and are tense. It is useful to profit from this position for patients who seem to be able to relax in this way, even if only temporarily. Interestingly, the position greatly facilitates normal respiration.

Special chairs are now made, slightly tilted forward with a support for the knees, so that this position can easily be maintained. They are recommended for patients with various types of back pain, particularly in the low back. In the author's opinion they are most useful for patients with painful tension in the shoulder-girdle musculature, and faulty respiration (head/shoulder and chest pain). The patient need not use this chair exclusively, but may change her sitting position. Firm wedge-shaped chair cushions are also available, which may serve the same purpose even better. If the patient can lean against the back of a chair, it must be shaped so as to give the support at the correct height, which frequently is where kyphosis peaks. Many patients have to change their sitting position.

Stooping

Preparation: uncurling from sitting on the heels (Figure 6.145)

This is a useful preparatory exercise. The patient sits on her heels, relaxed, and breathing quietly, with her hands on the floor in front of her knees; she is in a

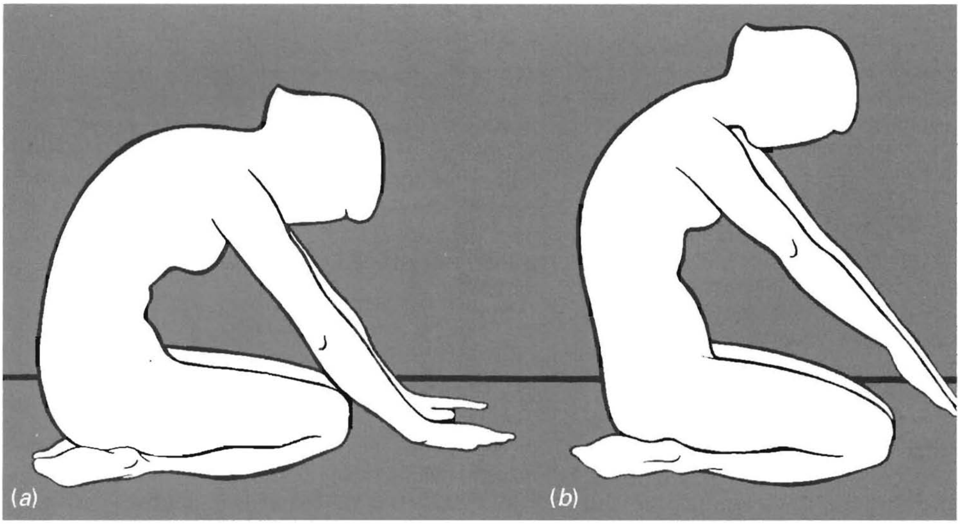


Figure 6.145 Uncurling from sitting on the heels: (*a*) with hands on the floor; (*b*) straightening up

lordotic position with the pelvis tilted forward. By contraction of the gluteal and abdominal muscles the pelvis is tilted back and the lumbar spine brought into kyphosis. By coordinated contraction of the abdominal and back musculature, and fixation of the pelvis by the glutei, the patient lifts her arms from the ground while the lumbar and thoracic spine curl up in succession.

Ante- and retroflexion of the spinal column while standing

Another preparatory exercise for stooping consists of training correct 'curling up' of the spinal column. Standing erect, the patient contracts her abdominal and gluteal musculature to fix the pelvis, and anteflexion begins with the head and neck followed by the thorax and abdomen, the pelvis remaining in the original position. The patient cannot usually reach further than to her knees, with her hands. From this position she straightens up, beginning with the lumbar spine

Lifting an object from the ground (see Figure 4.70, p. 134)

The patient puts one foot forward and bends trunk and knees simultaneously. In this way the load is evenly distributed between leg, pelvic and trunk musculature. To return to an erect position, both knees are stretched while the gluteal muscles straighten the pelvis and the abdominal muscles control the uncurling of the spinal column. To facilitate the abdominal muscles, the patient may breathe out against resistance, or may press her fingers to the floor. This forces the abdominal muscles to contract, and this contraction should be maintained as the patient straightens up, keeping her chest as close as possible to the thighs or pelvis, to avoid leverage by the trunk. The patient may check up on her abdominal muscles by palpating with one hand (feedback).

The patient should make a habit of putting one foot forward when she has to stoop, even slightly (e.g. at the kitchen sink, peering into the bathroom mirror, or in front of a cupboard), leaning her slightly bent knee and thigh against it.

Retroflexion

As our eyes and hands are in front of us, most of our work, whether sitting or standing, occurs in a forward-bent position. Hence, as a compensation, back-bending is frequently a valuable exercise. Back-bending of the lumbar spine in its most specific form has been described as self-mobilization (see Figure 6.58). A less specific but very effective exercise is to put both palms on the buttocks, where they form a fulcrum, and to bend back. It can be even more advantageous for the patient to lift herself on both arms into retroflexion (see Figure 4.56) up to 10 times. Retroflexion can be enhanced if the patient exhales deeply at maximum retroflexion. According to McKenzie this is effective in many types of back pain including disc lesion; this exercise should be performed 10 times and repeated 10 times a day even if it causes some pain, so long as the pain does not radiate into the legs.

Lifting the arms

The principle here is to improve fixation of the shoulder girdle by the lower fixators of the shoulder-blade (serratus anterior and the lower trapezii), and to relax the upper fixators which are attached at the cervical spine.

Moving the arms forward, prone (Figure 6.146)

The patient is prone, both arms stretched out, palms downwards, and the forehead on the floor. The pelvis is fixed by the gluteal and abdominal musculature. The therapist brings the shoulder-blade into correct position by contraction of the lower part of the trapezius. The palms are now flat on the floor. Keeping the shoulder-blade well fixed, the patient raises her head slightly, moving her outstretched arms forward in such a way as to turn the palms forwards while keeping the ulnar surface of the hands on the floor. The lower fixators of the shoulder-blade remain contracted, while the upper fixators are relaxed.

Raising and lowering the shoulders (Figure 6.147)

The patient is seated, erect, the arms hanging down; one shoulder is raised by contraction of the upper fixators, resisted by the therapist. The patient relaxes deliberately, and finally pulls first one and then the other shoulder down, by the lower fixators. This exercise should be carried out first on one side, and then on both sides together. It teaches the patient control of contraction and relaxation of the relevant muscles.

Lifting both arms, sitting

The patient sits erect on a stool, before a mirror. She now fixes the shoulder-blades from below, as firmly as she can, to avoid activating the upper fixators. Maintaining this fixation, she slowly raises her arms as far as she can without activating the upper fixators, i.e. at first only up to 90 degrees and finally to 180 degrees. This fixation should also be maintained when lowering the arms.

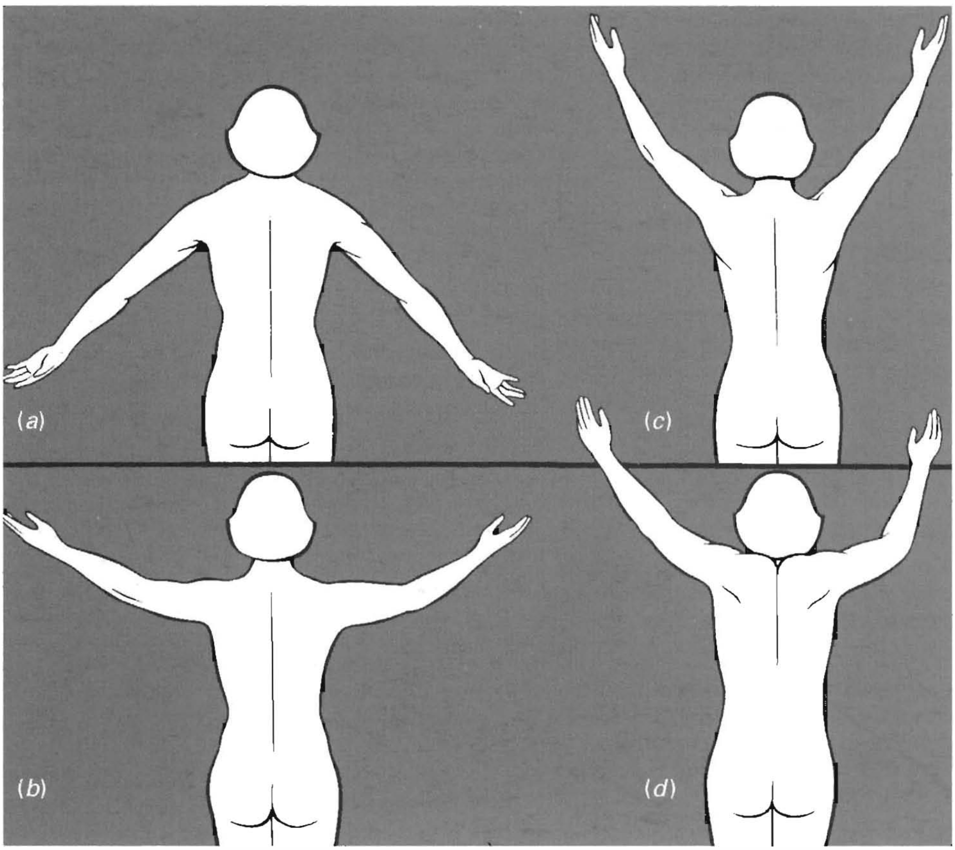


Figure 6.146 Moving the arms forward, prone: (*a*) first phase; (*b*) second phase; (*c*) third phase; (*d*) faulty

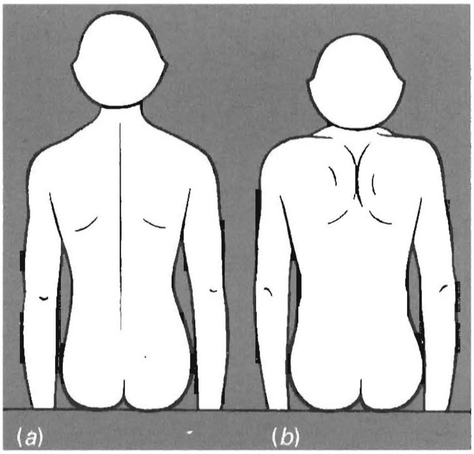


Figure 6.147 Raising and lowering the shoulders to train (active) relaxation of the (upper) trapezius: (*a*) relaxed first and end-position; (b) shoulders raised

Lifting the arms above the head
(Figure 6.148)

The patient sits erect on a stool, raising her arms above the head as she does, for instance, when combing her hair. Care must be taken to fix the shoulder-blade correctly, to relax the upper fixators and to control the position of the head.

Sitting erect, turning the head (see Figure 4.73, p. 135)

The patient sits erect on a stool, turning her head. There should be axial rotation of the cervical and thoracic spine, the shoulder-blades fixed from below, the upper fixators relaxed. In this way coordinated head rotation is achieved.

Correct weight carrying (see Figure 4.74, p. 136)

For correct weight carrying, the proper fixation of the shoulder-blade is essential, as during lifting of the arms. Here, however, it is also important to relax the subclavicular part of the pectoralis to move the head and shoulder back, in relation to the spinal column. Coordinated contraction of the interscapular muscles is therefore necessary. The moment the patient succeeds in bracing her shoulders back, the weight she carries ceases to affect the cervical spine and the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle remain relaxed. Not only is there relaxation of the shoulder girdle, but also holding a not too heavy weight, like a brief-case, becomes possible with almost relaxed hands.

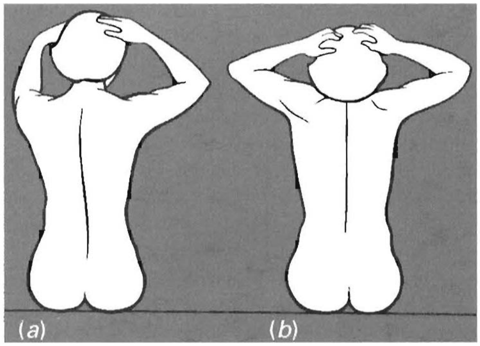


Figure 6.148 Lifting the arms over the head: (*a*) correct and (*b*) faulty

Breathing

The most serious fault here is lifting the thorax during inhalation. During examination, with his hands on both sides of the patient's thorax, the therapist may encourage the patient by exerting some pressure during exhalation and by releasing this pressure during inhalation to produce widening or narrowing of the thorax. Usually, this does not suffice.

The first step in treatment should be relaxation of the scalenes, where they have been found shortened (see p. 213, Figure 6.90). In severe cases the manoeuvre described by Sachse and Sachse (1975) is advised: the patient, seated or supine, is asked to press her flexed elbows downwards against resistance, while breathing in deeply. For self-treatment she may press her elbows down on the arms of an armchair.

If the patient lifts her thorax more on one side than the other, this usually reveals weakness of the lower trapezius on the side of increased lifting, which must be treated separately.

We then try to make correct breathing automatic, by the method of Gaymans (1980): the patient sits erect on a stool, both feet on the ground (high heels are prohibited!). The head is erect, i.e. the eyes look at an object placed at eye level, while the tip of the tongue presses against the hard palate about one finger's breadth behind the teeth. The hands lie in the lap, clasped in supination, the fingertips exerting slight pressure on the back of the hands, or with the fingers over the thumb in supination in front of the abdomen; in no case may the shoulders be raised. To facilitate inhalation the patient may lift her toes, while to facilitate exhalation she presses her toes against the floor. This exercise should first be performed in front of a mirror, to make sure the clavicles do not move up and down. An alternative is Brügger's relief position (see Figure 6.144, p. 246), and possible combinations.

Once the patient has mastered correct respiration, she gets a feeling for the right way to breathe, i.e.

how to broaden the thorax from the waist upwards without these facilitating manoeuvres, so that she can breathe correctly during her daily activities. According to Gaymans (1980), high heels constitute a serious impediment to correct respiration. Abdominal respiration must be practised with the patient supine.

If the patient is unable to breathe into the thoracic spine while prone, the same facilitating position should be adopted as for self-mobilization of the thoracic spine into flexion (see Figure 6.62, p. 197).

It is also important for the patient to relax her facial muscles and the muscles controlling the tongue and jaw. Such is the importance of correct respiration that any gross fault is bound to jeopardize the rest of the motor patterns and even thwart the effect of mobilization techniques.

The hands, their position and even tonus have a marked influence on respiration. This can be quite important if a patient cannot relax his hands.

The feet

The feet are a key region of the motor system. Unlike the hands they are rarely unshod. Shoes not only modify their mobility, they also deprive them of most of the normal sensory inputs. It is therefore important to advise patients to walk barefoot whenever there is a reasonable opportunity. Because of this sensory deprivation stroking plays a particularly important role in the treatment of feet – both if the patient over-reacts and even more so if she does not react at all ('dead feet').

When walking it is important for the feet to play an active role, particularly in the act of propulsion, when the toes should be active. So as to train activity of the toes, the patient should grasp objects on the floor such as pencils. Preparation for using the toes for propulsion when walking is for the seated patient rhythmically to lift her knee by bending the toes and extending the ankle (Figure 6.149). In the swing phase, too, the feet should play an active role: flexion of the leg should be initiated by extension of the big toe. Running in deep sand is ideal.

Patients with a hallux valgus should train abduction of the big toe. This requires concentration at first; the patient may start by moving the toe passively and only gradually try active movement. She should stimulate the abductor pollicis brevis by stroking it on the medial surface of the foot. This exercise is not only preventive, it also relieves pain at the hallux valgus.

The hands

There is frequently hypertonus – 'cramped' hands. Playing with a soft ball or rice is advisable. Stroking and massage of the hands is recommended: this may be carried out along the axis of the fingers and metacarpals; or by rotatory movements at the interphalangeal joints.

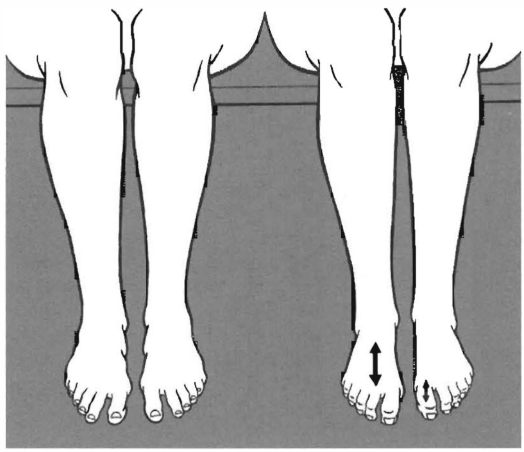


Figure 6.149 Rhythmic lifting of the knee by flexion of the toes and the ankle, with the patient seated

Supports

So far I have dealt mainly with techniques that restore or correct mobility; it is beyond the scope of this book to deal with immobilization techniques. It is useful, however, to recommend simple supports that can be made by patients at home.

One is a soft cervical collar of latex foam (Figure 6.150), fitted to the shape of the neck. The soft material, placed round the neck to form a tube, becomes a soft and yet sufficient support for the cervical spine; covered in some soft material, it can be secured by tape and protects the patient from jolting in public transport vehicles.

Hypermobile patients with marked lumbar kyphosis when seated should carry an inflatable cushion with them to use when they lean against a chair-back, etc. (Figure 6.151). The cushion should be only slightly inflated, and fitted to the top of the kyphosis, fixed by braces or a belt. This is of particular value for car drivers; it is not only easily adapted to each individual case, but also adapts itself to the patient's movements.

Hypermobile patients who frequently suffer from low-back pain in bed ('ligament' pain) may profit from a firm pelvic belt, fixed between the pelvic crests and the greater trochanters. It should be suffficiently broad, and lined with a material that does not irritate the skin. It must be fastened firmly (Figure 6.152). The effect is noticeable only after it has been worn for a few weeks. Patients with flabby abdominal muscles, often accompanied by obesity, should wear a firm belt or (in the case of women patients) firm elastic panties.

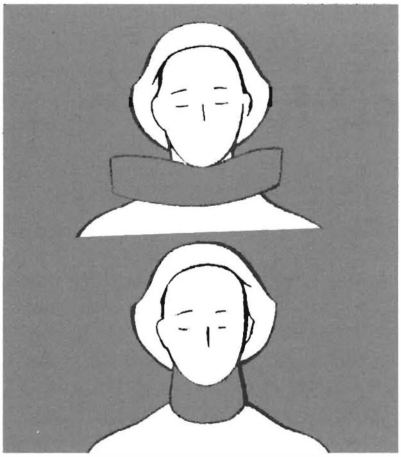


Figure 6.150 Soft supporting collar

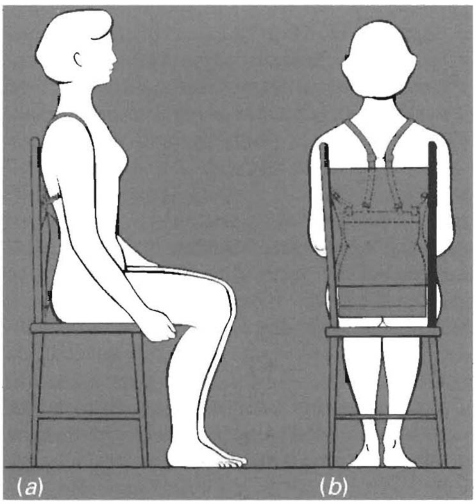


Figure 6.151 Inflatable supporting cushion for lumbar kyphosis: (*a*) lateral view; (*b*) back view

Hints on reflex therapy

There are innumerable methods employing reflex mechanisms (see Chapter 5) which cannot be described here. Probably the method most popular with doctors is local anaesthesia. As shown in Chapter 5, there seems to be little difference between the effect of local anaesthesia and dry needling, provided that the right technique is employed. This is in good agreement with the results of Frost *et al.* (1980), who found in a double-blind test that physiological saline solution was, if anything, more effective than local anaesthetic. The crucial technical point is that the needle must touch the pain point. It is not enough for the patient to feel pain; this pain must be sufficiently intense for the patient to react, and the therapist should search the painful area to find the most painful spot. Only then can full and immediate relief be felt, a relief that is just as intense as if an anaesthetic had been used, but without the accompanying anaesthesia. (This must always be tested.) It is a technical advantage of dry needling that the position of the needle can be corrected if no analgesic effect has been obtained. Once local anaesthetic has been applied, of course, no correction is possible. If the pain point has not been reached, the therapeutic effect of local anaesthesia is usually slight, once the anaesthesia wears off.

If, however, nerve block is indicated (i.e. nerve root infiltration), then the application of local anaesthetic is necessary. These are well-known and widely published techniques which will not be dealt with here.

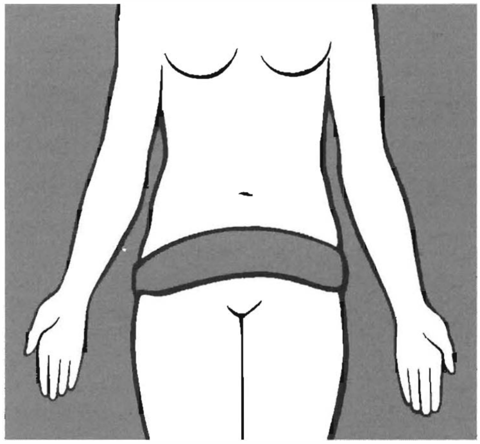


Figure 6.152 Pelvic belt (After Cyriax, 1977)

7

Clinical aspects of disturbed function of the locomotor system

In this chapter the general principles of theory, diagnosis and therapy will be applied to specific clinical entities or syndromes, in which disturbed function of the locomotor system and of the spinal column in particular has a significant role. It should be remembered that familiar clinical pictures such as back pain, low-back pain, shoulder pain, headache, etc., have rarely been considered from this point of view; there is, therefore, little on the subject to be found in the literature (Mennell, 1952; Brügger, 1977; Cyriax, 1977; Travell and Simons, 1983, 1993; Maigne, 1996). Nevertheless, this approach must be used to show the practical application of all been put forward in the preceding chapters. It is of great consequence for medical theory that this new approach has revealed unsuspected features in these familiar clinical entities. This has been made possible because the therapeutic measures we use are highly specific; nevertheless, they can only be called upon and applied to the best advantage if the clinical diagnosis has been drawn up accurately. As the number of professionals working in this field rapidly increases, the body of clinical data grows apace.

Backache

In backache, at least, the significant role of the spinal column is beyond doubt. However, the problem is traditionally treated mainly or even exclusively morphologically, which gives the impression that all we have to do is to find the underlying inflammatory, degenerative, metabolic or neoplastic disease, or malformation, or at least a gross mechanical obstacle such as disc herniation. Before turning to the diagnosis of disturbed function, such traditional disorders undoubtedly have to be excluded, or their relevance assessed, but once this has been done we need the diagnosis of disturbed function for the vast majority of patients 'without any specific diagnosis' (see p. 9). As these conditions form the subject of all classic textbooks of rheumatology or orthopaedics, however, we may pass them by and devote our attention to our main subject.

For anamnesis, refer to the beginning of Chapter 4. Here, too, a part is played not only by the factors acting upon the mechanical functioning of the spinal column, but also by those that affect the (autonomic) nervous system – the weather, cold or heat, infection, hormonal changes (including menstruation), and last but not least, psychological factors.

For precise clinical analysis, back pain is far too ill-defined, and it is necessary to treat the various sections of the spinal column (the back) one by one. The first subject is low-back pain.

Low-back pain

The dermatome chart shows that in this region a great number of segments converge, from the thoracolumbar junction to the sacral segments (see Figure 4.2, pp. 90–93), with the possibility of referred pain from the whole of this vast region. Furthermore, the most powerful forces (muscles) act here, where the trunk has its greatest mobility and where the movement of the lower extremities must be transferred to the trunk. All of this explains the great vulnerability of the region and is a pointer to the many possible pathogenic factors that have to be borne in mind, and the relevance of which must be assessed in every case. The most important disturbances of function causing certain types of low-back pain and their respective therapies are now reviewed. It may be useful to add that the term 'low-back pain' includes pain radiating to both sides, towards the hips, buttocks or groin, or even to the thighs, and that this pain is usually asymmetrical.

Low-back pain due to ligamental and muscular overstrain

In this type of low-back pain, not only need there be no morphological lesion, but the spinal column as such may be functioning normally, at least at the outset. As this first category is not homogeneous, some further definition is required: the cause of strain may be exogenic, like excessively heavy physical labour, or more frequently work performed under conditions causing overstrain by faulty posture or bad movement patterns. More frequently, even, this overstrain is due to faulty statics and/or movement patterns acquired during ontogenesis, such as difference in leg length, juvenile osteochondrosis, muscular imbalance, hypermobility, obesity etc., the common denominator being muscular and ligamental overstrain.

Symptoms

Discomfort and pain are usually the consequence of activity, postural even more than dynamic, and they increase as activity continues. Often it is postural strain that is more disagreeable than movement. Thus, any position that has to be held for any length of time is registered as a strain, patients feeling the need to change position, even in bed. In severe cases there is pain (stiffness) in the morning, which is gradually overcome, only to be followed later by pain as a sign of fatigue.

Clinical signs

These consist of changes both in body statics and in faulty movement patterns, and should be analysed in each case. The typical imbalance in the lumbosacral region is between the gluteal and the abdominal musculature on the one hand, and the hip flexors and the back muscles on the other. This is frequently made worse by hypermobility, which results in what is called 'ligament pain' (p. 101). The hyperactive erector spinae as well as the iliopsoas can be tender. The most typical tender periosteal points are the spinous processes, in particular the last two and the spina iliaca posterior superior. If there is marked asymmetry there may be pain on the iliac crest and the lowest ribs, as in statically imbalanced scoliosis and/or spasm of the quadratus lumborum. Baastrup's phenomenon, osteochondrosis of the spinous processes, has frequently been thought to play a part, because of the tenderness of the spinous processes. However, this type of pain is usually found in hypermobile younger patients without osteochondrosis, and where there are typical X-ray changes no pain or tenderness is found on the spinous processes. Quite frequently we have to look for the cause in other regions of the motor system, e.g. the lower extremities or the cervical spine.

Therapy

If exogenic strain is the main cause, we should try to correct posture and faulty movement patterns at work; if the underlying cause is faulty statics and muscular imbalance, correction of statics and/or remedial exercise are indicated. In the hypermobile a support during static loading is important, particularly in public transport vehicles. Where obesity is a relevant factor, weight reduction is essential. For immediate relief of pain, relaxation of muscle tension, of trigger points in muscles and of insertion points is most useful (PIR); alternatives are antagonist inhibition, needling or local anaesthesia. Finally, it is important to remember that muscular imbalance may stem from movement restriction at the craniocervical junction or dysfunctional feet, which must not be left untreated in cases of low-back pain.

A tender coccyx

This condition may accompany the preceding one. It must not be thought to be identical to coccygodynia: it is low-back pain due to a tender coccyx of which the patient is often unaware. In an earlier paper I showed that only one-fifth of the patients with a tender coccyx experienced coccygodynia: the majority suffered only from low-back pain. On the other hand, what patients believe is 'coccygeal pain' may be due to painful lower sacroiliac dysfunction, to a positive 'S'-reflex or even to a painful ischial tuberosity. Nor is injury the most frequent cause: this is found in about one-fifth of the cases, and rarely in cases of relapsing tenderness of the coccyx. Psychological tension and anxiety are frequent.

Symptoms

Low-back pain, particularly when sitting; there may be constipation and even dyspareunia. Pain may be referred to the groin and hips, but this is not very characteristic.

Clinical signs

The diagnostic sign is a very tender (painful) tip of the coccyx which causes a reaction to the slightest touch; this is usually the ventral rather than the dorsal aspect. As a rule the tender coccyx is kyphotic, which makes palpation more difficult. Another important sign is hypertonus (*défense musculaire*!) of the gluteus maximus, and sometimes of the piriformis. There may be a positive straight leg raising test, Patrick's sign and spasm in the iliaci, and there is often an HAZ visible on the sacrum in the form of a fat cushion. TrPs are found in the levator ani (per rectum).

Therapy

The treatment of choice is PIR, including self-treatment of the gluteus maximus and sometimes also of the piriformis. Manipulation per rectum is only exceptionally necessary, one of the reasons for it being hypotonus of the glutei, causing tenderness of the coccyx because the patient is, as it were, sitting on an 'unprotected' coccyx.

From the clinical findings as well as from the therapeutic results it can be assumed that tension in the gluteus maximus and the levator ani is the main cause of a tender coccyx. At examination per rectum we find trigger points in the levator ani; both voluntary contraction and relaxation of the gluteus maximus during PIR accompany contraction and relaxation of the levator ani. This concept is corroborated by the clinical experience that increased tension in these muscles as well as a tender coccyx, particularly with a tendency to relapse, are linked with psychological tension, relaxation of the glutei also having a very favourable effect on psychological tension.

One final warning: it is important not to miss a tender coccyx, for it can constitute the most relevant finding in low-back pain, and if untreated is one of the most frequent causes of therapeutic failure, as shown by the following case histories.

R. J. (1922): pain in the low back and buttocks for 5 years, now permanent, worse on getting up in the morning or after sitting for a long time. Coughing sometimes painful. A skier, tennis player, skater and horseman; no accidents. At examination, trunk forward-bending was restricted, atlas–occiput blocked on both sides, coccyx painful. Mobilization of C0/1 into anteflexion was carried out, as well as traction manipulation, and PIR of the gluteus maximus. The patient was instructed to relax the glutei at home. Three weeks later he had improved, the coccyx was no longer painful. He was advised to wear a belt for the weak abdominal muscles.

H. K. (1919): suffered from constipation and pain in the right side of the abdomen with zones of extremely painful dysaesthesia along the crest of the pelvis to the umbilical region. He also complained of dysaesthesia in the lower limbs, occasional dysuria and sexual impotence. When examined the patient showed increased tendon reflexes and slight pyramidal signs in the lower limbs. It was suggested that he might be suffering from compression of the spinal cord or from multiple sclerosis. To alleviate pain in the abdomen and thoracic spine, manipulation of Th9/10 was performed; the slight pyramidal symptoms in the lower limbs improved, but dysuria and constipation persisted, as did impotence. On control examination a painful coccyx was found; after manipulation the pain in the lumbar region disappeared, and then the sphincter disorders (constipation, dysuria and impotence).

A painful hip joint

Like pain originating in the coccyx, the patient frequently feels a painful hip joint as low-back pain. A painful hip joint should not be equated with coxarthrosis, although it may (but need not) be the initial stage of that disease. In 59 cases of painful hip with no (43) or very slight (16) changes at X-ray examination, low-back pain was the most frequent complaint (33) (Lewit, 1977). For this reason examination of the hip joint (like that of the coccyx) is routine procedure in cases of low-back pain, and a painful hip joint may be the only relevant clinical finding.

Symptoms

Pain is usually caused by walking, especially on hard ground (paved paths), by long standing, and by lying on the painful hip; otherwise, pain is relieved by lying down. The pain is usually felt in the low back and the hip; it may radiate in segment L4 towards the knee and also to the groin. Sometimes pain localized at the knee is the only complaint!

Clinical signs

There is a positive Patrick's sign. The extreme range of movement of the hip joint is painful if slight force is applied (springing), or it may be reduced; in particular, internal rotation may be restricted (see pp. 117, 172); extreme active abduction with the patient lying on her healthy side is painful. Typical pain points are found at the femoral head palpated in the groin, the insertion points of the abductors at the iliac crest and at the trochanter major. There is also adductor spasm with trigger points and a tender attachment at the pes anserinus (it is this that the patient interprets as pain in the knee). The hip flexors may also show spasm (tension) and therefore the lesser trochanter is also tender on deep palpation. (This procedure, however, is most disagreeable to the patient, and I do not find it essential.) The posterior sacroiliac spine is also frequently tender. In more severe cases, usually those with established coxarthrosis, there is flexion at the hip and knee, and compensatory lumbar hyperlordosis with the patient standing, and a limping gait.

Therapy

The choice of treatment depends largely on the part played by coxarthrosis in the patient's condition. We are concerned here only with the treatment of disturbed function, which can also be improved in cases of coxarthrosis. The classic pharmacotherapy and physiotherapy (spa treatment), and surgical intervention in the severest cases, cannot of course be dealt with here.

The most important technique is traction, either by thrust or by PIR. The high-velocity thrust is useful in hypermobile patients with not too much muscle spasm. In the majority of cases isometric traction constitutes the routine procedure (see Figure 6.26, p. 173). Its effect results mainly from the degree of relaxation of all the muscles related to

Table 7.1 Clinical signs of blockage of the joints of the lumbar spine and of the sacroiliac joints

Sign	*Segment*				
	T/L	*L3/4*	*L4/5*	*L5/S1*	*Sacroiliac*
Lack of pelvic rotary synkinesis	++	+	+	+	++
Straight leg raising: hamstrings spasm	–	–	+	+	+
Femoral nerve stretch test: spasm of rectus femoris	–	++	–	–	–
Spasm of thoracolumbar erector spinae	++	–	–	–	–
Spasm of quadratus lumborum	++	–	–	–	–
Spasm of psoas	++	–	–	–	–
Spasm of lumbar erector spinae	–	+	+	+	–
Piriformis spasm	–	–	++	–	–
Iliacus spasm	–	–	–	++	–
Painful iliac crest	+	+	–	–	–
Painful greater trochanter	–	+	–	–	–
Painful posterior superior iliac spine	–	+	+	+	+
Pain radiating in L4 segment (hyperalgesia)	–	+	–	+	+
Pain radiating in L5 segment (hyperalgesia)	–	–	+	–	–
Pain radiating in S1 segment (hyperalgesia)	–	–	–	+	+
Patrick's sign (adductor spasm)	–	++	+	+	+
Tenderness of the symphysis	+	–	–	+	+
Tenderness at the ends of sacroiliac joint	–	–	–	+	++

the hip joint. It is therefore the most effective type of conservative treatment.

Although self-treatment is difficult, once the patient has learned what to do during the isometric phase, and how to relax, the role of the therapist is negligible. Any relative or friend can help the patient, regularly, once a day if possible, for about 5 minutes. If there is imbalance of the muscles of the pelvic girdle, most frequently weakness of the glutei, particularly of the abductors, with hyperactivity in the hip flexors and adductors, it is important to relax the taut muscles and train the weak ones.

In coxarthrosis a well-planned regimen is essential, setting down how much walking the patient is allowed to do, preferably on soft ground with thick crêpe rubber soles and carrying a stick on the side not affected – regular exercise in the supine position should be performed, and swimming and cycling are to be encouraged. Loads should be carried on the affected side.

P. J. (1911) fell on the right hip, and felt sharp pain down the leg and in the groin, as well as in the low back. She walked with a stick. We found a positive Patrick's sign; the femoral head was painful and so was active abduction of the right lower leg. Internal rotation was not painful. Immediate relief was obtained by traction along the axis of the right leg. Two months later there was no pain, and this state persisted for many years.

This patient illustrates an acute lesion of the hip joint without coxarthrosis.

Blockage of the joints of the lumbar spine and of the sacroiliac joints

Low-back pain due to blockage of apophyseal joints and to blockage of the sacroiliac joints shares a common therapeutic approach and these conditions also have some clinical features in common.

Symptoms

If the state is acute there is severe movement restriction, and straightening up usually presents more difficulty than stooping; there may be pain on sneezing or coughing. In more chronic cases there is usually stiffness after rest lying down or sitting, which improves on movement. Back-bending is more frequently restricted than stooping, and the most characteristic complaint is difficulty in straightening up after stooping. Side-bending can be restricted and painful, at least to one side, and typically there is no rotation of the pelvis on side-bending. Pain is usually asymmetrical and may radiate to the hips, buttocks, lower abdomen, groin, lower extremities, and towards the thoracic spine.

Clinical signs

Typical signs of blockage are found in all the joints affected, including tenderness and resistance to springing (see p. 102). The more specific signs are given in Table 7.1; the thoracolumbar junction is formed by the segments T10–L1; segment L2/3 is affected only in exceptional cases.

Note: A positive straight leg raising test is due to spasm of the hamstrings while the femoral nerve stretch test is positive in spasm of the rectus femoris, just as Patrick's sign is caused by spasm of the adductors. The characteristic muscle spasms (TrPs) for each segment are very important features of the clinical picture of each type of blockage: spasm of the psoas for the abdominal pain in thoracolumbar lesions; spasm of the rectus femoris for pain from the thigh to the knee in lesions of L3/4; piriformis spasm for pain in the buttocks in L4/5 lesions; and iliacus spasm for pseudogynaecological symptoms (algomenorrhoea) in lesions of L5–S1.

Low-back pain due to disc lesion

The cases grouped under this heading are those in which there is no radicular syndrome. It is essential to know when a disc lesion should be suspected in lumbago even without signs of root compression. If this is the case, we have to deal with a lesion not only of function but (also) of structure.

Symptoms

Unless acute, the course is as a rule more severe than in the conditions already dealt with, that is to say, attacks last longer and the condition has a tendency to relapse. Pain at coughing, etc. is more prominent. The posture that is particularly harmful is that of slightly bending forward, as over a wash-basin while shaving, where contraction of the erector spinae is at its maximum and there is therefore maximum pressure on the disc. Another characteristic complaint is of pain when turning over in bed and when rising from the recumbent and sitting positions.

Clinical signs

In acute cases we see the characteristic antalgesic position adopted in acute root lesion (Figure 7.1), i.e. kyphosis and lumbar scoliosis, most frequently towards the side of the lesion (see Figure 3.8, p. 44). Stooping is severely limited and the straight leg raising test markedly positive (except in lesions at the L3/4 segment where the femoral nerve stretch test is positive). All movement disturbing the analgesic posture is severely restricted. If the patient is capable of lying prone, springing of the lumbar spine is very painful, particularly at the site of the lesion. Nevertheless, if blockage of individual segments is examined this may be absent.

In the more chronic cases it is stooping that is usually most impaired while the patient is standing, but with the patient seated anteflexion may be normal. Another diagnostic sign is the painful arc (Cyriax, 1977) (see p. 102). The straight leg raising test, and the femoral nerve stretch test in L3/4 lesions, may be markedly positive, much more so than when there is only joint blockage. A most useful diagnostic sign is pain on springing the lumbar spine if blockage is absent or if it persists after blockage has been treated. If manual lumbar traction gives relief, this is a good diagnostic test.

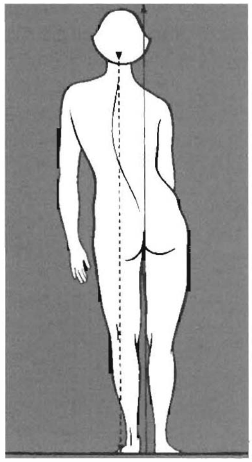


Figure 7.1 Typical posture in acute disc lesion ('sciatic scoliosis')

Therapy

In acute cases complete rest in the relief position is recommended; traction may be attempted (by hand) in this position, because it may procure immediate relief (see Figure 6.28, p. 175). If pain continues in the relief position, epidural infiltration with local anaesthetic may bring about immediate relief. The method of strain and counterstrain (see p. 202) can be very useful even at this stage, if the exaggerated relief position is well tolerated. This may, and should, be combined with the usual pharmacotherapy, aspirin (unless contraindicated) remaining one of the most effective drugs.

In the more chronic cases, traction is again very important as long as it gives relief. If there is segmental movement restriction this should also be treated by moblization and/or manipulation; soft tissue lesions, of the fasciae in particular, should be given due attention. Also changes in other parts of the motor system, if considered relevant, must be treated. The McKenzie method, in particular his extension techniques if tolerated, are very effective ('listening to the patient's symptoms') see p. 247.

Most important here is the establishment of a suitable regimen, avoiding the most dangerous causes of strain such as the forward-bent position, jolting in vehicles, etc., combined with judicious remedial exercises; the lumbar region should also be well protected against chill. Complete rest should not be encouraged longer than it is absolutely necessary.

O. F. (71) seen 22 December 1986, complained of low-back pain worsening on standing or walking, particularly when going down stairs, jolting, carrying loads, or turning over in bed, on coughing or sneezing. Pain radiated into both legs dorsally, more on the left. Symptoms began shortly after excessive effort (lifting bags of cement).

The patient gave a history of headache, epicondylar pain, and (since 1977) occasional low-back pain. Cholecystectomy 1979.

At examination there was antalgesic kyphotic posture, back-bending restriction and side-bending restriction, yet stooping was normal and the straight leg raising test was negative. There was severe pain on springing the lumbar spine with the patient prone, but there were no signs of segmental movement restriction (blockage) in the lumbar spine.

During the first months of 1988 the patient's condition deteriorated, standing and walking became increasingly difficult, and lumbar traction gave no relief. The only comfortable position was recumbent. On X-ray examination there was hypertrophic spondylosis in the thoracic spine and a narrow spinal canal in the low lumbar spine. At CT a massive prolapse of the L4/5 disc was found.

The patient was hospitalized and made a slow but complete recovery with rest in bed and physical exercise, at first only in the recumbent position.

Severe pain on jolting, turning over in bed, coughing and sneezing and especially on springing without segmental blockage were typical for lumbago with some pseudoradicular pain, caused by disc prolapse in a narrow spinal canal.

Pelvic distortion (see also pp. 95 and 96 and Figures 3.12, 3.13, p. 48, and Figure 4.7, p. 96)

Even if the case is one of of low-back pain, this condition is always secondary. Although in itself a highly characteristic sign, the clinical picture corresponds to the lesion, which is causative and must be treated. If treatment is correct the pelvic distortion subsides spontaneously. In young people in particular, however, it is a hint that there is a lesion in the craniocervical junction that requires treatment. Adolescent girls with pelvic distortion frequently suffer from algomenorrhoea. This may be related to iliac spasm which is most frequently due to concomitent lumbosacral movement restriction.

Innominate shear dysfunction (Greenman)

Greenman (1986) described another type of positional change of the pelvis which he called 'innominate shear dysfunction', and is usually of traumatic origin. There can be a shift at the symphysis, but the principal finding is, however, asymmetry at the anterior superior iliac spines which on one side appears to be flatter and more lateral, while on the other side is more prominent and more medial. Increased muscular tone on the side of the more prominent spina and hypotonus on the opposite side is the rule in the lower abdomen.

For treatment very simple reposition manoeuvres are used: using the patient's thigh as a lever, the operator adducts the thigh and knee on the side where the anterior spine is flatter (outflare) until the slack is taken up; then he asks the patient to press against his hand into abduction. This is resisted for about 10 s, the patient slowly breathing in, and relaxing while the therapist increases adduction, producing inward rotation of the innominate. On the side where the anterior spine is more prominent and medial (inflare) the therapist obtains outward rotation against resistance, using the thigh as a lever. According to Greenman, this manoeuvre is carried out on the side of sacroiliac blockage, which in our experience, however, is frequently absent.

The clinical picture is as a rule one of severe low-back pain frequently with root lesions, and even cases of failed low-back operation. In such cases treatment of this lesion can be very effective, and it is most important to bear this diagnosis in mind.

The patient S. P., born 1945, examined on March 2nd 1994, complained about severe low-back pain radiating into the groin and thigh on both sides. There was intense pain on coughing or sneezing. She had suffered from low-back pain since the age of 17, after a fall on her buttocks. Her periods were irregular from the menarche on, and during her first delivery in 1966 birth pains were felt in her low back. A second delivery was before term and she had one miscarriage. In 1969 pain radiated into her left leg and she was first operated for disc herniation in the spring of 1970. After operation she felt well, but pain recurred within a year and she was reoperated in the fall of 1971. She was improved until 1977, when again pain radiated into the left leg; for this pain she was operated a third time in April 1991. This time she did not improve after operation and her condition is slowly deteriorating. She has been an invalid since 1983. Her last acute attack was after a walk in early December 1994. She also suffered from headache with nausea and vomiting.

At examination her pelvis was shifted to the right, her trunk deviating to the left. There was hardly any trunk mobility. There was marked tenderness at the groin. Straight leg raising was greatly restricted. Dorsiflexion of the left big toe was weak. There was blockage at the right sacroiliac joint. A tender point was found laterally at her buttocks, and on pressure at the sacroiliac ligament. The coccyx, too, was tender on palpation.

Therapy: first pressure was applied to the sacrotuberous ligament (m. coccygeus) after which the coccyx was no longer tender. The sacroiliac joint was also mobilized. This, however, gave little relief. Outflare of the anterior spina with hypotonus of the abdominal wall on the same side, and inflare with increased tonus on the opposite side, was then noted. Reposition (as described above) was therefore carried out. After this manoeuvre the patient stood almost straight and straight leg raising was normal.

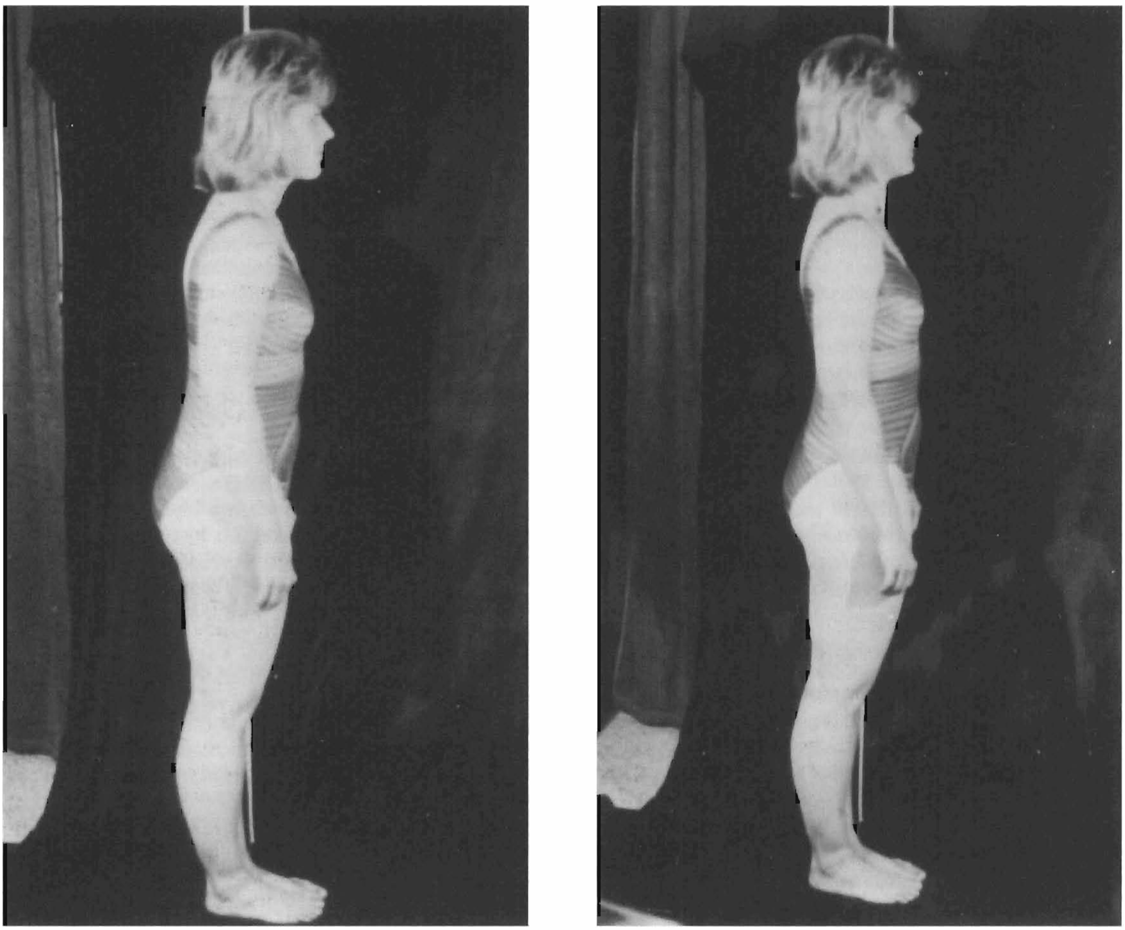
At control examination on March 9th, symptoms had partly recurred with pain mainly at the right groin and leg. There was a marked 'S'-reflex with a tender point in the buttocks and at the sacrotuberous ligament. The coccyx was also tender. Pressure at the sacrotuberous ligament was therefore repeated and the gluteals were relaxed. She was re-examined on March 23rd. She had deteriorated again after March 18th, with pain in her legs and groin on both sides. Her pelvis was shifted to the side and again there was innominate shear dysfunction. Reposition was repeated after which she stood straight and could leave the hospital.

Innominate shear dysfunction proved to be the most relevant lesion in this patient.

Dysfunction of the abdominal and gluteal muscles with a forward-drawn position and symphyseal shift

There is yet another (apparent) shift at the pubic symphysis and the ischial tuberosity (see Chapter 4, pp. 98–99) which goes hand in hand with muscular spasm: incoordination of the gluteal and abdominal musculature and a characteristic forward-drawn position (Figure 7.2). TrPs are found regularly in the straight abdominal muscles which are tense (at least on one side); the abdomen is drawn in and there is little or no abdominal respiration. Attachment points of the straight abdominal muscles are tender at palpation in particular at the symphysis. At the same time there is hypertonus of the gluteal muscles, at least on one side, and on that side there is increased resistance against cranial shift of the gluteal muscles (a pathological barrier). On the side of hypertonus the ischial tuberosity appears to be lower. There is an apparent shift on the symphysis, too, at palpation. Forward-drawn position (owing to tension in the abdominal muscles) necessarily causes tension in the whole of the back and dorsal neck musculature.

An elegant diagnostic test follows from this: if we find forward-drawn position with increased tension in the back and neck muscles when the patient looks at an object at eye level, we seat the patient. If tension in the back and neck muscles then disappears, we can conclude that tension even at the neck has its origin in the pelvic girdle.



(*a*) (*b*)

Figure 7.2 Typical forward-drawn position of the entire body including the head (*a*) before and (*b*) after treatment by pressure on the gluteal muscles

Symptoms

As these are caused by faulty body statics affecting the entire motor system, symptoms can be found in any part of the organism, in the cervical as well as in the thoracic and most frequently in the lumbo-pelvic region.

Therapy

Osteopaths use simple 'reposition manoeuvres' which are effective. As we know, however, that after these 'repositions' the position of the bony structures does not change (see Figure 4.12), this is, indeed, a 'palpatory illusion' due to changed soft tissue tension, and we use soft tissue techniques applied to the gluteus maximus – either by cranial shift of the gluteal musculature or by very slight pressure at the site of maximum hypertonus. More frequently, however, we find that the underlying cause is movement restriction of the fibular head. This is tender: there is a TrP of the biceps femoris, and frequently also a dysfunctional foot with movement restriction at the ankle joint and at the metatarso-phalangeal joints, with TrPs in the quadratus plantae and the deep toe flexors. If this is the case, treatment of the foot is the first step, and as a rule the entire dysfunctional chain disappears and posture becomes normal (see Figure 7.2.).

There is a possible explanation: the TrP of the biceps femoris causes dysfunction of the hamstrings which are the most important fixators of the pelvis. This has to be compensated by the gluteal and the abdominal muscles. Indeed, weakness of the abdominal and gluteal muscles is frequently present in this syndrome and has to be treated. No less important is treatment of the dysfunctional foot, where frequently we find lowered sensibility, requiring stimulation.

This syndrome is very frequent – we found it in 90 patients in the course of 2 years. Its treatment is very effective; on the other hand, we can easily understand that if it is not diagnosed, there must be recurrences in all sections of the motor system including the upper cervical area.

Z. A. (1951), schoolteacher, first seen on 16 March 1989 because of low-back pain radiating to the right hip, since early that month. She had suffered frequent such attacks several times a year since 1975, often lasting for weeks. Headaches since the age of 20. Appendectomy at 15, two normal deliveries, each time with back pain.

At examination there was a forward-drawn position; on two scales the reading was 35 kg on the right and 27 kg on the left. There was deviation to the left at Hautant's test; the hyoid deviated to the left with increased tension in the digastricus on that side. Findings in the lumbar and pelvic region were negligible except for an 'active' scar after appendectomy: increased resistance on palpation, with pain points and skin drag in the region of the scar. The digastric muscle was treated by PIR and the scar by soft tissue techniques. The patient felt immediate relief, her posture became normal and there was neither deviation nor any difference on two scales. She was also very much improved at control examination on 30 March, when a slight restriction in the upper part of the sacroiliac joint on the right was mobilized.

The patient was seen again on 4 January 1990. She had been without symptoms until November when she slipped and fell on her back. Three days later low-back pain radiating into the right hip recurred. Again there was a forward-drawn position combined with a shift at the symphysis and tenderness; the ischial tuberosity was lower on the right and there was increased tension in the right buttock. After sustained pressure on the right gluteus maximus, hypertonus of the right buttock and tenderness at the symphysis as well as (apparent) asymmetry had disappeared, posture was normal and there was no pain.

In this case the forward-drawn position was due the first time to overactivity of the abdominal muscles due to an active appendectomy scar; the second time, it was the result of incoordination of the abdominal and gluteal muscles. Disturbance of equilibrium was caused by increased tension in the left digastricus.

The 'S'-reflex (Silverstolpe Skoglund)

In 1989, Silverstolpe described a reflex response to snapping palpation of a TrP in the mid-thoracic region, more frequently on the left side, causing contraction of the low lumbar erector spinae with dorsiflexion of the buttocks. Skoglund registered this phenomenon by EMG.

As a rule, when this reflex was present, he found a tender point (TeP) situated laterally of the spina iliaca posterior superior at the level of the coccyx on the same side. If this was so, the patient felt a sharp pain if pressure was exerted with one finger on the sacrotuberous ligament. The palpating finger is placed at the side of the coccyx pressing in a cranial direction on the ventral aspect of the sacrum. There the therapist meets resistance and the patient reacts painfully. Silverstolpe gives massage to the tender point; in our experience it is sufficient to wait at the barrier for release. The moment this reaction takes place, the TrP in the thoracic region vanishes as well as the TrP at the buttock. This constitutes the therapeutic manoeuvre for what the authors call 'pelvic dysfunction'.

This is a frequent phenomenon; Silverstolpe and Helsing found it in 373 patients during 1988. As this phenomenon concerns postural muscles, patients may complain of symptoms in all sections of their spinal column as well as at the coccyx (on one side). Silverstolpe described visceral symptoms and in particular difficulty while singing. Marked improvement of phonation follows immediately after this treatment. The greatest number of my patients with the 'S'-reflex complained of low-back pain, but pain in the thoracic region is also chacteristic; the TrP in the mid-thoracic region may be related to Maigne's interscapular pain.

In our view the hard resistance and these striking effects can hardly be explained by the sacrotuberous ligament. Underneath the ligament, however, lies the pelvic diaphragm and the m. coccygeus in particular. Indeed, this manoeuvre enables us to reach the pelvic diaphragm. This makes it much easier to explain its effectiveness: by treating a TrP of the pelvic diaphragm we treat dysfunction of one of the walls of the abdominal cavity. This cavity is most important not only for body statics but also for respiration, thus explaining the effectiveness of this treatment in singers.

Prevention of recurrence (which is fairly common in this condition) consists of exercise aimed at the pelvic diaphragm (see p. 241). Weakness of the abdominal and gluteal muscles was present in one third of our cases, requiring rehabilitation.

Combined lesions

The analytical approach to the individual disturbances presented here is an advantage, as it gives a schematic and clear picture of lesions that have a common pathogenesis and therefore a common therapy. In practice, of course, they are rarely found isolated, or if so it is only after other disturbances have been eliminated by treatment. A combination of disorders is the rule, because all the structures involved in low-back pain are closely related forming chain reactions, so that if one link does not function properly, others are likely to suffer.

J. F. (1906), our patient since 1962, obese with lumbar hyperlordosis and weak abdominal muscles. Pain started suddenly in 1957 when the patient bent forward. There was pelvic distortion to the right and lumbosacral blockage. At control examination we found a painful coccyx (this relapsed twice). After successful treatment of a typical coxalgia there was pain at the L5 spinous process with ligament pain; in the following years coxalgia, lumbosacral blockage and a painful L5 spinous process repeatedly reappeared, and since 1968 sacroiliac blockage. The patient improved over the years, with therapeutic exercise and weight reduction, although with occasional relapses.

In low-back pain due to overstrain, muscular imbalance and faulty statics may produce ligament overstrain and frequently pain in the spinous processes, for instance through hyperlordosis. However, joint blockage in any segment, too, is frequently the result of muscular imbalance, faulty statics or both. On the other hand, it may also be the cause of the imbalance. This is no less true of the painful coccyx resulting from hypertonus of the glutei, quite frequently associated with ligament pain and, on the other hand, frequently associated with sacroiliac lesions and lesions of the hip. Again, lesions of the hip are very often associated with blocked sacroiliac joints. All of these disorders of function in the strict sense of the word may be, and often are, connected with disc lesions, complicating them, blockage at the segment of disc lesion being the rule rather than the exception.

Only an analysis of this interlocking can make a logical and consistent therapeutic approach possible. Obviously, in principle a disturbance of function is more likely to be remedied by adequate therapy than a structural lesion such as disc protrusion. On the other hand, pain originating in the disc or severe blockage may make remedial exercise or static correction impossible because of muscle spasm.

It will therefore be advisable in some cases to treat blockage and spasm first and in others to treat disc lesion by (manual) traction first, if it gives relief. Traction in flexion (see Figure 6.28*a*) can be given as first aid. It may be questioned whether disc lesion does not constitute a contraindication to manipulation. On the other hand, blockage is quite frequently the reason why a patient with disc lesion reacts badly to traction, i.e. to one of the most effective ways of treating her condition. The answer is to use the gentlest techniques and if possible to deal with spasm and blockage simultaneously. This is possible, thanks to PIR mobilization techniques ('muscle energy techniques'). It is thus good policy, except in some very acute disc lesions, to start by treating blockage in the most adequate way, i.e. to treat disc lesion by manual traction and then to improve muscular imbalance and faulty statics, and to treat the residual pain (hyperalgesic zones, pain points and, in chronic cases, the deep fasciae) by the most adequate method.

Pain in the thoracic spine and thorax

Because the thoracic spine is less mobile than the cervical or the lumbar spine, it is less frequently the site of primary lesion. On the other hand, pain in the thoracic region is often referred pain from the viscera, and lesions of the thoracic spine are often secondary to visceral disease. This must always be borne in mind in order to avoid wrong diagnosis. There is, however, one important condition affecting primarily the thoracic spine, i.e. juvenile kyphosis with stiffness of the thoracic spine ensuing in adult life, and this unfavourably affects both the cervical and the lumbar spine. For this reason low-back pain is frequently the first complaint from which the patient suffers.

Patients complain mostly of pain between or below the shoulder-blades. Here, again, pain in the dorsal region may be distinguished between that due only to overstrain (whether exogenic or caused by muscular imbalance) and that caused by faulty statics. Exogenic overstrain in this region is most frequently due to a kyphotic sitting position. The typical muscular imbalance is a short pectoralis and weak lower fixators of the scapula. On the other hand, hypermobility can also be linked with pain, particularly in a flat back in the upper thoracic region. Therapy must be carried out accordingly. For its very favourable effect I advocate Brügger's relief position (see Figure 6.144). There is a special type of pain described by Maigne (1964) as *dorsalgie interscapulaire* in which the spinous processes of T5 or T6 are very tender on palpation and in which findings in the thoracic region are otherwise negative; the primary lesion is, according to Maigne, in the lower cervical spine.

Pain of this localization can be due to a thoracic TrP causing the 'S'-reflex which is related to a TrP in the m. coccygeus. It can also be caused by trigger points in the erector spinae in the mid-thoracic region, and it is here that the patient feels pain. However, on examination of the erector spinae by rolling it under our fingers, the same painful resistance can be felt in that muscle as far down as the upper lumbar region. In this case there is usually restriction of trunk rotation (thoracolumbar junction dysfunction).

There are, of course, numerous other muscles with trigger points causing pain in the thoracic region, in particular the pectoralis major and minor, the serratus and the latissimus dorsi (see Chapter 6). It is particularly important to point out the subscapularis, which is a very frequent source of pain in the upper part of the thorax on either side, because it is so hidden that it causes no local but only referred pain, so that it is advisable to examine it routinely in cases of thoracic pain with no obvious cause. It may even cause movement restriction of ribs.

Blockage in the thoracic region affects not only the intervertebral apophyseal joints, but also the joints between the vertebrae and the ribs, causing the same type of pain. In both cases, if the lesion is acute, pain may be worse during deep breathing, but this is, of course, more prominent in rib lesions, where it is useful to know whether breathing in or out causes the greatest pain. The importance of exact differential diagnosis as against pleurisy is obvious.

Both for diagnosis and for therapy the techniques described in Chapters 4 and 6, respectively, are essential and need not be repeated here.

Muscle spasm of the erector spinae is frequently found in the thoracic spine even without blockage, or after blockage has been treated, and in such cases PIR of the thoracic erector spinae is most rewarding (see Figures 6.112–6.114).

Just as there is acute lumbago and acute wry neck, there can be (though less frequently) acute attacks of pain in the thorax due to dysfunction of a motor segment or, more typically, a rib. Such an attack can be even more dramatic than lumbago or wry neck, because the patient feels stabbing pain on respiration. As mere contact at the rib can be most painful, first aid is more likely to be local anaesthesia, which is not difficult as the transversocostal joint is easy to reach. Even here there is the danger of diagnostic error: a similar acute pain at respiration can be caused by acute pneumonia before the typical rise in temperature.

More rarely we see patients with intense pain which they localize below their ribs (upper abdomen). Pain is usually provoked by deep respiration and forceful movement of the upper extremity on the painful side. These patients have usually undergone many visceral examinations which are all negative. In these patients we diagnose the syndrome of the 'slipped rib', described (among others) by Cyriax. The rib at fault is usually the tenth. Once we think of this possibility the diagnosis is easy: we stand behind the seated patient and hook our fingers round the last ribs at the upper end of the abdominal cavity and exert pressure on the ribs with the fingers against our thenar. At that moment the patient experiences sharp pain.

In a fresh case it may suffice to mobilize the rib with our hooked fingers at the site of pain. If that does not bring relief it is easy (and diagnostic) to treat the rib by local anaesthesia at its inner margin. If relief by these conservative measures is not permanent and pain keeps recurring, surgical removal of the rib is indicated.

Finally, as mentioned above, restricted trunk rotation, widely believed to be due to thoracolumbar dysfunction, is one of the most frequent causes of low-back pain, and can also cause interscapular pain because of spasm of the erector spinae. It is also a frequent cause of abdominal pain because of psoas spasm, and of pain at the costovertebral junction of the last two ribs owing to trigger points in the quadratus lumborum which attaches there. It is exceptional for thoracolumbar dysfunction to be felt at its own site. Pain at the xiphoid process may be secondary to a lesion of the seventh or eighth rib, but more frequently to tension in the abdominal muscles.

Neck pain

Unlike low-back pain, neck pain is clinically simpler, although the 'cervical syndrome' is even more complex than the clinical pictures of lesions of the lumbar spine and pelvis.

Here, too, we can distinguish between pain caused only by overstrain (either exogenic or due to muscular imbalance) and that caused by faulty statics. The commonest type of chronic overstrain of the neck is caused by working with the head bent forward. A forward-drawn position of the head due to faulty statics may cause similar complaints (see Figure 3.36, p. 70). The typical muscular imbalance in the region of the shoulder girdle is described in Chapter 4 (p. 138).

Symptoms

First discomfort and then pain caused by overstrain usually after working in a sitting position. Another complaint is similar: pain provoked by jolting in buses, tractors and other vehicles. Pain is usually asymmetrical and tends to radiate towards the head and/or ahoulders.

Clinical signs

Signs typical of muscular imbalance (if present); faulty posture which must be examined in a relaxed sitting position without a support, and standing. Faulty breathing by lifting the thorax should not be overlooked. The most typical periosteal pain points are the lateral edge of the spinous process of C2 (more frequently on the right) and the upper edge of the shoulder-blade. The most important muscular trigger points are in the upper trapezius, the levator scapulae and the sternocleidomastoid. (Any spinous, articular or transverse process may, of course, be tender on palpation.) In chronic cases restricted mobility of the soft tissues round the neck is a very important sign.

Therapy

First, reversible changes in function (TrPs, segmental movement restrictions and soft tissue lesions) are treated. The patients have to avoid head anteflexion; remedial exercise must include correction of faulty posture and breathing patterns. A supporting collar is useful in jolting vehicles (see Figure 6.150). PIR of muscles with trigger points and painful insertions is effective. It is important to provide correct back support when sitting (see Figure 6.151). Whenever movement restriction due to articular dysfunction is found, this should be treated by manipulation.

It must not be forgotten that the cause of neck pain can be outside the cervical region. In that case treatment has to be aimed at the underlying cause.

Acute wry neck

One of the most frequent causes of neck pain is, of course, blockage of mobile segments of the cervical spine; this has to be diagnosed by the methods given in Chapter 4. Blockage with severe muscular spasm is also the most frequent cause of what is called acute wry neck.

Symptoms

The condition presents most frequently after rest in bed with the neck in an unsuitable position, sometimes after driving a car with the window open, or again after a sudden jerk of the neck; the patient complains of pain and stiffness, usually only on one side of the neck, frequently radiating towards one shoulder or the occiput.

Clinical signs

Not only is the head held very stiffly, it is usually also rotated and inclined. Rotation and bending to the opposite side is most restricted, but anteflexion and retroflexion also suffer. The most frequent cause is blockage of the segment C2/3, in exceptional cases C1/2 or C3/4. It is, however, important to realize that another segment is usually involved, most frequently C5/6, the cervicothoracic junction, or sometimes the occiput/atlas. These segments require treatment, but are better diagnosed after treatment of C2/3, because acute pain and spasm make diagnosis difficult. The typical pain point is the lateral aspect of the spinous process of C2 on the convex side. A pain point between the upper medial edge of the scapula and the spinous processes to which the middle part of the trapezius attaches should be looked for: this is a sign of possible complication by a cervicobrachial or radicular syndrome.

Therapy

The first step is isometric traction with the patient seated or supine (see Figure 6.51, p. 189), which should bring immediate relief and at the same time frees the segment C2/3; we should then treat the other segments which are usually involved. Residual muscle spasm, most frequently in the trapezius, is treated by PIR.

There is a possible diagnostic pitfall in relapsing acute wry neck – the initial stage of a spasmodic torticollis. In such cases, although pain becomes less at each relapse, rotation and inclination of the head become worse and we see the typical spasm of the sternocleidomastoid on one side and the splenius on the other, whereas true blockage becomes less and less marked. Another warning concerns meningeal haemorrhage: it may also cause acute pain in the neck, with stiffness. At examination, however, there is mainly restricted anteflexion (meningeal signs) and no typical segmental blockage.

Most cases of neck pain in which blockage is not acute are linked with other forms of the cervical syndrome, as described later in this chapter. It is unusual if neck pain is not combined with pain in the region of the shoulder, i.e. dermatome C4, to which pain radiates from about as many structures as in the low-back region. In addition to the large C4 dermatome, there is a characteristic hyperalgesic zone in blockage of the craniocervical junction below and posterior to the mastoid process.

Pseudoradicular and other pain due to disturbed motor function of the lower extremities

The reader should take note of what I have already said about pseudoradicular pain in Chapter 2 (p. 31). In listing the clinical signs of blockage of lumbar mobile segments, the segment of radiating, i.e. pseudoradicular, pain was included. Clinical experience shows that, as in true radicular syndromes, we encounter pseudoradicular syndromes only in

L4, L5 and S1. In the L4 pseudoradicular syndrome, pain radiates down the ventral aspect of the thigh towards and even below the knee; in the L5 syndrome pain radiates down the lateral aspect of the lower extremity to the ankle and in the S1 syndrome down the dorsolateral aspect of the lower extremity towards the heel. In the L4 syndrome the femoral nerve stretch test and in the L5 and S1 syndromes the straight leg raising test can be positive, but not to the degree seen in true radicular syndromes. Besides pain, there may be hyperalgesia and dysaesthesia in each segment. The muscles in spasm characteristic for each pseudoradicular syndrome are given in the list of signs of blockage of individual segments of the lumbar spine (see Table 7.1, p. 255).

Which structures are most frequently affected if we find the pseudoradicular syndromes described above?

The pseudoradicular (reflex) syndrome L4 is caused by a lesion either in the mobile segment L3/4 or in the hip joint, and for this reason it may be difficult to distinguish a painful hip without clear coxarthrosis from an L3/4 lesion or a combination of both disorders, which is quite frequent – patients in whom we have to treat both the hip and the L3/4 segment. As pain radiates towards the knee, and spasm of the adductors (Patrick's sign) also produces pain at the attachment point, i.e. the pes anserinus on the tibia, pain at the knee is also common.

The pseudoradicular (reflex) syndrome L5 is caused mainly by lesions of the mobile segment L4/5 with typical spasm of the piriformis. This spasm (trigger point) in the piriformis frequently persists even after successful treatment of the L4/5 segment, or after it has spontaneously returned to normal, and can then be the cause of a pseudoradicular syndrome. A not infrequent complication of this syndrome is a painful fibular head due to tension in the biceps femoris (hamstrings, straight leg raising!).

The pseudoradicular (reflex) syndrome S1 is caused not only by the lumbosacral segment but also by lesions of the sacroiliac joint. Another structure that may radiate pain in this segment is the sacroiliac ligament or a painful tuber ossis ischii, the attachment point of the hamstrings. Again, this syndrome is frequently complicated by pain at the fibular head.

A structure that can complicate all three pseudoradicular syndromes is the coccyx: there may be a positive Patrick's sign and straight leg raising test, spasm of the iliacus or the piriformis, and pain may even simulate hip pain.

Another structure referring pain to the low back and causing back-bending restriction and characteristically a forward-drawn position of the thorax relative to the pelvis, is a painful pubic symphysis caused by increased tension of the abdominal muscles.

Pain originating in the lower extremities

The fibular head

In addition to reflex pain in the lower extremities there are disturbances of locomotor function which must be clinically diagnosed and which may cause pain by themselves, but which more often complicate pseudoradicular or true radicular syndromes. One such lesion is a blocked fibular head (see Figure 6.22, p. 171), which may cause pain at the fibular head and cramp in the calf; in the acute stage, pain at flexion and extension of the knee may be felt, with negative findings at the knee joint. It may be related to pain at the heel; most important is, however, that dysfunction of the fibular head goes hand in hand with a TrP in the biceps femoris which causes postural dysfunction of the pelvis which is compensated by the abdominal and gluteal muscles causing a forward-drawn posture (see Chapter 8, pp. 258–259).

The knee

In a painful knee (not pain referred to the knee) it is most important not to overlook a patella that does not move easily and smoothly on the femoral and tibial articular surfaces. This has sometimes to be found by exerting gentle pressure on the patella from above, creating a grinding resistance. The technique described on p. 171 is most effective in dealing with such lesions. In affections of the knee (tibiofemoral) joint it is maximum flexion which is first restricted; the patient, however, resents more restricted extension. In this case we find lateral springing (gapping) of the joint restricted at least to one side, and mobilization is carried out in that direction, preferably by shaking.

The foot

Most important of all is movement restriction of the tarsal bones and ankle joints, mainly affecting joint play. The joints most frequently affected are the ankle joint, the second, third and fourth tarsometatarsal joints, and the talocalcaneal joint. The most frequent symptoms are pain in the foot, cramp which may also affect the calf and shin, and dysaesthesia (which is also attributed to tunnel syndromes). For diagnostic and therapeutic techniques see Chapters 4 and 6.

There is one frequent complaint, however, that must be dealt with here: a painful calcaneal spur. In itself this is simply the attachment of the plantar aponeurosis. It becomes painful when there is increased tension in the aponeurosis, but the cause may be complex, as follows: (1) movement restriction between the tarsal bones, in particular between the calcaneus and the talus, navicular and cuboid; (2) movement restriction of the fibular head (!) or

(3) frequently of the sacroiliac joints; and (4) increased tension in the muscles attached to the plantar aponeurosis (Figure 6.132) and movement restriction of the soft tissue pad at the heel covering the calcaneus when we attempt to shift it in any direction against the underlying bone. All these possibilities must be borne in mind for treatment to be successful.

For the painful Achilles tendon see Figure 6.131. It is important, however, to be sure whether the painful structure is really only the firm tendon and/or the underlying soft tissue between the tendon and the bone, which has to be treated by a special soft tissue technique (see p. 206).

Meralgia paresthetica nocturna

Even such a condition as meralgia paresthetica nocturna is usually secondary to disturbed function of the lumbar spine and pelvis. It is usually explained as yet another entrapment or 'tunnel' syndrome, the tunnel being that formed by the ligamentum Pouparti through which the external cutaneous femoral nerve passes. It is reasonable to assume that entrapment syndrome is the result of increased pressure due to spasm of muscles which lie underneath this ligament, i.e. principally the iliopsoas and also the tensor fasciae latae. Spasm or increased tension of the psoas and the iliacus is a very frequent condition indeed, caused by muscular TrPs in lesions of the thoracolumbar junction, the lumbosacral junction, the hip and even the coccyx. Hence, if we normalize function of the lumbar and pelvic region and relax the iliopsoas and the tensor fasciae latae, this condition usually clears up.

V. V. (1950) complained of numbness and pain at the lateral surface of the left thigh since February 1988. He noticed 'cracking' sounds when turning his head. He had never been ill. When examined on 15 April 1988 he showed signs of disturbed equilibrium, and spasm of the masticatory muscles due to missing teeth. The relevant finding was psoas and iliacus spasm on the left, with restricted right rotation at T12–L1 (40 degrees to the right and 60 degrees to the left), and back-bending restriction at L5–S1. There was hypaesthesia on the lateral aspect of the thigh. Rotation mobilization to the right was carried out at T12–L1 followed by a thrust into left rotation, and then mobilization of L5–S1 into extension and rotation. At home the patient was told to practise gravity-induced PIR of the iliopsoas every day. When seen on 5 December 1988 he complained of pain between the shoulder-blades; the meralgia paresthetica had disappeared after a short time.

Pseudoradicular and other pain due to disturbed locomotor function of the upper extremities

In the upper extremity, too, pain frequently radiates from lesioned segments of the cervical spine, the cervicothoracic junction, and even from the upper ribs. Here, in contrast to the lower extremities, we do not as a rule see pain following a single dermatome exactly; the simple pseudoradicular pattern is usually hidden or distorted by what we call a chain reaction of secondary lesions producing pain mainly in the shoulder, round the elbow and forearm, and at the wrist, with characteristic pain referral.

Shoulder pain

This is probably the most constant symptom of pain radiating into the upper extremity and constitutes a clinical problem as complex as that of low-back pain. This may be due to the fact that many structures refer pain to the dermatome C4, which covers the shoulder region and belongs to the same segment as the phrenic nerve.

Experience has shown that any type of pain originating in the cervical spine, even in its upper part to as far down as the upper thoracic and the upper ribs – and even the viscera, the heart, lungs, liver, gall bladder and stomach – may have the origin of pain referred to the dermatome C4. (The dermatome chart of Hansen and Schliack (1962) used here differs from that of Keegan (1944) usually quoted in the American and British literature, where the shoulder region is covered by the dermatome C5.) The phrenic nerve, originating from the C4 segment, provides a much more credible explanation of this widespread irradiation than does the dermatome C5. This explains the somewhat vague term 'shoulder–arm syndrome'.

Shoulder pain due to disturbed muscle function

Here, too, muscular imbalance alone can be the cause of pain, producing symptoms as fatigue sets in. The muscle most susceptible to painful spasm (trigger points) is the trapezius, in its upper and middle sections, the subscapularis and the infraspinatus, all producing shoulder pain. For clinical signs see 'The upper crossed syndrome' (p. 138).

Therapy

Immediate relief can be obtained by PIR of the muscles with trigger points, but the underlying muscular imbalance should be treated by remedial exercise.

Pain radiating from the cervical and upper thoracic spine

Here pain is evoked by certain movements of – or positions of – the head. The most frequent cause is movement restriction, which is then the main object of treatment. As pain from the (upper) thoracic spine frequently can imitate visceral pain, shoulder pain, too, can result from affections of the heart, gall bladder and the stomach.

Pain originating in the upper ribs

The first four ribs produce pain radiating into the shoulder. In lesions of the second to fourth rib, patients also feel pain in the shoulder-blade. In lesions of the first rib (see Figure 4.27, p. 108) shoulder pain may be the only complaint. At examination there is usually tenderness at the vertebral margin of the scapula in lesions of the second to fourth rib, and tenderness of the (underlying) angle of the rib is found only after scapula abduction. Tenderness of the first rib can be palpated at its attachment to the manubrium sterni below the clavicle. Here, too, movement restriction is the most frequent cause of pain and therefore the principal object of therapy.

The scapulohumeral joint

The clinical picture of involvement of this joint has been described in classic terms by Cyriax (1977). It corresponds to the 'frozen shoulder' which is unique in arthrology because it is caused by contracture of the joint capsule (De Sèze, 1960, 1961; Cyriax, 1977).

Symptoms

In patients of 45–65 years of age, more usually women, pain of severe intensity sets in, felt in the shoulder, radiating down the arm even to the wrist, and being worst at night (in bed), or when the arm hangs down, carrying a weight, or on moving the shoulder. At first there is only slight restriction of movement, but in the course of a few weeks this deteriorates. It is possible to distinguish three stages (as Cyriax points out), each lasting 3–4 months: during the first stage pain is intense and the symptoms exacerbate; during the second stage pain subsides although movement is still restricted; and during the third stage the frozen shoulder 'thaws', so that in about 1 year the patient is symptom-free.

Clinical signs

At examination we find the typical capsular pattern (Cyriax, 1977, see Figure 4.39, p. 116; Sachse, 1996, Figure 4.61). It is worth noting that joint play (see Figure 4.40, p. 116) remains unaffected as long as abduction of the arm is possible to about 90 degrees, which is further proof that it is only the capsule that restricts mobility. The typical pain point is at the attachment of the deltoid muscle tendon and the subscapularis muscle. This muscle might be called the 'muscle of the frozen shoulder', and spasm here is particularly important in the early stages of this syndrome – it is responsible for the 'capsular pattern', which restricts primarily external rotation and abduction. Recently, however, Sachse (1996) using his technique of examination, showed that it is abduction which is first and most restricted. In severe cases there is muscle atrophy in the deltoid, the supra- and infraspinatus muscles, and there can be severe vasomotor disturbance in the whole of the upper extremity with cyanosis, oedema and even glossy skin on the fingers ('shoulder–arm syndrome'), a frequent manifestation of algodystrophy.

Therapy

In the acute stage we have to combat pain, using the classic analgesics but avoiding narcotics if possible. It is also important to combat pain indirectly, by treating all concomitant disturbances of the cervical spine down to Th3 and any muscle spasm in the shoulder. The usual mobilization and manipulation techniques are useless in dealing with the shoulder joint itself, but there is one technique that may give relief at any stage of the disease – traction using PIR (see Figure 6.10, p. 166). The most specific treatment, which should always be given a trial, is gravity-induced PIR or infiltration of the subscapularis. This is indicated whenever we diagnose a trigger point in this muscle (see Chapter 6, Figure 6.111*a*). Cortisone should be tried (or substances with similar effect, such as triamcinolone) as an intra-articular injection, but should be repeated only a few times and only if it alleviates the pain. It is advisable for the patient to wear her arm in a sling during the acute stage and to perform only isometric exercises. More active exercise can be undertaken in the second stage, when pain has subsided, but it should never be such as to provoke the pain again.

Pain provoked by arm abduction

Pain during abduction of the arm is more common than the capsular pattern. It is caused by disturbance of the mechanism by which the head of the humerus slips through under the coracohumeral ligament during abduction. This movement is lubricated by the bursa subdeltoacromialis, and if the mechanism is impaired X-ray sometimes reveals calcifications. It can also be caused by impingement of tissues of the rotator cuff ('impingement syndrome').

Symptoms

There may be pain provoked by abduction of the arm, or even merely movement restriction, or there may even be severe spontaneous pain. Two types of impaired movement may be present:

1. The patient abducts the arm to the point at which the humeral head becomes engaged under the ligament and at this point the patient feels pain, but once he overcomes this 'obstacle', abduction may continue to 180 degrees without symptoms.

This phenomenon is the 'painful arc' (Cyriax, 1977).
2. There may simply be restricted abduction.

Clinical findings
Restricted abduction, a painful arc, or both, with normal rotation in the shoulder joint; there is impairment of joint play at the humeroscapular joint (see Figure 4.40, p. 116). There may be calcifications in the bursa subdeltoacromialis.

Therapy
Mobilization to restore joint play (see Figure 6.11, p. 166); infiltration of the bursa subdeltoacromialis by injection of local anaesthetic under the acromion over the head of the humerus, or simply needling of the pain point. This is, however, ill advised if there are calcifications in the bursa as calcium crystals may cause acute capsulitis.

Pain arising in the muscles of the rotator cuff and the long head of the biceps

In these cases symptoms also occur if the patient is forced to strain the painful muscle, or if at examination by resisted movement pain is felt at the insertion point at the humeral head. For clinical examination, see Figure 4.38, p. 115).

Therapy
PIR of each muscle found to give pain (see Figures 6.107–6.110). Needling or local anaesthetic can be applied to the attachment point of each muscle, or to the muscular trigger points.

Accessory shoulder joints

The acromioclavicular joint

This is a very frequent, but rarely diagnosed, cause of pain which the patient feels in the shoulder and fails to distinguish from pain in the shoulder joint. It is particularly frequent after trauma – a fall on the shoulder. The pain is provoked by moving the raised arm in front of the chest. At examination passive adduction of the arm across the chest is painful, usually restricted, and the joint is tender at palpation. Therapy consists mainly of mobilization (see Figures 6.12 and 6.13, pp. 167–168). Needling or the application of local anaesthetics is also helpful. Only in cases of true arthrosis, where this treatment has failed, should local application of cortisone be tried.

The sternoclavicular joint

Blockage of this joint, without arthritis, is a much rarer condition. Symptoms are localized in the subclavicular region with much irradiation to the shoulder, sternum and neck; the pain is provoked by shoulder movements involving the scapula (shrugging). It is important to point out that the frequently painful or tender medial end of the clavicle is not as a rule a sign of lesion of the sternoclavicular joint, but of tension in the sternocleidomastoid, and must be treated as such. For distinction from joint pain, the sternomatoid attaches from above at the clavicle, whereas the joint can be better palpated from below. True isolated arthrosis of this joint is not frequent and should be treated by frequent mobilization. In simple blockage, mobilization is very effective and can be combined with local anaesthetics or needling (Figure 6.13*b*, p. 168).

Pain in the elbow region

A very frequent complication of pain even of cervical origin is pain localized more often at the lateral than at the medial epicondyle of the humerus.

Lateral epicondylar pain

As the epicondyles are the attachment points of muscles, increased muscle tension plays an important role here and should be diagnosed and treated. Although the lateral epicondyle is palpated through the brachioradialis, the muscles producing increased tension at the epicondyle are the supinator, the extensors of the fingers and the hand, and the biceps brachii. Prehension causes pain, particularly if it is cramped. It is no coincidence that tennis elbow and writers' cramp are forms of the same disease; pressure on the pen because the writer is tense and nervous, and failure to relax the grip on the tennis racket in between strokes set up the same reaction.

Symptoms
Pain at the lateral aspect of the elbow, radiating up and down the arm, and more intense when the hand grasps something or holds firmly on to something. Patients often complain that things fall out of their hands.

Clinical signs
There is a very tender pain point at the lateral epicondyle. For diagnosis and treatment of increased tension in the pertinent muscles, see Figures 6.103–6.105. In addition to increased muscle tension, there is resistance to springing the elbow joint in a lateral direction. There can be restricted mobility of the soft tissues at the elbow against the underlying bone, particularly in the chronic stage.

Therapy
The muscles in spasm must be relaxed, (elbow and cervical) manipulation is effective, and local anaesthesia or needling can be used. The use of cortisone should be the exception. It is important to

remember that the underlying cause of the condition is a cramped way of using the hands, and failure in treatment is due to inability to improve the patient's habits rather than to ineffective methods of treatment. Finally, if there are soft tissue changes, soft tissue manipulation is indicated (see Figure 6.70). Restriction is usually found when moving the soft tissues against the underlying bone at the elbow and comparing the two sides. Stroking (exteroceptive stimulation) can be very effective even in severe cases.

Medial epicondylar pain

Symptoms

Pain at the medial epicondyle.

Clinical signs

Tension in the flexors of the hand and fingers and impaired springing of the elbow in a medial direction. Lifting with the arm in supination is painful (golfer's elbow).

Therapy

Relaxation of the finger and hand flexors, manipulation of the elbow in a medial direction, soft tissue techniques, and if necessary, local anaesthesia. Use of cortisone should be the exception. Stroking the skin can be very effective.

Pain at the wrist

The structure most frequently found to be painful is the styloid process of the radius. This affection is closely linked with lateral epicondylalgia and lateral springing of the elbow joint is usually impaired (see pp. 164–165). Another structure that is frequently painful (with or without arthrosis) is the first carpometacarpal joint. In both these conditions the symptoms are local, generally getting worse with strain. The most significant sign in a painful styloid process, besides local tenderness, is restricted radial flexion of the hand. Therapy should be mainly directed to the underlying disturbance of function at the elbow causing impairment of pronation–supination which are essential for radial (and also ulnar) flexion (see Chapter 4, pp. 116–117). De Quervain's tendovaginitis may be a secondary condition. Joint mobilization is recommended, as for lesion of the first carpometacarpal joint; see Figure 6.2 (p. 162).

In rare cases there may be a painful os pisiforme, one cause being blockage against the underlying os triquetrum. This can easily be mobilized.

Entrapment syndromes

There are two important affections in the upper extremity that are quite often found in combination: these are the carpal-tunnel syndrome and the thoracic-outlet syndrome.

The carpal-tunnel syndrome

This condition is attributed to compression of the median nerve in the tunnel formed by the carpal bones and crossed by the ligamentum carpi transversum, compression first affecting the vessels supplying the nerve.

Symptoms

The patient complains of numbness and tingling, or even pain, in the hand and fingers, at first when waking up in the morning and later such as to wake him up in the night. In the more advanced stage pins and needles and pain are felt even during the day, particularly on raising the arms. Relief is obtained when the arms hang loose, while shaking the hands improves the blood supply. Pain is also felt at the wrist and may radiate up the arm. Strain on the hands exacerbates the symptoms.

Clinical signs

In the initial stages we have to provoke the symptoms for examination; the simplest method is raising the arms while the patient is supine. Pressure on the median nerve above the wrist may elicit a sharp tingling pain (Tinel's sign). In the more advanced stage there is hypoaesthesia in the area supplied by the median nerve and weakness with atrophy of the abductor pollicis; this muscle must always be tested. Only in the advanced stage of the disease do we find thenar atrophy. One of the most significant findings is increased resistance to joint play between the carpal bones (see pp. 162–164).

Therapy

If joint play is impaired it must first be restored by mobilization (see Figures 6.5 and 6.6, p. 164) and the patient must be taught self-mobilization (see Figure 6.71). In the few cases in which joint play is not impaired, or if mobilization brings no relief, local anaesthetic should be applied in the carpal tunnel. If there is tightness of the ligamentum transversum this should be stretched. Only in exceptional cases should local application of cortisone be attempted. In the advanced stages, with thenar atrophy and typical EMG findings, when secondary changes hinder the success of this type of therapy, operation is indicated.

The thoracic-outlet syndrome ('scalenus syndrome')

This is attributed to compression of the brachial plexus mainly at the gap between the anterior and middle scalenus and its attachment at the first (or cervical) rib, also between the clavicle and the first rib, causing numbness and tingling pain in the upper extremity, this being most intense in the hands and fingers. Thus, it is not unlike the carpal-tunnel syndrome. In fact, at the time the syndrome was distinguished, many cases at present diagnosed as carpal-tunnel syndromes were attributed to the scalenus syndrome.

The thoracic-outlet syndrome is apparently the result of a complex of lesions in structures forming the thoracic outlet, each requiring separate diagnosis and producing its specific symptoms. These are increased tension of the scalenus (see Figure 6.94); increased tension of the other upper fixators of the shoulder girdle and the pectoralis minor; movement restriction in the lower cervical and upper thoracic spine; and movement restriction of the upper ribs, in particular of the first rib. It is no wonder, in view of this complexity, that doctors unfamiliar with the diagnosis of these disturbances of function indicated operation instead of conservative treatment of the underlying cause of the condition. This syndrome warrants operation only in exceptional cases where marked neurological signs are present and myelopathy can be excluded.

Symptoms

Principally dysaesthesia – i.e. numbness and pins and needles – with pain in the upper extremity, more on the ulnar aspect, including the hands, which gets worse when heavy carrying has to be done. The symptoms vary according to which structure (lesion) plays the principal role.

Clinical signs

The following tests are useful: Adson's manoeuvre, i.e. weakening (disappearing) pulse at the radial artery on bending the head back and turning it to the same side; raising the abducted arm bent at the elbow and observing the radial pulse; or pulling the arm down (as if carrying a heavy case) and observing the pulse. All these tests show concomitant compression of the subclavian artery. More important, however, is diagnosis of disturbance of the structures forming the thoracic outlet. In view of the role of the scaleni and the upper fixators of the shoulderblade it is obvious that disturbance of breathing by lifting the thorax is frequently decisive. Only in exceptional cases are true neurological signs found (atrophy of muscles of the hand); cervical myelopathy must then be ruled out.

Therapy depends on the analysis of clinical findings and their relevance, and is less a technical question than one of pathogenic considerations.

Combined lesions

As with low-back pain, pain in the upper extremities is usually attributable not to one specific lesion but to a combination of several. As we have seen in the thoracic-outlet syndrome, which is due to a complex of interconnected lesions, all the syndromes affecting the upper extremities form chains, as described in Table 4.3 (pp. 142–143). A key role is that of muscular imbalance at the shoulder girdle, producing tension of the upper fixators, and of faulty respiration with lifting of the thorax and increased tension in the scalenes. This increased tension is transmitted to the muscles of the upper arm and forearm and influences the epicondyles. Secondary movement restriction of the spinal and extremity joints soon follows, which increases muscle spasm. We can thus see combinations not only in space, so to speak, but also in time: pain radiating from the neck into the shoulders may be followed by pain in the epicondyles, the styloid process, and then by a carpal-tunnel syndrome followed by dysaesthesia due to blockage of the first rib. The primary lesion need not be in the spinal column or the trunk, but may equally well be in the limbs. Afferent stimulation is decisive and there are abundant receptors in the periphery. All this has to be considered and weighed up in order to indicate the proper place and the proper time for specific treatment, nor should the possibility of visceral involvement or a Trp at the diaphragm be forgotten.

The cervicocranial syndrome

This syndrome covers headache of cervical origin as well as other disturbances mainly of equilibrium, including minor neurological disorders such as cervical nystagmus. The underlying disturbance of the cervical spine can be the same as in simple neck pain. It is, of course, true that the cause is more frequently a lesion in the upper cervical spine, in particular at the cervicocranial junction, just as the lower cervical spine is more likely to produce pain in the upper extremity, but there are frequent exceptions. This is understandable if we consider the musculature: long muscles like the sternocleidomastoid, the scalenes, trapezii, and levatores scapulae, with their frequent spasms and trigger points, cover all of the cervical region and may react to lesions at any segment of the cervical spine. Apparently, the reaction of the nervous system determines whether the patient will suffer only from pain in the neck, or in the shoulder or arm, or mainly from headache, although the same disturbance of function may underlie them all.

Headache of cervical origin

This is an extremely frequent condition and is in my opinion the commonest single type of headache. It includes 'tension headache' which was thought to be mainly psychological: increased muscle tension, as we have seen, is due to many factors, and in its classic description (Wolff, 1948) increased tension of the neck muscles is part of the clinical picture of tension headache. Increased muscle tension is the consequence of practically all disturbances of the cervical spine, from exogenic overstrain, faulty posture and muscular imbalance to movement restriction throughout the cervical spine. There is, of course, a close relationship between headache, increased tension and psychological problems (see p. 84), but this does not alter the fact that increased muscle tension is a physiological phenomenon and that it should be treated by the most suitable physiological methods. Nor is 'vasomotor' headache incompatible with headache of cervical origin: the mere fact that a disturbance in the cervical region causes headache shows the presence of a factor of reflex origin. If we assume that disturbed function plays the role of a nociceptive stimulus, then a vasomotor reaction is part of the typical reaction, pain as a rule provoking vasoconstriction.

As this type of headache is very frequent, it should not be diagnosed only *per exclusionem*, i.e. only after any other origin has been ruled out, as most neurological textbooks teach. Admittedly, serious pathology must be excluded; but it should be remembered that headache of cervical origin has its own characteristic features, and as an important clinical entity it should be diagnosed as such.

Symptoms

All that is characteristic for vertebrogenic disorders (see pp. 83–84) is true for headache of cervical origin. I want to insist particularly on the position of the head, i.e. headache due to head anteflexion for long periods at work, and headache on waking, due to an unfavourable position of the head during sleep. Another feature of great importance is asymmetry, i.e. the fact that headache of cervical origin is usually one-sided or at least more intense on one side than on the other. It is also paroxysmal in character, i.e. there are either pain-free intervals or, if pain does not entirely disappear, there are at least paroxysms of intense pain. Summing up all of the features listed in Chapter 4 – including the role of psychological, endocrinological or even allergic factors – we come to the conclusion that cervical headache has many features in common with migraine.

At this point the localization of cervical headache must be discussed. This diagnosis is certainly indicated if the patient complains of pain radiating from the neck into the occiput and from there towards the eyes and temples, more to one side than the other. However, this in itself is insufficient for a diagnosis. In young patients, particularly adolescents and children, headache is frequently the first sign of disturbed cervical function long before neck pain has been felt. In such cases the pain may be localized in the forehead or the temporal region. Even pain radiating into the face (but not typical trigeminal neuralgia!) can be of cervical origin. This is less surprising than it may seem: Travell (1981) studied referred pain from trigger points in the sternocleidomastoid; this was frequently localized in the face.

Clinical signs

The most important are, of course, the signs of disturbed cervical function, which are common to neck pain, and include signs of muscular imbalance, spasm, faulty respiration and segmental lesions, particularly of the craniocervical junction. The most important pain points are on the lateral surface of the spinous process of the axis (more frequently on the right), at the posterior arch of the atlas (in the short extensors), at the transverse process of the atlas and in the sternocleidomastoid. The frequent pain points on the occiput itself are usually secondary, and there may sometimes be odd pain points of atypical localization on the skull. There is an important pain point at the temple in the temporalis muscle (not to be confused with a painful temporal artery!); other masticatory muscles may also cause headache, and should be examined for trigger points even through the open mouth. Even the pain point corresponding to the notch of the first division of the trigeminal nerve at the orbit can be of cervical origin.

Typical hyperalgesic skin zones are found medially below the mastoid processes, at the temples and eyebrows and at the forehead above the eyebrows and on both sides of the nose. What may be called the 'typical' soft tissue lesion is restricted mobility of the scalp against the skull. This can readily be palpated and the two sides compared. It is often a very relevant lesion and is easy to treat (see Chapter 6, p. 206). It is frequently linked to similar changes of the cervical fasciae.

Therapy

This follows the same rules as for any other disturbance of the cervical region. It may be worth stressing that here the significance of movement restriction at the craniocervical junction is so great that it is good policy to treat this first, as muscular imbalance cannot be improved until this obstacle has been removed. Movement restriction between atlas and occiput must be examined in all directions. If pain regularly begins on waking, we must enquire about the sleeping position of the patient. While trigger points in the muscles and at periosteal points of attachment are best treated by PIR, pain points on the skull are best treated by soft tissue technique or needling. A tender temporalis muscle can be treated by PIR (together with the masseter) or by mere pressure or local anaesthetics. The hyperalgesic zones on the forehead, temples and round the nose respond very well to skin stretching (see below), while restricted mobility of the scalp responds to soft tissue techniques.

The mandibulocranial syndrome

That this syndrome is important is clear not only from its frequent occurrence but because it produces almost the same symptoms as the cervicocranial syndrome and is often found in combination with it. This is true not only for pain (headache) but also for disturbances of equilibrium including vertigo. Indeed, it forms chain reactions with the cervical spine and the cervical muscles (see Chapter 4, p. 143). Changes in the orofacial system with facial asymmetry are often linked with scoliosis.

Symptoms

In addition to symptoms typical for the cervicocranial syndrome there may be bruxism, pain in the region of the ear (the temporomandibular joint) and the face may be very prominent, as well as dysphagia due to trigger points in the digastricus.

Clinical signs

There may be restricted opening of the mouth (it is normally possible to insert three knuckles between the upper and the lower incisors). During opening and closing of the mouth there may be deviation of the chin to one side and there may be a 'popping' sound at the joint. There may be tenderness at the temporomandibular joint. The following trigger points should be looked for: at the temporal muscle, at the temple, behind and below the jaw-bone for screenings; the masseter and the internal pterygoid muscles are better palpated through the open mouth. It is interesting that while the patient is usually aware of pain in the temples, trigger points in the other masticatory muscles – more painful on palpation – are observed only at examination.

Palpation of trigger points in the digastricus (behind the angle of the mandible and the chin) is more difficult and less rewarding. The simplest way to diagnose increased tension is to move the thyroid cartilage and/or the hyoid from side to side. Increased resistance here is characteristic, and easily assessed. There is also tenderness at the lateral edge of the hyoid on the side of increased tension. With marked increase of tension of the digastric muscle on one side, the thyroid cartilage can be seen to deviate.

Differential diagnosis

To distinguish the cervicocranial from the mandibulocranial syndrome, the physical findings are decisive. If the two syndromes are combined, the intensity of the signs (changes) in the cervical region and the orofacial system is decisive. It is no less important to distinguish between a primary lesion of the temporomandibular joint (TMJ) and muscular trigger points (TrP). In the former we find signs of malocclusion, such as missing teeth, a badly matched prosthesis and cross-bite. In muscular dysfunction occlusion is normal, but if there is a history of bruxism we may see increased activity of the masticatory muscles or deviation of the thyroid cartilage. If muscular dysfunction is the main factor, tenderness at the TMJ will subside after muscle relaxation – this is much less likely in primary TMJ lesions.

Therapy

Post-isometric relaxation (PIR) of the relevant muscles is the treatment of choice, followed by self-treatment (see Chapter 6). If the joint is involved, isometric traction is a useful addition. However, where there is malocclusion, prosthetics and/or orthodontics are essential. In most cases, disturbance of function in the orofacial system is bound up with changes elsewhere in the locomotor system, particularly in the cervical spine, and the primary task is to discover in a judicious manner the most relevant link in the chain.

T. L. (1947), first seen 26 November 1987, complained of vertigo on wakening (17 August) with a sensation of pulling to the right; there was vomiting for 2 days. Subsequently, only short attacks of dizziness occurred when side-bending the neck or bending forward; this lasted for about a month. Later there was headache and pain in the neck, mainly on side rotation. From 1985 there was a history of headache at the occiput, radiating to the eyes and lasting for several hours, with nausea. No history of disease.

At examination, readings on two scales were 30 kg on the right and 35 kg on the left; deviation at Hautant's test was to the left, disappearing at head rotation to the left and anteflexion. Examination showed only increased tension with trigger points at the masseter on both sides, and at the hyoid. PIR of the digastric was carried out on both sides, after which deviation at Hautant's test disappeared. At control examination on 10 December there were no symptoms nor deviation, although there was still a difference on two scales.

In this case the symptoms were produced by the orofacial system.

Anteflexion headache

This is of exceptional clinical importance because nowadays large numbers of people work seated, with the head bent forward. Hypermobile subjects who are susceptible to ligament pain are particularly prone to this type of headache. Another group is made up of patients after injury. The largest group of sufferers, however, are schoolchildren; and according to Gutmann (1968), whose opinion I share, 'school headache' – originally considered to be psychological – is usually attributable to this mechanism.

Symptoms

The patient is pain-free on waking. Only after some time at school (work), perhaps several hours, and particularly when reading or writing, the patient starts to fidget and change his position, until later headache is felt as such. During the holidays there are no symptoms. As the condition deteriorates, headache begins sooner and the patient finds it increasingly difficult to concentrate so that his performance at school deteriorates. These same patients suffer from headache after jolting in public vehicles or on turning somersaults. No wonder that these children, who in addition to headache, suffer from being constantly reprimanded by their teachers because of 'fidgeting' and lack of attention, are not happy at school.

Clinical signs

The anteflexion test is positive, i.e. if the patient's head is held for a short time without force in maximum anteflexion, merely by taking up the slack, pain sets in after 10–15 s. (Immediate pain is a sign of anteflexion blockage at C0/1.) There is frequently some movement restriction in the upper cervical spine. The typical pain point is the lateral edge of the spinous process of the axis. Typical signs of hypermobility may be visualized at X-ray examination (see Figure 3.47, p. 77). Other signs of Brügger's 'sterno-symphyseal syndrome' can be also found as a rule.

Therapy

If there is movement restriction it should be treated, as it aggravates the symptoms. The main therapeutic measure is to advise the patient to avoid head anteflexion – for instance, by using a sloping desk for reading and writing. One of the reasons why children suffer from this type of headache much more now than in the past is the introduction of flat school tables instead of the old-fashioned sloping desks. Further therapeutic and preventive measures are a supporting collar to be worn in jolting public vehicles, and the avoidance of PT exercises involving forced head anteflexion, such as somersaults. For remedial exercise Brügger's relief position should be taught and seats with suitable supports provided.

Gutmann (1979) has described anteflexion headache as a consequence of stenosis of the vertebral canal at the craniocervical junction. In such cases he showed that pressure of the cerebrospinal fluid and headache increase during head anteflexion. In severe cases such patients underwent surgery, with decompression, removal of the posterior arch of the atlas and widening of the foramen magnum.

Retroflexion headache

Another type of headache is aggravated during retroflexion. This is sometimes the case if there is very marked pain at the posterior arch of the atlas, if there is marked tenderness of the spinous processes below C2 and if there is involvement of the vertebral artery.

Migraine

I have already pointed out that most of the characteristic symptoms of headache of cervical origin fit the clinical picture of migraine, and also that vasomotor disturbance is compatible with headache of cervical origin. Yet it would be wrong to suggest that migraine as such is just another 'vertebrogenic' disease, because there are cases of migraine with absolutely no involvement of the cervical spine. However, in the large majority of migraine patients (including children) we find some disturbance of locomotor function, including faulty respiration (Sachse *et al.*, 1982). In 22 cases of classic migraine, he found movement restriction in the cervical spine in all but three cases, and normal respiration patterns also in only three patients. Bakke *et al.* (1982) and Clifford *et al.* (1982) have found greatly increased EMG activity of head (and masticatory) and neck muscles during attacks of migraine. Most migraine patients improve if disturbance in the cervical area is dealt with, perhaps because as in painful visceral affections as a rule the motor system reacts, thus itself becoming a pathogenic factor.

Differential diagnosis

I must again stress the importance of differential diagnosis. It cannot be the subject of this book, but just as headache due to serious pathological lesion will usually first be treated with analgesics before the true diagnosis is made, the same may happen – and does happen – with manipulation. With the latest manipulation techniques, however, the danger is less rather than greater than that presented by the mistaken use of analgesics or narcotics. The surest way to avoid diagnostic error, of course, is to see patients at intervals and to repeat or complete examination whenever anything unexpected appears during treatment.

Disturbances of equilibrium

The importance of the spinal column, particularly the craniocervical junction, for maintaining equilibrium, was explained in Chapter 2. The most significant symptoms of disturbance are dizziness and vertigo, but in an even greater number of patients we can determine disturbed equilibrium by the method shown in Figure 4.43, p. 119. If as a routine measure patients are asked to stand with each foot on separate scales, putting equal weight on each, a difference of 5 kg or over will probably be accompanied by deviation in Hautant's test in some position of the head, frequently in that corresponding to movement restriction. This type of clinically masked disturbance of equilibrium, which is far more frequent than dizziness, is almost invariably of cervical origin or stems from disturbed function of the orofacial system, both showing the 'cervical pattern' which is explained below, and which disappears after treatment of movement restriction. These patients are of the type with movement restriction in the craniocervical junction, in whom Norre *et al.* (1976) described cervical nystagmus.

Symptoms

These vary according to the type of vertigo or dizziness involved.

Classic vertigo (Ménière's syndrome) – Typical attacks last for hours or even days; the patient suffers from rotational vertigo and is able to indicate the direction of rotation (clockwise or anticlockwise); vertigo is accompanied by nausea and vomiting, usually coupled with tinnitus and disturbance of hearing. There are less severe cases, i.e. shorter, without disturbed audition, and a rocking sensation (sea-sickness) may take the place of the typical rotation.

A polymorphous group of short attacks of dizziness provoked by certain head positions and/or movements in relation to the trunk, the patient having the sensation of being pushed or pulled to one side, forwards or backwards, and apprehensive of falling. Nausea and tinnitus are usually absent, but headache is frequent. From its dependence on neck movement this type of disturbed equilibrium is widely recognized as 'cervical vertigo' or dizziness of cervical origin.

Positional vertigo – These patients suffer short attacks of true rotational vertigo on changing the position of the head in space, i.e. together with the rest of the body, and not necessarily changing the position of the head relative to the trunk. These attacks, although short, are very intense, and if the eyes remain open spontaneous nystagmus of very short duration can be observed.

Severe attacks of short duration provoked by certain positions of the head relative to the trunk, during which the patient falls to the ground: drop attacks, cervical syncope with or without loss of consciousness.

Mixed and transitional forms – i.e. patients suffering from more than one type of attack, or border cases, the type of attack changing during the disease.

K. J. (1908), surgeon; concussion after a car accident in 1948. Two days later, slight dizziness when bending the head to the right. Three years later, tinnitus and acute paroxysm of Ménière's disease, usually lasting for 2–3 days. Three years later these 'major' attacks ceased but the patient had a feeling of instability and a fear of falling. He actually fell three times, with the feeling that the ground had come up and hit him in the face. This also happened twice while he was driving, and he felt that the car was up-ended, with the bonnet in the air. In 1959, lying under a car with his head turned to the right, he felt sharp pain and dizziness which disappeared when he turned his head to the left. Repeating this 'experiment' seven times, he provoked a genuine Ménière attack, which he himself treated by traction. Dizziness and a feeling of uncertainty persisted. In 1960 he showed a right deviation when rotating the head to the left. On turning from supine position to lying on the right, there was spontaneous rotational nystagmus anti-clockwise. In this case all forms of vertigo presented in turn.

F. M. (1947), pharmacist, complained of pain in the occiput when walking, disturbance of hearing, sensation of dizziness, blurred vision and unsteady gait with the feeling that she was being pulled back. Turning over in bed produced nausea and dizziness. These symptoms date from 1982. She sought psychiatric advice, but received no (physical) treatment.

Her case history included normal deliveries, appendectomy at 14, gall stones. Allergic to most drugs.

At examination on 4 January 1988, the reading on two scales was 40 kg on the right and 37 kg on the left; Hautant's test showed deviation to the right which was aggravated on turning the head to the left or bending it backwards, but there was no deviation when turning the head to the right or bending it forward. There was movement restriction of C1–2 at right rotation and side-bending.

After mobilization of C1–2 and C5–6 and a thrust at C5 there was no deviation at Hautant's test and the reading on two scales was 32 kg on the right and 35 kg on the left.

At control examination on 20 January 1989 there was improvement, although some tension was still felt at the occiput, and dizziness. The reading on two scales was 35 kg on the right and 37 kg on the left; there were no symptoms in the cervical area, but restriction at Th12–L1, with spasm of the psoas and the thoracolumbar erector spinae. Th12–L1 was treated with mobilization to the left. There was further improvement by 10 February, when blockage at C0–1 was treated.

Three months later (5 April), dizziness, pain and blurred vision reappeared, there was a difference of 6 kg in readings on two scales, and deviation at Hautant's test. There was blockage at C2–3 and spasm of the psoas; in addition, there was a difference in the height of the symphysis, which was tender, and at the tuber ossis ischii, which was also lower on the right. There was no restriction at the thoracolumbar junction. X-ray (standing) showed deviation of the lumbar and also of the cervical spine, to the left of the plumb-line. By manipulation of the pelvis (pulling the right leg and pushing the left (stretched) leg) the spinal column was straightened in the AP view, with no side deviation of either the lumbar or the cervical spine. On 27 April the patient still complained of headache; the reading on two scales showed a difference of 5 kg and Hautant's test showed deviation only with the head bent back and rotated to the right. The relevant finding at this control examination was spasm of the internal pterygoids, treated by PIR.

On 1 June the patient complained of pain between the shoulder-blades and of a few days of headache and dizziness. We found movement restriction at C0–1 and (again) a shift at the symphysis and the ischial tuberosities, and deviation at Hautant's test. These symptoms were treated.

On 5 July she felt mainly low-back pain with movement restriction at L2–3; this was treated. There were almost no symptoms on 27 July when the right external pterygoid was treated for spasm. During February 1989, headache and dizziness recurred. On 15 March there was deviation at Hautant's test, the hyoid was deviated to the right, there was again symphyseal shift and uneven ischial tuberosities. We relaxed the right digastricus; instead of 'repositioning' we applied soft tissue techniques to the buttocks, obtaining symmetry at the symphysis and the ischial tuberosities. The patient remained without symptoms until a jerky movement (late June) caused sharp pain at the neck, right arm and behind the right ear, bringing on a recurrence of her symptoms. Deviation at Hautant's test occurred only at back-bending of the head, and there was a shift at the symphysis and the ischial tuberosities. This was treated only by pressure on the left gluteus maximus; after this soft tissue technique all symptoms disappeared.

The patient was without symptoms until early November 1989, when sustained work stress caused a recurrence. On 29 November there was deviation to the right at Hautant's test, a forward-drawn position of the pelvis with slight shift to the left. There was movement restriction at Th5–6 and increased tension in the right gluteus maximus, the abdominal muscles and the erector spinae, more particularly to the right. Posture and muscle tension were normalized after pressure applied to the right gluteus maximus, and Hautant's test became negative. Movement restriction at Th5–6 was treated by specific manipulation.

This very complicated case is interesting for many reasons – a living experiment. The same type of headache and dizziness was caused both by movement restriction at the craniocervical junction, and by spasm of the masticatory muscles. As long as the underlying disturbance at the pelvis remained untreated, with its consequent faulty stance and side deviation, relapses were frequent. Treatment by specific 'reposition manoeuvres' gave the same results as soft tissue techniques aimed at tension in the gluteal muscles, which revealed 'palpatory illusion' due to changes in tension of the soft tissues overlying the bone. Examination and treatment of the whole motor system is shown to be necessary in complicated relapsing cases.

When questioning the patient, it is essential to make it quite clear what he or she means by 'dizziness', for the word is used to describe the feeling or fear of falling from a height, an attack of fainting or weakness due to circulatory disorder, or even for intoxication (cerebellar disturbance) and ataxia. When the patient complains of dizziness, then cross-examination must first elicit more explicit information: does the world seem to be turning clockwise or anti-clockwise round his head? Does he feel pulled to one side, or to the other?

Clinical signs

Only if it is possible to examine the patient during a classic attack of true vertigo can we observe the typical signs of labyrinthine disorder, such as nystagmus to the right with deviation to the left, and deviation to the side of the weaker labyrinth – i.e. during Romberg's test, standing with eyes closed with the head in neutral position, there is deviation to the side; with the head turned to the side of the weaker labyrinth the trunk moves backwards, while it moves forward if the head is turned to the opposite side. If, however, we examine the patient in between attacks, and there are no pathological neurological findings, there is little to observe unless we carry out Hautant's test as described in Chapter 4 (p. 119).

Using this as a routine examination method a characteristic pattern emerges if there is a cervical factor, regardless of the type of disturbance of equilibrium. In 72 examinations of 69 patients I found the most constant phenomenon was increased deviation of the forward-stretched arms at head retroflexion and at rotation of the head in the opposite direction to that of deviation, and less or no deviation of the arms at head rotation in the direction of deviation, or at anteflexion. In 69 cases there were only two exceptions, and in neither of these did the cervical spine play any part. In what might be called 'typical cases', deviation increased if the 'pathogenic' head position coincided with the direction of movement restriction, as was the case in 50 examinations (70 per cent). In many cases side deviation is provoked only if the head is rotated and/or bent back, but deviation of the arms is in the opposite direction to that of head rotation. It is also significant that deviation disappears after treatment of movement restriction, or at least becomes much less marked, the effect being visible a few minutes after treatment. The same applies to disturbed function of the orofacial muscles including the digastricus.

It is important to stress here that a cervical factor may be present in all forms of vertigo and dizziness; this was as true in a group of typical vertigo patients (54 patients) as in 70 patients with cervical and mixed-type vertigo, the results of treatment showing little difference (the figure for improvement in both was 90 per cent). The type of vertigo that reacts least to treatment of the cervical spine appears to be positional vertigo; this is a less frequent form. Disturbed audition, too, is affected by manipulation only in a few cases. Disturbed cervical function is usually found in all forms, most frequently in the craniocervical junction, including C2/3.

In Chapter 2 I set out some of the theoretical reasons for the importance of the spinal column and in particular of the craniocervical junction. Clinical evidence corroborates this: the pattern described above, in which moving the head in the direction of movement restriction aggravates deviation, and the fact that the direction of cervical nystagmus changes in the rhythm of neck rotation (Norre *et al.*, 1976), provide additional evidence of the role of receptors in joints and muscles in the maintenance or disturbance of equilibrium. In two of my cases there was only spasm of the short extensors at the craniocervical junction, and by simple PIR of these muscles deviation was abolished. No less important are the masticatory muscles.

It is important to note that disturbance of equilibrium, with a difference of more than 4 kg in weight distribution on two scales, and the cervical pattern shown by our modification of Hautant's test, is much more frequent than subjective vertigo. The former signs are the rule in patients with disturbed craniocervical function, or orofacial muscle function, whether vertigo is present or not. They point to the relevance of dysfunction at the craniocervical junction, i.e. its probable influence on the postural muscles. As the cervical pattern always disappears after treatment of the relevant dysfunction, this type of disturbance of equilibrium without dizziness cannot be of labyrinthine origin.

It is not only by afferent stimuli from joints and muscles that the cervical spine may cause disturbance of equilibrium, however; it can affect intracranial structures, including the labyrinth, by impinging on the vertebral artery. In fact, there is a tendency to ascribe most disturbances of equilibrium of cervical origin to some involvement of this artery, which in my view is a gross exaggeration.

It is therefore important to know in which cases of disturbed equilibrium involvement of the vertebral artery should be suspected:

1. In patients of advanced age, particularly if there are other signs of arteriosclerosis.
2. If there are drop attacks (cervical syncope).
3. If back-bending of the head coupled with rotation has a marked effect on dizziness, particularly in the absence of movement restriction, or if dizziness persists after manipulation; a positive de Kleyn's test is also suggestive.
4. Certain X-ray findings – retrolisthesis, in particular if oblique pictures of the cervical spine in head retroflexion show a narrowed intervertebral foramen (see Figure 3.24, p. 61), a difference in the obliquity of the intervertebral apophyseal joints at one segment (see Figure 3.54, p. 82) or marked arthrosis of the neurocentral joint.

All of these clinical criteria are indirect signs, the only proof being provided by arteriography or by Doppler sonography.

Cervical syncopes (drop attacks) are certainly proof of ischaemia and are most frequently provoked by sustained head retroflexion during work. If cerebral ischaemia is marked, even epileptic seizures can occur. The importance of cervical syncope is unfortunately largely underrated, as it is certainly much more frequent than the Adams–Stokes syndrome.

So far it might seem only a question of differential diagnosis, which in itself is a difficult matter in disturbances of the equilibrium. However, in the large majority of cases with involvement of the vertebral artery there is also involvement of the cervical spine. This is not just coincidence: there is not only a close anatomical relationship, while the average age of patients suggests a degree of arteriosclerosis, but a sclerotic artery is itself much more susceptible to mechanical irritation than is a normal vessel. For the same reason complications at arteriography are more frequent in cases with arteriosclerosis than, for instance, in tumour patients. A disturbance of the cervical spine will therefore be much more harmful in a patient with a sclerotic vertebral artery than in a patient with normal arteries.

The great majority of patients with vertebral artery involvement also suffer from disturbances of the cervical spine, as is borne out by clinical experience and by the literature (Barré, 1926; Bärtschi-Rochaix, 1949). Both authors describe a combination of cervical headache and disturbance of equilibrium due to vertebral artery involvement even with possible minor neurological symptoms. Vítek (1970) made the point that headache in patients with cerebral arteriosclerosis is as a rule caused by simultaneous involvement of the cervical spine.

It is necessary to stress these relationships because of the significant therapeutic consequences involved. Realization of the deleterious effect of mechanical irritation of a sclerotic vertebral artery by disturbance of the cervical spine makes adequate treatment of the spinal lesion mandatory. Nevertheless this is the subject of considerable controversy because of possible complications due to damage to the vertebral artery by manipulation (see p. 149).

Clearly, such complications are not the result of manipulation as such, but of grave technical mistakes. Leaving disturbed function untreated is tantamount to leaving mechanical irritation free to endanger the vertebral artery unchecked. Again, in the great majority of cases the disturbance is at the craniocervical junction. This is important because this is the site of treatment that most regularly gives relief, probably because (1) in normal functioning of the craniocervical junction the loops of the vertebral artery in this region allow for head rotation without increasing tension in the artery; and (2) if head rotation is impaired here, it has to take place below C2, i.e. where the vertebral artery runs through its canal, exposed to shearing forces if rotation takes place.

This is borne out by clinical practice. In a group of 70 patients with dizziness, vertigo or both, 21 showed the signs given above as indicating vertebral artery involvement; whereas in the patients without arterial involvement treatment failed in only 10% (the results were similar to those in the larger group already quoted), in the group with involvement of the vertebral artery there were 28.5% failures, but 38% excellent and 33.5% good results. The lesion treated was, for the most part, at the craniocervical junction.

These results are also significant for diagnosis. If no improvement of the condition follows on normalization of the function of the cervical spine, it can be surmised that there is serious involvement of the vertebral artery either by arteriosclerosis or by gross deformity in the lower cervical spine, which may require surgical treatment (Jung and Kehr, 1972). Adequate manipulative treatment thus not only gives satisfactory results in cases where no other non-surgical methods are effective, but enables us to single out those patients in whom arteriography is indicated with a view to possible surgical treatment.

P. E. (1934), first seen 21 August 1986, complained of vertigo which was worse when she lay down, giving a sensation of pull to the left and forward rotation. During an attack in June she had fallen. Such attacks had occurred over the past 11 years, e.g. during head retroflexion she fell on her right side, during gymnastics. Since then her condition had deteriorated, with nausea and buzzing in her ears. Headaches since 1973, low-back pain since 1984. The patient suffered from tonsillitis up to the age of 40, from low-back pain during menstruation and in the course of two (normal) deliveries.

On examination there was deviation to the right in Hautant's test, which improved on head rotation to the right, and anteflexion. The readings on two scales were 30 kg on the right and 37 kg on the left. There was blockage at C0–1, and a painful coccyx. After mobilization of C0–1 and a traction thrust, followed by PIR of the glutei, there was no deviation at Hautant's test, while the scales showed 33 kg on both sides. The coccyx was no longer tender.

At control examination on 11 September vertigo was less frequent, but there was no change in its intensity. The patient suffered from severe vertigo while watching storks flying. Hautant's test showed deviation to the left only at rotation of the head to the right and at back-bending. Head-bending forward or backward provoked dizziness, which soon passed in neutral position. There was again restriction at C0–1 and C7–Th1. De Kleyn's test was markedly positive, in particular at head rotation to the left. However, lying on the left produced no symptoms. The tests remained positive after mobilization of C0–1 and C7–Th1.

At control examination on 29 September the vertigo remained unchanged, there was no movement restriction but at De Kleyn's test mere retroflexion produced symptoms which became worse at left rotation.

At arteriography an obstructed left vertebral artery was found. Angioplasty was performed in late January 1987, with very good results. I saw the patient on 6 April 1988, when she complained of pain in the left arm beginning after catheterization by way of the femoral artery, during angiography. A blocked first rib and spasm of the scaleni were treated on the left side.

I must close this section by pointing out the importance but also the difficulty of differential diagnosis. This complex problem touches on neurology, otorhinolaryngology and ophthalmology; if there is involvement of the vertebral artery, minor neurological signs due to ischaemia are not uncommon, so that other pathological conditions have to be excluded. I must stress again, here, that (as I know from experience) improvement after manipulation does not rule out posterior fossa tumour. In fact, if correct techniques are used, the danger of manipulation lies not in any immediate harm to the patient, but in possible neglect of the true diagnosis if manipulation is (temporarily) successful. This should not discourage us, however, for in no field is manipulation more effective than in the treatment of disturbances of equilibrium.

At the end of this chapter we may again mention the importance of benign positional vertigo in the differential diagnosis of vertebral artery involvement. Performing De Kleyn's tests we may very easily provoke positional vertigo, in particular at the end of the test, when the patient sits up again. This is important, as this type of vertigo is rather frequent. At the same time positional vertigo is very frightening to the patient and to the less experienced examiner. For differential diagnosis it is nevertheless necessary to repeat the test: true vertebral artery involvement starts less suddenly and less dramatically, while on the other hand positional vertigo is of very short duration – and if we repeat the test, positional vertigo cannot be provoked after about two repetitions! This fact is useful in effective treatment: we demonstrate to the patient that after a few sit-ups or turnings vertigo is no longer provoked. We then tell the patient that before getting up in the morning, she should first alternately sit up and lie back or turn round several times; there is no danger of falling from the bed. This can be repeated during the day, on a couch. This is a simple and very effective way to treat this very unpleasant condition (Brandt, 1993).

The syndrome of the 'upper quarter'

The different clinical pictures of disturbance to the cervical spine have been presented so far as they affect the upper extremity, the head, the neck, or the upper thorax. As can be expected, however, we find patients suffering from symptoms all over the area connected with the cervical spine, at least on one side, in the 'upper quarter' of the body. As infiltration of the ganglion stellare can affect the whole area, this syndrome has been attributed to involvement of this ganglion, but this is a quite unfounded assumption. However, not only is the cervical spine a functional unit, but it presents typical chain reactions (see Table 4.3), which explains why, even if patients fortunately do not suffer from all possible symptoms of cervical origin at one and the same time, they may nevertheless experience quite a few of them if the disease takes its typical chronic intermittent course. It is muscle tension in particular, involving the long muscles of the neck, that is likely to produce symptoms over a large area. There is also an interesting phenomenon often observed during treatment of cervical lesions: their tendency to 'descend'. For instance, we frequently find that after treating the craniocervical junction in a patient with cervical headache, she will arrive at the next session with movement restriction in the mid-cervical region, complaining of neck pain; at the third session she will be suffering in the lower cervical region, with symptoms in the shoulder, until we finally get her symptom-free after treating the upper thoracic spine or ribs for pain round the shoulder-blade or in the upper thorax.

So far we have dealt almost exclusively with changes of function, except when discussing vertebral artery involvement, causing vertigo; we will now deal with pathological conditions in which dysfunction can play a very important role.

Basilar impression and a narrow cervical spinal canal

These two anomalies have in common the ability to cause compression, the former of the medulla, the latter of the cervical cord and particularly of the intumescence. They also share a tendency for symptoms to appear in the higher age groups, although the underlying anomalies are congenital. A process of degenerative changes and functional decompensation can therefore be assumed. In both conditions, as long as surgery is not proposed, I have found manipulative treatment very useful. In basilar impression there are frequently no signs of structural neurological damage, the only symptoms being headache, dizziness, or both, and in such cases the treatment is the same as for patients who do not present the anomaly. Even patients with some signs of compression, however, may improve after manipulation, or even after traction. The same is true particularly of pain in the upper extremities in patients with cervical myelopathy with a narrow spinal canal (and spondylosis!), and there may even be some improvement in locomotor function. For similar reasons pain in syringomyelia improves after manipulative treatment of the cervical spine. This is not without importance for the patient, as surgery is not always successful and any improvement achieved by non-surgical methods is to be valued.

K. M. (1895) complained of headache and cervical and low-back pain for 6 years; she now reported poorer hearing and unclear vision, a feeling of vertigo (being pulled to one side), and pain radiating down the arms, with tingling in the fingers.

Objectively there was marked spontaneous vertical nystagmus downwards and when looking to the side, diagonally. The corneal reflex was weak on the left, there was slight paresis of the VIIth cranial nerve on the left; when the tongue was extruded it deviated to the left. The patient had a very short neck with limited inclination and rotation to either side. In the upper extremities, ligament and periosteal reflexes were more marked on the left; Hoffman's sign was positive on both sides. There were exaggerated tendon reflexes in the legs with positive signs of upper motor neuron lesion, lack of stability when standing and spastic gait on a wide base.

At X-ray there was marked basilar impression, C6 was shifted forwards relative to C7, and there were spondylotic changes on C6. PEG showed the cerebral tonsils below the foramen magnum at the level of C2, while the anterior subarachnoidal space was of the normal width. The cerebrospinal fluid was normal. This was a case of basilar impression with the Chiari–Arnold deformity.

Traction treatment brought a marked change for the better in about a month; the patient walked without difficulty and the nystagmus was noticeably improved. The patient was treated for several months, but when treatment lapsed she deteriorated; when it was resumed she again improved. A year later she complained of vertigo; titubation to one side was relieved by traction combined with rotation of the head. At control the only symptoms were occasional slight dizziness, nystagmus I degree and minimal spasticity of gait. Traction abolished a slight deviation to the right at Hautant's test.

H. A. (1893) felt pins and needles in the first, third and little finger of the right hand in 1950. The hand was so affected that he could not shave, and had no strength. Findings included atrophy of the interossei and the adductor pollicis on the right, restricted extension of the fingers, and exaggerated reflexes of the tendons at C5–7. X-ray showed only slight cervical spondylosis. Air PMG showed disc protrusion at C3–4 and C5–6, and slight hyperalbuminosis. The atrophy corresponded to the segment C8 where there was also discrete hypaesthesia. A traction test improved sensation in the right hand and the patient could again shave himself. Manipulation treatment continued and brought permanent improvement in this case of cervical myelopathy.

S. M. (1905) complained of pain in the low neck, shoulders and arms, and later of a burning sensation in the left cheek and watering of the left eye. The left hand became weaker and clumsy; within 2 years the right hand was also affected, and the patient could not walk normally. Horner's syndrome was positive on the left, with end-position nystagmus; the left corneal reflex was weak; muscular atrophy was worse on the left and there were trophic changes in the skin. The C5 reflex was abolished on both sides, the C6 and C7 reflex weak; C8 was positive on the left and exaggerated on the right. There were signs of first motor neuron lesion on the right, while abdominal reflexes were abolished; exaggerated reflexes in both legs. After a traction test, arm-raising ability rose from 150 to 170 degrees (left) and 160 degrees (right). After 3 weeks of traction treatment the shoulder joints were normal. This treatment continued to give relief despite the progressive deterioration caused by the basic disease (syringomyelia).

Root syndromes

Like vertebral artery insufficiency, basilar impression and cervical myelopathy, this condition, too, is most frequently caused by a pathological lesion, i.e. disc herniation, in particular in the lower extremities. In the upper extremity there may be a complex of changes producing narrowing of the foramen intervertebrale where root compression takes place, disc herniation being only one of the possible mechanisms. There are other significant pathological conditions both in the cervical and in the lumbar region, such as a narrow spinal canal and, of course, expanding lesions which may also cause root compression.

However, with the exception of expanding lesions, most of the pathological conditions listed here are not an indication for operation; most cases of radicular syndrome recover without operation, thanks to compensation, in which function plays an important part. This is why conservative treatment is so often successful – i.e. traction, manipulation, various types of reflex therapy and remedial exercise; serious cases require systematic rehabilitation. Indeed, surgery alone fails, more often than not, if it is not followed by rehabilitation, i.e. if we do not help the patient to normalize function. This is why root syndromes and disc herniation should be dealt with in this book. The interplay of changes in structure and function constitutes an intricate and complex problem of diagnosis and therapy.

The clinical differences between root syndromes in the upper and lower extremities, respectively, are considerable and so the two will be dealt with separately, but first I shall summarize what was said about root syndromes in Chapter 2 (p. 32 *et seq.*).

Root syndromes in the lower extremities

Case history

Although root syndromes share many features with other vertebrogenic disturbances (see p. 83 *et seq.*), there are specific important features. The first is that in most cases pain radiating into the lower extremity is preceded by low-back pain. This is why disc herniation is thought to be the main cause not only of root pain, but also of low-back pain. Because, however, the latter is a much more frequent condition, the correct interpretation is that only those cases of low-back pain that are caused by disc herniation (see p. 256) are likely to produce root syndromes at some stage of the disease. There are, however, cases in which root pain, for example in the calf, is the first complaint in patients who have never suffered from low-back pain, which appears only later during the disease, if at all. Pain felt in the buttocks is certainly a prominent feature in many cases, hence the old term 'sciatica'. Much like low-back pain, root pain may have a sudden onset after some awkward movement, when getting out of bed in the morning, lifting a heavy object, etc., or it may begin so stealthily that the patient cannot readily remember or describe the first symptoms. For correct management in individual cases we have to elicit from the patient all the attendant circumstances that aggravate symptoms and, equally important, those in which there is (relative) freedom from pain.

Symptoms

Pain radiating into the legs, in typical cases as far as to the toes; pain exacerbated on coughing or sneezing (a violent sneeze or attack of coughing may even precipitate a root syndrome!). Pain is frequently combined with dysaesthesia (numbness, tingling, or pins and needles). There may be symptoms due to locomotor impairment, such as weakness, clumsiness, or the patient feeling unable to support himself on the affected leg. These symptoms are also due to impaired proprioception, in particular in the S1 syndrome.

Clinical signs

In the acute stage we often find the typical antalgesic posture described in acute lumbago due to disc herniation (see Figure 7.1). Like every rule this also has its exceptions, however, and there are acute cases in which the patient holds the trunk and lumbar spine erect in lordosis unable to bend forward. The most frequent antalgesic posture, that of kyphosis with scoliosis of the low lumbar spine to the side of the lesion, is easily explained as the position that keeps the intervertebral foramen as wide as possible. Other, less typical antalgesic positions, including lordosis, have been ingeniously explained by De Sèze and Welfling (1957) in diagram form, by the varying positions of the disc prolapse in relation to the root inside the spinal canal. The kyphotic–scoliotic position goes together with movement restriction, particularly of movements that would cause narrowing of the intervertebral foramen, i.e. back-bending and lateral flexion to the side of the lesion. If straight leg raising is impaired, stooping with straight legs will also be affected. In patients who hold themselves erect, trunk anteflexion will often be impaired, even when the patient is seated with knees bent. In the less acute stage, posture may be more or less normal but stooping with straight legs will be reduced as long as straight leg raising is impaired. In some cases there will be a painful arc as in lumbago due to disc herniation (see p. 102).

It is important to point out that movement restriction and antalgesic posture in root syndromes are not due to blockage in individual mobile segments, and that indeed such blockage may be absent when the patient is examined (see Figures 4.16 and 4.17, pp. 103 and 104). Another feature of root syndromes is the positive straight leg raising test which, in typical cases, may be very marked. There can be atypical straight leg raising tests: (1) a painful arc (Cyriax, 1977), pain felt early on in the test but passing at further raising; (2) although pain is felt from a certain point, it is still possible to raise the patient's leg further. It is also mandatory to examine the 'femoral stretch test' which is characteristic for the L4 root, and in which the straight leg raising test can be negative, a reason why the diagnosis of L4 root compression is frequently missed.

Of major significance are neurological signs of root involvement, such as motor deficit and hypaesthesia, without which the diagnosis of true root syndrome is inconclusive because of the alternative possible diagnosis of reflex (pseudoradicular) referred pain. For this reason the slightest indication of motor or sensory deficit is highly significant. The specific signs and symptoms are now given for each relevant root. Only three are important: L4, L5 and S1.

L4 root syndrome – Pain radiates over the ventral aspect of the thigh to the knee and can radiate further on the anteromedial aspect of the leg down to the medial ankle and even to the medial aspect of the big toe; in this syndrome a positive femoral nerve stretch test is very marked. There is weakness of the quadriceps and of the hip flexors (often neglected at examination!) and even of the adductors. The patellar reflex is weakened or absent and so, at times, is that of the adductors. There is hypaesthesia mainly on the anterior aspect of the thigh in the L4 dermatome. Owing to weakness of the knee extensors and hip flexors, walking may be difficult, particularly on stairs.

L5 root syndrome – Pain radiates on the lateral aspect of the thigh and leg to the lateral ankle and over the instep to the big toe and to the second and third toes. There is weakness of the foot and toe extensors, the muscles most affected being the extensors of the big toe and the extensor digitorum brevis. Very slight impairment in the L5 root can therefore be detected by comparing the force of extension of the big toe on each foot, and by palpation of the digitorum brevis muscle above and in front of the lateral ankle, and testing the tonus of the extensors at the shin, parallel to the tibia. If there is marked weakness the patient cannot walk on his heels and in the most severe cases there is typical drop foot. It is important to remember that drop foot is only exceptionally due to paresis of the peroneal nerve, and is far more often due to severe L5 nerve root compression. Tendon reflexes are usually little affected by this syndrome. Hypaesthesia is found in the L5 dermatome. A very valuable sign is restricted skin stretch, frequently with hyperalgesia of the skin between the first (big) and second toes, and between the second and third, as well as increased resistance when moving the first metatarsal bone against the second, and the second against the third.

S1 root syndrome – Pain radiates on the dorsal aspect of the thigh and leg, towards the heel and over the lateral aspect of the foot to the fourth and fifth toes. Muscle weakness may be found in the gluteal muscles, particularly in the gluteus maximus, and in the triceps surae and the flexors of the toes. In very slight root lesion the first sign of motor impairment is that when the patient is told to lean forward without lifting his heels from the ground there is no toe flexion on the side of the lesion. If motor impairment is marked the patient cannot walk on his toes on the affected side. The Achilles tendon reflex is weakened or abolished. There is hypaesthesia at the dorsal aspect of the thigh and leg, the lateral aspect of the foot and the fourth and fifth toe. Here, too, we find restricted skin stretch with possible hyperalgesia between the third to fifth toes, and restricted movability between the third and fourth, and fourth and fifth metatarsals, compared with the other side.

Therapy

In the acute stage the most important single measure is absolute rest in bed, if possible in a position that gives maximum relief; it is essential to improvise pillows to support the patient in this position. If traction can be carried out in the relief position (see Figure 6.28, p. 175) it should be attempted. If there is blockage and some of the gentle mobilization techniques are practicable, they can give substantial relief. Treatment of lesions in the craniocervical and thoracolumbar junctions, if found, can also be helpful. If relief cannot be obtained either by positioning of the patient or by traction, and manipulation is ruled out because of acute pain, then root infiltration or an epidural application of local anaesthetics is the treatment of choice. If there is a very tender pain point – for example at the fibular head, in the proximity of the ankle, or a very tender interdigital fold – needling or infiltration may give relief. The same goes for a tender scar, in particular on the lower abdomen, the hips or legs, especially if the pain during needling is felt very intensely. The 'non-invasive' soft tissue techniques, giving myofascial release, seem even preferable: skin stretching at the interdigital fold; myofascial release between the metatarsals; folding scar tissue; PIR of the biceps femoris of the soleus; or folding soft tissue beneath the Achilles tendon (see Chapter 6, p. 206). Analgesics have an important supporting role, best applied by intravenous infusion, but are often insufficient in themselves. If, however, complete rest alone brings relief, little else is needed during the acute stage, the essential point being not to discontinue it too soon, yet encourage movement the moment it is tolerated.

During the chronic stage, or after the acute stage has passed, it is necessary to restore function according to the principles laid down in this book: we restore joint mobility by manipulative techniques wherever it has been lost, we train weak muscles, restore movement patterns and so on. However, care must be taken to avoid for some time any movements that cause pain, and similarly to avoid positions that are painful. It is notoriously common that sitting is tolerated badly in kyphosis, for example. It is particularly important to teach the patient how to stoop correctly. Once walking is painless, short walks should be encouraged. If pain becomes chronic although blockages have been treated, and traction no longer relieves it, reflex therapy is very important. Pain points and hyperalgesic zones must be sought, particularly in the periphery (the interdigital folds are very important), and pathogenic scars must be diagnosed. These are treated by the most adequate methods; attachment points of tendons by PIR, or by needling if there is no increased muscle tension; hyperalgesic zones by skin stretching or by other methods of 'reflex massage'; the same methods may be applied to scars, which react very well to simple skin stretching and to soft tissue techniques. It is particularly important to diagnose and treat restricted mobility of the deep fasciae against the underlying bone in the lumbar and especially in the pelvic region, using myofascial release techniques (Figure 6.76).

It is important to remember that during the chronic stage other lesions in the lower extremity may complicate recovery: cramp may occur, due to blockage at the fibular head or of tarsal bones; there may be coxalgia without coxarthrosis, pain at the tuber ossis ischii simulating 'sciatica', or pain of the piriformis. Each of these lesions is easily treated. Vasomotor disturbances such as cold feet should be treated with physiotherapy; a simple and effective method is to roll a cold-water bottle and a hot-water bottle with the feet, the cold for about half a minute and the hot for about a minute, producing mobilization at the same time. The most important techniques of rehabilitation are sensory motor training and McKenzie's techniques, in particular into retroflexion, 'listening to the patient's symptoms' at the same time.

V. J. (1914) suffered from depression between 1946 and 1948 and from root pain in the right upper arm in 1949. On February 23rd 1958 she suffered a minor car accident followed by acute pain in the lumbar spine. The pain lessened after a few days, but was soon followed by pain in the left knee and down the tibia. At hospitalization, on March 3rd 1958, straight leg raising was markedly restricted on both sides; the patellar reflex was weak on the left where there was also hypotrophy with weakness of the quadriceps femoris, and hypaesthesia in the L4 dermatome. The L3 disc was narrowed. Manipulation was applied at that level, after which straight leg raising was restricted to 65 degrees on the left side only, but we found a marked femoral nerve stretch test. After traction on March 19th we found improved strength of the quadriceps on the left and a livelier patellar reflex. After this the patient felt only slight pain in the low back and there was sacroiliac movement restriction, but she was able to resume work as a dental surgeon on May 2nd 1958.

Despite the effective therapeutic measures described, there remain cases of root syndrome in which conservative therapy fails and surgery is indicated; because our conservative therapy is effective it is easier to detect the type of case in which it is ineffective, for this is, after all, the main reason for indicating surgery. The problem is to decide at what point we consider our conservative therapy to have failed. Naturally, opinions vary, partly because the course of the disease varies from one case to the next. If it were simply a case of absolutely no improvement, one might say that 4–6 weeks is long enough if pain is severe, and even a shorter time if pain is excessive. However, in most cases we do achieve some improvement, which may turn out to be merely temporary – and it is this course that makes our decision more difficult.

Although the failure of conservative treatment is the main reason for indicating surgery, it is not sufficient in itself. We must satisfy ourselves that the underlying cause of the condition warrants surgery; this is not infrequently disc herniation, but the diagnosis must be clearly established.

There are some specific questions of importance here: is muscle weakness with typical signs of lower motor neuron lesion in itself an indication for operation if the diagnosis of disc herniation, for example, is established? The answer here is that by our definition, neurological deficit is one of the principal characteristics of a true root syndrome; experience has shown that even patients with marked weakness with atrophy and loss of reflexes usually recover after pain has improved. There is, nevertheless, one exception, which fortunately does not occur frequently, but which must be borne in mind: sudden onset of weakness or paralysis. In typical cases the patient describes excruciating pain, after which he fell asleep; on waking he felt no pain, but found he could not lift his foot or toes. We confirm the signs of drop foot, and if in such cases no improvement takes place within 24 hours, operation must be performed immediately, otherwise it is too late and permanent paralysis results.

Another exception is disturbance of sphincter function and impending caudal lesion. Signs of caudal involvement are among the most urgent indications for surgery. This is mentioned here as doctors practising manipulative therapy may miss these signs because, unless sphincter disturbance is very serious or complete, the patient may not mention it. As they suffer much more from their severe pain symptoms, some difficulty in passing water seems of little importance; they also may feel embarrassed, and not see the connection. It is therefore essential for the examining doctor to know when to ask patients with spinal disorders about their control of micturition and bowel action. The answer is clear: this question is relevant when during an attack of acute root pain or lumbago the Achilles tendon reflex is absent on both sides.

In addition to disc herniation, which is certainly the most frequent cause of operation, in recent years the importance of a narrowed spinal canal has also been stressed. Combined with degenerative changes this may be the cause of root compression, or it may be the reason why disc herniation takes a very unfavourable course. Its most characteristic clinical feature is radicular claudication, a condition in which the patient (with hardly any other clinical signs) has to stop walking after some distance, because of pain shooting down the leg, and has to crouch; after a few moments he can walk on, but the episode is soon repeated. This syndrome is very important; as a rule very little is found at examination, and we have to depend on a detailed case history and to some extent on correct interpretation of X-ray and CT findings. Although this syndrome, if severe, is an indication for surgery, conservative treatment (including manipulation) should be attempted and is often successful.

H. M. (1926), formerly a school teacher, complained of low-back pain and pain in the left leg, without pain at coughing or sneezing. Low-back pain began in 1965 mainly when walking; since 1986 the patient has needed to sit down after walking about 200 metres; after 2 minutes' rest she can continue walking. Since March 1989 severe pain in the left leg has made it impossible to stand on that leg.

On 28 August 1989 there was a forward-drawn position, restricted back-bending, deviation to the left at Hautant's test, severe movement restriction of C0–C1 in all directions, and marked hypertonus of the abdominal and gluteal muscles. After pressure on the gluteals, tension in the gluteal, abdominal and back muscles was normalized, as was posture; there was no apparent movement restriction at C0–C1. Slight movement restriction remained at C4–5, which was treated. There was no deviation at Hautant's test and on two scales the difference was only 5 kg. X-ray of the lumbar spine showed a narrow spinal canal with a slight spondylotic listhesis of L4.

By 18 October the patient had improved, but had experienced a severe attack of pain a month previously (although this was less intense than previous attacks). However, she still needed to rest after walking 200 metres. On examination there was flexion restriction of the lumbosacral segment with hyperlordosis and short low lumbar erectores spinae. After mobilization the patient was instructed in flexion exercise ('the cradle' – see Figure 6.130) and self-mobilization while standing. In November and again in late December the patient was much improved; there had been only one short painful attack, and pain during walking was less intense. She took regular walking exercise.

Last seen 24 January 1990, the patient volunteered that she no longer has to interrupt her walks and sit down; it is enough if she bends forward slightly. There was, in fact, a slightly forward-drawn posture, with a tender symphysis on both sides, trigger points in the straight abdominal muscles, and hypertonus in the left buttock. Simple pressure on the gluteus maximus near the ischial tuberosity (soft tissue technique) normalized tonus and abolished tenderness of the symphysis and the abdominal muscles - the forward-drawn posture also disappeared. The patient was then instructed to strengthen her abdominal muscles (see Figure 6.135).

This case is important in demonstrating (1) that claudication in a narrow spinal canal can be improved by improvement in function; (2) that a forward-drawn position is due to tension in the glutei and abdominal muscles; and (3) that disturbed equilibrium without vertigo may be caused by movement restriction at C0–C1.

In exceptional cases pathological hypermobility in one segment may be an indication for surgery. This is the case in spondylolisthesis particularly in adolescents or young adults; this hypermobility can be proved by X-ray in ante- and retroflexion.

Finally, operation cannot do more than remove a local mechanical lesion that constitutes an obstacle to conservative treatment. It does not and cannot automatically restore the function of the locomotor system. Operation is one episode in the treatment of a disturbance that affects the whole of locomotor function and which must be dealt with by the appropriate methods of locomotor rehabilitation which include manipulative therapy. Gentle mobilization can be used a few weeks after the operation, if indicated; at sites further from the operated segment it can be applied even earlier, cervical dysfunction being a frequent complication of intubation.

Root syndromes in the upper extremities

General symptoms

Patients complain of pain radiating down the arm to the fingers, coming either from the neck, or 'from under the shoulder-blade', or both. Pain is frequently worst in bed, exacerbated on bending the head back; the patient requires a high pillow. Pain is typically accompanied by dysaesthesia and a feeling of weakness.

General clinical signs

There are two typical pain points: Erb's point above the clavicle and a point medial to the medial angle of the upper edge of the scapula at the height of the process of T2 or T3. The former is in the mass of the scalenes, the latter a TrP in the interscapular part of the trapezius, both responding well to PIR (see Figures 6.94 and 6.117, pp. 215 and 229). Pain usually worsens at head retroflexion and at side-bending or rotation to the side of the lesion, i.e. movements that cause narrowing of the intervertebral foramina, even if there is no segmental blockage, i.e. even after manipulation. There are also cases, however, in which head and neck anteflexion is painful (Frykholm, 1969). This depends on whether the root involved has a descending course inside the spinal canal: such roots stretch at head anteflexion, causing pain (Adams and Logue, 1971), whereas the movement otherwise tends rather to give relief, as it widens the intervertebral foramina. As in the lower extremities, there may be impaired stretch and hyperalgesia of the skin between the fingers, and increased resistance when moving one metacarpal bone against the next in a dorsopalmar direction.

Individual root syndromes

C5, C6, C7 and C8 are of practical importance.

C5 root syndrome – This is rare. Pain is felt at the shoulder, mainly in the region of the deltoid muscle, which is weak. The biceps and the biceps reflex are weak. There is hypaesthesia over the deltoid, not unlike in paresis of the axillar nerve.

C6 root syndrome – Pain radiates over the radial (lateral) aspect of the arm to the thumb and forefinger, and here hypaesthesia may be found. There is weakness of pronation and in some cases an alar scapula can be observed. This is best tested by the patient stretching both arms forward, while seated, and maintaining this position for a while. Vítek (1949) has described a reflex that is specific: with the patient's arm flexed at the elbow in semi-pronation, the examiner taps the radius above the wrist, from the palmar aspect, and obtains a pronatory jerk. (The usual tapping on the styloid process produces flexion at the elbow, corresponding more to segment C5.)

C7 root syndrome – Pain radiates over the posterior aspect of the arm towards the second to fourth fingers, with dysaesthesia; hypaesthesia may also be found in this area. There is typical weakness and even wasting of the triceps, and the triceps reflex is weak or absent. (Thenar atrophy is sometimes given as a sign of C7 involvement; this can be misleading, as thenar atrophy is mainly a sign of the carpal-tunnel syndrome.) There may be restricted skin stretch with hyperalgesia of the skin between the second to fourth fingers and movement restriction between the second and third metacarpal bones and between the third and fourth.

C8 root syndrome – Pain radiates over the ulnar (medial) aspect of the arm to the fourth and fifth fingers, with dysaesthesia; hypaesthesia may be found in this area. There is weakness of finger flexion and the flexor reflex is impaired. (This is elicited by tapping on the tendons of the finger flexors just proximal to the carpal tunnel, with the fingers in a semi-flexed position.) There can be wasting of interosseal muscles and of the hypothenar, with weakness of abduction of the little finger, but care must be taken to differentiate this from paresis of the ulnar nerve and from cervical myelopathy. In this segment, too, there may be increased resistance to skin stretch between the fourth and fifth fingers, and to displacement of the fourth and fifth metacarpals in a dorso-palmar direction.

General therapy

Although, in the upper extremity, true root syndromes present a more serious disturbance than pseudoradicular pain, treatment follows the same principles; greater emphasis is laid, however, on traction and reflex therapy, in particular the use of soft tissue techniques. I have already mentioned the treatment of Erb's point and the frequent pain point medial to the upper border of the scapula by PIR. Whatever the interpretation, infiltration of the stellate ganglion by local anaesthetic can be useful. In the upper extremity, as in the lower, failure of conservative therapy is an indication for surgery; however, this is rare.

S. J. (1926) in 1954 suffered from pain radiating from the nape of the neck over the left shoulder and down to the elbow, feeling that she had not the full use of that arm. This occurred suddenly after 'lying in the wrong position' in bed. Since 1955 also pain in the lumbar region. Migraine from the age of 12. At examination in April 1957 rotation of the head to the left was painful, as was bending forward. There was a painful Erb's point on the left, a weak triceps brachii on the left, and a weak triceps reflex; hypaesthesia in the C7 dermatome. Traction produced greater strength in the triceps (EMG); the triceps reflex was then normal. Later the painful sacroiliac junction was treated by manipulation. The earlier symptoms had disappeared, and although the patient suffered from various allergies, her migraine improved.

B. L. (1907), wounded in the arm by gunshot in 1920, was bitten on the nape of the neck by a horse. In 1960 severe physical strain was followed by pain in the neck radiating down the left arm to the thumb and forefinger of the left hand. Traction, manipulation and injections proved ineffective. Even when manipulation appeared to be successful, blockage soon recurred. The patient held his head forward and slightly to the right. Anteflexion, backbending and rotation were all restricted. There was spasm of the left trapezius; the left triceps was hypotonic; the C6 reflex was abolished on the left. Hypaesthesia was found in the C6 and C7 dermatomes on the left. Plain X-ray showed signs of degeneration of the C5–6 disc. PMG showed interruption of the air column on the ventral aspect of the spinal cord at C6–7. At operation disc herniation was found at C5–6(!) and the patient made a rapid recovery.

Vertebrovisceral correlations

The possible correlation of structures belonging to the same segment, the possibility of referred pain and some of the consequences have already been discussed (see p. 33). Here we consider the practical clinical aspects.

The following possibilities should be envisaged:

1. The vertebral column (locomotor system) is causing symptoms that are mistaken for visceral disease.
2. Visceral disturbance is causing symptoms simulating affection of some part of the locomotor system.
3. Visceral disease is causing a reflex (pseudoradicular) reaction in the segment, including blockage in the corresponding mobile segment of the vertebral column.
4. Visceral disease that has caused segmental movement restriction has subsided, but blockage remains, causing symptoms simulating visceral disease [as in (1)].
5. (Conjectural.) Disturbance of the locomotor segment is causing visceral disease. It may, however, provoke a latent affection.

The first two points show that our first concern is differential diagnosis. The spinal column with its mobile segments can produce symptoms in each body segment that may imitate those arising in the viscera and are frequently ascribed to them both by laymen and by medical practitioners, as we shall see below. This explains why lay manipulators are believed to have 'cured' visceral disease (and believe it themselves). Another reason is that some doctors ignore this field of differential diagnosis and use the term 'functional' for disturbances in which no pathological changes are found in the visceral organs, 'functional' being used as a euphemism for psychological trouble, if not for malingering. When a doctor treats a patient for symptoms thought to be of visceral origin and finds no pathological changes to correspond to them, before opting for a 'psychological' origin he or she should first look for changes in the segment (see pp. 30–31). The pejorative use of the word 'functional' is characteristic of the underestimation of the significance of disturbed function, in particular of the locomotor system. It is this underestimation, combined with ignorance, that gives the unqualified manipulator the opportunity to claim 'miracle' cures.

The other side of the problem, as it is put in point (2), is a fair warning to every therapist concerned with pain in the locomotor system: that there may be organic disease lurking behind this pain. Particularly when pain and the typical signs of segmental disturbance show a tendency to relapse, the cause may be a visceral affection in the corresponding segment. Error in point (1) is common; error in point (2) can be fraught with danger.

Point (3) is of great theoretical significance, explaining why one of the possible causes of segmental movement restriction is visceral disease. In fact, clinical experience has taught us that disease of individual organs produces a specific pattern of reactions in various segments; these patterns are of considerable diagnostic importance and are described here. The regularity is so striking that if after treatment of segmental disorders (blockage, muscle spasm, pain points, etc.) we find a tendency to relapse, we have to conclude that visceral disease is either still active, or has also relapsed. This shows that we have an important pointer not only for diagnosis but also for prognosis.

Point (4) follows on from this; if visceral disease has been cured and we treat the changes in the segment caused by it, we obtain most satisfactory results and can thus confirm the success of the internal treatment. Here patients and therapists tend to draw a wrong conclusion: because secondary changes still caused symptoms in the segment, after internal therapy, all credit is given to the therapist who treated them. On the other hand, relapse of disturbed function in the segment is often the first sign of recurring internal disease.

Point (5) is one most cherished by lay manipulators, in the past, and it is still controversial today. It would seem to be fairly well established that lesions in the mobile segment of the vertebral column affect some functions of internal organs; this is borne out by vasoconstriction in the whole segment affected by a pseudoradicular syndrome. In such cases we can see the disorder clearing up as soon as we treat the mobile segment. Other such conditions have been described in connection with the craniocervical syndrome, including disturbance of equilibrium; still others will be dealt with in some disturbances of heart rhythm without organic changes, and in menstrual pain. Even if we may observe visceral disease to clear up after manipulation, or recur if blockage occurs, this is no proof as it may just be a latent lesion provoked by the segmental dysfunction (Vecan and Lewit, 1980). I shall now discuss our experience in treating individual conditions.

One must consider cumulation of various factors: not only may there be a lesion in the locomotor system and in a visceral organ simultaneously, but also there may be some factor which affects the organism as a whole, e.g. menstruation, infectious disease, diabetes, etc. Each such change may be clinically latent, while cumulation of stimuli may make it manifest ('risk factors').

Tonsillitis

Taking the case history in patients with vertebrogenic disturbances I was so struck by the high incidence of chronic relapsing tonsillitis that I took a random sample of 100 cases from my files and found that 56 had a history of chronic relapsing tonsillitis or tonsillectomy for that reason, while only

44 had no or only incidental tonsillitis. In most of these patients blockage of C0/1 was found.

This led to a systematic study of a group of 76 children with chronic tonsillitis under the care of an otorhinolaryngologist (Lewit and Abrahamovic, 1976). The most striking and constant clinical finding was movement restriction at the craniocervical junction, in the great majority between occiput and atlas (70 cases, or 92%). Twenty-eight patients underwent operation, without having been manipulated; 25 suffered from movement restriction prior to operation, and in 19 of these cases blockage was unaffected by tonsillectomy and was treated later, 3–6 months after operation.

Thirty-seven children scheduled for operation were given manipulative treatment and followed up for 5 years; in 18 cases tonsillitis never recurred after manipulation, but in seven of them movement restriction did recur and had to be treated. Two patients had a few relapses of tonsillitis without recurrence of blockage; in three there were frequent relapses and blockage, and nine had to be operated on for recurring tonsillitis.

In addition to blockage mainly between C0 and C1, with spasm of the short neck extensors, we frequently find increased tension in the muscles below the mandible in the vicinity of the tonsils, and also in the sternocleidomastoids.

It can be seen from this study that tonsillitis goes hand in hand with movement restriction in the craniocervical junction, mainly between occiput and atlas, with little tendency to spontaneous recovery, i.e. with the danger of permanently disturbed function in one of the most sensitive regions of the locomotor system. In addition, our experience suggests that blockage at this level increases the susceptibility to recurrent tonsillitis.

Lungs and pleura

As our attention was drawn to the role of respiration in correct functioning of the locomotor system, the relation between the lungs and the function of the thorax became clearer. Pain due to rib lesions must be differentiated from pleural pain and even from pneumonia.

Severe incoordination of respiratory movement may produce dyspnoea, while chronic asthma with emphysema will produce rigidity of the thorax. The respiratory disease in which involvement of the thorax has been studied most is obstructive respiratory disease (Steglich, 1972; Bergsmann, 1974; Köberle, 1975; Sachse, 1975). There are two obvious mechanisms by which disturbed thorax function influences respiration in asthmatics: rigidity of the thorax wall further increases resistance during respiration and the inspiratory position of the thorax in asthmatics is worsened by further lifting of the thorax during inhalation, which is typical for that disease.

In addition to rigidity of the ribs, Köberle (1975) found blockage mainly of the segments T7–T10. In a group of 30 asthmatics, Sachse (1975) found a taut trapezius in 23 patients, a taut pectoralis in 15 and a weak lower trapezius in 15. Increased tension in the scalene muscle is the most constant change in muscular activity directly connected with lifting of the thorax during inhalation.

The mobilization of the ribs and of blocked segments of the thoracic spine, and training of correct breathing patterns, will thus be the logical treatment for patients with respiratory disorders, particularly those with obstructive respiratory disease.

The heart

Of all vertebrovisceral relations, that between the heart and the spinal column (thorax) has received most attention. This is due not only to the importance of the problem, but also to the role of pain in the largest group of patients, i.e. in those with ischaemic heart disease, pain being of course the principal manifestation of disturbance of spinal and thoracic function. Pain of cardiac origin is localized mainly in the structures of the locomotor system, including the (left) shoulder and the arm.

The following pattern of disturbance of the locomotor system seems characteristic of ischaemic heart disease: blockage affecting the thoracic spine from T3 to T5, most frequently between T4 and T5, movement restriction being most noticeable to the left, and at the cervicothoracic junction, and of the third to fifth rib on the left side; there is muscular spasm (increased tension) of the erector spinae between T4 and T8 on both sides, more on the left; spasm of the pectoralis mainly on the left, with pain points in the mammary and of the serratus lateralis in the axillary line mainly on the third to fifth rib. Of similar importance is spasm of the subscapularis; this is unfortunately less obvious and must be sought. There is also increased tension with trigger points in the upper part of the trapezius. Increased tension in the scalenus is connected with pain points at the sternocostal joints on both sides and is linked to faulty respiration, producing the feeling of oppression that is also characteristic of angina. Tension in the scaleni is frequently linked with a lesion of the first rib, producing a pain point on the lateral aspect of the manubrium sterni. If it is on the left side it may easily be interpreted by the patient as coming from the heart.

It is obviously most important to distinguish between ischaemic heart disease producing this pattern and primary disturbance of the locomotor system of a similar pattern (the vertebrocardial syndrome). Rychlíková (1975b) showed that the more complete this pattern, i.e. the more severe the (reflex) changes in the locomotor system, the more likely it is to be secondary to heart disease.

Important clinical criteria are the effect of physical effort such as climbing stairs and susceptibility to nitroglycerine treatment – both characteristic of true ischaemia. On the other hand, pain provoked by certain positions of the body is more characteristic of locomotor disturbance. The painful attacks are shorter in true angina than in the vertebrocardial syndrome. The course of the disease is significant: if despite specific treatment of locomotor lesions these relapse or are aggravated, the cause must be primary heart disease; the therapist should insist on thorough cardiological investigation even if routine ECG findings are negative. The role of the locomotor system in the pathogenesis of pain is borne out by the fact that in a group of patients with myocardial infarction without pain, Rychlíková (1975b) did not find any signs of disturbance of the locomotor system.

As the pattern of locomotor disturbance described above will present symptoms closely similar to those of ischaemic heart disease, they have to be treated according to the principles laid down here, whether they are primary or secondary. More often than not, mobilization of movement restriction and muscle relaxation will have to be followed by the training of correct breathing patterns and correct posture, if the results achieved are to be more than temporary. It is important here to warn readers of the complexity of this problem, and the many pitfalls to be encountered; constant supervision of these patients by a cardiologist is essential.

Taking as established the role of ischaemic heart disease in causing characteristic locomotor disturbance, the role of locomotor disturbance as a factor in heart disease remains open to debate. There is one condition, however, where the latter assumption seems well founded – paroxysmal tachycardia with no organic heart lesion. Here the changes found in the spinal column are linked with tachycardia in such a way that when we normalize the function of the spinal column, heart rhythm also becomes normal and remains so as long as there is no relapse in the spinal column. Although direct evidence of disturbed motor function causing organic heart disease is lacking, it would seem reasonable to grant it the role of a possible risk factor.

The prime significance of the treatment of locomotor disturbance in heart disease lies in the relief of pain, which greatly enhances the rehabilitation of these patients.

J. K. (1898) suffered a myocardial infarction in 1954. After spa (bath) treatment he complained of neck pain radiating into the head, and pain in the low back. We found (1960) head movement markedly restricted in all directions, a stiff thoracic kyphosis, and on stooping the fingertips were 40 cm from the floor. There was pelvic distortion. We mobilized the neck and carried out thrust manipulation of Th4–5 and L5–S1. Some 6 weeks later the patient felt improvement in the lumbar spine. X-ray showed marked spondylotic changes throughout the spine, but with the joints preserved – a finding typical of hyperostotic spondylosis. A month later the patient could walk for 4 hours without fatigue. Manipulation of C1–2 and cervical manipulation were repeated. Six weeks later stenocardiac and lumbar symptoms recurred. After hospitalization the heart symptoms disappeared, L5–S1 was treated for lumbar pain. Stenocardiac symptoms did not recur throughout the 12 years he remained our patient, until his death from cancer (1973). It appears that the ischaemic heart disease had healed during our treatment of the secondary reflex changes.

P. M. (1950) suffered from headache and a burning sensation in the left thorax, after appendectomy in 1980. Coronography was therefore performed in October 1980. The diagnosis was pericarditis. When seen in September and October 1981 there was movement restriction at C0–1 and at the first rib on the left. In 1981 the gall bladder was removed. On 21 December 1989 she was hospitalized for burning pain in the left thorax, radiating into the left arm. One week earlier she had felt faint. Examination showed movement restriction at Th1–2 and Th4–5, with spasm of the scaleni and the subscapularis on the left. She was treated by mobilization of Th1–2 and 4–5, and by PIR of the scaleni and the left subscapularis. At control examination on 4 January 1990 she had been well over the Christmas holidays but again felt faint during the night of 3 January, followed by pain in the left thorax next day. The only finding was a trigger point in the subscapularis; after relaxation by gravity-induced PIR this pain subsided.

In this case there was first the typical 'cardiac pain pattern', improved by specific therapy; at control examination this pain was sustained only by spasm of the subscapularis.

Stomach and duodenum

As in heart disease, painful conditions in these organs are most likely to produce reflex changes in the locomotor system; for this reason, clinical experience of vertebrovisceral correlation is greatest in these conditions. The data given below are based on a group of 79 adolescents suffering from duodenal and/or gastric ulcer (Lewit and Rychlíková, 1975; Rychlíková and Lewit, 1976).

The following pattern was characteristic of disturbance in the locomotor system: blockage of thoracic segments between T4 and T7 with a clear maximum occurrence at T5/6; compared with a control group there was increased incidence of blockage in the craniocervical junction, but the most striking change was pelvic distortion (87% as compared with 44.4% in the healthy controls). There was increased muscle tension in the thoracic erector spinae in the segments T4–T9, again with the maximum at T5/6, and the same was true of hyperalgesic skin zones, the incidence of the latter being about half that of increased muscle tension. It is interesting that these changes were almost symmetrical, with a slight preponderance on the right; there was hardly any difference between the cases of gastric and of duodenal ulcer. Increased tension of the abdominal muscles, however, was more marked on the right.

In this group the intensity of reflex changes was clearly correlated to pain; where there was no pain, as in some cases after operation, the pattern did not present itself. It must be added that this pattern was found in young patients (15–22 years old); in older patients suffering from ulcers the incidence of pelvic distortion is much lower.

For clinical practice it is useful to remember that reflex changes are a useful criterion of the severity of the disease, and if we find this pattern in patients who do not complain of abdominal symptoms, the stomach and duodenum should be examined. This is particularly suspect if the patient wakes at night with pain between the shoulder-blades (hunger pain in duodenal ulcer).

Liver and gall bladder

As pain has a prominent role in affections of the liver and especially of the gall bladder, reflex changes must be expected. According to Rychlíková (1974) the segments most frequently affected are T6–T8. Frequent radiation of pain into the shoulder is borne out by an HAZ in the C4 dermatome and increased tension in the upper part of the trapezius on the right. There is also increased tension in the thoracic erector spinae, more on the right than on the left. For differential diagnosis with psoas spasm, see below. On the other hand, Tilscher *et al.* (1977), studying 30 patients with hepatitis, found movement restriction in the segments T8–T10 in 20 cases and (interestingly) restricted rotation of the right hip in 15.

Abdominal viscera can have a very detrimental effect on pain syndromes in the upper extremities, via the phrenic nerve (Zbojan, 1988) and the diaphragm, particularly in conditions without gross pathology, such as 'indigestion' caused by faulty diet or bad eating habits (eating too fast, cold drinks early in the morning, irregular meals, etc.), which may cause no major disease but only dysfunction of the viscera. This may suffice to provoke referred pain and trigger points in the upper extremities, shoulder girdle, head and neck. Improved eating habits and a hot (but not too hot) drink at appropriate times may greatly alleviate such conditions.

L. O. (1906) suffered from the age of 50 from chronic lumbar pain radiating to both legs, pain between the shoulder-blades and restricted movement of the head. We found pelvic distortion, which was treated, and muscle imbalance which required remedial exercise. Some years later the patient was treated for gall bladder trouble; his lumbar pain increased after spa treatment. When he came for examination he was suffering from an acute gall bladder attack, so that remedial exercise was out of the question. There was a broad HAZ on the right chest wall, which we treated by massage, and a painful spinous process in the lower thoracic region (probably Th12) which was treated by manipulation. Pain disappeared almost at once. The patient remained in our care for 4 years, during which no gall bladder colic recurred.

The kidneys

Apart from the pain directly associated with a diseased kidney, pain in the lumbar region (back pain) is also found in this condition. A thorough analysis of reflex changes in the locomotor system in kidney disease has been made by Metz *et al.* (1980) and Metz (1986). In 206 cases of chronic kidney disease (pyelonephritis, glomerulonephritis) they found the following pattern: movement restriction at the thoracolumbar junction (T10–L1), and at the lowest ribs; pelvic distortion; increased tension in the thoracolumbar erector spinae, the psoas, quadratus, the thigh adductors and the piriformis; and flabbiness of the abdominal muscles and the glutei. There was accompanying ligament pain and disturbed statics. These changes were not very responsive to therapy as long as the underlying kidney disease was still active.

In a group of 40 (mainly women) patients with nephroptosis and another 40 patients after nephropexy, there was marked hypermobility, in particular at the L5/S1 segment which showed a high promontory; the reflex changes were similar, with marked muscular imbalance, faulty statics and ligament pain. In these cases, however, disturbance of the locomotor function proved to be the decisive cause of the symptoms, and treatment of disturbed locomotor function brought relief, whereas nephropexy proved ineffective.

The psoas and the abdominal muscles

As the psoas is located in the abdominal cavity, in many ways it behaves like an internal organ; differential diagnosis is therefore very important. As we have seen, tension in the psoas may be secondary to kidney disease; it is most frequently associated with movement restriction at the thoracolumbar junction; but it can also be a sign of motor imbalance, very often as a result of faulty athletic training. For examination, see Figure 4.52, p. 125. Palpation may be difficult if pain is intense, because tension in the muscles of the abdominal wall will also be increased, as in any other painful abdominal condition. In such cases the abdominal wall softens after proper treatment of the psoas. Psoas spasm is usually associated with spasm of the thoracolumbar erector spinae and the quadratus lumborum, and relaxation of one muscle induces relaxation of the other.

The most frequent clinical manifestation of psoas spasm is the 'post-cholecystectomy syndrome', or pain simulating gall-bladder disease after the organ has been removed; treatment of a blocked thoracolumbar junction is usually very effective. It is interesting to note that the pattern of true gallbladder disease does not regularly include psoas spasm. Because of its size and site, the psoas can imitate almost any visceral disturbance: duodenum, appendix, pancreas or kidneys. Not only is the pain imitated, but so are the concomitant disorders of the autonomic nervous system such as loss of appetite, the feeling of indigestion, etc. In diagnosis of 'functional disturbance' of an abdominal organ, therefore, examination of the psoas should never be omitted, as very few conditions can be more effectively relieved than those due to psoas spasm.

Tension in the abdominal muscles with trigger points may be due to any intra-abdominal pain, e.g. visceral pain, or to trigger points in the psoas. Even more frequently, trigger points in the abdominal muscles are due to muscular incoordination with forward-drawn posture and increased tension in the glutei frequently linked to dysfunction of the lower extremities with spasm of the hamstrings (see Figure 7.2). Palpation is not easy; it can best be performed by a pincer movement of the two hands, avoiding pressure from above. The most reliable signs are painful insertions at the upper aspect of the pubic symphysis and at the xiphoid process. Pain points at the symphysis refer pain to the low back, which is in keeping with a forward-drawn posture and restricted back-bending.

Gynaecological disorders and low-back pain

Gynaecological disorders have always been traditionally associated with low-back pain, and this is certainly no mere coincidence: there are significant clinical correlations. The usual pattern includes lesions of the lumbosacral junction, the sacroiliac joint (in young women frequently pelvic distortion), a tender coccyx, spasm of the iliacus, muscular imbalance of the pelvic muscles, and ligament pain.

Novotný and Dvořák (1972) made a survey of almost 600 patients, showing the vertebrogynaecological relations. There was menstrual pain (algomenorrhoea) with regular gynaecological findings, felt also in the low back, and with typical onset at the menarche; this condition rarely deteriorates and very often improves after childbirth. Another important group developed symptoms during pregnancy and after delivery, i.e. at a period of increased strain and susceptibility of the lumbar spine and pelvis; in another group, low-back pain followed upon or deteriorated after gynaecological affections, minor surgery, or both. The largest group of patients were women suffering from low-back pain due to disturbed function of the spinal column, in whom gynaecological examination was carried out as a routine diagnostic procedure, with negative findings.

In a group of 150 healthy pregnant women (Lewit *et al.*, 1970) there was anamnestic menstrual pain in 48; in 38 there was either pelvic distortion or lumbosacral movement restriction. Findings in the lumbosacral spinal column and the pelvis were normal only in 10. Moreover, menstrual pain without lesion at the lumbosacral spine or pelvis was felt mainly in the hypogastric region, while in patients with disturbed function of the lumbosacral region, pain was usually felt also in the low back.

In another group of 70 women with menstrual pain and negative gynaecological findings, treatment of the spine, mainly by manipulation, gave excellent results in 43 cases, favourable in 13, and failed in 14. At delivery, women with disturbed function of the lumbosacral spine and pelvis frequently feel labour pains in the low back, even if delivery is normal in other respects.

From these data we may conclude that:

1. Low-back pain may be precipitated by gynaecological conditions such as pregnancy, parturition, gynaecological disease or operation.
2. In a very large number of patients low-back pain of locomotor origin is mistakenly ascribed to gynaecological disturbances. One reason for this may be spasm of the iliacus which is palpated as a site of tender resistance in the hypogastric region.
3. Menstruation pain with otherwise normal gynaecological findings, especially when localized in the low back, is usually of vertebrogenic origin and often the first clinical manifestation of dysfunction in the lumbosacral region. Labour pains felt in the low back in an otherwise normal delivery can be a similar pointer.

B. B. (1933) suffered from headaches from the age of 12, and subsequently from metrorrhagia and algomenorrhoea. We found (1958) pelvic distortion to the left; the left spina iliaca posterior superior and Mennell's test were painful on the left. Manipulation was applied to C1–2 and to the lumbosacral junction. Three months later the patient reported menstruation much improved but headaches unchanged. Manipulation of the lumbosacral and cervicothoracic junction was repeated. Two weeks later menstruation time had decreased from two weeks to one, and the headaches were milder. They never disappeared completely, but any recurring menstruation trouble was successfully dealt with by manipulation of the lumbosacral junction, dysfunction of which caused the symptoms.

In recent years there is growing evidence that female sterility of cryptogenic origin (i.e. with negative organic findings) may be attributable to pelvic dysfunction; Volejníková (1992) presented statistically highly significant results after adequate manual treatment in a controlled trial.

Since the findings of Head (1893/4) and later Hansen and Schliack (1962), quite an important body of literature has built up concerning segmental changes in the skin, subcutaneous tissues and muscle spasm in visceral disease (Kunert, 1975). Little has been written about segmental movement restriction and changes in muscular pattern in these conditions, however, and for this reason I have included important data on these significant changes in locomotor function, and their clinical relevance in vertebro-visceral correlations.

Post-traumatic states

The importance of trauma as a cause of disturbed function of the spinal column was pointed out in Chapter 2 (p. 17). This is especially true of trauma in childhood. However, clinical manifestations may be long delayed because of decompensation, which in itself can cause secondary changes. In this way a terrain is prepared which is much more susceptible to further injury – and in turn to further decompensation. Even apparently trivial trauma may set this in motion. It should be remembered that the forces acting on the spinal column are such that even a rash uncoordinated movement may produce a sudden load amounting to several hundred kilograms.

Because injury may become manifest only after (secondary) decompensation, it is not surprising that there may be a very long latency period and that the course of the disease can be progressive. Traumatologists are frequently unaware that any trauma affecting the limbs, the trunk and above all the head, is also likely to injure the spinal column – such injury is thus often missed in the first (relatively latent) period. This is all the more so because in the acute stage after trauma, the direct injury to limbs, etc. (such as a fracture) overshadows the indirect damage to the spine, so that the patient himself is not aware of it.

Head injury, including concussion, is a significant example. It stands to reason that any force acting on the head must also affect the cervical spine, while it is obvious that the large, firm skull is less fragile than the seven vertebrae and (vital) soft tissues of the mobile cervical spine. In fact, what is called the post-concussion syndrome with headache and vertigo can scarcely be distinguished from the cervicocranial syndrome. Indeed, Bärtschi-Rochaix (1949) describing 'migraine cervicale' found that most of his patients had suffered head injury. Torres and Shapiro (1961) compared 45 cases after concussion with 45 cases after whiplash injury to the cervical spine; they found little difference in symptoms or neurological findings, or even EEG, the only significant observation being a higher incidence of neck and upper extremity pain in whiplash injury. Junghanns wrote as early as 1952 that, 'recent experience suggested that symptoms usually attributed to concussion were in reality caused by contusion of the cervical spine'. This is also borne out by autopsy findings: in all 20 cases of death after head injury, Leichsenring (1964) found serious damage to the cervical spine.

In a group of 65 of my patients after concussion (with loss of consciousness), clinical findings in the cervical spine were normal only in six. The results of manipulative treatment were similar to those in other cases of headache and vertigo of cervical origin (37 'excellent', 18 'fair' and 10 failures). Failure was most frequently due to ligament pain and anteflexion headache; the most frequent site of blockage was between atlas and axis.

In the light of this experience, manipulative treatment given (in hospital) for preventive purposes, during the first days after concussion, seemed justified. All the patients were fully conscious, with no suspicion of intracranial haemorrhage, and with negative X-ray findings in the skull and cervical spine. In 24 out of 32 cases any pain they felt ceased immediately after treatment. Bartel (1980) has published almost identical results: in 50 cases examined immediately after head injury there was blockage in all but two, the lesion being most frequently located at C1–2. In 40 cases one treatment was sufficient (for the most part this was mobilization), while in six cases treatment was repeated once. Forty of the cases were then symptom-free; six were improved; there were two failures.

In view of these results, the high incidence of traumatic neurosis must be put down mainly to mismanagement; in the vast majority of cases without gross neurological findings, doctors not trained in the manual diagnosis of movement restriction and segmental reflex change come to the disastrous conclusion that there are 'no organic findings' and hence dismiss the trouble as 'functional', i.e. psychological disturbance. The patient thus has insult added to injury, receives no adequate treatment and is forced into a neurotic reaction which is taken as confirmation of the original mistaken diagnosis. There can hardly be a better illustration of how closely prophylaxis and correct management of the patient are bound together.

T. M. (1949) was treated at the age of 10 for persistent headache. Six months previously she had received a blow on the nape of the neck, from a schoolbag. She vomited and felt sharp pain at the site of the injury. Pain in the head persisted for 3 weeks, and was still marked. Neurological tests were negative. X-ray showed dextrorotation of C2. Manipulation was successful: there was relief for 5 months, after which manipulation of C2 was successfully repeated. The blow by a schoolbag had simulated post-concussion syndrome with headache and vomiting.

K. E. (1941) slipped and fell (1958) without loss of consciousness, but with subsequent vomiting and headache. Neurological findings the same day were negative, but the atlas was painful on palpation. Symptoms disappeared immediately after manipulation.

K. J. (1910), bricklayer, fell 2 metres and was unconscious for a short time. The next day he complained of pain in the temples. Rotation of the head was restricted. Manipulation of C1–2 freed mobility and the pain ceased, not to return.

V. B. (1922) collided with a car in 1958 while riding a motorbike. For a while he was in shock, and felt sick in the ambulance. At the hospital he complained of dizziness and headache. Hautant's test showed deviation to the right with end-position nystagmus to the left. Manipulation was not successful. The patient had intended to sit for an examination, but was hospitalized for vertigo the same evening. Manipulation (traction with rotation to the left) was again unsuccessful. Three weeks later the patient returned, with a lowered corneal reflex on the left, end-position nystagmus to the right and hypermetria of the left arm. X-ray showed asymmetry in the position of C3. Manipulation of C3 abolished the nystagmus and the ataxia, and the patient remained without symptoms.

A special, and still somewhat controversial, subject is 'whiplash injury'. There may seem to have been no more than a jerk of the head, usually caused by rear-end collision, and yet after a few hours or days symptoms set in which continue for months and even years. This injury is particularly serious if the head was rotated at the moment of impact. Rear-end collision is not the only possible mechanism: a fall on the shoulder while skiing may produce a similar effect. An underlying mechanism in this injury may be the tearing of ligaments, a torn alar ligament in particular (Dvořák, 1988). This is important, because in the early stages manipulative treatment is more often than not out of place, and supports and/or immobilization should be preferred.

An important complication of injury to the head and neck, and of whiplash injury in particular, has recently been described by Berger (1990) under the designation 'stiff or frozen neck syndrome'. He gives the following characteristic features, based on analysis of 20 cases: movement is restricted, slow and jerky; involuntary movement is less restricted than voluntary; slow movement has a greater range than fast movement; active rotation is less restricted than passive; rotation supine (with C7 fixed) is less restricted than rotation in the sitting position. There is marked hypertonus in muscles and soft tissues, and there are extensive hyperalgesic zones. Patients complain of severe head and neck pain radiating to the shoulders, arms and chest, often accompanied by dizziness, nausea and blurred vision.

Most types of physical therapy, mobilization, exercise and massage are not well tolerated, and the patient's condition improves only with rest, a soft supporting collar, and sometimes with cryotherapy.

The symptoms are often combined with depression, resulting in these patients being considered psychological cases. However, cervicomotography (registration of head movements in three planes simultaneously: fast motion; slow movement, eyes and head following a pendulum; passive movement) reveals constant and highly characteristic patterns which it would be impossible to simulate.

The syndrome may be present only in the acute post-traumatic stage, but may also have a chronic course.

What is true for head injury is equally valid for other parts of the locomotor system: a patient who falls on a hand may suffer from indirect injury to the cervical spine in addition to fracture of the radius, while one who falls on his feet or buttocks may also sustain injury to the lumbar spine.

There are typical lesions in the extremity joints after injury. A patient who falls on his hand, whether the radius is fractured or not, pushes it upwards at the elbow, blocking the elbow joint. The clinical consequence is pain at the styloid process after the removal of the plaster, with impaired radial flexion due to blockage at the elbow, and the absence of radial springing (as in a painful radial epicondyle, see Figure 6.8, p. 165). In such cases treatment of the elbow gives immediate relief. If pain does not subside after a fall on the shoulder the cause is frequently a blocked acromioclavicular joint or a first rib, or again a cervical lesion. After foot injury, with or without fracture, we usually find blocked tarsometatarsal or tarsal joints, or both, as well as blockage at the ankle joint in many cases; after knee injury there is often a blocked fibular head. Treatment of these joints invariably gives immediate relief, which is often permanent. Again the question arises as to whether or not we should treat these lesions immediately after injury. This is a question of diagnosis: if we can rule out fracture, haematoma and hypermobility, the sooner treatment is given the better, to prevent later sequelae.

The clinical picture of movement restriction at important joints

This chapter has been devoted to the clinical picture of disease caused by disturbed function of the motor system, in particular of the spinal column. The most frequent symptom is pain and the structure which most frequently expresses pain is the muscle with its trigger points and painful attachments. It is the great merit of Travell and Simons (1983) to have described systematically the clinical picture caused by muscles harbouring trigger points (TrP). Second to muscular TrP as a cause of pain comes joint movement restriction, and it is no less important to give a concise overview of the most important joint lesions with their symptoms. However, by the time that joint dysfunction is clinically manifest, symptoms are caused not only by the joint but invariably also by the concomitant muscular TrPs. For examination, which is not dealt with here, see Chapters 4 and 6.

The temporomandibular joint (TMJ)

The main symptom is headache on the side of the affected joint, pain radiating strongly into the ear and face. There is frequently a history of missing teeth, badly fitting false teeth, or some other cause of malocclusion, primarily affecting the joint. However, pain may be caused by dysfunction of the masticatory muscles due to incoordination and/or psychological tension as in bruxism (which should always be asked about). The clinical picture is then usually dominated by TrPs of the masticatory muscle, the digastricus (linked with the muscles of the craniocervical junction). For this reason the TMJ presents clinical pictures indistinguishable from (and bound up with) those produced at the craniocervical junction, including vertigo and disturbed equilibrium.

The craniocervical junction

This includes segments C0–1, C1–2 and C2–3, the latter being anatomically a cervical joint with a disc although clinically it behaves like the first two motor segments. In the clinical picture presented here the common denominator is headache; it may or may not radiate to the face, usually being felt mainly at the occiput, the temples and the eyeballs, and mainly one-sided. The other frequent factor is disturbance of equilibrium with or without vertigo, caused by incoordination of the postural musculature. This is why we refer to this region as a 'key region', affecting the whole of the motor system.

Segment C0–1

Symptoms are mainly headache and/or vertigo; there is as a rule chronic (recurrent) tonsillitis and/or tonsillectomy, and mesotitis. Typically, pain is worse on waking in the morning, and may waken the patient during the night. There are typical trigger points in the short extensors of the craniocervical junction and at the upper end of the sternomastoid. If movement restriction is slight, it affects ante- and/or retroflexion and joint play. If rotation and side-bending is also restricted, this is much more often restricted to the left than to the right; frequently it is restricted to both sides.

Segment C1–2

This is the segment most often affected after trauma. Although headache (vertigo) predominates, neck pain is also frequent. There is a typical pain point at the lateral surface of the spinous process of C2; muscular trigger points are most prominent in the sternomastoid and the levator scapulae and trapezius. Rotation restriction is more frequent to the right, whereas side-bending is more often restricted to the left. This is the only cervical segment in which rotation restriction is not necessarily in the same direction as that of side-bending.

Segment C2–3

This is the segment of the acute wry neck, yet it is not usually the only segment affected by that condition. Again, the most prominent trigger points are found in the sternomastoid, the levator scapulae and also in the trapezius; pain may therefore radiate not only to the head but also as far as to the shoulder. There is a pain point at the lateral edge of the tip of the spinous process of C2. Restriction of rotation and of side-bending are much more frequent to the right, while pain and trigger points are also usually on the right.

Segments C3–4 and C5–6

Although headache is frequent, pain radiating to the arm is the predominant symptom, in particular epicondylar pain at the elbow, more frequently on the lateral aspect, sometimes combined with pain at the styloid process. Typical trigger points are found in the deep layer of the paraspinal muscles, the upper trapezius and the muscles involved with epicondylar pain – the supinator, the finger extensors and the biceps.

The cervicothoracic junction (C6–7 to Th2–3)

Even here headache is no exception, but pain radiating to the arm and especially to the shoulder predominates. All the joints of the shoulder may thus be involved, and the upper ribs even more so, particularly the first. As a rule we find increased tension in most muscles of the shoulder girdle, with trigger points in the sternomastoid, the upper and middle trapezius, the scaleni, the infraspinatus and subscapularis. The scaleni with a blocked first rib and the pectoralis minor produce the syndrome of the thoracic outlet; this is usually linked to the carpal-tunnel syndrome. In general, movement restriction is more frequent to the right than to the left.

The thoracic segments (Th3 to Th9–10)

Because symptoms are most frequently pseudovisceral, differential diagnosis is essential here. Symptoms on the left simulate heart, lung, stomach, duodenum, pancreas; on the right they simulate liver, duodenum, lung, stomach. If it is not secondary to visceral disease, dysfunction of the thoracic spine is usually secondary to dysfunction either of the cervical or of the lumbar spine, including the thoracolumbar and lumbopelvic junctions – except in the case of severe thoracic juvenile osteochondrosis. A painful spinous process at Th5 or Th6 without movement restriction at that segment (Maigne's 'interscapular pain') may be secondary to a low cervical lesion and occasionally to a thoracolumbar dysfunction or is due to the 'S'-reflex with TrPs in the erector spinae.

Very frequently, a blocked rib, usually on one side, is linked to a lesioned motor segment. When this is so, side-bending is usually restricted to the side of the affected rib. If the rib lesion is acute, breathing in and out is painful. The 'true' (upper) ribs are much more frequently affected in this way than the lower ribs.

Trigger points in the following muscles are particularly important: the erector spinae, the pectoralis, the serratus anterior and the subscapularis.

The thoracolumbar junction (Th10–11 to L1–2)

Symptoms are characteristically felt in the low back or the thoracic region, less so at the site of dysfunction. If the condition is acute, it has often been provoked by a jerky movement combining stooping with rotation (e.g. lifting an object lying on the ground to one side). If the pain is pseudovisceral, the kidneys may be suspected. Symptoms are caused by trigger points in the following muscles: the erector spinae (which may be tender from Th4 down into the lumbar region, with the attachment point at the iliac crest); the quadratus lumborum with a trigger point at the waist and attachment points at the iliac crest and the lowest ribs (pain at the eleventh and twelfth rib is due to tender attachment points of this muscle!); the psoas, which causes mainly pseudovisceral pain; and the straight abdominal muscles, where trigger points may also cause pseudovisceral pain, as well as painful attachment points at the xiphoid process and at the symphysis, causing referred low-back pain. The main dysfunction here is restricted trunk rotation, usually to the side opposite to the muscle spasm.

Segment L2–3

It is rare for this segment to suffer from dysfunction; if so, it causes lumbago without the characteristic pseudoradicular signs. There is usually a trigger point in the gluteus medius, below the iliac crest and above the piriformis.

Segment L3–4

This segment causes the pseudoradicular syndrome that is so characteristic for the other lumbar segments. It is remarkably similar to pain originating in the hip joint, and is felt in the hip and the groin, radiating towards the knee. As in an affected hip joint, the patient may complain of pain in the knee. Muscle spasm with trigger points in the rectus femoris is characteristic, and therefore the femoral nerve stretch test is positive; mere dorsiflexion of the leg as when examining the hip joint is not sufficient. The straight leg raising test is usually negative.

Segment L4–5

This segment corresponds to the dermatome L5; pain is felt on the lateral aspect of the leg, as far down as the ankle. The typical trigger point is in the piriformis, and therefore pain is felt mainly 'in the hip'. There is usually also increased tension in the hamstrings, and the straight leg raising test is therefore positive as a rule. There may be pain at the fibular head.

Segment L5–S1

This corresponds to the dermatome S1, and radiates down the back of the leg as far as the heel. There is increased tension in the hamstrings and the straight leg raising test may therefore be positive. The fibular head and the ischial tuberosity may also be tender. A trigger point in the iliacus is very characteristic.

The sacroiliac joint

Because pain radiates into the S1 segment, it is practically identical with the pain experienced in lumbosacral dysfunction. The typical pain point (which the patient feels and can frequently point out herself) is just medial and above the posterior iliac spine; this is ambiguous, because it can be caused both by the upper part of the sacroiliac or by the lumbosacral (apophyseal) joint. Only spasm of the iliac muscle is characteristic of the lumbosacral joint. Exact movement palpation is therefore essential for differential diagnosis. In cases where the lower part of the sacroiliac joint is the cause of pain, this may be felt in the sacrococcygeal region.

The coccyx

This structure causes coccygodynia in only about one-fifth of those patients in which it is tender at palpation; for the rest, it may simulate pain from almost any other structure liable to cause low-back pain. Conversely, if the patient believes her pain arises from the coccyx, it may be from a lower sacroiliac joint or even from a painful ischial tuberosity, or due to a positive 'S'-reflex. If this is so, the coccyx is more tender on one side than on the other. Tenderness of the very tip of the coccyx is diagnostic and palpation should be a routine procedure for patients with low-back pain.

The hip joint

Finally, the hip joint when merely dysfunctional, or in the early stages of coxarthrosis, causes (asymmetrical) low-back pain radiating in the segment L4. Pain characteristically gets worse on walking, in particular over steps.

If, therefore, there is no, or only slight, movement restriction at the hip joint, it can be very difficult to distinguish between a pseudoradicular L4 syndrome and pain arising in the hip joint itself. Pain felt at the knee (a tender pes anserinus of the tibia) may be found in both conditions, as may be pain in the groin on palpation. The most important distinguishing sign is the femoral nerve stretch test causing pain in dysfunction of L3–4 and mere dorsiflexion of the hip in a dysfunctional hip joint. Therefore, if there is pain but no real movement restriction at the hip joint, whereas L3–4 is blocked, it is advisable to treat that segment first.

8

Prophylaxis

Importance of the problem

As the decisive role of impaired function has been demonstrated in the theoretical part of this book, it would be inconsistent not to discuss prophylaxis. Not only do we apply some preventive principles in our therapy (see p. 150), but the very principles of rehabilitation are to a large extent identical to those of prophylaxis; indeed, it is one of the main goals of rehabilitation to prevent relapses and complications.

Before going into detail, let us consider for a moment the importance and, at the same time, the magnitude of the task, bearing in mind that patients with disturbed function of the locomotor system form the vast majority of those suffering from back pain and associated problems. The statistical data illustrating this are necessarily inexact, the true incidence of these conditions being much higher. The reason is that a large number of our patients are registered under quite different headings, such as headache, vertigo, pain in the chest or pelvic region, etc. Not all patients who suffer from these symptoms go to see a doctor, having found out by experience that conventional treatment is ineffective: they learn to live with their symptoms, in this way escaping registration. Even so, the figures are impressive.

Mindful of all these difficulties, Wood and Badley (1980) give the following figures for morbidity per 1000 persons in the USA and Great Britain (the latter in parentheses): arthritis and rheumatism, 79 (30 'arthropathies'); back or spine problems, 52 (34); heart trouble, 29; high blood pressure, 47.

The total visits per year for back troubles, in Great Britain, amounted to 3401 000 to general practitioners, 1819000 to orthopaedic surgeons, 637000 to osteopaths and 361 000 to chiropractors.

Table 8.1 gives official data from Czechoslovakia: these give a good overview and are significant economically; they cover only patients who missed work because of their symptoms.

Obviously, among the cases designated 'soft-tissue rheumatism' there will be many patients suffering mainly from disturbed locomotor function. It is

Table 8.1 Number of cases of conditions causing absenteeism per 100000 inhabitants of Czechoslovakia

Complaint	*Year*					*Average duration of working incapacity (days) 1989*
	1968	*1973*	*1979*	*1984*	*1989*	
Disease of the locomotor system	7897		9451	10432	11724	21.9
Soft-tissue rheumatism	2138		1975	1622	1839	20.6
Vertebrogenic disease	3763	4623	4895	6406	7338	19.9
Circulatory disease			3114	3324	3335	39.7
Psychiatric disease			1403	1276	1229	32.0
Neurological disease			1087	961	940	29.6
Respiratory infection			36538	44562	40263	9.4

certainly striking that only the common respiratory infections are a more frequent cause of absenteeism than locomotor disturbances or vertebrogenic disease. If we take into account vertebrogenic disease alone we come almost to the figure of 15 000000 lost working days in a total population of 15 000 000. With 110 fresh applications for invalidity pensions per 100000 inhabitants annually, diseases of the locomotor system (19% of applications in 1989) take first place (after 1989 no such exact data are available).

However impressive these figures, they are far from reflecting the true incidence of these conditions, for working incapacity can be a misleading criterion; it is mainly low-back pain and pain in the lower extremities that cause working incapacity, and here the type of work plays an important part. There are, however, data that show the incidence of symptoms due to disturbed locomotor function more directly. The 'cervical syndrome' with headache, vertigo, frequently related to trauma, and what is called the 'repetitive strain syndrome' at the upper extremity are formidable problems as well.

In his classic 'Munkfors Investigation', covering 1200 workers in various trades, Hult (1954a, b) found symptoms due to cervical lesion in 51% and symptoms due to lumbosacral lesion in 60%, either in the patient's history or at examination. In a country district near Prague, Uttl (1964) found that 61 of a representative sample of 100 subjects had suffered from vertebrogenic symptoms.

To this it must be added that back pain and associated complaints affect patients at the age of maximum work capacity, and that treatment is frequently time consuming and costly (e.g. spa treatment and physical therapy). As the most frequent symptom is pain, there is immeasurable suffering and frustration as well. Even if loss of working capacity can be registered, the factors of reduced efficiency and psychological implications cannot be.

Principles of prophylaxis

As disturbed locomotor function plays a highly important role in the pathogenesis of back pain, prevention must be concerned with the conditions under which this most frequently occurs. We find on analysis that imbalance of muscle function due to faulty movement patterns plays a prominent part. This is largely due to environmental factors: modern industrialized civilization not only greatly changes our eating habits, pollutes the air and water and endangers us with toxic materials or even radiation; it changes our locomotor habits most radically. To put it briefly: while reducing movement it increases static overstrain, hence producing the typical imbalance between mainly postural and mainly phasic muscles (Janda, 1975). This is also a reason why the incidence of disturbed function shows a constant tendency to rise.

Instead of walking, or even riding, we sit or stand in vehicles in which we are jolted or slumped; most work in offices and even in factories is carried out in a more or less fixed (static) position, frequently stooping or sitting. As agriculture becomes more mechanized, work in the fields is not much better in this respect than work in mines or offices. Indeed, the unfavourable trend begins as soon as the child first goes to school and is forced to sit most of the day. Young and healthy, he rebels at times, and rushes about wildly (if he gets the chance); as he grows he soon learns to prefer the motor bike and the TV.

This must be emphasized, because public attention is so narrowly focused on environmental pollution that the harm done to man himself by changes in locomotor behaviour is easily overlooked. There are two logical approaches to prevention under modern conditions: one is to avoid static overstrain as far as possible; the other is to seek to compensate it.

As most of our work is done seated, a correct sitting position is of great importance (see Figures 4.68 and 4.69, p. 133). This, however, depends on the chair used: the height of the chair is correct if the thighs are horizontal and the whole of the foot rests on the floor, even if the knees are bent at slightly more than right angles. The back should be supported at the summit of the kyphotic arch, which (sitting!) is more often in the lumbar than in the thoracic region of the back. If the subject does not lean against the chair-back but can prop his elbows on the work-table or the arms of the chair, the height of the table should be such that by letting the upper arm hang naturally, the subject can lie his elbows on the table (sitting erect). If neither chair nor table offer support, the seat should slope upwards towards the back, tilting the pelvis forward and preventing lumbar kyphosis. Another way of avoiding the unfavourable effects of kyphotic sitting posture of long duration is for the patient to learn Brügger's relief position (see Figure 6.144). Chairs are now manufactured with the seat tilted forward and a knee-rest; this position enforces lumbar lordosis and thus automatically achieves this 'relief position'. Used judiciously, these seats are a great help, particularly for patients suffering from over-strain in the cervical and upper thoracic regions caused by a forward-drawn head while seated, increasing tension in the postural muscles of the shoulder girdle and causing faulty respiration. Patients with low-back pain may find relief in this position for a limited time, but using the chair for too long may bring increased pain. It is therefore wise to recommend its use, but to warn patients to change when they begin to feel discomfort. Indeed, there are (hypermobile) patients who will get pain if they hold any position for a long period. In such a case it is helpful if the chair allows her to rock slightly or to slide back and forth.

A special problem is posed by the prevention of head and neck anteflexion (see anteflexion headache, pp. 271–272). Because the plane of the visual field must correspond to the plane of the object we are looking at, inclination of that object is what matters. If the book we are reading or the paper on which we are writing lies on a horizontal desk, raising or lowering the desk will not prevent us having to bend head and neck forward. What is needed is a tilted surface; a book can of course be held or supported on a book-rest at the correct angle.

In typists the most important cause of suffering is not so much head anteflexion or even repetitive strain to the hands, but copying texts which lie flat on the writing table by the side of the typewriter: the typist therefore has her head constantly in a side-bent, rotated and anteflexed position. She must therefore have the text directly in front of her above the typewriter.

The unfavourable effect of sitting is further enhanced by jolting in vehicles, the worst being lorries or tractors travelling over uneven ground. The importance of good springs and shock absorption must be stressed.

If work is performed standing, it is important that the subject should stand erect if possible, because a stooping position held for any length of time is always a strain. At this point I must stress that a slight stooping movement, such as bending over a wash-basin while shaving, may be more dangerous than maximum stooping, because it is in the former position that the erector spinae contracts most, exerting maximum pressure on the discs (see the 'painful arc', p. 102).

If lifting weights causes symptoms (or relapses), correct lifting must be taught, like correct stooping. Only very heavy weights are lifted with the spinal column erect, by bending and straightening the knees. Otherwise we have to insist on the harmonious synergism of leg and trunk flexion and use the technique of 'uncurling' with the aid of the abdominal muscles, as described in Chapter 4 (see p. 133 and Figure 4.70). When stooping we should always put one leg forward, and bend it.

It would be ideal if everyone obliged to work in a fixed static position were encouraged to change this position occasionally, or given a short break in which to do so.

Just as important as the position held during the day is the way the body lies at night, in bed. In fact, there are few more effective ways of avoiding relapse than correcting an unsuitable sleeping position. The patient is usually asked about the type of bed he sleeps on, and advised to have a soft thick mattress over a firm hard bed. This is the wrong approach. The patient should first describe the position in which he usually sleeps, and only then should we advise improvements. For this we have to distinguish whether his symptoms are mainly in the lumbar or sacral region, or are mainly cervical.

If symptoms are mainly in the low back we need to know whether the patient lies on his side, supine or prone. If the answer is supine or prone, and symptoms occur during the night, or if the patient is wakeful, the trouble is usually due to lordosis. We may then advise him either to lie on his side, or – if he lies supine – to put a pillow or even a low padded stool beneath his legs. The alternative is to put a narrow pillow under the waist to support the lordotic curve. If he lies prone, it is usually best to advise a different position, but here, too, the pelvis can be raised by a pillow, thus flattening lordosis. If lying on the side produces symptoms this may be due to scoliosis, and then a narrow pillow under the waist will help to straighten the lumbar and low thoracic spine.

Sleeping in the right position may be even more important for the cervical spine; this is in part borne out by our experience that acute wry neck most frequently occurs after rest in bed, cervical headache is frequently worse in the morning, and even radicular pain in the upper extremity has a tendency to be worst at night. Only too frequently the well-meant advice is given to patients to lie flat, with no pillow or a very small one; this may be good for a young person with a flat back, lying supine. However, a small soft pillow, or no pillow at all, means that if the patient lies on her side the head and neck are bent, and probably also rotated towards the mattress, because the head is narrower than the shoulders. To keep the cervical spine in the neutral position the head must be supported. The correct height for this support will of course vary from patient to patient, according to the width of the shoulders and also according to how the patient lies – which we must first inquire about. He may lie exactly on his side, or slightly rotated, the shoulder pushed slightly forward or slightly back, all of which affects the height of the support needed. It is therefore best to let the patient demonstrate his favoured sleeping position, and then to determine the height of the support. There are patients who at examination place one arm under the head, which simply means that they feel the need for such a support, for nobody can lie on his own arm for any length of time. The support should be square and not too big; it must never be put under the shoulders, and should be firm enough to give constant support. It should not be wedge shaped.

If the patient has the unfortunate habit of lying prone, this should be discouraged, because it is a position that forces the cervical spine into maximum rotation. Again, a firm pillow giving him the necessary support to lie comfortably on his side will both encourage him to do so and prove an obstacle should he turn to lie prone. There are specially constructed pillows with a hole for the nose, enabling the patient to lie prone with his neck straight. Using such a support, however, he must take care not to lift the head into retroflexion. The most suitable compromise for those who cannot drop this habit is to place a pillow under the shoulder and chest on the side to which the head is turned, thus lessening head and neck rotation. The habit of lying prone usually dates from early childhood, when the position has much to recommend it; later in life, unfortunately, it becomes less and less well tolerated.

Even when lying supine, most older people need a head support; many become round shouldered and stiff, and if the head is not supported it falls into retroflexion. This is not only unfavourable for the cervical spine but can be positively dangerous in subjects with some degree of cerebral arteriosclerosis, since it favours ischaemia, particularly of structures supplied by the vertebral arteries. This is important too, in cervical root syndromes with severe pain at night, because some degree of cervical kyphosis is necessary to keep the intervertebral foramina wide open. Such patients often prefer to sleep in an armchair.

To conclude: it is most important to find out which conditions precipitate symptoms, and to detect faults in the patient's daily habits that should be avoided or corrected in order to prevent relapse. In fact, there is probably no more effective way of helping these patients than by judicious advice about their habits of working, sitting or sleeping. Furthermore, our best therapeutic measures will fail if we do not discover the faulty position a typist maintains at her work, an unsuitable driver's seat, a wrong position during sleep. It is therefore a grave omission on our part if, after learning that symptoms occur in the morning, we do not ask the patient what position he usually sleeps in – or if we learn that symptoms are precipitated by lifting objects and do not investigate the way the patient stoops to lift things. Indeed, one of the main purposes of taking a case history is to investigate these matters exactly. This shows that prophylaxis and correct management of patients cannot be separated.

Sports

The other approach to prevention of disturbed locomotor function, as I pointed out at the beginning of this chapter, is to seek ways to compensate for civilization's ills during our leisure time. If we have too little movement at work, for instance, we may make up for it in our free time. This, as everyone knows, ought to be the main reason for taking up gymnastics and sports, and we are often asked by patients which sport or other physical activity we would recommend them to take up for prophylactic reasons. The question seems straightforward, but we are instantly aware that the answer is not simple. Not only do the various forms of sport affect our bodies in very different ways, but they can even be positively harmful. It is essential to analyse each type of sport carefully, bearing in mind the constitution of the person asking our professional advice. Then there is the question of competitive sports: in view of the extreme and ever-increasing demands made by competitive sports on their devotees, their usefulness for prevention of disturbances, or for the maintenance of normal good health, is most questionable. In fact, as I shall be showing later, most of those who compete in sports must be considered among the most threatened population groups.

It cannot fall within the scope of this book to give a comprehensive picture of the effect of various types of sport on the locomotor system. It may be useful, however, to give a few examples of how to approach the question. Take swimming, for example, considered by most people to be a particularly 'healthy' sport: all the muscles are brought into play, the body weight does not act on the spinal column and there is very little risk of injury. On further analysis, however, we find that the breast stroke and even the crawl make the pectoralis muscle overactive and taut, so that most swimmers become round-shouldered. On the other hand, the breast stroke and even more so the 'butterfly' produce lumbar hyperlordosis and hypermobility. In the older age groups most people hold their head out of the water while swimming, keeping the cervical spine in hyperlordosis. This having been said, I do not want to suggest that swimming is altogether harmful; advising a round-shouldered patient or one with a hypermobile low back, I would suggest that he swims on his back, and I would explain that the crawl is better than the breast stroke for a hypermobile low back. I would warn elderly patients with signs of arteriosclerosis not to swim with the breast stroke for long stretches, causing cervical lordosis, but to use the side stroke, or to swim on the back; this does not invite the risk of vertebral artery insuffficiency.

Doctors should be aware of the dangers of volleyball for the locomotor system: those who play at the net must, as they leap up and drop back to the ground, keep the lumbar spine in hyperlordosis so as not to touch the net; this is most unphysiological and a danger to the low lumbar discs. Diving is a dangerous sport by the operation of a similar mechanism, spondylolisthesis being significantly more frequent among divers than in the rest of the population. Gymnastics as usually taught make muscular imbalance even worse, particularly in exercises in which the trunk and legs are held straight and at right angles to each other. In order to achieve this, the action of the abdominal muscles naturally approaching the sternum to the pubic symphysis must be overcompensated and inhibited by the erector spinae and the iliopsoas – the best way to provoke the 'lower crossed syndrome' (see pp. 137–138). The important mechanism of curling up the lumbar spine is discarded and instead there is leverage at the lumbosacral junction, with deleterious effect on the discs. Gymnastics on apparatus tend to make the upper fixators of the shoulder girdle overactive. The emphasis on swift movement in gymnastics makes safe control of the body difficult, and it is not easy to avoid a movement that may be harmful. For this reason some types of yoga exercise (but not those resembling acrobatics!) and Tai-chi are probably more suitable for prophylactic purposes than traditional European gymnastics; there is no fast jerky movement, the limbs are never at right angles with the trunk and muscular activity is in balance with relaxation.

A leisure activity to be recommended is regular walking, preferably on soft paths or wearing crêpe-rubber soles; it is without risk, as it is the most physiological form of locomotion. Similarly, cross-country skiing has much in its favour; it also makes use of all four limbs, and the snow provides a soft terrain.

We should not forget that dancing is among the oldest forms of movement that people have enjoyed. Because, unlike gymnastics, it can be carried on for hours at a time, it is as effective as exercise; with few exceptions it is harmless, and it can also be recommended to combat obesity.

These examples should suffice to show the need for a judicious approach to sport as a preventive of locomotor disturbance, and to warn against over-simplifying the question.

Clothing

Although posture and movement, and their correction, naturally play the principal part in preventing disturbed locomotor function and its sequelae, there are other important factors such as food and clothing. It is notoriously well known that regions highly susceptible to pain, like the neck and the low back, are sensitive to cold and draughts, and those who suffer from pain in these areas will try to protect them. This is fully justified by experience, but we should not forget the antinomy of necessary protection and desirable resistance, or hardening. Thus although we should protect regions that we know are apt to cause symptoms, we should try to harden the body as a whole. Nor should we forget that the susceptibility to cold of a region like the low back is usually due to a latent lesion, and that after successful treatment cautious hardening may be undertaken. One of the main purposes of wearing clothes is to protect the body from the cold, but this should be judicious to maintain thermoregulation or resistance to heat and cold at an optimum. Besides clothing, this also applies to the question of when and to what extent we should expose our bodies to the air, water and the sun.

There is yet another side to the question, what might be called the mechanical side; tight corseting is no longer a menace to the modern woman, but there are other hazards – hair and cap styles that force a forward and upward tilt of the head, bags slung from one shoulder and, of course, shoes. High heels not only change the gait but also the body statics: they produce forward pelvic tilt with its unfavourable effect on muscle function (imbalance), affecting spinal curvature and even the position of the head, as well as the breathing. There should be no need to emphasize here how important the shape of the shoe is for the development and proper functioning of the foot.

Another important point concerns the abdominal muscles; the modern fashion of pantihose is harmless for slim young women with strong muscles, but for the obese or older woman with weak abdominal muscles – especially after operation or several pregnancies – a firm belt is most desirable. Obese elderly men, too, with poor abdominal muscles, should wear a broad belt. On the other hand, care must be taken to see that the belt does not cut into the abdomen. A suitable brassiere is also extremely important for women with heavy breasts. Only too often do we see women patients lifting their breasts with brassieres that are too small, with narrow ribbons that cut deep into the flesh of the shoulders. This constant drag on the shoulders is enough to foil any attempt to treat the cervical spine, or to correct body statics. It is a grave mistake not to point out the patient's lack of wisdom in this respect; women with very heavy breasts should be advised most emphatically to wear a corset. This is one of the reasons why women patients should not remove their brassiere as a routine; the examiner should insert a finger under the brassiere straps of a heavy-breasted patient (standing or sitting) to assess the strain on her shoulders.

There are men who do not tolerate a tight trouser belt and should wear suspenders. Men with protruding bellies due to weak musculature causing faulty posture should wear a broad abdominal belt.

It is only too obvious that the campaign against obesity common to many fields of medicine is very relevant for the correct functioning of the locomotor system. A vicious circle is easily set up, in which obesity causing overstrain with faulty statics manifests itself in low-back pain; the patient is reluctant to move because of the pain and gets even fatter. I cannot deal here with ways of combating obesity, but it is important to decide whether obesity is a relevant factor in any given case of locomotor disturbance. We should remember that increased weight will seriously affect the lower extremities, less so the pelvis and the lumbar spine, but is of only slight relevance to the cervical spine. There are subjects with very little fat on the trunk but obese buttocks and thighs; this may be practically irrelevant for the spinal column and body statics. The physical type of the patient is important; the pyknic tolerates obesity much better than the asthenic. A heavily built subject who weighs about 80 kg at 20 years and 90 or even 100 kg at 50 years may suffer very little, whereas an asthenic subject who weighs 50 or 60 kg at 20 years and 80 or 90 kg at 50 years will be decompensated. When advising weight reduction we must have good reason to think that obesity is a potential cause of the symptoms.

Manipulation as a prophylactic measure

Having discussed some of the basic principles of prevention, we now come to the question of preventive correction of specific disturbances. As I pointed out on p. 150, we not only indicate treatment of those lesions that manifest themselves by causing pain, but we also treat lesions in key positions although they may still be latent, because we are convinced that they are a potential source of trouble. We are therefore justified in asking whether, and under what conditions, we should treat clinically latent lesions in persons without symptoms. This is particularly to the point in joint or segmental movement restriction (blockage) which is potentially harmful, and at the same time can be quickly and safely diagnosed as well as treated. This may also apply to latent TrPs in 'key muscles'.

Having discussed the usefulness of manipulation as prophylaxis we must now turn to its practical possibilities. It is certainly not possible, and probably not even useful, to suggest prophylactic manipulative treatment for the whole population, but it may be reasonable to envisage such medical supervision for pre-school and schoolchildren. Our experience suggests that a check-up once a year or even every other year would be sufficient, and carried out by experts this would not even be time consuming, as it is usually the craniocervical junction and the pelvis that are affected. This would present an effective way of dealing with disturbed locomotor function at the very outset.

There are some groups of patients for whom preventive manipulation is of great importance. The first are patients recovering from injury; trauma was listed among the chief causes of blockage in Chapter 2, and indeed after any type of mechanical injury there is likely to be movement restriction which can complicate recovery. This is particularly true of the spinal column (see Chapter 7, p. 287 *et seq.*).

Another important group comprises patients who have suffered from internal disease giving rise to segmental movement restriction (see p. 282 *et seq.*, Vertebrovisceral correlations). This is particularly important where surgical treatment has been needed, because then operation trauma has been added to the internal lesion. It is, indeed, rather the exception if such patients do not suffer from complications due to disturbed locomotor function (e.g. after gall bladder or gynaecological operations). General anaesthetic with intubation frequently causes cervical lesions which it is imperative to treat.

Whether preventive manipulation could be envisaged for those engaged in some particularly demanding professions is doubtful; in fact, as we have seen, most occupations in modern society are carried on in conditions that are harmful. However, there is one group that is at such risk that manipulative treatment for preventive purposes is justified, and even to some extent carried out: this group is that of competitive sportsmen and sportswomen, a fact which throws light on the effects of competitive sport.

There is another possible approach to the prevention of locomotor disturbance in particularly demanding professions: the choice of employment, taking into account the individual's constitution. Here we are most concerned with hypermobility; it is the hypermobile subject who suffers most from static overstrain and is most susceptible to the consequences of a long-lasting confined sitting position, stooping, head anteflexion and jolting.

It would of course be very misleading to give the impression that the only therapeutic measure to be applied for prevention was manipulation. The importance of this method, and its possible application, have been dwelt upon because it is the subject of this book, and has proved both effective and practicable in prevention.

The classic therapeutic measure is, of course, remedial exercise, and this has been given its due importance in Chapter 6. I should add that it is effective only if the principles laid down in that chapter are consistently followed, i.e. if the type of muscular imbalance and faulty locomotor pattern is accurately analysed and the therapeutic plan worked out accordingly. It can readily be seen, however, that remedial exercise is much more demanding as a form of prevention than is manipulation, and it is therefore not easy to determine its practicability.

Remedial exercise has always been used for children with bad posture, but there are few children who can really profit from it. A more effective approach would be to introduce elements of remedial exercise into normal physical training in schools: teaching correct respiration, stooping, weight carrying, standing and sitting. It would be possible to devise different types of exercise for hypermobile children and for stiff and very muscular children. I have pointed out the great shortcomings of traditional European physical training on pp. 295–296, but the greatest misfortune is the attitude of many, if not most, physical training instructors. Like sports trainers, they are primarily interested in those children who shine in sports and gymnastics – those who are 'promising' as future competitive sportsmen (to their own detriment). The 'awkward' child, the child who really needs more of the teacher's attention, is put into a quiet corner in preparation for a sedentary life and obesity.

There are two groups of adults who ought to be given remedial exercise as a first priority: these are women after childbirth and, for the same reason, patients with weak abdominal muscles after abdominal operation. Not to indicate remedial exercise in such cases is gross negligence.

9

Problems of expertise

Expertise poses considerable problems in patients suffering from pain originating in the locomotor system, among whom those with back pain form the most numerous group. Although their lives are not endangered, they may nevertheless not be fit for the work they are expected to perform, temporarily or permanently, and in some cases they are even threatened with invalidity. In addition, the question of damage traceable to the type of work they do, and particularly to occupational injury, has often to be settled by litigation requiring expert opinion.

Any decision taken in so complex and responsible a matter must be the outcome of scientifically based assessment of pathogenesis and prognosis, as well as management of the patient. From all that has been written here, it is evident that opinions differ widely, yet if disturbed function is accepted as one of the most significant factors in pain deriving from the locomotor system, this must necessarily find expression in our expertise. The difficulties are obvious.

In the first place, in most of the cases where our expertise is called for, the patient has received neither adequate therapy nor rehabilitation. An even greater obstacle is that most doctors are not taught detailed diagnosis and analysis of locomotor function and its disturbance, so that even significant lesions pass unnoticed. This is particularly serious in view of the principal symptom, i.e. pain: the doctor who does not recognize changes in muscle and tissue tension brought about by pain will have to rely (reluctantly) on what he is told by the patient, or else simply refuse to believe him. The unfortunate consequence is that the expert, in order to find 'objective' criteria, feels bound to base his decision on the morphological findings, i.e. mainly on X-rays. This is also easier to 'prove'; changes in function are far more difficult to show. This has, indeed, not much changed with the introduction of new imaging techniques (CT and MRI) because even by these techniques the relevance of the morphological changes cannot be determined, e.g. irrelevant disc herniations.

There are psychological factors at work, too, something like public opinion working to the same end: the patient himself is informed, more often than not, of the changes found in his X-rays and presented to him as the cause of his pain, with the inevitable psychological consequences. It is the patient so 'informed' who becomes a hopeless problem for further management, and invalidity is then not the consequence of the disease but of misguided 'expert opinion'. On the other hand, young patients with serious symptoms including true disc herniation are considered malingerers because their plain X-rays show 'no changes', i.e. no degenerative changes.

It is thus important to give some indication here of how expert opinion can and should be expressed with regard to disturbed function. We cannot deal with all types of pain caused by locomotor disturbance, but back pain and root syndromes are discussed. To present a problem for expertise, pain must have had a chronic course: we therefore exclude acute cases. It has to be assumed, too, that pathological conditions such as ankylosing spondylitis, tuberculosis, osteoporosis, etc., have been ruled out.

In chronic cases without pathological findings there is decompensation as a consequence of articular lesions, faulty statics and muscular imbalance. Our chief concern will be to correct these, so as to achieve compensation, but at the same time we have to assess to what extent the work the patient is expected to perform contributes to decompensation or even causes relapses. This has to be assessed specifically for each case, in view of the effect of different types of work on the locomotor system.

For instance, if the patient gets backache whenever he has to sit for a longer period we shall have to forbid him to do sedentary work but may encourage him to walk, if he reacts favourably. First, however, we must make sure that the bad effect of sitting is not due to an unsuitable chair, a table at the wrong height, etc. Similarly, if lifting and stooping or weight carrying causes symptoms, we must first find out whether the patient's movement patterns are at fault – in which case he must be taught correct techniques – but not allow him to return to this type of work before making sure it will not cause relapse. As one of the frequent factors involved is movement restriction, we should be reluctant to forbid movement as long as it is well tolerated; it is one of the principles of the management and rehabilitation of such patients to improve locomotor function by appropriate movement – despite public opinion shocked by the sight of a patient not fit for work enjoying country walks or even moving about on skis! Sometimes the trouble lies not in the work performed by the patient, but in how he gets to and from work, particularly if jolting in public vehicles is not well tolerated.

Here again there is an important distinction between back pain with or without pseudoradicular (i.e. referred) pain in the lower extremities, and true radicular syndromes. In the former, movement is usually well tolerated and should be encouraged, while in the latter it can be harmful as long as the radicular signs are very acute – which may be for some time. A special problem can be root claudication which has to be diagnosed and yet clinical findings at rest may be minimal. Another condition in which walking is not well tolerated and where we must be cautious about allowing it is pain due to articular involvement of the lower extremities. Here walking on hard ground (paved streets) is particularly harmful.

There is a specific problem in the case of patients who have been unfit for work for a long period, such as several months; this is often the case with radicular syndromes of the lower extremities, particularly where operation has been necessary. These people are out of training. If a young footballer, for example, has to lie in bed for several weeks, nobody expects him to play in a match the day he recovers his health. Working people, however physically demanding their job, do not enjoy the same consideration, although it should be obvious that some readaptation is necessary. If we do not want to risk relapse, the patient should work for a time under somewhat easier conditions, i.e. either not full time, or omitting some of the more demanding operations involved, until he fully recovers his former strength. There is sometimes an attempt in this direction, giving the patient 'easier work'; alas, this usually means transfer to office work or to that of a doorman, which has nothing to do with his real job and gives him no chance to readapt to it.

Pain in the low back and the lower extremities is certainly a more frequent cause of working incapacity than pain in the neck, shoulders and upper extremities, even if the pain is equally intense, because the latter type of pain does not have the same effect on movement. If pain in the low back and lower limbs is sufficiently severe, the patient cannot get to his feet, whereas pain in the shoulder or headache are often the same whether he goes to work or stays at home. Indeed, unless the pain interferes directly with his work, as shoulder pain may do, the patient may suffer less at work than left to his own resources at home.

One important exception which causes absenteeism, and may even necessitate a change of employment, is repetitive strain, i.e. pain in the upper extremity caused by fast repetitive movement of apparently little strength, usually in a rigid position. Adequate clinical examination, in particular of TrPs in the muscles of the neck and upper extremity, is essential to establish the diagnosis.

Before turning to the much-discussed question of trauma, it may be appropriate to say a few words about occupational 'damage'. In the preceding chapter we saw that Western civilization has altered living conditions in such a way as to make the large majority of professions unfavourable to a healthy locomotor system. There are occupations that are particularly undesirable from this point of view: drivers, particularly those exposed to severe jolting as in a tractor, and jobs involving extreme static overstrain, like that of the dentist or the seamstress. Yet it seems exaggerated to regard back pain as an occupational disease in such cases. Frequently, patients get worse at a job for which they are clearly physically unsuited; this is due to a lack of medical expertise in eliminating individuals from work detrimental to their physical constitution. This is most marked when workers are forced to change jobs at an age when adaptation is no longer easy. They then rightly claim that symptoms appeared or got much worse because of their new job – but the real fault lies in lack of prevention.

The role of trauma

As injury, and particularly injury at work, gives the patient the right to claim compensation, it is a frequent subject of litigation requiring expert opinion. The questions put to the doctor in such cases are (1) whether there was trauma at all, and (2) whether and to what degree trauma is responsible for the patient's condition. The answers to both these questions may cause considerable controversy, particularly if the injury has affected the spinal column. I therefore deal mainly with that issue here.

The infliction of trauma

If a heavy object falls on a toe and causes fracture, nobody would question that the fracture was due to injury. When stooping to lift a heavy object, the force of contraction of the erector spinae may amount to several hundred kilograms. If in such a situation a man's foot slips, or if two men are lifting a weight and one of them unexpectedly drops it, a sudden force of several hundred kilograms is brought to bear on the lumbosacral junction. It would be illogical not to regard the sudden, unexpected effect of such a force as an injury. This does not mean that the lifting of a heavy object, in itself, constitutes an injury, even if the force deployed by the muscles is indeed considerable; lifting quite heavy objects is an activity that within limits is quite physiological. It is the unforeseen, incoordinated, jerky movement that should be recognized as traumatic.

A further point is that injury to the spinal column is more often than not indirect, as I pointed out in Chapter 7 (see p. 287). If, therefore, symptoms pointing to spinal involvement occur after a fall on the extremities, buttocks or shoulders, they should be considered as caused or exacerbated by the trauma even if the patient himself does not realize the connection. The greater the damage to the structure directly injured, the more easily spinal involvement is overlooked. Immediately after fracture of the arm or pelvis, local pain is such that it draws all attention to the major trauma, while the insidious injury to the spinal column is barely noticed. (In the cervical region, this is often of the whiplash type.) As the fracture heals and the cast is removed, symptoms attributable to that apparently minor and therefore unrecognized injury get worse instead of clearing up, and should be clearly diagnosed as such. Finally, although by now whiplash injury is a familiar traumatic entity, its seriousness and the relatively unfavourable prognosis are not sufficiently admitted. The fact that whiplash injury need not be caused exclusively by rear-end collisions but also by similar mechanisms brought into play by a fall, for example (Berger and Gerstenbrand, 1981), is still not sufficiently recognized.

The most serious aspect, as I have pointed out in Chapter 7, is that the patient's symptoms after trauma are frequently due to disturbed function, whereas only relatively few doctors have the ability to recognize and assess them as such. Even more difficult than the diagnosis of movement restriction can be that of hypermobility, as in fresh whiplash injury, resulting later in ligament pain with or without blockage.

This situation only too frequently ends with patients who have suffered injury – whose pain typically persists because of disturbed function – being diagnosed as having no objective signs of illness; they are then treated as 'psychological' cases or as malingerers. The inevitable result is that the patient feels wronged and a typical conflict ensues leading to neurosis that in the end justifies the diagnosis which began as a grave error and which could have been avoided.

The effect of trauma

Where trauma has been admitted as such, the question to be answered is whether the patient's symptoms are indeed the result of that trauma. This is a difficult question in some circumstances, e.g. if symptoms do not follow immediately upon injury and if there is a symptom-free interval of days, weeks or even months. We know, fundamentally, that injury may cause disturbed function, as it may cause movement restriction; this may be clinically latent for some time and may become apparent only as the result of additional strain, the influence of cold, or of infection. Another significant aspect is whether the trauma affects a structure that was completely intact, or whether the structure now affected has previously been injured. This question is frequently put in cases of elderly patients in whom degenerative changes are no surprise. At first glance it would seem logical to assume that trauma that does not (yet) cause serious morphological damage such as fracture or torn ligaments, but only disturbs function in the form of blockage or hypermobility in an intact terrain, will have much less serious consequences than if the structure has suffered before. In the first case there is 'only' disturbed function, which if treated adequately should recover in time without sequelae. In the second case, we may assume that even if our patient was without symptoms previous to injury, he was in fact in a state of compensation and that trauma has now brought about decompensation, which may be (and frequently is) a much more serious condition.

What usually happens is that expert opinion arrives at more or less the opposite conclusion: the argument then is that in view of the changes (i.e. degenerative, morphological) that can be proved, the patient would sooner or later have suffered from the same symptoms, and therefore the trauma did not cause the symptoms but merely precipitated what would have happened anyway. As this type of argument is dealt with below, I do not discuss it here.

The question of whether trauma is or is not the cause of symptoms is also often put in cases of disc herniation producing radicular syndromes. Again the argument runs like this: if trauma affects an intact spinal column, fracture of the vertebra is more likely to result than disc prolapse. If, however, disc degeneration is already present, prolapse with its clinical consequences would have occurred anyway, so that again the trauma would have been no more than the precipitating factor.

Taking this line of argument point by point, it is important to stress the following:

1. There are conditions under which a disc may rupture even if intact; this occurs in lordosis or hyperlordosis and is known from those tragic cases in which a diver strikes his head on the bottom of a pool and sudden quadriplegia results. There may be no vertebral fracture at all, because what happened was due to an acutely prolapsed disc causing cervical-cord compression.
2. Disc degeneration is a very frequent condition; routine examination of the population over 50 years of age showed that it exists in the majority. Yet relatively few suffer from clinical manifestations, let alone from (true!) root syndromes.
3. Even if a disc is prolapsed, it may be asymptomatic – at autopsy it is often found in subjects who never suffered root syndromes (McRae, 1956). At present, thanks to CT and MRI we find increasingly more clinically irrelevant disc herniations bearing no correlation with the patient's symptoms. Even if a patient with disc prolapse recovers without operation, the prolapse may still be found, although without clinical manifestations.

To sum up: it is an untenable argument that in view of certain morphological (mainly degenerative) changes we must expect a certain type of syndrome, either as a direct consequence of these changes or, indirectly, as a consequence of 'inevitable' disc prolapse which necessarily or even probably produced this syndrome. This attitude is also unjustifiable, because the young victim of injury with a perfectly intact locomotor system would then be given maximum compensation after injury, while the victim who showed no symptoms because his changes were well compensated but who becomes decompensated would get next to nothing, although he will have much greater difficulty in recovering from his injury than his younger colleague.

The crucial question now is: by what criteria can we give expertise in the matter of changes in function? The basis is a thorough clinical examination establishing (1) the changes in function and, (2) the reflex changes that are the direct sign or clinical manifestation of pain (nociceptive stimulation). The role played by the trauma can be decided only on the basis of the anamnestic data. If it can be proved that, (1) according to the given criteria trauma really occurred and (2) the patient was symptom-free before the incriminated trauma, then the trauma must be recognized as having caused the symptoms. On the other hand, if the patient has had symptoms previously that took the typical course of pain-free intervals alternating with relapses then the trauma was at best a precipitating cause, or even irrelevant. As most employed persons are registered with a doctor who has to confirm sick leave, it is not usually difficult to establish the true state of affairs.

10

The place of manipulative therapy and its future

There are two aspects to manipulation. First, it causes marked reflex effects in many types of pain, a feature that it shares with many other methods of physical therapy such as massage, electric stimulation and local anaesthesia. The other aspect is that it is a specific form of treatment of impaired locomotor function, i.e. of reversible joint movement restriction or blockage. This aspect became crucial for further clinical development and application.

It soon became clear that treatment of restricted joint movement had its limits and that passive mobility in itself involves not only joints but also muscles. This close relationship between joints and muscles became the starting point for further advances; the logical step was to turn our attention to active muscle function and its typical impairment in patients with pain due to disturbed function of the locomotor system, in particular in vertebrogenic lesions. This was muscular imbalance due to faulty motor patterns.

No less important than movement is posture, or statics, because of contemporary conditions of static strain and overstrain. Integration of various aspects of disturbed function of the locomotor system shed some light on the no man's land between neurology, orthopaedics and rheumatology that is the home of the vast majority of patients with pain deriving from the locomotor system, in whom no definite pathomorphological changes can be found. We suggest 'functional pathology of the locomotor system' as the name for this no man's land. The most frequent symptom of impaired locomotor function is pain, reflected clinically by reflex changes such as muscle spasm, trigger points, hyperalgesic skin zones, periosteal points, and other soft tissue lesions.

Manipulation owes its pioneering role in this field not only to the two aspects already discussed, but also to the fact that it has furnished the necessary diagnostic tools. Manipulation, rightly compared to surgery in this respect, requires absolutely accurate diagnosis. The criteria necessary for manipulation have since been consistently applied to movement patterns, statics, and reflex (soft tissue) changes. It thus became possible to obtain the necessary diagnostic data for a judicious analysis of the clinical picture, and to plan rational therapy, i.e. to choose (1) the structure where treatment is most urgent and promising, and (2) the most adequate method of treatment.

Preoccupation with active, i.e. muscular, function was not without consequences for the development of manipulative techniques. In recent years we have tended to make use of the patient's own muscles to restore impaired joint movement, i.e. we have learned increasingly how to make use of the patient's inherent forces, rather than those of the therapist. Indeed, by involving muscular physiology we have increasingly engaged the patient's own activity; originally passive manipulative techniques became semi-active, until finally the patient began to learn self-treatment independent of the therapist. As these techniques are very effective in producing muscular relaxation, they can also be used to treat muscular spasm, trigger points and even referred pain. In this way these semi-active and ultimately active methods of self-treatment take an increasingly evident share in remedial gymnastics and in rehabilitation medicine.

This is understandable, for as the locomotor system is the organ of voluntary movement, it should be efficiently controlled by the patient. It is then no coincidence that the aims of rehabilitation (to restore lost function) using active cooperation on the part of the patient converge with those of modern manipulative techniques which use muscular/neuromuscular techniques. Rehabilitation medicine is not only interested in the locomotor system but also makes use of voluntary movement in dealing with other systems. Here again we have the same problem as that presented by viscerovertebral correlations, particularly in the field of correlation between the locomotor system and respiration, which is under direct motor control.

It is this combination of methods from modern techniques of rehabilitation and manipulative medicine that gives scope for an almost unlimited array of combinations and variations, with the final aim of making correction of locomotor function almost automatic, i.e. using the minimum of conscious control of movement, but such physiological factors as inhalation, exhalation, eye movements and even the force of gravity. Proprioceptive facilitation producing automatic reactions has an increasing role in remedial gymnastics. This flexibility and variability in method opens up further as yet unforeseen possibilities of combination and progress.

Conscious, active cooperation by the patient is another important feature shared with rehabilitation medicine. In most other fields of medicine, the attitude of the doctor is only too often that of the ancient shaman: the patient comes *to be cured*, whether by drugs, surgery, or miracle. The patient (as the word implies) patiently does nothing about it; he is only the *object* of medicine. In rehabilitation, on the contrary, the patient is the *subject*, and as doctors we merely advise him how to deal with his predicament. This involves overcoming the comfortably passive role of the patient and dealing with the difficult problem of psychological motivation. The close relationship between psychological motives and locomotor function is very clear, because the locomotor system is controlled by the will. This is also borne out by the importance of the human factor in manipulation as well as in locomotor rehabilitation. In this field of medicine we have to rely mainly on our eyes and hands, and to learn (relearn!) the skills modern medicine so sadly neglects in favour of sophisticated equipment. Only the skilled hand can adapt as promptly as is required to the patient's reactions, keeping fully in contact with his requirements, physical as well as psychological. In this field of medicine a personal relationship between doctor and patient is vital.

The logical conclusion to be drawn is that manipulation has its place within the framework of physical medicine and rehabilitation, all of which serve the aim of restoring function by the most adequate means.

The realization of this task requires teamwork, the three members of the team being the doctor, the physiotherapist and the patient. The role of the doctor is to form the diagnosis and analyse the locomotor disturbance; he should also start treatment, for in straightforward cases one or two treatments suffice. In more serious cases he should be aware – if not after the first, then after the second or third examination and treatment – how the case should be treated further by the physiotherapist. This is not only a question of remedial exercise, soft tissue techniques, electrotherapy and so forth, but also of repeated mobilization and relaxation techniques taught to the patient for self-treatment. As this combination of self-treatment and physiotherapy proceeds, the doctor has to assess the results and see the patient again whenever treatment seems ineffectual; it is, of course, the doctor who decides when to terminate treatment.

There is much to be said for reserving thrust techniques for the doctor alone. The physiotherapist is, by her training, best fitted to use her hands and must understand the increasingly sophisticated methods of remedial exercise; restoring muscular balance and correcting locomotor patterns, she will use mobilization techniques and teach them to her patients. This manner of proceeding entails a reasonable partnership between doctors and physiotherapists, so that they divide their roles judiciously.

Tuition plays a crucial part in realizing this ideal, for the complex subject of locomotor function and the truly difficult skills of diagnostic and therapeutic techniques are rarely taught in medical schools, even with specialization in those fields of medicine dealing with the locomotor system. In some countries a first step has already been taken, in the shape of postgraduate training of a certain number of doctors (as yet inadequate to the dimensions of the task); they will be the pioneers and initiators. Many will have to overcome too narrow an interest in one particular approach, such as manipulation, in order to be able to handle efficiently a team whose aim is to combat disturbances of the locomotor system.

The next step is the specialized training of physiotherapists to make effective partnership possible. It will then be necessary to introduce the basic principles of manipulation and locomotor rehabilitation to the university curriculum, so that medical students become aware of the importance, possibilities and attractiveness of this field of medicine. This is closely linked with the final step, which is as yet no more than a pious hope. As disturbances of the locomotor system are the most frequent cause of painful disorders, every general practitioner comes up against them daily; at present he can only prescribe analgesics and hope for the best. He should be given the opportunity to learn how to deal with simple cases, to acquire a limited number of techniques that are both easily learned and safe. This goal is now attainable, thanks to the mobilization techniques that use muscular facilitation and inhibition ('neuromuscular techniques').

This brings us back to the question of ultimate goals. The vast number of painful disorders designated as 'functional', in reality attributable to disturbed function of internal organs and the locomotor system, constitute the majority of minor ailments afflicting our fellow humans. It is here that manipulative and other techniques of physical medicine ('dieting') are the adequate method to deal with disturbed function and the ensuing reflex changes, treating them in the most specific and physiological way. It would indeed be a significant contribution to modern medicine if these methods, judiciously used, were to be brought into play where the heavy and often only too effective armament of drug therapy, with all its side-effects, is called upon for 'minor everyday troubles'. The heavier weapons could then be saved for the right moment.

The locomotor system which appears to play the major part in these disorders is the principal object of the diagnostic and therapeutic techniques described in this book. They should teach us how to make ever-increasing use of this most intricate and perfect instrument at our disposal, our own locomotor system, at a time when we are learning to use increasingly sophisticated mechanical systems but are losing intelligent control of our own bodies. To this end the importance of purely physical methods in the curriculum of medical and physiotherapy students should be reassessed, particularly that of palpation. From Chapter 4 it is clear that palpation gives access to a wealth of information and creates a feedback relationship with the patient's organism, such as no instrument can provide.

Bibliography

Abrams, A. (1912) *Spondylotherapy*. San Francisco: Philopolis Press

Adams, C. B. T. and Logue, V. (1971) Studies in cervical myelopathy. I. Movement of the cervical roots, dura on cord and their relation on the course of the extrathecal roots. *Brain*, **94,** 557

Aeckerle, J. and Teusch, K. H. (1985) Der Röntgenologische Nachweis klinisch diagnostizierter Blockierungen der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **23,** 47

Ahlin, H. (1984) A screening procedure for differentiating temporomandibular joint related headache. *Headache*, **24,** 216

Airaksinen, O. and Keikkinen, A. (1988) Results of autotraction treatment for disc prolapse in a one year follow-up study. *Manual Medicine*, **3,** 129

Akio Sato (1995) Somatovisceral reflexes. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 597–602

Aleksiev, A. and Kraev, T. (1994) Postisometric relaxation versus high velocity low amplitude techniques in low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 38–41

Alexiev, A. (1995) Longitudinal comparative study on outcome of in-patient treatment of low back pain with manual therapy *vs.* physical therapy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 10–14

Altumbaev, R. A. (1993) Komputernotomograficheskoe issledovaniya osobenostey mezhpozvonochnovo kanala na nizhnepozvonochnon urovne u bolnykh lumboishialgiami (CT studies of the intervertebral canal in patients with lumbo-sciatic pain) *Vertebronevrologia*, **2,** 14–18

Anderson, B. (1980) *Stretching*. Bolinas, California: Shelter

Anderson, J. A. D. (1980) Back pain and occupation. In *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*, 2nd edn, p. 57. Ed. Jayson, M.I.V. London: Pitman Medical

Angrist, A. A. (1973) The inevitable decline of chiropractic. *N.Y. State Journal of Medicine*, **73,** 324

Ankermann, K. J. (1982) Die iliosakrale Diskordanz, eine funktionell reversible Fehlstellung der Iliosakralgelenke. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **34,** 377

Arkuszewski, Z. (1986) The effectivity of manual treatment in low back pain: a clinical trial. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2**, 68

Arkuszewski, Z. (1986) Involvement of the cervical spine in back pain. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 126

Arlen, A. (1979) Röntgenologische Funktionsdiagnostik der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 24

Arlen, A. (1980) Mastodynie – pathologie metamérique et statique rachidienne. *Senologia*, 230

Arlen, A. (1990) Metameric medicine and atlas therapy. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 212. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Ashraf, M. (1995) First rib function and the thoracic outlet syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 56–61

Aspergen, D. D., Cox, J. M. and Trier K. K. (1987) Short leg correction. A clinical trial of radiographic vs. non-radiographic procedures. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **10,** 232

Baastrup, C. (1933) On the spinous processes of the lumbar vertebrae and the soft tissues between them, and pathological changes in this region. *Acta Radiologica*, **14,** 52

Babin, E. and Maitrot, D. (1977) Signes radiologiques osseux des varietées morphologiques des canaux lombaires étroits. *Annales Radiologiques*, **20,** 491

Babin, E., Capesius, P. (1976) Études radiologiques desdimensions du canal rachidien cervical et leurs variations au cours des épreuves fonctionelles. *Annales Radiologiques*, **19,** 457–462

Bachmann, H., Georgousis, H. (1994) Sternoklavikulargelenksfraktur als Komplikation chiropraktischer Massnahmen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 87–90

Badtke, G. and Roderfeld, E. (1986) Muskelfunktionsstörungen bei gesunden Schulkindern. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 87

Bailey, M. (1995) Assessment of impact severity in minor motor vehicle collisions. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 21–38

Bajer, A., Bohrn, K. and Kameník, M. (1959) Funkční zkouška poruch pruchodnosti cév kmene mozkového pomocí De Kleynova testu. (Examination of brain stem circulation with the aid of De Kleyn's test.) *Československá Otolaryngologie*, **8**, 55

Bakke, M., Tfelt-Hanse, P., Olesen, J. and Møller, H. (1982) Action of some pericranial muscles during provoked attacks of common migraine. *Pain*, **14**, 121

Bakke, S. N. (1931) Röntgenologische Beobachtungen uber die Beweglichkeit der Wirbelsäule. *Acta Radiologica (Stockholm)*, Suppl. XIII

Balague, F., Dutoit, G. *et al.* (1988) Schoolchildren: an epidemiological study. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, **20**, 175–179

Balague, F., Skovron, M. L., Nordin, M., Dutoit, G. and Waldburger, M. (1995) Low back pain in schoolchildren: a study of familial and psychological factors. *Spine*, **20**, 1263–1270

Baldry, P. (1994) Superficial dry needling at myofascial trigger point sites. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3**, 117–126

Balmer, H. (1972) Die Bewegungsachsen der Lumbalwirbelsäule bei Flexion und Extension. *Zeitschrift für Unfall-Medizin und Berufskrankheiten*, **63**, 11

Bansevicius, D., Sjaastad, O. (1996) Cervicogenic headache: the influence of mental load on pain level and EMG of shoulder-neck and facial muscle. *Headache*, **36**, 372–378

Barbor, R. (1964) A treatment for chronic low back pain. In *Proceedings of the 4th International Congress of Physical Medicine, Paris, September 6–11*. International Congress Series, No.107. Amsterdam: Excerpta Medica

Barbor, R. (1972) Das Schultergelenk. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10**, 25

Barnsley, L., Lord, S. M. *et al.* (1995) Chronic cervical zygapophyseal joint pain after whiplash. *Spine*, **20**, 20–25

Baron, J. B., Bessineton, J. C., Bizzo, G., Noto, R., Tévanian, G. and Pacifici, M. (1973) Correlation entre le fonctionnement des systèmes sensorimoteurs labyrinthiques et oculomoteur ajustant les déplacements du centre de gravité du corps de l'homme en orthostatisme. *Agressologie*, **6 (14) B**, 79

Barr, J. (1937) Sciatica caused by intervertebral disc lesion. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **19**, 323

Barré, J. A. (1926) Le syndrome sympathique cervical postérieur. *Revue Oto-Neuro-Ophthalmologique*, **4**, 65

Barré, J. A. (1926) Sur un syndrome sympathique cervical postérieur et sa cause fréquente, l'arthrite cervicale. *Revue neurologique*, **33**, 1246

Barré, J. A. (1952) Troubles neuro-ophthalmologiques d'origine cervicale. *Revue Oto-Neuro-Ophthalmologique*, **24**, 18

Bartel, W. (1980) Die Häufigkeit und Behandlung von Blockierungen im Bereich der Kopfgelenke nach Schädel-Hirntrauma. In *Manuelle Medizin, Tagungsbericht, Potsdam, 28–31.1.1980*, p. 92. Eds Metz, E. G. and Badtke, G. Wissenschaftlich-Technisches Zentrum der Pädagogischen Hochschule. Potsdam: K. Liebknecht

Bartel, W. (1980) Die Wirksamkeit der Manuellen Therapie bei der Nachbehandlung von Sprunggelenksverletzungen. In *Manuelle Medizin, Tagungsbericht, Potsdam, 28–31.1.1980*, p. 118. Eds Metz, E. G. and Badtke, G. Wissenschaftlich-Technisches Zentrum der Pädagogischen Hochschule. Potsdam: K. Liebknecht

Bärtschi-Rochaix, W. (1949) *Migraine Cervicale*. Bern: Huber

Basmajian, J. V. (1978) *Muscles Alive*, 4th edn. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Basmajian, J. V. (1990) Electromyography – its significance to the manipulator. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 21. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Basmajian, J. V. and Nyberg, R. (1993) *Rational Manual Therapies*. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

Beal, M. C. (1979) Grundlagen der Osteopathie. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 32. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Bühl: Konkordia

Beal, M. C. (1982) The sacroiliac problem: review of anatomy, mechanics and diagnosis. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **81**, 667/73–679/85

Beal, M. C. (1985) Viscerosomatic reflexes: a review. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **85**, 786/53–801/68

Beal, M. C. (1989) Louise Burns Memorial Lecture: perception through palpation. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **89**, 1334

Beck, E. and Thümmler, W. (1975) Zur Ätiologie und Pathogenese der sogenannten Epiconczlitis humeri. *Manuelle Medizin*, **13**, 94–96

Becker, F. (1978) Uber Schwindelerscheinungen besonders aus der Sicht der Manuellen Therapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16**, 95

Beck-Föhn, M. (1988) Das Carpaltunnel-Syndrom – ein Arbeitsschaden? *Manuelle Medizin*, **26**, 97

Beendtsen, L., Jensen, R., Olesesn, J. (1996) Qualitatively altered nociception in chronic myofascial pain. *Pain*, **65**, 259–264

Bélanger A. Y. (1996) The pros and cons of passive physical therapy modalities for neck disorders. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 125–134

Ben Eliyahu, D. J. (1996) Magnetic resonance imaging and clinical follow-up: study of 27 patients receiving chiropractic care for cervical disc herniations. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19**, 597–606

Bendix, T. (1986) Sitting posture – a review of biomechanics and ergometric aspects. *Manuelle Medizin*, **23**, 77

Benini, A. (1976) *Ischias ohne Bandscheibenvorfall. Die Stenose des Wirkbelkanals und ihre klinisch-chirurgische Bedeutung*. Bern, Stuttgart, Wien: Huber

Benini, A. (1984) Der enge Recessus lateralis. In *Neuroorthopädie 4*, p. 213. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Liebig, K. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Benn, R. T. and Wood, P. H. N. (1975) Pain in the back. An attempt to estimate the size of the problem. *Rheumatology and Rehabilitation*, **14,** 121

Bennett, R. M. (1990) Myofascial pain syndromes and fibromyalgia syndrome: a comparative analysis. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy Vol. 17*, p. 43. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Bentsen, L., Jensen, R., Jensen, L. K. and Olesen, J. (1994) Muscle palpation with controlled finger pressure: new equipment for the study of tender myofascial tissue. *Pain*, **59,** 235–239

Berger, M. (1982) Differentialdiagnose des Schulter-Nackenschmerzes aus neuroorthopadischer Sicht. *Wiener medizinische Wochenschrift*, **23–24,** 583

Berger, M. (1984) Neuroorthopädische Diagnostik und Therapieeffekte bei cervikalen Rotationsstörungen. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmertz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 163. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Berger, M. (1984) Cervicomotographie, ein enues Verfahren zur Funktionsuntersuchung der Halswirbelsaule. In *Moderne Schmerzbehandlung*, p. 73. Eds Bergmann, H., Bischko, J., Gerstenbrand, F. *et al.* Wien, Munchen, Bern: W. Maudrich

Berger, M. (1988) Röntgenologische und biometrische Befunde beim oberen Zervikalsyndrom. In *Neuroorthopädie 4*, p. 65. Eds Homann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Liebig, K. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York and Tokyo: Springer

Berger, M. (1990) *Cervicomotographie. Eine neue Methode zur Beurteilung der HWS-Funktion*. Enke Copythek. Stuttgart: Enke

Berger, M. and Gerstenbrand, F. (1981) Kopfschmerzen als Spätsymptom nach Peitschenschlagtrauma der Halswirbelsäule, neuroorthopädische Aspekte. In *Schmerzstudien 5, Kopfschmerz*, p. 264. Eds Gross, D. and Frey, R. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Berger, M. and Gerstenbrand, F. (1986) Cervicogenic headache. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, **4,** 405

Berger, M. and Gerstenbrand, F. (1988) Halswirbelsäulendynamik und zervikaler Kopfschmerz. In *Kopfschmerzen*, p. 61. Eds Tilscher, H., Wessely, P. *et al.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Berger, M. and Lewit, K. (1984) Der antalgetische Effekt der postisometrischen Muskelrelaxation. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 214. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. (1984) *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Berger, M., Janda, V., Sachse, J. (1987) *Muscle spasm and pain*. Proceedings of an International Symposium, Vienna, 1987 p. 55–56. Eds Emre, M., Mathias, H., Carnforth, U.K., Park Ridge, UA: The Parthenon Publishing Group.

Bergsmann, O. (1974) Das mechanisch-dyspnoische Syndrom – thorakale Störung der Atembewegung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **12,** 79

Bergsmann, O. and Eder, M. (1984) Atembewegung und Vitalfunktion. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 96

Berlinson, G. (1989, 1990, 1991) *Précis de Médicine Ostéopathique Rachidienne*, Vol. 1, 2, 3. Paris: Maloine

Biedermann, F. (1954) *Grundsätzliches zur Chiropraktik*. Ulm: Haug

Biedermann, F. and Edinger, A. (1957) Kurzes Bain, schiefes Becken. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Rontgenstrahlen*, **86,** 754

Biedermann, H. (1990) The cervico-lumbar syndrome. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 64. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Biedermann, H. (1991) Kopfgelenk-induzierte Symmetriestörungen bei Kleinkindern. *Der Kinderarzt*, **22,** 1475–1481

Biedermann, H. (1991) Kinematic imbalance due to suboccipital strain in newborns. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 151–156

Biedermann, H. (1993) Das KISS Syndrom der Neugeborenen und Kleinkinder. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 97–107

Bigos, S., Bowyer, O., Braen, G. *et al.* (1994) Acute low back problems in adults. *Clinical Practice Guide Line No 14*, AHCPR Publications No 95–0642. Rockwill MD. Agency for Health Service, US Department of Health and Human Service

Bilkey, W. J. (1991) Involvement of fascia in mechanical pain syndrome. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 157–160

Bischko, J. (1984) Die Akupunturtherapie beim Bewegungssystem. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 261. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Bitterli, J., Schlapbach, P. and Fellmann, N. (1978) Traitement de l'arthrose fémoropatellaire par pollissage manuel. *Cinésiologie*, **69,** 55

Bizzini, M., Mathieu, H. and Steens, J. C. (1991) Propriozeptives Training der unteren Extremität. *Manuelle Medizin*, **29,** 14–20

Bjelinskij, V. E. (1973) Vliyanie vesa tyeli i myshetshnyck sil na formirovanie fisiologitsheskich izgibov pozvonotshnika. (Influence of body weight and muscle forces on the formation of spinal curvature.) *Ortopedia, traumatologia i protezirovanie*, **34,** 45

Block, A. R., Vanharanta, H., Ohnmeiss, D. D. and Guyer, R. D. (1996) Discographic pain report: influence of psychological factors. *Spine*, **21,** 334–338

Blomberg, S., Svardsudd, K. and Mildenberger, F. A. (1994) A controlled multicentre trial of manual therapy in low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 2–8

Boden, S. *et al.* (1996) Orientation of the lumbar facet joints: association with degenerative disc disease. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery* (A.), **78,** 403–411

Bogduk, N. (1984) Headache and the cervical spine (Editorial) *Cephalagia*, **4,** 7

Bogduk, N. (1985) A neurological approach to neck pain. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd edn, p. 135. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill-Livingstone

Bogduk, N. (1990) Pathology of lumbar pain. *Manual Medicine*, **5,** 72

Bogduk, N. (1995) The anatomical basis of spinal pain syndromes. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 603–805

Bogduk, N. and Engel, R. (1984) The menisci of the lumbar zygapophyseal joints. *Spine*, **9,** 454–460

Bogduk, N. and Jull, G. (1985) The theoretical pathology of acute locked back: a basis for manipulative therapy. *Manual Medicine*, **2,** 18

Bogduk, N. and Twomey, L. T. (1987) *Clinical Anatomy of the Lumbar Spine*. Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone

Boiling, J. D. and Palastenga, N. (1994) *Grieve's Modern Manual Therapy*. New York: Churchill Livingstone

Boline, P. D., Haas, M., Meyer, J. J. *et al.* (1993) Inter-examiner reliability of eight evaluative dimensions of lumbar segmental abnormality. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 363–374

Boudin, G., Barbizet, J. and Masson, S. (1959) Vertige et perte de connaissance. *Revue Neurologique*, **101,** 747

Bourdillon, J. F. (1990) The changing pattern of manual therapy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **12,** 3

Bourdillon, J. F. and Day, E. A. (1987) *Spinal Manipulation*, 4th edn. London: Heinemann

Bozzao, A., Galucci, M. *et al.* (1992) Lumbar disc herniation: MR imaging assessment of natural history in patients treated without surgery. *Neuroradiology*, **185,** 135–141.

Bradshaw, C., Watling, B., Bryee, D. and Steen, E. N. (1995) Manipulative physiotherapy for spinal problems in primary care outcome. *British Journal of Rheumatology*, **34,** 1070–1073

Brahme, S. K., Hodler, J., Braun, R. M., Sebrechts, C. *et al.* (1997) Dynamic MR imaging of carpal tunnel syndrome. *Skeletal Radiology*, **26,** 482–487

Branche de, B. (1988) Analyse von 28 Dossiers von Patienten mit Tendinitis im Ellbogenbereich, behandelt mit Manipulationen der HWS. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 77

Brandt, T. (1993) *Vertigo, its Multisensory Syndromes.* London, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Paris, Tokyo, Hong-Kong: Springer

Brandt, T. and Daroff, R. B. (1980) Physical therapy for benign positional vertigo. *Archives of Otolaryngology*, **106,** 484–85

Braus, D. F. and Mainka, R. (1993) Schlaganfall nach manueller Therapie: rationale Diagnmostik. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 92–95

Breen, A., Peterson, C. and Ellis, R. (1991) Digital fluoroscopy and the vacuum phenomenon. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 208–211

Breig, A. (1964) Dehnungsverschiebungen von Dura und Rückenmark im Spinalkanal. *Fortschritte in der Neurologie und Psychiatrie*, **32,** 195

Brena, S. F., Wolf, S. L., Chapman, S. L. and Hammonds, W. D. (1980) Chronic back pain: electromyographic, motion and behavioral assessment following sympathetic nerve blocks and placebos. *Pain*, **8,** 1

British Medical Journal (1960) Editorial: Children's Headache. 19.5.1960, p. 1154

Broadhurst, N. A. (1995) Pelvis dysfunction. *Manuelle Medizin*, **33,** 144–146

Brocher, J. E. W. (1966) *Die Wirbeisäulenleiden und ihre Differentialdiagnose*, 4th edn. Stuttgart: Thieme

Brodeur, R. (1995) The audible release associated with joint manipulation: review of the literature. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 155–164

Brodin, H. (1979) Principles of examination and treatment in manual medicine. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, **11,** 181

Brodin, H. (1982) Inhibition-facilitation technique for lumbar pain. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 95

Brodin, H. (1985) Cervical spine and mobilisation. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 18

Brückmann, W. (1956) Osteochondrose der Halwirbelsäle und Koronarinfarkt. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **81,** 1740

Brügger, A. (1960, 1962) Uber vertebrale radikuläre und pseudoradikuläre Syndrome. *Acta Rheumatologica*, Documenta Geigy, No. 18, No. 19

Brügger, A. (1977) *Die Erkrankungen des Bewegungsapparates und seines Nervensystems.* Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Brügger, A. (1984) Neurologische und morphologische Grundlagen der sogenannten rheumatischen Schmerzen – ein Beitrag zum Verstlädnis der Funktionskrankheiten. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungs system*, p. 56. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Brügger, A. (1986) Was sind Funktionskrankheiten? Was ist Rheuma? *Funktionskrankheiten des Bewegungsapparates*, **1,** 7

Brügger, A. (1986) Reflektorische arthromuskuläre Arbeit des Organismus gegen die krumme Körperhaltung. *Funktionskrankheiten des Bewegungsapparates*, **1,** 27

Brügger, A. (1986) Die Funktionskrankheiten des Bewegungsapparates. *Funktionskrankheiten des Bewegungsapparates*, **1,** 69

Brunström, A. A. (1962) *Clinical Kinesiology*. Philadelphia: F. A. Davis

Buchmann, J. (1980) Motorische Entwicklung und Wirbelsäulenfunktionsstörung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 37

Buchmann, J. and Bülow, B. (1983) Funktionelle Kopfgelenksstörungen bei Neugeborenen im Zusammenhang mit Lagereaktionsverhalten und Tonusassymetrie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 59

Buchmann, J. and Bülow, B. (1989) *Asymmetrische frühkindliche Kopfgelenksbeweglichkeit.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo: Springer

Buerger, A. A. (1977) Clinical trials of manipulation therapy. In *Approaches to the Validation of Manipulative Therapy*, p. 313. Eds Buerger, A. A. and Tobis, J. S. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas

Buerger, A. A. (1980) A controlled trial of rotational manipulation in low back pain. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 17

Buetti-Bäuml, C. (1954) *Funktionelle Röntgendiagnostik der Halswirbelsäule*. Stuttgart: Thieme

Bullock-Saxton, J. E., Janda, V. and Bullock-Saxton, V. E. (1993) Reflex activation of gluteal muscles in walking: an approach to restore muscle function from patients with low back pain. *Spine*, **18,** 704–708

Bullock-Saxton, J. E., Janda, V. and Bullock-Saxton, M. L. (1994) The influence of ankle sprain injury on muscle activation during hip extension. *Journal of Sports Medicine*, **15,** 330–34

Buran, I. and Novák, J. (1984) Der Psychische Faktor bei schmerzhaften vertebragenen Syndromen, seine klinische und elektromyographischen Erscheinungsformen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 5.

Burn, L. and Paterson, J. K. (1990) Basic case analysis. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 64. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Burn, L. and Paterson, J. K. (1990) *Musculoskeletal Medicine. The Spine*, Dordrecht. Boston. London: Kluwer Academic Publishers

Burns, R. A. (1995) A new look at Erb's palsy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17**, 29–30.

Burton, C. V. (1981) Conservative management of low back pain. *Postgraduate Medicine*, **70,** 168

Burton, K. A. (1988) A comparative trial of forearm strap and topical anti-inflammatory as adjuncts to manipulative therapy in tennis elbow. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **3,** 141

Bush, K., Cowan, N., Katz, D. E. and Goshen, P. (1993) The natural history of sciatica associated with disc pathology. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **15,** 31–37

Bush, K., Ranjana, Ch., Hiller, S., Penny, J. (1997) The pathomorphologic changes that accompany the resolution of cervical radiculopathy. A prospective study with repeat magnetic resonance imaging. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **19,** 35–42

Busquet, L. (1986) *Ostéopathie Cranienne*. Paris: Maloine

Caillet, R. (1993) *Pain Mechanisms and Management*. Philadelpha: F. A. Davies Company

Caillet, R. (1994) *Low Back Pain Syndrome*. (Edition 5). Philadelphia: F. A. Davies Company

Cameron, G. (1995) Steroid arthropathy: myth or reality? *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 51–55

Campbell, E. J. M., Agostoni, A. and Newsom Davis, J. (1970) *The Respiratory Muscles. Mechanics and Neural Control*. London: Lloyd-Luke

Carmichael, J. P. (1987) Inter- and intra-examiner reliability of palpation for sacroiliac joint dysfunction. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **10,** 164

Carmody, E., Buckey, P. and Hutchinson, M. (1993) Basilar artery occlusion following chiropractic cervical manipulation. *Irish Medical Journal*, **80,** 259–260

Cassidy, J. D. (1996) The Quebec task force on whiplash-associated disorders: Implications for clinical management and future directions for research. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 5–9

Cassidy, J. D., Kirkaldy-Willis, W. H. and McGregor, M. (1985) Spinal manipulation for the treatment of chronic low back pain and leg pain: an observational study. In *Empirical Approaches to the Validation of Spinal Manipulation*, p. 119. Eds Buerger, A. A. and Greenman, P. E. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas

Cassidy, J. D., Lopez, A. A. *et al.* (1992) The immediate effect of manipulation versus mobilization on pain and range of motion in the cervical spine. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 570–575

Cassidy, J. D., Thiel, H. W. and Kirkaldy-Willis, W. H. (1993) Side posture manipulation for lumbar intervertebral disc herniation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 96–103

Caviezel, H. (1974) Entwicklung der theoretischen Grundlagen der manuellen Medizin. *Schweizer Rundschau für Medizin (Praxis)*, **63,** 829

Černý, R. (1948) Autodermografie bolesti a čití. (Autodermography of pain and sensibility.) *Sbornik lékařský*, **50,** 315

Chaitow, L. (1991) *Palpatory Literacy*. Bath: Thorstons

Chang Hsian Tung (1979) Article in *Chinese Medical Journal*, cited in: The chemistry of acupuncture. *Scientific American*, **241** (1), 69

Cherkin, D. C., Deyo, R. A. *et al.* (1995) Physician views about training low back pain. *Spine*, **20,** 9–10

Cholewicki, J. (1993) The mechanical role of ligaments in lifting. A review article. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **15,** 39–48

Cholewicki, J., Panjabi, M. M. and Khachataryan, A. (1997) Stabilizing function of the trunk flexo-extensor muscles around neutral posture. *Spine*, **22,** 2207–2212

Chrást, B. and Korbicka, J. (1962) Die Beeinflussung der Strömungsverhältnisse in der Arteria vertebralis durch verschiedene Kopf – und Halsstellungen. *Deutsche Zeitschrift für Nervenheilkunde*, **183,** 426

Christiensen, H. W., Nielsen, N. (1988) The reliability of measuring active and passive cervical range of motion: an observer-blinded and randomized repeated-measures design. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **21,** 341–347

Christiansen, H. W., Nielsen, N. (1998) Natural variation of cervical range of motion: a one-way repeated-measuring design. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **21,** 383–387

Čihák, R. (1970) Variations of lumbosacral joints and their morphogenesis. *Acta Universitatis Carolinae Medica*, **16,** 145

Čihák, R. (1981) Die Morphologie und Entwicklung der Wirbelbogengelenke. In *Die Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, Vol 87, p. 13. Ed. Junghanns, H. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Clarke, E. and Robinson, P. (1956) Cervical myelopathy: a complication of cervical spondylosis. *Brain*, **79,** 483–510

Clement, D. B., Taunton, J. E. and Smart, G. W. (1990) Achilles tendinitis and peritendinitis: etiology and treatment. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **12,** 45

Clifford, T., Lauritzen, M., Bakke, M., Olesen, J. and Møller, E. (1982) Electromyography of pericranial muscles during treatment of spontaneous common migraine attacks. *Pain*, **14,** 137

Coenen, W. (1996) Manualmedzinische Diagnostik und Therapie bei Säuglingen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 108–113

Coenen, W. (1996) Die sensomotorische Integrationsstörung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 141–145

Colachis, S. C., Worden, R. E., Bochtal, C. O. and Strohm, B.R. (1963) Movement of the sacroiliac joint in the adult male: a preliminary report. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **44,** 490

Conesa, S. H. (1993) The diagnostic value of articular signs in lumbar disc herniation. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **15,** 27–30

Coté, P., Kreitz, B. G., Cassidy, J. D. and Thiel, H. (1996) The validity of the extension-rotation test as a clinical screening procedure before neck manipulation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 159–164

Coulter, I. (1996) Manipulation and mobilization of the cervical spine: the results of a literature survey and consensus panel. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 113–124

Coyer, A. B. and Curwen, I. H. (1955) Low back pain treated by manipulation. A controlled trial. *British Medical Journal*, March, 705–707

Cramer, A. (1958) Funktionelle Merkmale der Wirbelsäulenstatik. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, Vol. 5, p. 84. Ed. Biedermann, F. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Cramer, A. (1965) Iliosakralmechanik. *Asklepios*, **6,** 261

Cramer, A., Döring, J. and Gutmann, G. (1990) *Geschichte der Manuellen Medizin*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo, Hong Kong: Springer

Crisco, J. J. and Panjabi, M. M. (1991) The intersegmental and multisegmental muscles of the lumbar spine. A biomechanical model comparing lateral stabilizing potential. *Spine*, **16,** 793–799

Curl, D. (ed.) (1994) *Chiropractic Approach to Head Pain*, Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Croft, A. C. (1993) Cervical acceleration-deceleration trauma. A reappraisal of physiological and biomechanical events. *Journal of Neuro Muscular Sciences*, **1,** 45–51

Croft, C. C. (1996) Low speed rear impact collision: in search of an injury threshold. *Journal of Musculoskeletal pain*, **4**(4), 39–46

Currie, S. (1981) Inflammatory myopathies. Part I. Polymyositis and related disorders. In *Disorders Of Voluntary Muscle.*, 4th edn, p. 525. Ed. Walton, J. Edinburgh: Churchill-Livingstone

Cyriax, J. (1977) *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine*, Vol. 1. London: Cassell

Cyriax, J. (1978) *Textbook of Orthopaedic Medicine*, Vol. 2. London: Baillière

Cyriax, J. and Cyriax, P. J. (1983) *Illustrated Manual of Orthopaedic Medicine*. London: Butterworth

Cyriax, J. and Schiötz, E. H. (1975) *Manipulation Past and Present*. London: Heinemann

Dabbs, V. and Lauretti, A. L. C. (1995) A risk assessment of cervical manipulation vs. NSAIDs for treatment of neck pain. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 530–536

Dalseth, I. (1974) Anatomic studies of the osseous craniovertebral joints. *Manuelle Medizin*, **12,** 130

D'Ambroglio, K. J. and Roth, G. B. (1997) *Positional Release Therapy*. St Louis: Mosby

Dan, N. G. and Sacassan, P. A. (1983) Serious complications of lumbar spine manipulations. *Medical Journal of Australia*, **10,** 672–673.

Daněk, V. (1989) Haemodynamic disorders within the vertebrobasilar arterial system following extreme positions of the head. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **4,** 127

Danenberg, H. J. (1992) Subtle gait malfunction and chronic musculoskeletal pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 18–26

Danz, J. (1982) Gelenkspielbefunde an der Hand bei Patienten mit Rheumatoid-Arthritis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 70

Davies, D. G., Fernando, C. A. and Motta, A. (1993) Journal of the Neuro-Muscular-Skeletal System, **1,** 126–132

Davies, C. (1985) Osteopathic manipulation resulting in damage to the spinal cord. *British Medical Journal*, **291,** 1540–1541

Decher, H. (1969) *Die zervikalen Syndrome in der Hals-Nasen-Ohren-heilkunde*. Stuttgart: Thieme

Decher, H. (1976) Morbus Meniere und zervikale Syndrome. *Archives of Oto-Rhino-Laryngology*, **212,** 369

DeFranca, R. G. (1996) *Pelvic Locomotor Dysfunction. A Clinical Approach*. Gaithersburg, Aspen

Delitto, A., Erhard, R. E. and Bowling, R. W. (1995) A treatment-based classification approach to low back syndrome: identifying and staging patients for conservative treatment. *Physical Therapy*, **75,** 470–489

Déjérine, J. (1901) Sémiologie du système nerveux. *Pathologie générale 5*, p. 359. Paris: Bouchard

Dejung, B. (1985) Iliosakralgelenksblockierung – eine Verlaufsstudie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **23,** 109–115

Dejung, B. (1987) Die Verspannung des M. iliacus als Ursache lumbosakraler Schmerzen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 73

Dejung, B. (1987) Verspannung des M. Serratus anterior als Ursache interscapulärer Schmerzen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 97

Derbolowski, U. (1956) Beckenmechanik-chiropraktisch gesehen. *Hippokrates*, **27,** 310

Deursen, van, L. L. J. M. and Patijn, L. (1993) Die Wertigkeit einiger klinischen Funktionstests des Iliosakralgelenkes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 43–46

Deyo, R. A. (1998) Low back pain. *Scientific American*, **279**(2), 28–33

Diakow, H. P., Gadsby, T. A., Gadsby, J. B. *et al.* (1991) Back pain during pregnancy and labor. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **14,** 116–118.

DiFabio, R. P. (1995) Efficacy of comprehensive rehabilitation program and back school for patients with low back pain in meta-analysis. *Physical Therapy*, **75,** 865–878

Doerr, M. and Thoden, U. (1988) Zervikal ausgelöste Augenbewegungen. In: Die Sonderstellung des Kopfgelenkbereichs Ed. Wolff, H. D. p. 83–92, Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo: Springer

Dolto, B. J. (1976) *Le Corps entre les Mains*. Paris: Hermann

Doran, D. M. L. and Newell, D. J. (1975) Manipulation in treatment of low back pain: a multicentre study. *British Medical Journal*, 2, 161

Dorman, T. A. (1991) Treatment for spinal pain arising in ligaments – using prolotherapy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **13,** 13–19

Dorman, T. A. (1992) Storage and release of elastic energy in the pelvis: dysfunction, diagnosis and treatment. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 54–62

Dorman, T. A. (1994) Pelvic mechanics and dysfunction. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 45–48

Dorman, T. A. (1994) Failure of self-bracing of the sacroiliac joints: the slipping clutch syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 49–51

Dorman, T. A., Buchmiller, J. D. *et al.* (1993) Energy efficiency during walking. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **15,** 64–67

Dorman, T. A., Jeng, S. and Fisher, N. (1995) Energy efficiency during human walking before and after prototherapy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 24–26

Dove, C. I. (1982) The occipito-atlanto-axial complex. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 11

Downing, C. H. (1935) *Osteopathic Principles in Disease*. San Francisco: Orozko

Drechsler, B. (1970) Spinale Muskelsteuerung und Wurzelkompression. In *Manuelle Medizin und ihre wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 92. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Dreifuss, P., Michaelson, M. and Horn, M. U. A. (1995) Manipulation under joint anaesthesia – analgesia: a treatment approach for low back pain of synovial joint origin. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 537–546

Dreifuss, P., Michaelsen, M., Pauza, K., McLarty, J., Bogduk, N. (1996) The value of medical history and physical examination on diagnosing sacroiliac joint pain. *Spine*, **21,** 2594–2602

Duckworth, J. W. A. (1970) The anatomy and movements of the sacroiliac joints. In *Manuelle Medizin und ihre wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 56. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Dul, J., Snijders, C. J. and Timmerman, P. (1982) Bewegungen und Kräfte im oberen Kopfgelenk beim Vorbeugen der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 51

Ďurjanová, J. (1985) Objektivizácia účinku manipulácie a postizometrickej relaxácie kvantitatívnou termografiou (Objectivization of the effect of manipulation and post-izometric relaxation by quantitative thermography). *Bratislavské lekarské listy*, **38,** 87–93

Duus, P., Kahlau, G. and Krücke, W. (1951) Allgemeinbetrachtungen über die Einengung der Foramina intervertebralia. *Langenbecks Archiv und Deutsche Zeitschrift für Chirurgie*, **268,** 341

Dvořák, J. (1982) Manuelle Medizin in den USA im Jahre 1981. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 1

Dvořák, J. (1988) Rotationsinstabilität der oberen Halswirbelsäule. In *Neuroorthopädie 4*, p. 37. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Liebig, K. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Dvořák, J. (1989) Soft tissue injury to the cervical spine. New possibilities of diagnosis with computed tomography. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **4,** 17

Dvořák, J. (1991) Inappropriate indication and contraindication of manual therapy. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 85–88

Dvořák, J., Aebi, M., Bsumgsattner, H. and Panjabi, M. M. (1991) Functional CT scans for diagnosis of atlanto-axial rotatory fixation. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 201–204

Dvořák, J. and Orelli, F. (1985) How dangerous is manipulation to the cervical spine? Case report and results of survey. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 1

Dvořák, J., Dvořák, V. and Schneider, W. (1984) *Manual Medicine*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Dworkin, S. F. (1996) Longitudinal course of behavioural and physical findings in temporomandibular disorders. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4,** 135–144

Ebbetts, J. (1971) Manipulation of the foot. *Physiotherapy*, 194

Ebbetts, J. (1975) Manipulation in treatment of low back pain. *British Medical Journal*, **2,** 393

Eddie, G. (1995) A series of 43 patients complaining of shoulder pain who responded to treatment of the first rib. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 62–54

Eder, M. (1984) Indikationen und Erfolgsaussichten der Manualtherapie lumbaler Syndrome. In *Neuroorthopaädie 2, Lendenwirbelsäulenerkrankungen mit Beteiligung des Nervesystems*, p. 454. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B., Liebig, K. and Schirmer, M. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Eder, M. and Tilscher, H. (1988) *Chirotherapie*. Stuttgart, Hippokrates

Edinger, A. and Biedermann, F. (1957) Kurzes Bein, schiefes Becken. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **86,** 754

Edmeals, J. (1978) Headache and head pains associated with diseases of the cervical spine. *Medical Clinics of North America*, **62,** 533

Egan, D., Cole, J., Twomey, L. (1996) The standing forward flexion test: an inaccurate determinant of sacroiliac joint dysfunction. *Physiotherapy*, **82,** 236–242

Eliot, D. J. (1996) Electromyography of levator scapulae: new findings allow tests of a head stabilization model. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 19–25

Ellestad, S. M., Nagle, R. V., Boesler, D. R. and Kilmore, M. A. (1990). Elektromyographische und Hautwiderstandsreaktionen auf die osteopathische manipulative Behandlung des Kreuzschmerzes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28,** 7

Ellis, R. and Swain, I. (1990) Frozen wrist: the contribution of thermography. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 314. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Emminger, E. (1967) Die Anatomie und Pathologie des blockierten Wirbelgelenks. Therapie über das Nervensystem, vol. 7, *Chirotherapie-Manuelle Therapie*, p. 117. Ed. Gross, D. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Endresen, E. H. (1995) Pelvic pain and low back pain in pregnant women – an epidemiological study. *Scandinavian Journal of Rheumatology*, **24,** 135–141

Epstein, B. S., Epstein, J. A. and Lavina, L. (1964) The effect of anatomic variation in lumbar vertebrae and spinal canal on cauda equina and nerve root syndromes. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **91,** 1055

Erdmann, H. (1956) Die Verspannung des Wirbelsockels im Beckenring. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 1, p. 51. Ed. Junghanns, H. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Erdmann, H. (1960) Zur Statik des symmetrischen Assimilationsbeckens. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 15, p. 103. Ed. Junghanns, H. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Erdmann, H. (1965) Vergleichend anatomische Untersuchungen zum Verständnis der Statik und Dynamik von Becken und Lendenwirbelsäule bei verschiedenen Beckentypen. *Asklepios*, **6,** 1

Erkrath, F. A. and Strauch, W. (1968) Kreuzschmerzen und Leistungsminderung bei weiblichen Beschäftigten. *Deutsches Gesundheitswesen*, **23,** 1125

Evans, D. P., Burke, M. S., Lloyd, K. N., Roberts, E. E. and Roberts, G. M. (1978) Lumbar spinal manipulation on trial. Part I – clinical assessment. *Rheumatology and Rehabilitation*, **17,** 46

Evjenth, O. and Hamberg, J. (1981) *Muskeldehnung*. Zug, Schweiz: Remed

Fahlström, G. (1978) On specific mobility 0–C2 and specific treatment of the cervical spine. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16,** 92

Falkenau, H. A. (1977) Pathogenese und Chirotherapie des pharyngoösophagealen zervikalen Syndroms. *Laryngologie, Rhinologie, Otologie*, **56,** 466

Farell, J. P. and Twomey, L. T. (1982) Acute low back pain. Comparison of two conservative treatment approaches. *Medical Journal of Australia*, **1,** 160

Farfan, H. F. (1973) *Mechanical Disorders of the Low Back*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger

Farfan, H. F. (1980) The scientific bases of manipulative procedures. In *Low Back Pain*, p. 159. Ed. Grahame, R. Clinics in Rheumatic Diseases. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders

Farfan, H. F. (1996) *The Sciatic Syndrome*. Thorofare, NJ: SLACK Incorporated

Fast, A. *et al.* (1986) Vertebral artery damage complicating spinal manipulation. *Spine*, **12,** 840–842

Feinstein, B., Longton, J. N. K, Jameson, R. M. and Schiller, F. (1954) Experiments on pain referred from deep somatic structures. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **36A,** 981

Feld, M. (1954) Subluxations et entorse sousoccipitales. Leurs syndrome fonctionel consécutif aux traumatismes craniens. *Semaine des Hôpitaux*, **30,** 1952

Figar, Š. (1970) Objektivierung der Reflextherapiewirking auf Grund der Gefässreaktivitätsregistratur. In *Manuelle Medizin und ihre wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 89. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Figar, Š. and Krausová, L. (1975) Measurement of degree of resistance in vertebral
ology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia. Suppl. 10–11, p. 60. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Fineman, S. F., Borelli, F. J., Rubinstein, B. M., Epstein, H. and Jacobson, H. G. (1963) The cervical spine. Transformation of the normal lordotic pattern into a linear pattern in neutral posture. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **45A,** 1179

Fischer, A. A. (1986) Pressure tolerance over muscles and bones in normal subjects. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **67,** 406–409

Fischer, A. A. (1987) Clinical use of tissue compliance meter for documentation of soft tissue pathology. *Pain*, **3,** 23–30

Fischer, A. A. (1988) Documentation of myofascial trigger points. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **69,** 286–291

Fischer, A. A. (1990) Application of pressure algometry in manual Medicine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 145

Fischer, A. A. (1998) Algometry in diagnosis of musculoskeletal pain and evaluation of treatment outcome: an update. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **6,** 5–32

Fischer, A. A. and Chang, C. (1981) EMG evidence of paraspinal muscle spasm during sleep in patients with low back pain. *Pain, Suppl.* **1,** 225

Fisk, J. W. (1977) *The Practical Guide to Management of the Painful Neck and Back; Diagnosis, Manipulation, Exercises, Prevention*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas

Fisk, J. W. (1987) The low back problem. The 1982 Mennell–Travell distinguished lecture. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 32

Fitz-Ritson, D. (1991) Assessment of cervicogenic vertigo. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **14,** 192–198

Ford, F. R. and Clark, D. (1956) Thrombosis of the basilar artery with softening in the cerebellum and brain stem due to manipulation of the neck. *Bulletin of the Johns Hopkins Hospital*, **1,** 57

Foreman, A. H. and Croft A. C. (1995) *Whiplash Injury of the Cervical Spne: Acceleration and Deceleration Trauma*, 2nd edn. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Forestier, J. and Lagier, R. (1971) Hyperostoses vertébrales ankylosantes. *Médicine et Hygiène*, **29,** 668

Forgošsova, A., Smolenová, I. and Traubner, P. (1991) Použitie postizometrickej relaxácie v terapil vertebrobazialnej insuficiencie ve starobe (The application of postisometric relaxation in vertebro-basilar insufficiency in old age). *Rehabilitácia*, **29,** 198–204

Fossgreen, J. (1990) Segmental hyperesthesia and tenderness of the back in pain conditions. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research Vol. 17*, p. 241. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Fossgreen, J. (1991) Complications in manual medicine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 83–84

Fox, E. J. and Melzack, R. (1976) Transcutaneous electrical stimulation and acupuncture: comparison of treatment for low back pain. *Pain*, **2,** 141

Franca, G. G. (1992) Proximal tibio-fibular joint dysfunction and chronic knee and low back pain. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 382–387

Franca, G. G. and Levine, L. J. (1991) The quadratus lumborum and low back pain. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **14,** 142–149

Frank, G. (1971) Der Lagerungsschwindel und seine diagnostische Bedeutung. *Deutsches Gesundheitswesen*, **26,** 2122

Frankshtein, S. I. (1951) *Reflexi Patologitsheski Izmyenyenyck Organov*. (Reflex changes in visceral disease.) Moscow: Medgiz

Frederickson, J. M., Schwarz, D. and Kornhuber, H. H. (1976) Convergence and interaction of vestibular and deep somatic afferents upon neurons in the vestibular nuclei of the cat. *Acta Otolaryngologica (Stockholm)*, **61,** 169

Fredin, Y., Elert, J., Britschgi, N. *et al.* (1997) A decreased ability to relax between repetitive muscle contractions in patients with chronic symptoms after whiplash trauma of the neck. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **5,** 55–70

Friberg, O. (1987) Lumbar instability: a dynamic approach by traction-compression radiography. *Spine*, **12,** 119–129

Fricton, J. R. (1993) Myofascial pain. Clinical characteristics and diagnostic criteria. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **1,** 37–39

Fried, K. (1966) Die zervikale juvenile Osteochondrose. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **105,** 69

Frisch, A., Ed. (1985) *Manuelle Medizin heute*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Frisch, H. (1973) Die theoretischen Grundlagen der Manuellen Medizin. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **111,** 573

Frisch, H. Ed. (1985) *Manuelle Medizin heute*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Frisch, H. (1983) *Programmierte Untersuchung des Bewegungsapparates*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Frisch, H. (1996) *Progarmmierte Therapie am Bewegungsapparat*. Berlin: Springer

Fritsch, C. and Jeangros, P. (1994) Die Dehnung der neuromeningealen Strukuren bei Adhäsionen nach lumbalen Diskusoperationen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 169–172

Frost, F. A., Jesse, B. and Siggaard-Anderssen, J. (1980) A controlled double blind comparison of Mevipacain injection versus saline injection for myofascial pain. *Lancet*, **ii,** 499

Frühwirth, J., Lackner, R. and Höllert, G. (1992) Postoperative manuelle Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **30,** 35–37

Fryette, H. H. (1954) *Principles of Osteopathic Technique*. Carmel: Academy of Applied Osteopathy

Frykholm, R. (1969) Die zervikalen Bandscheibenschaden. In: *Handbuch der Neurochirurgie*, vol. VII/I, p. 73. Eds Olivecrona, H. and Tonnis, W. Heidelberg: Springer

Frymoyer, J. W. (1991) Epidemiology of spinal disease. In: Mayer, T. G., Mooney, V., Gatchell, R. J. Eds *Contemporary Conservative Care of Painful Spine Disorders*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger

Frymoyer, J. W., Pope, M. H. and Rosen, J. (1980) Epidemiologic studies of low back pain. *Spine*, **5,** 419

Fullenlove, T. M. and Justin Williams, A. (1957) Comparative Roentgen findings in symptomatic and asymptomatic backs. *Radiology*, **68,** 572

Gagey, P. M., Baron, J. B., Lespargot, J. and Poli, J. P. (1973) Variations de l'activité tonique posturale et activité des muscles oculocéphalogyres en cathédrostatisme. *Aggressologie*, **6(14)B,** 87

Gainsbury, J. M. (1985) High velocity thrust and pathophysiology of segmental dysfunction. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd edn, p. 87. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill-Livingstone

Gaizler, G. (1965) Die Beurteilung der Ruhehaltung der Halswirbelsäule – eine erledigte Frage? *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntenstrahlen*, **103,** 566

Gaizler, G. (1970) Eidogram. Neue, die Gravitationsrichtung berücksichtigende radiologische Messmethode der Wirbelsäule. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **107,** 197

Gaizler, G. (1973) Die Aufrichtungs – und Erschlaffungsprobe. *Der Radiologe*, **13,** 247

Gaizler, G. and Madarász, J. (1979) Funktionelle Röntgendiagnostik der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 82

Gallinaro, P. and Caretsegna, M. (1983) Three cases of lumbar disc rupture and one of cauda equina associated with spinal manipulation. *Lancet*, **8321,** 41

Garzillo, M. J. P. and Garzillo, T. A. P. (1994) Does obesity cause low back pain? *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **17,** 601–604

Gatcheva, J., Boykilev, N., Damyanova, J. and Marinkov, M. (1986) Der vertebrale Faktor in der Pathogenese eines erhöhten Augendrucks und dessen Beeinflussung durch physikalische und manuelle Therapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 105

Gatterman, M. I. (1995) *Foundations of Chiropractic Subluxation*, pp. 91–92. St Louis: Mosby

Gay, J. R. and Abbott, K. H. (1953) Common whiplash injuries of the neck. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **152,** 1698

Gaymans, F (1971) Die Messung der Körperrotation und ihre Bedeutung für die Diagnose und Therapie vertebragener Störungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **9,** 31

Gaymans, F. (1980) Die Bedeutung der Atemtypen für Mobilisation der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 96

Gaymans, F. and Lewit, K. (1975) Mobilisation techniques using pressure (pull) and muscular facilitation and inhibition. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System. Rehabilitácia Supplementum*, 10–11, p. 47. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Geerinckx, P. (1979) Vorlaufphänomen der Rippen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 76

Geiger, Th. and Gross, D. (Eds) (1967) *Chirotherapie, Manuelle Therapie. Therapie über das Nervensystem*, vol. 7. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Geiger, W. (1952) Zur zervikalen Migräne. *Deutsche Medizinsche Wochenschrift*, **77,** 198

Geiser, M. (1972) Rückenuntersuchungen in einer Infanterie-Rekrutenschule. *Schweizer Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **102,** 1301

Gelb, H., Ed. (1977) *Clinical Management of Head, Neck and TMJ Pain and Dysfunction*. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders

Gelb, H. and Bernstein, I. (1983) Clinical evaluation of 2000 patients with temporomandibular joint syndromes. *Journal of Prosthetic Dentistry*, **49,** 234

Gemmell, H. A. and Jacobson, B. H. (1990) Incidence of sacroiliac joint dysfunction and low back pain in fit college students. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 63

Gerstenbrand, F., Tilscher, H. and Berger, M. (1980) Radikuläre und pseudoradikuläre Symptome der mittleren und unteren Halswirbelsäule. In *Nacken-Schulter-Armsyndrom, Schmerzstudien 3*, p. 82. Eds Kocher, R., Gross, D. and Kaeser, H. E. Stuttgart and New York: G. Fischer

Getzendanner, S. and Johnson, K. B. (1988) Special communication – permanent injunction order against AMA. 2. Statement from AMA's General Council. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **259,** 82–83

Ghia, J. N., Mao, W., Toomey, T. C. and Gregg, J. M. (1976) Acupuncture and chronic pain mechanisms. *Pain*, **2,** 285

Gibbons, P. (1997) Coupled motion: relationship to joint assessment. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **19,** 66–71

Giles, L. G. F. (1986) Lumbosacral and cervical joint inclusions. *Manual Medicine*, **2,** 89

Giles, L. G. F. (1989) *Anatomical Basis of Low Back Pain*. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Sydney: Williams and Wilkins

Giles, L. G. F. (1994) A histological investigation of human lower lumbar intervertebral canal (foramen) dimensions. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **17,** 1–14

Giles, L. G. F. and Kaveri, M. J. P. (1991) Lumbosacral intervertebral disc degeneration revisited: a radiological and histological correlation. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 62–66

Gitelman, R. (1980) A chiropractic approach to biomechanical disorders of the lumbar spine. In *Modern Developments in Principles and Practice of Chiropractic*, Ed. Haldemann, S. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts

Gläser, G. and Dalicho, A. W. (1962) *Segmentmassage*. Leipzig: Thieme

Glover, J. R., Morris, J. G. and Khosla, T. (1974) Back pain: a randomized clinical trial of rotational manipulation of the trunk. *British Journal of Industrial Medicine*, **31,** 59

Goddard, N. J., Stabler, J. and Albert, J. S. (1990) Atlantoaxial rotatory fixation and fracture of the clavicle. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **72 (B),** 72–75

Good, A. B. (1979) Spinal joint blocking. *British Osteopathic Journal*, **11,** 4

Goodridge, J. P. (1981) Muscle energy technique: definition, explanation, methods of procedure. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **81,** 249

Gordon, I. B. (1973) O znatshenii shejnovo osteochondrosa v praktike terapevta kardiologa. (Importance of cervical osteochondrosis in cardiological practice.) *Novokuznetsk: Osteochondroz pozvonotshnika*, **1,** 213

Gorman, R. F. (1978) Cardiac arrest after cervical spine mobilisation. *Medical Journal of Australia*, **2,** 169

Graber-Duvernay, J. (1972) Coxarthroses mineurs et réactions ostéophytiques. *Rheumatologie*, **24,** 123

Gracovetsky, S. (1988) *The Spinal Engine*. Wien, New York: Springer

Gracovetsky, S. and Farfan, H. (1986) The optimum spine. *Spine*, **11,** 543–573

Grahame, R. (1980) Clinical trials in low back pain. In *Low Back Pain. Clinics in Rheumatic Diseases*, vol.6, p. 143. Ed. Grahame, R. London and Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders

Granata, G. L. and Agarwal, G. G. (1995) The influence of trunk muscle coactivity on dynamic spinal loads. *Spine*, **20,** 913–919

Granges, G. and Littlejohn, G. (1993) Prevalence of myofascial pain syndrome in fibromyalgia syndrome and regional pain syndrome. A comparative study. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **1,** 19–35

Grant, R. Ed. (1988) Physical Therapy of the Cervical and Thoracic Spine. In *Clinics in Physical Therapy*, vol. 17, New York, Edinburgh, London, Melbourne: Churchill Livingstone

Green, D. (1959) Vascular accidents in the brain stem associated with neck manipulation. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **170,** 522–524

Greenman, P. E. (1978) Manipulative therapy in relation to total health care. In *The Neurobiologic Mechanisms in Manipulative Therapy*, p. 43. Ed. Korr, I. M. New York and London: Plenum Press

Greenman, P. E. (1979) Verkürzungsausgleich – Nutz und Unnutz. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 333. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Bühl: Konkordia GmbH für Druck und Verlag

Greenman, P. E. (1979) Manuelle Therapie am Brustkorb. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 17

Greenman, P. E. (1984) Wirbelbewegung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 13

Greenman, P. E. (1984) Eingeschränkte Wirbelbewegung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 15

Greenman, P. E. (1984) Schichtweise Palpation. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 46

Greenman, P. E., Ed. (1984) *Concept and Mechanisms of Neuromuscular Function*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Greenman, P. E. (1986) Innominate shear dysfunction. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 114

Greenman, P. E. (1989) *Principles of Manual Medicine*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Greenman, P. E. (1990) Clinical aspects of sacroiliac function in walking. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 125

Greenman, P. E. (1991) Principles of manipulation of the cervical spine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 106–113

Greenman, P. E. (1991) Grundlagen der myofaszialen Entspannungstechnik. *Manuelle Medizin*, **229,** 67–71

Greenman, P. E., Adams, T., Behm, J. and Smith, M. C. (1990). Physiological correlates of myofascial disorders. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 131

Greenman, P. E. and Tait, B. (1988) Structural diagnosis in chronic low back pain. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **3,** 114

Gregg, G. (1974) The commonest lumbar disc L3. *British Sports Medicine*, **8,** 69–73

Greiner, G. F., Conraux, C. and Thiebaut, M. D. (1967) Le nystagmus d'origine cervical. *Revue Neurologique*, **117,** 677

Grieve, G. P. (1976) The sacroiliac joint. *Physiotherapy*, 62

Grieve, G. P. (1978) *Mobilisation of the Spine*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone

Grieve, G. P. (1981) *Common Vertebral Joint Problems*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone

Groeneveld, H. B. (1976) *Metrische Erfassung und Definition von Rückenform. Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 66. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Groh, H. (1972) Wirbelsäule und Leistungssport. *Selecta*, **14,** 324

Gross, D. (1972) *Therapeutische Lokalanästhesie*. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Gross, D. (1979) Sympathalgien des Nacken-Schulter-Arm-Bereiches. *Münchner Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **121,** 1167

Gross, D. (1982) Contralateral local anaesthesia in the treatment of phantom limb and stump pain. *Pain*, **13,** 313

Gross, D. and Kobsa, K (1981) Motor coordination – polymyographic functional testing of the support and locomotor system. *Folia rheumatologica, Documenta Geigy*, pp. 1–8. Basel: Ciba-Geigy Ltd

Grossiord, A. (1966) Les accidents neurologiques des manipulations cervicales. *Annales de Médicine Physique*, **9,** 283

Guechev, G. and Guechev, A. (1994) Clinical and electromyographical changes in neurological deficit of patients with lumbosacral radiculopathy undergoing traction therapy. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 80–83

Gunn, C. C. and Mildbrandt, W. E. (1976) Tennis elbow and the cervical spine. *Canadian Medical Association Journal*, **114,** 803

Gunn, C. C., Ditchburn, F. G., King, M. H. and Renwick, G. (1976) Acupuncture loci: a proposal for their classification according to known neural structures. *American Journal of Chinese Medicine*, **4,** 183

Gurfinkel, V. S., Koc, Ya. M. and Shik, M. L. (1965) *Regulaciya Pozi Tsheloveka*. (Control of posture in man.) Moscow: Nauka

Gustavson, R. (1981) *Trainingstherapie*. Stuttgart and New York: Thieme

Gutmann, G. (1955) Schädeltrauma und Kopfgelenke. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **80,** 1503

Gutmann, G. (1956) Einführung in die statischfunktionelle Röntgendiagnostik der Wirbelsäule unter besondrer Berücksichtigung der Kopfgelenke und Halswirbelsäule. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. I, p. 70. Ed. Junghanns, H. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Gutmann, G. (1960) Die Wirbelblockierung und ihr röntgenologischer Nachweis. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, **15,** 83

Gutmann, G. (1963) Das cervico-diencephale Syndrom mit synkopaler Tendenz und seine Behandlung. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, **26,** 112

Gutmann, G. (1965) Zur Frage der konstruktionsgerechten Beanspruchung von Lendenwirbelsäule und Becken beim Menschen. *Asklepios*, **6,** 263

Gutmann, G. (1965) Das schmerzhaft gehemmte und das schmerhaft gelockerte Kreuz. *Asklepios*, **6,** 305

Gutmann, G. (1968) Schulkopfschmerz und Kopfhaltung. Ein Beitrag zur Pathogenese des Anteflexions-Kopfschmerzes und zur Mechanik der Kopfgelenke. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **105,** 497

Gutmann, G. (1970) X-ray diagnosis of spinal dysfunction. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8,** 73

Gutmann, G. (1970) Klinisch-röntgenolotische Untersuchungen zur Statik der Wirbelsäule. In *Manuelle Medizin und ihre wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 109. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Verlag für Physikalische Medizin

Gutmann, G. (1975) Die pathogenetische Aktualitäts-Diagnostik. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia. Suppl.* 10–11, p. 15. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Gutmann, G. (1979) The subforaminal stenosis headache. *Acta Neurochirurgica*, **50,** 201

Gutmann, G. (1981) Die funktionsanalytische Röntgendiagnostik der Halswirbelsäule und der Kopfgelenke. In *Funktionelle Pathologie und Klinik der Wirbelsäule*, vol. 1. *Die Halswirbelsäule*, Teil 1. Ed. Gutmann, G. Stuttgart and New York: G. Fischer

Gutmann, G. (1983) Verletzungen der Arteria vertebralis durch manuelle Therapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 2

Gutmann, G., Ed. (1985) *Arteria vertebralis. Traumatologie und funktionelle Pathologie*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Gutmann, G. (1988) Der vertebragene Kopfschmerz. Ein Überblick zur Pathogenese, Diagnostik und Therapie. In *Kopfschmerzen*, p. 64. Eds Tischer, H., Wessely, P. *et al.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Gutmann, G. and Biedermann, H (1984) Allgemeine funktionelle Pathologie und klinische Syndrome. In *Funktionelle Pathologie und Klinik der Wirbelsäule Vol. 1, die Halswirbelsaule Teil* 2. Ed. Gutmann, G. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Gutmann, G. and Tiwisina, T. (1959) Zum Problem der Irritation der Arteria vertebralis. *Hippokrates*, **30,** 545

Gutmann, G. and Véle, F. (1978) *Das aufrechte Stehen.* Westdeutscher Verlag, Forschungsberichte des Landes Nordrhein-Westfahlen No. 2796, Fachgruppe Medizin

Gutmann, G. and Wolff, H. D. (1959) Die Wirbelsäule als volkswirtschaftlicher Faktor. *Hippokrates*, **30,** 207

Gutzeit, K. (1951) *Wirbelsäule als Krankbeitsfaktor. Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **76,** 112

Gutzeit, K. (1953) *Wirbelsäule und innere Krankheiten. Münchner Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **100,** 47

Gutzeit, K. (1956) Anamuese und Klinik der vertebragen Erkraukungen. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 1, p. 22. Ed. Junghanns, H. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Gutzeit, K. (1981) Der vertebrale Faktor im Krankheitsgeschehen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 66

Haas, M., Panzer, D., Peterson, D. and Raphael, R. (1995) Short term responsiveness of manual thoracic end play assessment to spinal manipulation: a randomized controlled trial of construct validity. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 582–589

Haas, M., Nyiendo, J. *et al.* (1992) Lumbar motion trends and correlation with low back pain. Part I and II. A roentgenological evaluation of quantitative segment motion in lateral bending. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 145–158 and 224–234

Haas, M. and Peterson, D. (1992) A roentgenological evaluation of the relationship between segmental motion and malalignment in lateral bending. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 350–360

Haas, M., Raphael, R., Panzer, D. and Peterson, D. (1995) Reliability of manual end-play palpation of the thoracic spine. *Chiropractic Technique*, **7,** 120–124

Hackett, G. S. (1956) *Joint Ligament Relaxation Treated by Fibro-osseous Proliferation*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas

Hadler, N. M., Curtis, P., Gillings, D. B. and Stinnett, S. (1990) Der Nutzen von Manipulationen als zusätzliche Therapie bei akuten Lumbalgien: eine gruppenkontrollierte Studie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28,** 2

Hadley, L. A. (1957) The uncovertebral articulations and cervical foramen encroachment. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **39A,** 911

Hagbarth, K. E. and Hägglund, J. W. (1980) Thixotropic behaviour of human finger flexor muscles with accompanying changes in spindle and reflex responses to stretch. *Journal of Physiology*, **168,** 323–342

Haldemann, S. (1980) *Modern Developments in the Principles and Practice of Chiropractic*. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts

Haldemann, S. (1984) Manipulation and Massage for the Relief of Pain. *Textbook of Pain.* Wall, P. D. and Melzack, R. Eds. pp. 942–951. London: Churchill Livingstone

Haldemann, S. (1990) Presidential address. North American Spine Society: Failure of pathological model to predict back pain. *Spine*, **15,** 718–724

Haldemann, S. Ed. (1992) *Principles and Practice of Chiropractice.* East Norwalk, CT: Appleton and Lange

Haldemann, S. and Rubinstein, S. M. (1993) The precipitation or aggravation of musculoskeletal pain in patients receiving spinal manipulative therapy. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 6–10

Hamberg, J. and Evjenth, O. (1979) Untersuchung und Behandlung der Hypermobilität an der Lendenwirbelsäule. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 187. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff. H. D. Bühl: Konkordia GmbH für Druck und Verlag

Hammer, W. I. (1991) *Functional Soft Tissue Examination and Treatment by Manual Methods.* The Extremities. Gaithersburg, Maryland: Aspen Publishers

Hanák, L., Morávek, V. and Schröder, R. (1970) Elektromyografie v předoperační diagnostice un bederních diskopatií. (Electromyography in preoperational diagnosis of the nerve root in disc lesions.) *Československá Neurologie*, **33,** 6

Hanraets, P. R. M. G. (1959) *The Degenerative Back and its Differential Diagnosis*. London, New York, Amsterdam: Elsevier

Hansen, K. and Schliack, H. (1962) *Segmentale Innervation, ihre Bedeutung für Klinik und Praxis*. Stuttgart: Thieme

Hargrave-Wilson, W. and Sherrey, J. H. (1966) Cervical spondylosis and vertigo. *Lancet*, **ii,** 1262

Harrison, D. E., Harrison, D. D., Troyanovich, D. C. (1997) The sacroiliac joint. A review of anatomy and biomechanics with clinical implications. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 607–617

Hartman, L. S. (1983) *Handbook of Osteopathic Technique*. Headley Wood: N.M.K. Publishers

Harzer, K. and Töndury, G. (1968) Zum Verhalten der Arteria vertebralis in der alternden Halswirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **104,** 687

Hasner, E., Schalimzek, M. and Snorasson, E. (1952) Roentgenological examination of the function of the lumbar spine. *Acta Radiologica*, **37,** 141

Hausamann, E. (1970) Grenzfälle zwischen Chirurgie und manueller Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8,** 49

Hausamann, E. (1971) Hüftschmerz und Iliosakralgelenk. *Manuelle Medizin*, **9,** 73

Hautant, H. (1927) L'étude clinique de l'examen fonctionel de l'appareil vestibulaire. *Revue Neurologique*, **1,** 909

Hawk, C., Long, C. and Azad, A. (1997) Chiropractic care for women with chronic pelvic pain: a prospective study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 73–79

Head, H. (1893, 1894) On disturbances of sensation with especial reference to the pain of visceral disease. *Brain*, **16,** 1; **17,** 339

Heidsieck, C. H. (1990) Der Kreuzschmerz und das Sakroiliakalgelenk in der Schwangerschaft. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28,** 59

Heilig, D. (1981) The thrust technique. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **81,** 244

Heinz, G. J. and Zavala D. C. (1977) Slipping rib syndrome. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **237,** 794

Heithoff, K. B. (1981) High-resolution computed tomography of the lumbar spine. *Postgraduate Medicine*, **70,** 193

Hellpapp, W. (1959) Zur Geschichte und Entwicklung manipulativer Heilmethoden. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, **13,** 69

Hellsten, W. (1969) Epikondyläre Schmerzen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7,** 59

Hemborg, B., Moritz, U. and Holmström E. (1985) Lumbar spinal support and weight lifter's belt. Effect on intra-abdominal and intra-thoracic pressure during lifting. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 86

Henriksson, K. G. and Bentsson, A. (1990) Muscular changes in fibromyalgia and their significance in diagnosis. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy*, vol. 17, p. 259. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Henry, M. J., Grimes, H. A. and Lane, J. W. (1967) Intervertebral disc calcification in childhood. *Radiology*, **89,** 81

Hensell, V. (1976) Neurologische Schäden nach Repositionsmassnahmen an der Wirbelsäule. *Medizinische Welt*, **27,** 656

Hensge, R. (1984) Intermittierende vertebrobasiläre Insuffizienz. Fahrradergometrie als Provokationstest. In: *Manuelle Therapie, Tagungsbericht,* 2. gemeinsame Arbeitstagung der Sektion Manuelle Therapie in der Gesellschaft für Physiotherapie der DDR mit dem Wisseschaftsbereich Sportmedizin der Pädagogischen Hochschule "Karl Liebknecht" 5–8 Sept. Eds. Buchmann, J., Badtke, G. and Sachse, J., pp. 196–199, Potsdam

Hermachová, H. (1995) Dysfunkee svalů pánevního dna. (Muscular dysfunction of the pelvic diaphragm.) *Rehabilitacee a Fyzikálni Lékařství*, **2,** 32–34

Herrschmann, H. (1976) Ein Beitrag zur Behandlung des Sudeck-Syndroms. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28,** 143

Hertel, R., Ballmer, F. T., Gerber, C. (1997) Lag sign in the diagnosis of rotator cuff rupture. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **19,** 73–76

Herzog, W., Read, L. J., Conway, P. H. W., Shaw, L. D. and McEwen, M. C. (1989) Reliability of motion palpation procedures to detect sacroiliac joint fixation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12,** 86

Herzog, W., Nigg, B. M. and Read L. J. (1988) Quantifying the effects of spinal manipulation on gait using patients with low back pain. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **11,** 151

Hettinger, T. (1983) *Isometrisches Muskeltraining*, 5th edn. Stuttgart and New York: Thieme

Hinz, B. and Erdmann, H. (1967) Zur manuellen Untersuchung der Halswirbelsäule in der Gutachterpraxis. *Zeitschrift für Orthopadie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **104,** 28

Hinzmann, P. and Sachse, J. (1988) Funktionelle Asymmetrie in der Beweglichkeit der oberen Extremität. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **40,** 77–85

Hirsch, C. (1959) Studies on the pathology of low back pain. *Journal of Joint and Bone Surgery*, **41B,** 237

Hirschberg, E. G., Fatt, I. and Brown, E. D. (1986) Measurement of skin mobility in the upper back. *Skandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, **18,** 77–85

Hirschberg, G. G., Williams, K. A. and Byrd, J. (1992) Diagnosis and treatment of iliocostal friction syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 35–39

Hirschfeld, P. (1962) Die konservative Behandlung des lumbalen Bandscheibenvorfalls nach der Methode von Cyriax. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **87,** 299

Hirschkoff, S. (1966) La palpation dynamique. *Rheumatologie*, **18,** 47

Hoag, J. M., Cole, W. V. and Bradford, S. G. (1969) *Osteopathic Medicine*. New York: McGraw-Hill

Hockaday, J. M. and Whitty, C. W. M. (1967) Patterns of referred pain in the normal subject. *Brain*, **90,** 481

Hodges, P. W. and Richardson, C. A. (1996) Inefficient muscular stabilisation of the lumbar spine associated with low back pain. A motor control evaluation of the transversus abdominis. *Spine*, **21,** 2640–2650

Hoehler, F. K., Tobis, J. S. and Buerger, A. A. (1981) Spinal manipulation for low back pain. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **245,** 1835

Hohl, M. and Baker, H. R. (1964) The atlanto-axial joint. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **46A,** 1739–1752

Hohl, M., Baker, H. R. and Hills, B. (1964) Normal motion of the upper portion of the cervical spine. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **46A,** 1777–1779

Hong, C. Z. (1994) Conservations and recommendations regarding myofascial trigger point injection. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **2,** 29–59

Hong, C. Z. (1998) Algometry in evaluation of trigger points and referred pain. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Medicine*, **6,** 47–59

Hong, C. Z., Chen, S. M., Chen, J. T., Chen, J. J. *et al.* (1996) Histological findings of responsive loci in a myofascial trigger spot of rabbit skeletal muscle from where localized twitch responses could be elicited. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **78,** 962

Hong, C. Z., Chen, Y. C., Pon, C. H. and Yu, J. (1993) Immediate effect of various physical medicine modalities on pain threshold of an active myofascial trigger-point. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **1,** 37–53

Hong, C. Z., Chen, Y. N., Twehous, D. and Hong, D. H. (1996) Pressure threshold for referred pain by compression on the trigger point and adjacent areas. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(3), 61–79

Hong, C. Z., Kuan, T. S., Chen, J. T. and Chen, S. M. (1997) Referred pain elicited by palpation and by needling of myofascial trigger points: a comparison. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **78,** 957–960

Hong, C. Z. and Simons, D. G. (1993) Responses to treatment for pectoralis minor myofascial pain syndrome after whiplash. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **1,** 89–131

Howald, H. (1984) Morphologische und funktionelle Veränderungen der Muskelfasern durch Training. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 86

Howe, J. F., Loeser, J. D. and Calvin, W. H. (1977) Mechanosensitivity of dorsal root ganglia and chronically injured axons: a physiological basis for radicular pain of nerve root compression. *Pain*, **3,** 25

Howell, J. F., Allen, T. W. and Kappler, R. E. (1975) The influence of osteopathic manipulative therapy in the management of patients with chronic obstructive lung disease. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **74,** 757

Hsieh, C. J., Phillips, R. D., Adams, A. H. and Pope, M. H. (1992) Functional outcomes of low back pain: comparison of four treatment groups in a randomized controlled trial. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 4–9

Hsieh, C. J. and Pringle, R. K. (1994) Range of motion of the lumbar spine required for four activities of daily living. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **17,** 353–358

Hubbard, D. R. (1996) Chronic recurrent muscle pain: pathophysiology and treatment, and review of pharmacological studies. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4,** (1/2), 123–144.

Hubbard, D. R. and Berkoff, G. M. (1993) Muscular trigger points show spontaneous needle activity. *Spine*, **18,** 1802–1805

Huber, E. H., Ginzel, H. and Tilscher, H. (1977) Die Belastung des Skeletts von Kindern und Jugendlichen durch Ausübung verschiedener Sportarten. *Pädiatrie und Pädologie*, **12,** 272

Hubka, M. J., Phelan, S. P., Delaney, P. M. and Robertson, C. D.. (1997) Rotary manipulation for cervical radioculopathy: observations on the importance of the direction of the thrust. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 622–627

Hughes, B. Management of cervical disc syndrome utilizing manipulation under anesthesia. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 174–181

Hughes, E. L. and Cooper, C. E. (1956) Some observation on headache and eye pain in a group of schoolchildren. *British Medical Journal*, p. 1138

Huguenin, F. (1976) Das Iliosakralgelenk. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 61

Huguenin, F. (1984) Der intrakanalikuläre Bandapparat des zerviko-okzi-pitalen Überganges. Eine klinische und diagnostische Studie seiner Funktion und Verletzungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 25

Huguenin, F. (1988) Die Epikondylalgien in der manuellen Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 73

Huguenin, F. (1993) *Médicine Orthopodique, Médicine Manuelle, Diagnostic.* Paris, Milan, Barcelona, Bonn: Masson.

Huguenin, F. and Hopf, A. (1993) Die dynamische Untersuchung der Subokzipitalregion (Kopfgelenke) mit der Methode der Magnetresonanz. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 82–84

Hülse, M. (1981) Die Gleichgewichtsstörungen bei der funktionellen Kopfgelenksstörung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 92

Hülse, M. (1983) *Die zervikalen Gleichgewichtsstörungen*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Hülse, M. (1992) Die zervikale Dysphonie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **30,** 66–71

Hülse, M. (1994) Die zervikale Hörstörung. HNO, **42,** 604–613

Hult, J. (1954a) The Munkfors Investigation. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*, Suppl. 16

Hult, J. (1954b) Cervical, dorsal and lumbar spinal syndromes. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*, Suppl. 17

Hult, L. (1972) Frequency of symptoms for different age groups and professions. In *Cervical Pain*, Eds Hirsch, C. and Zotterman, Y. Oxford: Pergamon Press

Huneke, F. (1947) *Krankheit und Heilung anders gesehen.* Köln: Staufen

Huneke, W. (1953) *Impletholtherapie.* Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Hurwitz, E. L., Aker, P. L. *et al.* (1996) Manipulation and mobilization of the cervical spine: a systematic review of the literature. *Spine*, **21,** 1746–1760

Husin, M. A. (1997) *Work Related Upper Limb Disorders.* Recognition and Management. Oxford: Butterworth-Heinemann

Hvidim, H. (1971) The influence of chiropractic treatment on rotatory mobility of the cervical spine – a kinesiometric and statistical study. *Annals of the Swiss Chiropractic Association*, 31–44

Ibatullin, I. A., Zaiceva, R. L. and Chudnovskiy, N. A. (1987) Stroyenie i gistotopografia meniskoidnykh struktur atlantozatylochogo i atlantoosevych sustavov (Structure and histotopography of the meniscoids of the atlantooccipital and atlantoaxial joints). *Archiv anatomii, gistologii i embriologii*, **92,** 30

Iljajeva, S. M. (1994) Radonbäder und manuelle Therapie in der Behandlung von Patienten nach kraniozervikalen Verletzzungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 189–195

Illi, F. (1954) *Wirbelsäule, Becken und Chiropraxis.* Ulm: Haug

Iselin, M. (1977) L'influence de la colonne vertébrale sur l'épidondylite. *Therapeutische Umschau*, **34,** 88–91

Ivanichev, G. A. (1983) Funkcionalnoye sostoyanie sheynikh segmentov spinovo mozga u bolnykh s lokalnoi gypertonii myshc (The state of function of spinal segments of the spinal cord in patients with localised muscular hypertonus.) *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **83,** 646

Ivanichev, G. A. (1985) Diagnosticheskie znacheni spinalno-stvolovogo polisinapticheskogo reflexa i perioda tormozheniya (The diagnostic importance of the spinomesencephalic reflexes and the period of inhibition). *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **85,** 692

Ivanichev, G. A. (1986) Manualnya terapia vtorichnoi kontrakturi mimicheskoi muskulaturi (Manual therapy of secondary contracture of mimic muscles). *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **86**, 357

Ivanichev, G. A. (1992) Elektromiogrficheskaya karakteristika miogennovo trigger punkta (characteristic electromyographical features of trigger points). *Vertebronevrologia*, **2,** 33–37

Ivanichev, G. A. (1997) *Manualnaya Terapia* (Manual Therapy). Kazan: Tipografia Tatarskovo Gazetno-Zhurnalnovo Izdatestva

Ivantchev, G. A. and Lewit, K. (1994) Patogeneza kontraktur mimnckých svalů (Pathogenesis of facial muscle contracture). *Rehabilitace a Fyzikální Lékařství*, **1**, 11–15

Ivanichev, G. A. and Lewit, K. (1994) Manuální terapie kontraktur mimických svalů. (Manual therapy of contracture of facial muscles.) *Rehabilitace a Fyzikální Lékařství*, **2**, 3–6

Ivanichev, G. A. and Popelyanski, A. Ya (1983) Manualnya terapia spondylogennych porazhenii perifericheskoi nervnoi sistemy (Manipulative therapy in vertebrogenic lesions of the peripheral nervous system). *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **83**, 523

Ivanichev, G. A., Ivanicheva, N. A., Yesin, R. G. and Ineva, T. I. (1985) Peremenno-diskretnaya tonometria v ocenke effektivnosti postisomereicheskoi relaxacii lokalnych myschechnykh gypertonusov (Interrupted and changing tonometry for the assessment of efficacy of postisometric relaxation in localised muscular hypertonus). *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **85**, 519

Ivanichev, G. A. (1986) Manualnya terapia vtorichnoi kontrakturi mimicheskoi muskulaturi (Manual therapy of secondary contracture of mimic muscles). *Zhurnal Nevropatologia i Psichiatria*, **86**, 357

Jacob, H. A. C. and Kissling, R. O. (1995) The mobility of the sacroiliac joints in healthy volunteers between 20 and 50 years of age. *Clinical Biomechanics*, **10**, 352

Jacobson, G. and Adler, D. C. (1953) An evaluation of lateral atlantoaxial displacement in injuries of the cervical spine. *Radiology*, **61**, 355

Jacobson, G. and Adler, D. C. (1956) Examination of the atlantoaxial joint following injury with particular emphasis on rotational subluxation. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **76**, 1081

Jacobson, G., Adler, D. C. and Bleecher, A. A. (1959) Pseudosubluxation of the axis in children. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **82**, 472

Jakoubek, B. and Rohliček, V. (1982) Changes of electrodermal properties in the acupuncture points in men and rats. *Physiologia bohemenoslovica*, **31**, 143

Janda, V. (1967) Einige Bemerkungen zur Entwicklung der Motorik in der Pathogenese der Fehlhaltung und vertebragener Störungen. *Physikalische Medizin und Rehabilitation*, **8**, 260

Janda, V. (1967) Die Motorik als reflektorisches Geschehen und ihre Bedeutung in der Pathogenese vertebragener Störungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **5**, 1

Janda, V. (1972) *Vyšetřování Hybnosti*. (Examination of Mobility.) Praha: Avicenum – Zdravotnické nakladatelství

Janda, V. (1972) Co je typický stoj člověka (What is the typical stance in man) *Časopis lékařů českých*, **111**, 748–750

Janda, V. (1975) Muscle and joint correlations. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia*, Suppl. 10–11, p. 154. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Janda, V. (1978) Muscles, central nervous regulation and back problems. In *Neurobiologic Mechanisms in Manipulative Therapy*, p. 27. Ed. Korr, I. M. New York and London: Plenum Press

Janda, V. (1979) Die muskulären Hauptsyndrome bei vertebragenen Beschwerden. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und Praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 61. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Buhl: Konkordia

Janda, V. (1982) Introduction to the functional pathology of the motor system. *Physiotherapy in Sport*, **3**, 39–42

Janda, V. (1983) On the concept of postural muscles and posture. *Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, **29**, 83

Janda, V. (1983) *Muscle Function Testing*. London: Butterworths

Janda, V. (1983) Prevention of injuries and their late sequellae. *Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, **29**, 83–84

Janda, V. (1987) Muscles and motor control in low back pain: assessment and management. In *Physical Therapy and the Low Back*, p. 253. Eds Twomey, L. T. and Taylor, J. R. New York, Edinburgh, London, Melbourne: Churchill Livingstone

Janda, V. (1990) Differential diagnosis of muscle tone in respect of inhibitory techniques. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 196. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Janda, V. and Gilbertová, S. (1991) Přetěžování horních končetin opakovanými pohyby (RST syndrom) (Overstrain in the upper extremities [Repetitive Strain Syndrome]). *Pracovní Lékarství*, **40**, 180–183

Jansen, R. D., Nansel, D. D. and Szlazak, M. J. (1990) Power spectral and microvector frequency analysis of dynamic standing foot force patterns in a normal male subject. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13**, 361

Jarvis, G. (1997) The relationship between upper limb disorders and lower limb neurodynamics. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **19**, 35–42

Jayson, M. I. V. (1970) The problem of backache. *Practitioner, Symposium on The Rheumatic Diseases*, **205**, 615

Jayson, M. I. V. (1981) *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*, 2nd edn. London: Pitman Medical

Jirout, J. (1956) Studies on the dynamics of the spine. *Acta Radiologica*, **46**, 55

Jirout, J. (1957) The normal mobility of the lumbosacral spine. *Acta Radiologica*, **47**, 345

Jirout, J. (1967) Studien der Dynamik der Halswirbelsäule in der frontalen und horizontalen Ebene. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **106**, 236

Jirout, J. (1968) Die Rolle der Axis bei der Seitneigung der Halswirbelsäule und die 'latente Skoliose'. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **109**, 74

Jirout, J. (1969) Röntgendiagnostik der Halswirbelsäule und der Kopfgelenke. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7**, 121

Jirout, J. (1970) Die Kippung der Halswirbelsäule in der sagittalen Ebene der Halswirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **112**, 793

Jirout, J. (1971) Patterns of changes in the cervical spine on lateroflexion. *Neuroradiology*, **2**, 164

Jirout, J. (1972) The effect of mobilisation of the segmental blockade on the sagittal component of the reaction on lateroflexion of the cervical spine. *Neuroradiology*, **3,** 210

Jirout, J. (1972) The influence of postural factors on the dynamics of the cervical spine. *Neuroradiology*, **4,** 239

Jirout, J. (1972) Mobility of the cervical vertebrae in lateral flexion of the head and neck. *Acta Radiologica* (dg), **13,** 919–927

Jirout, J. (1973) Changes in the atlas-axis relations on lateral flexion of the head and neck. *Neuroradiology*, **6,** 215

Jirout, J. (1974) The dynamic dependence of the lower cervical vertebrae on the atlanto-occipital joints. *Neuroradiology*, **7,** 249

Jirout, J. (1976) Bedeutung der Synkinesen fur die Entstehung der Wirbelblockierungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 43

Jirout, J. (1978) Veränderungen der Beweglichkeit der Halswirbel in der frontalen und horizontalen Ebene nach manueller Beseitigung der Segmentblockierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16,** 2

Jirout, J. (1979) The rotational component in the dynamics of the C2–3 spinal segment. *Neuroradiology*, **17,** 177

Jirout, J. (1979) Persistence of synkinetic patterns of the cervical spine. *Neuroradiology*, **18,** 167

Jirout, J. (1980) Einfluss der einseitigen Grosshirndominanz auf das Röntgenbild der Halswirbelsäule. *Radiologe*, **20,** 466

Jirout, J. (1981) Rotational synkinesis of occiput and atlas on lateral inclination. *Neuroradiology*, **21,** 1

Jirout, J. (1981) Die Beziehung zwischen dem klinischen und röntgenologischen Befund der synkinetischen Rotation der Axis bei Seitneigung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 58

Jirout, J. (1983) Röntgenstudien der Dynamik der 1. Rippe. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 20

Jirout, J. (1984) Röntgenologische Symptome der Überlastung. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem* p. 107. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Jirout, J. (1985) Synkinetic contralateral tilting of the atlas and head on lateral inclination. Part I. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 116; Part II: *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 121

Jirout, J. (1985) Comments regarding the diagnosis and treatment of dysfunction of the C2–C3 segment. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 16

Jirout, J. (1986) Significance of the time factor in the dynamics of the cervical spine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 277–293

Jirout, J. (1987) Die segmentale synkinetische sagittale Hypermobilität bei Seitneigung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 71

Jirout, J. (1990) Das Gelenkspiel der Halswirbelsäule. In *Funktionelle Pathologie und Klinik der Wirbelsäule*. Eds Biedermann, H. and Gutmann, G. Vol. I, die Halswibelsäule, Part 3. Stuttgart, New York: Fischer

Jirout, J. (1990) Radiographic signs of the function of the intrinsic muscles of the spine. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p.391. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Raven Press

Jirout, J. (1991) A new approach to testing of long term resistance of the spine to mechanical stress. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **14,** 509–511

Jirout, J. (1991) Effect of variations in mobility in the frontal plane at the occiput-atlas level on the dynamics of the atlas-axis segment during side bending of the head and neck. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 182–184

Jirout, J. (1996) Die Rolle des Kriechens (creep) im Gelenkspiel der Halswirbelsäule. Übersicht des gegenwärtigen Standes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 183–185

Jirout, J. (1997) Über das Wesen der Axisblockierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **35,** 269–271

Johansson, H. P., Sjolander, P. and Sojka, O. (1991) Receptors in the knee joint ligaments and their role in biomechanics of the joint. *Critical Reviews in Biomechanic Engineering*, **18,** 341–368

Johnston, W. L. (1993) Functional technique. In *Rational Manual Therapies*, pp. 335–346. Eds. J. V. Basmajian and Nyberg, R. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

Jones, A. and Wolf, S. L. (1980) Treating chronic low back pain. EMG biofeedback training during movement. *Journal of the American Physical Therapy Association*, **60,** 58

Jones, L. H. (1963) Spontaneous release by positioning. *Clinical Osteopathy: Manipulative Therapy*, September, 128

Jones, L. H. (1981) Foot treatment without hand trauma. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **72,** 481

Jones, L. H. (1981) *Strain and Counterstrain*. Newark, Ohio: The Academy of Osteopathy

Jones, T. R., James, J.E., Adams, J. W., Garcia, J. Walker, S. L. and Ellis, J. P. (1989) Lumbar zygapophyseal joint meniscoids: evidence of their role in chronic intersegmental hypomobility. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12,** 374

Jönsson, M. (1966) Einstellungsuntersuchungen bei Berglehrlingen unter besonderer Berücksichtigung der Wirbelsäule. *Deutsches Gesundheitswesen*, **21,** 1809

Jung, A. and Kehr, P. (1972) Das zerviko-enzephale Syndrom bei Arthrosen und nach Trauma der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10,** 97, 127–133

Jung, A., Kehr, P. and Jung, F. M. (1976) Das posttraumatische Zervikalsyndrom. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 101–105

Junghanns, H. (1930) Spondylolisthesen ohne Spalt im Zwischengelenksstück. *Archiv der Orthopädischen Chirurgie*, **29,** 118

Junghanns, H. (1952) Die funktionelle Röntgenuntersuchung der Halswirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **76,** 591

Junghanns, H. (1955) Ergebnisse der Wirbelsäulenpathologie und ihrer Auswirkung auf Röntgenologie und praktische Medizin. *Die Medizinische*, **15,** 513

Junghanns, H. (1957) Leistungsfähigkeit und Grenzen chiropraktischer Massnahmen. *Deutsches Medizinisches Journal*, **8,** 194

Junghanns, H. (1979) Die Wirbelsäule in der Arbeitsmedizin. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vols 78 and 79. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Kabat, H. (1965) Proprioceptive facilitation in therapeutic exercise. In *Therapeutic Exercise*, 2nd edn, p. 301. Ed. Licht, S. New Haven: E. Licht

Kabátníková, Z. and Kabátník, Z. (1966) Význam chrbtice pri bolestiach hlavy v detskom veku. (The role of the spinal column in children's headache.) *Lékařský Obzor*, **15,** 361

Kalcher, B. (1979) Die Beeinflussung der körperlichen Leistungsfähigkeit durch skelettbedingte Störungen der Atemtechnik. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 134. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Bühl: Konkordia

Kaltenborn, F. M. (1966) *Frigjøring av Ryggraden*. Oslo: F. M. Kaltenborn

Kaltenborn, F. M. (1976) *Manuelle Therapie der Extremitätengelenke*. Oslo: Olaf Norlis Bokhandel

Kamieth, H. (1958) Das Syndrom der Beckenringlockerung. *Die Medizinische*, **25,** 1014

Kamieth, H. (1983) Röntgenbefunde von normalen Bewegungen in den Kopfgelenken. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, Vol. 101. Ed. Schulitz, K. P. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Kane, R. L., Leymaster, C., Olsed, D., Woolley, F. R. and Fisher, F. D. (1974) Manipulating the patient. A comparison of the effectiveness of physician and chiropractor care. *Lancet*, **i,** 1333

Kapandji, I. A. (1974) *The Physiology of Joints*. Edinburgh: Churchill Livingstone

Kappler, R. E. (1981) Postural balance and motor pattern. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **81,** 239/53

Kawchuk, G. N., Herzog, W. and Hasler, F. M. (1992) Forces generated during spinal manipulative therapy of the cervical spine: a pilot study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 275–278

Keating, J. C., Bergmann, Th. F., Jacobs, G. E. *et al.* (1990) Interexaminer reliability of eight evaluative dimensions of lumbar segmental abnormality. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 463

Keegan, J. (1944) Neurosurgical interpretation of dermatome hypalgesia with herniation of lumbar intervertebral disc. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **24,** 236

Keegan, J. (1947) Relations of nerve roots to abnormalities of lumbar and cervical portions of the spine. *Archives of Surgery*, **55,** 246

Kehr, P., Mittau, M., Steib, J. P. and Sengler, W. (1989) Rotationsluxation C1/2 nach chiropraktischer Manipulation bei einer jungen Patientin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **27,** 11

Kellgren, J. H. (1938) Observation of referred pain arising from muscles. *Clinical Science*, **3,** 15

Kellgren, J. H. (1939) On the distribution of pain arising from deep somatic structures with charts of segmental pain areas. *Clinical Science*, **4,** 35

Kelly, M. (1956) Is pain due to pressure on nerves? *Neurology*, **6,** 32

Kelsey, J. L. and White, A. A. (1980) Epidemiology and impact of low back pain. *Spine*, **5,** 133

Kelton, I. and Wright, W. (1949) The mechanism of easy standing in man. *Australian Journal of Experimental Biology and Medical Science*, **27,** 505

Kendall, H. O., Kendall, F. P. and Wadsworth, G. E. (1971) *Muscle Testing and Function*. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Kibler, M. (1958) Das Störungsfeld bei Gelenkerkrankungen und inneren Krankheiten. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Kidd, R. and Nelson, C. (1993) Musculoskeletal dysfunction of the neck in migraine and tension headache. *Headache*, **33,** 566–569

Kim, J. H. and Partridge, L. D. (1969) Observations on types of response to combination of neck, vestibular and muscular stretch signals. *Journal of Neurophysiology*, **32,** 239

Kimberley, P. E. (1980) Bewegung – Bewegungseinschrankung und Anschlag. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 53

Kinalski, R., Kuwick, W. and Pietrzak, D. (1989) The comparison of results of manual therapy versus physiotherapy methods used in treatment of patients with low back pain syndromes. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **4,** 44

Kirkaldy-Willis, W. H., Ed. (1988) *Managing Low Back Pain*, 2nd edn. New York, Edinburgh, London, Melbourne: Churchill-Livingstone

Klasmeier, H. (1961) Bandscheibenprolaps und Konstitutionstyp der Wirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **94,** 479

Klawunde, G. and Zeller, H. J. (1974) Über den Zusammenhang zwischen reversibler Gelenksblockierung an der Wirbelsäule, subjektiven Beschwerden und beruflichen Tätigkeitsmerkmalen. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **26,** 167–175

Klawunde, G. and Zeller, H. J. (1975) Elektromyographische Untersuchungen des M. iliacus (Sagittale Blockierung im lumbo-iliosakralen Bereich). *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **22,** 420

Klawunde, G. and Zeller, H. J. (1979) Klinische, elektromyographische und reflexographische Untersuchungen über den Einfluss von iliolumbosakralen Blockierungen auf die Steuerung zugeordneter Muskelaktivitäten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 74

Klawunde, G. and Zeller, H. J. (1980) Über die Verwendbarkeit verschiedener Parameter der Nervenleitfähigkeit zur Objektivierung manualmedizinischer Befunde und Therapieeffekte. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 56

Klein, K. and Buckley, J. C. (1967) Asymmetries of growth in the pelvis and legs of growing children. *Journal of the Association of Physical and Mental Rehabilitation*, **21,** 40

Kleynhans, A. M. and Terrett, A. G. J. (1985) The prevention of complications from spinal manipulative therapy. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd edn, p. 161. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone

Klougard, N., Leboeuf-Yde, C. and Rasmussen, L. R. (1996) Safety in chiropractic practice. Part I: The occurrence of cerebrovascular accidents after manipulation to the neck in Denmark from 1978–1988. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19**, 371–377

Klougart, N., Leboeuf-Yde, C. M. and Rasmussen, L. R. (1996) Safety in chiropractic practice. Part II. Treatment in the upper neck and the rate of cerebrovascular incidence. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19**, 563–569

Knaus, B. (1998) Manualmedizinische Diagnostik und Therapie bei bewegungsgestörten Kindern, vor allem mit spastischer infantiler Zerebralparese. Krankengymnstik. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapeuten*, **8**, 1342–1345

Knott, M. and Voss, D. E. (1968) *Proprioceptive Neuromuscular Facilitation*, 2nd edn. New York: Harper and Row

Knuttson, E., Skoglund, C. R. and Nachev, E. (1988) Changes in voluntary muscle strength. Somatosensory transmission and skin temperature concommitent with pain relief during autotraction in patients with lumbar and sacral root lesions. *Pain*, **33**, 173–179

Knutsson, F. (1944) The instability associated with disc degeneration in the lumbar spine. *Acta Radiologica*, **25**, 593

Köberle, G. (1975) Arthrologische Störungsmuster bei chronisch-obstruktiven Atemwegserkrankungen. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System. Rehabilitácia.* Suppl. 10–11, p. 96. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Köberle, G. (1976) Neue Aspekte in der Behandlung des akuten Schiefhalses. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28**, 135–138

Koes, B. W., Bouter, L. M. *et al.* (1992) Randomised clinical trial of manipulative therapy and physiotherapy for persistent back and neck complaints. *British Medical Journal*, **304**, 601–605

Kogan, O. G. (1986) Patomekhanicheskie proyavlenia v oporno-dvigatelnom aparte – predmet manualnoi medicini. (Pathomechanisms in the motor system – their implications in manual medicine). In: *Manualnaya Terapia pri Vertebrogennoi Patologil*, pp. 3–8. Eds Savych, V. I., Kogan, O. G. *et al.* Novokuznetsk

Kogan, O. G., Schmidt, I. R., Telstorakov, A. A. *et al.* (1981) *Klassifikacia nevrologicheskikh proyavlenii osteokhondroza pozvonochnika i principy formulirovania diagnoza* (Classification of neurological manifestations of spinal osteochondrosis and the principles of how to formulate a diagnosis). Novokuznetsk: Polygralfkombinat

Kogan, O. G., Schmidt, I. R., Tolstorakov, A. A. *et al.* (1986) Manualnya terapia v nevrologii: lechebnye, organisationye, nauchnye i pedagogischeskie aspekty (Manual therapy in neurology: therapeutic, organisational, scientific and pedagogical aspects). In *Manualnya terapia pri vertebrogennoi patologii*, p. 69. Eds Savinyh, V. I., Kogan, O. G. *et al.* Novokuznetsk: Institute of Postgraduate Medical Education

Kogan, O. G. and Vasilyeva, L. F. (1990) O vertebralnoi staticheskoi sostavlayuschei dvigatelnovo stereotipa (The spinal combined static and motor stereotype). In *Manualnaya terapia v artrovertebronevrologii*, p. 18. Eds Kogan, O. G., Schmidt, I. R. *et al.* Novokuznetsk: Institute of Postgraduate Medical Education

Kogan, O. G., Zaitseva, R. L., Norets, I. P. and Grinberg, E. A. (1990) Stroyenie i gistotopografia meniskoidov krestsevo-podvzdosh-novo sochleneniya (Structure and histotopography of the meniscoids in the sacroiliac joints). In *Manualnaya terapiav artrovertebronevrologii*, p. 31. Eds Kogan, O. G., Schmidt, I. R. *et al.* Novokuznetsk: Institute of Postgraduate Medical Education

Kolář, P. (1996) Význam vývojové kineziologie pro manuální medicínu. (The importance of developmental kinesioilogy for manual medicine). *Rehabilitace a fyzikální Lékařstvi*, **4**, 152–155

Kolář, P. (1996) Diferenciaee svalové funkce z hlediska posturální podstaty. (Differentiation of muscle function with regard to posture). *Medicina Sportiva Bohemica et Slovaca*, **5**, 4

Komendantov, G. L. (1945) Proprioceptivyne reflexi glaza i golovy u krolikov. (Proprioceptive reflexes of the eye and head in rabbits.) *Fiziologičeski Zhurnal*, **31**, 62

Kondzialla, W. (1983) Zervikales Globusgefühl – Ursache und Behandlung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21** 51

Kondzialla, W. (1985) Unklarer Abdominalschmerz: Psoashartspann und seine Behandlung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **23**, 33–37

Konrad, K. and Gerecsner, F. (1990) Manuelle Therapie bei Schwindelpatienten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28**, 62

Korr, I. M. (1948) The emerging concept of the osteopathic lesion. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **47**, 127

Korr, I. M. (1975) Proprioceptors and somatic dysfunction. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **74**, 638

Korr, I. M. (1978) Sustained sympathicotonia as a factor in disease. In *Neurobiologic Mechanisms in Manipulative Therapy*, p. 229. Ed. Korr, I. M. New York and London: Plenum Press

Korr, I. M. and Chase, J. A. (1964) Cutaneous patterns of sympathetic activity in clinical abnormalities of the musculoskeletal system. *Acta Neurovegetativa*, **25**, 589

Korr, I. M., Thomas, P. E. and Wright, H. M. (1955) Symposium of the functional implications of segmental facilitation. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **54**, 1

Korr, I. M., Wright, H. M. and Thomas, P. E. (1962) Effects of experimental myofascial insults on cutaneous patterns of sympathetic activity in man. *Acta Neurovegetativa*, **23**, 331

Korr, I. M., Wilkinson, P. N. and Chornock, F. W. (1967) Axonal delivery of neuroplasmic components to muscle cells. *Science*, **135**, 342

Kos, J. (1968) Contribution à l'étude de l'anatomie de la vascularisation des articulations intervertebrales. *Bulletin de l'Association des Anatomistes*, **53**, 1088

Kos, J. and Wolf, J. (1972) Die 'Menisci' der Zwischenwirbelgelenke und ihre mögliche Rolle bei Wirbelblockierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10**, 105

Kottke, F. J. and Mundale, M. O. (1959) Range of mobility of the cervical spine. *Archives of Physical Medicine*, **40,** 379–382

Koutný, J. (1975) Inzidenz vertebragener Störungen unter Betriesbsangestellten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **13,** 61

Kovázc, A. (1955) Subluxation of the cervical apophyseal joints. *Acta Radiologica*, **43,** 1

Koyacs, F. M., Abraira, V., Pozo, F., Kleinbaum, D. G. *et al.* (1997) Local and remote sustained trigger point therapy for exacerbations of chronic low back pain. A randomized, double-blind, controlled, multicenter trial. *Spine*, **22,** 786–797

Kraeff, T. (1983) Muskuläre Dysbalance bei Menschen im fortgeschrittenen Alter. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 71

Kraeff, T. (1986) Posttraumatische Behandlung der Handgelenke durch manuelle Mobilisation und Kryotherapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 43–46

Krämer, J. (1973) Biomechanische Veranderungen im lumbalen Bewegungssegment. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol.58. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Kraus, H. and Fischer, A. A. (1991) Diagnosis and treatment of myofascial pain. *The Mount Sinai Journal of Medicine*, **58,** 235–239

Kraus, S. L., Ed. (1988) *TMJ Disorders. Management of the Craniomandibular Complex*. New York, Edinburgh, London, Melbourne: Churchill-Livingstone

Krausová, L., Krejčová, H., Novotný, Z., Starý, O., Siroký, A. and Jirout, J. (1968) Otoneurologische Symptomatologie bei dem Cervicocranialsyndrom vor und nach der Manipulationstherapia. *Manuelle Medizin*, **6,** 25–32

Krauss, H. (1980) *Atemtherapie*. Berlin: VEB Verlag Volk und Gesundheit

Krauss, H. (1982) Reflextherapie in der Physiotherapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 85

Krobot, A. (1994) Musculus triceps brachii a oblast jeho proximálního úponu v rámci pohybových funkcí. (The triceps and its proximal attachment point in motor dysfunction). *Rehabilitace a Fyzikální Lékařstvi*, **1,** 22–27

Krueger, R. K. and Okazaki, H. (1980) Vertebro-basilar distribution infarction following cervical manipulation. *Mayo Clinic Proceedings*, **55,** 322

Kuan, T. S., Wu, C. T., Chen, S. M., Chen, J. T. *et al.* (1997) Manipulation of the cervical spine to release pain and tightness caused by myofascial trigger points. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **78,** 1042

Kubis, E (1969) Iliosakralverschiebung und Muskelfunktion im Beckenbereich als Diagnostikum. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7,** 52

Kubis, E. (1970) Manualtherapeutische Erfahrungen am Becken. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8,** 63

Kuchera. W. A. (1997) Glossary of osteopathic terminology. In: *Foundations for Osteopathic Terminology*. Baltimore: Williams & Wilkins

Kügelgen, B. and Hillemacher, A., Eds (1989) *Problem Halswirbelsäule*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo, Hong Kong: Springer

Kumar, S. and Panjabi, M. M. (1995) In vivo axial rotation and neutral zones of the thoracolumbar spine. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*, **8,** 253–263

Kunc, Z., Starý, O. and Šetlík, L. (1955) Výsledky chirurgické léčby výhřezu meziobratlových destiček se zřetelem posuzování pracovní schopnosti. (The result of herniated disc operation with regard to working capacity.) *Časopis lékařů českých*, **94,** 1186

Kunert, W. (1975) *Wirbelsäule und Innere Organe*. Stuttgart: F. Enke

Kusunose, R. S. (1993) Strain and counterstrain. In *Rational Manual Therapies*, pp. 323–334. Eds. J. V. Basmajian and Nyberg, R. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

La Ban, M. M., Meerschaert, J. R. and Taylor, R. S. (1979) Breast pain: a symptom of cervical radiculopathy. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **60,** 315

Lackner, R. (1988) Manuelle Medizin am operierten Patienten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 61

Lackner, R., Kröll, W. and Hinghofer-Szalkay, H. (1988) Manualtherapie bei Singultus. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 117

Lánik, V. (1971) Poznámky ku kinetike a dynamike chrbtice. (Contribution to spinal kinetics and dynamics.) *Acta Chirurgiae Orthopedicae et Traumatologicae čechoslovacae*, **38,** 67–72

Lavezzari, R. (1948) *L'Osteopathie*. Paris: Doin

Leichsenring, F. (1964) Pathologisch-anatomische Befunde in der Halswirbelsäulenregion bei verstorbenen Patienten mit Schädeltrauma. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **89,** 1469–1474

Lentel, G. L., Katzman, L. L. and Walters, M. R. (1992) The relationship between muscle function and ankle stability. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 85–90

Leube, H. and Dicke, E. (1951) *Massage reflektorischer Zonen im Bindegewebe*. Jena: Fischer

Levin, S. M. (1992) The tensegrity system in the pelvis and the hind quarter syndrome. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 82–84

Lewin, P. (1955) *The back and its syndromes*. Philadelphia, Lea & Febiger

Lewis, T. (1942) *Pain*. New York: Macmillan

Lewit, K. (1955) Trakční test. (Traction test.) *Časopis lékařů českých*, **94,** 60–66

Lewit, K. (1959) Migréna a krční páteře. (Cervical spine and migraine.) *Ceskoslovenská Neurologie*, **22,** 61–63

Lewit, K. (1962) Komoce a Krční páteř. (Concussion and the cervical spine.) *Rozhledy v Chirurgii*, **41,** 258

Lewit, K. (1963) Méniersche Krankheit und die Halswirbelsäule. (Ménière's disease and the cervical spine.) *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, **26,** 92

Lewit, K. (1964) Die schmerzhafte Wirbelblockierung als Zeichen eines Spinaltumors. *Hippokrates*, **35,** 843

Lewit, K. (1965) Sakroiliakalverschiebung und Muskelfehlsteuerung. *Asklepios*, **6,** 269

Lewit, K. (1967) Steissbein und Kreuzschmerz. *Manuelle Medizin*, **5,** 93

Lewit, K. (1968) Beitrag zur reversiblen Gelenksblockierung. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **105,** 150

Lewit, K. (1969) Vertebral artery insufficiency and the cervical spine. *British Journal of Geriatric Practice*, **6,** 37

Lewit, K. (1970) Blockierung von Atlas-Axis und Atlas-Okziput in Röntgenbild und Klinik. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **108,** 43

Lewit, K. (1971) Ligament pain and anteflexion headache. *European Neurology*, **5,** 365

Lewit, K. (1972) Funktionsdiagnose als Grundlage der Manuellen Therapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10,** 37

Lewit, K. (1973) X-ray criteria of spinal statics. *Agressologie*, **6(14),** 41

Lewit, K. (1975) Ein Fall von Auffahrunfall. *Manuelle Medizin*, **13,** 71

Lewit, K. (1976) On Dalseth's paper: Anatomic studies of the osseous craniovertebral joints. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 9

Lewit, K. (1977) Problematika a význam funkćních koalgií. (The problem and importance of coxalgia caused by disturbed hip function.) *Časopis Lékařů českých*, **116,** 559

Lewit, K. (1978) Impaired joint function and entrapment syndromes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16,** 45

Lewit, K. (1979) The needle effect in the relief of myofascial pain. *Pain*, **6,** 83

Lewit, K. (1979) 2 Fälle von Rotations-Dislokation zwischen Atlas und Axis. Ihre Behandlung in Narkose. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 84

Lewit, K. (1980) Relation of faulty respiration to posture with clinical implication. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **79,** 525

Lewit, K. (1981) Muskelfazilitations – und Inhibitionstechniken in der Manuellen Medizin, Teil II. Postisometrische Muskelrelaxation. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 12, 40

Lewit, K. (1982) Röntgenologische Kriterien statischer Störungen der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 26

Lewit, K. (1983) Die postisometrische Relaxation in der Diagnose des Scalenus-Syndroms. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 27

Lewit, K. (1984) Muskelfehlsteuerung und Schmerz. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 88. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Lewit, K. (1985) The muscular and articular factor in movement restriction. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **1,** 83

Lewit, K. (1985) Bemerkungen zur Arbeit von J. Bayerl *et al.*, Nebenwirkungen und Kontraindikationen der Manuellen Therapie im Bereich der Halswirbelsäule. *Nervenarzt*, **56,** 194

Lewit, K. (1986) Editorial: Manipulation – reflex therapy and/or restitution of impaired locomotor function. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 99

Lewit, K. (1986) Postisometric relaxation in combination with other methods of muscular facilitation and inhibition. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 101

Lewit, K. (1986) Clinical observation: Muscular pattern in thoracolumbar lesions. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2,** 105

Lewit, K. (1987) Chain reactions in disturbed function of the motor system. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **3,** 27

Lewit, K. (1987) Clinical observation: the diagnosis of sacroiliac movement restriction in ankylosing spondylitis. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **3,** 67

Lewit, K. (1987) Beckenverwringung und Iliosakralblockierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 64

Lewit, K. (1988) Disturbed balance due to lesions of the craniocervical junction. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **3,** 58

Lewit, K. (1985, 1987) Discussion invited: 'The theoretical pathology of acute locked back: a basis for manipulative therapy' by N. Bogduk and G. Jull. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **1,** 78; **3,** 69

Lewit, K. (1989) Verschiebungen im Bereich der Symphyse und der Tubera ischiadica. *Manuelle Medizin*, **29,** 91

Lewit, K. (1990) Management of muscular pain associated with articular dysfunction. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy Vol. 17*, p. 315. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Lewit, K. (1990) Manual Therapy 1989. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 75. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Lewit, K. (1990) Pelvic dysfunction. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 271. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Lewit, K. (1992) Verspannung von Bauch- und Gesässmuskulatur mit Auswirkung auf die Körperstatik. *Manuelle Medizin*, **30,** 75–78

Lewit, K. (1992) An assessment of different treatment techniques in manipulative medicine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 194–197

Lewit, K. (1992) Clinical picture and diagnosis of vertebral artery insufficiency. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 190–193

Lewit, K. (1993) Treatment of myofascial pain and other function disorders. In Veroy, M., Merskey, M. (Eds.), *Progress in Fibromyalgia and Myofascial Pain. Pain Research and Clinical Management*, vol. 6, p. 375–392. Amsterdam, New York, Tokyo: Elsevier

Lewit, K. (1994) Changes in locomotor function, complementary medicine and the general practitioner. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, **87,** 36–39

Lewit, K. (1994) The functional approach. *The Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **16,** 73–74

Lewit, K. (1994) Kraniocervikální spojení nebo pánev? (The craniocervical junction or the pelvis?) *Rehabilitace a fyzikální lékařství*, **2,** 52–56

Lewit, K. (1997) X-ray of trunk rotation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 454–458

Lewit, K. and Abrahamovič, M. (1976) Kopfgelenksblockierungen und chronische Tonsillitis. *Manuelle Medizin* **14,** 106

Lewit, K. and Berger, M. (1983) Zervikales Stönungsmuster bei Schwindelpatienten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 15

Lewit, K. and Gaymans, F. (1980) Muskelfazilitations und Inhibitionstechniken in der Manuellen Medizin, Teil I. Mobilisation. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 102

Lewit, K. and Janda, V. (1963) Entwicklung von Gefügestorungen der Wirbelsäule im Kindesalter und die Grundlagen einer Prävention vertebragener Beschwerden. *Hippokrates*, **34,** 308

Lewit, K. and Kolár, P. (1998) Funktionsstörungen im Bewegungssystem – Verkettungen und Fehlrpgrammierung. Krankengymnastik. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapeuten*, **8,** 1346–1352

Lewit, K. and Krausová, L. (1962) Beitrag zur Flexion der Halswirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **97,** 38

Lewit, K. and Krausová, L. (1963) Messungen von Vorund Rückbeuge in den Kopfgelenken. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **99,** 538

Lewit, K. and Krausová, L. (1967) Mechanismus und Bewegungsausmass in den Kopfgelenken bei passiven Bewegungen. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **103,** 323

Lewit, K. and Kuncová, Z. (1971) Anteflexni bolest hlavy v dětském věku. (Anteflexion headache in children.) *Československá pediatrie*, **26,** 233

Lewit, K. and Liebenson, C. (1993) Palpation – problems and implication. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 586–590

Lewit, K. and Rosina, A. (1995) Manipulation under general anaesthesia for acute subluxation between atlas and axis in three children. *The Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 78–83

Lewit, K. and Rychlíková, E. (1975) Reflex and vertebrogenic disturbances in peptic ulcer. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia*. Suppl. 10–11, p. 116. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava, Obzor

Lewit, K. and Simons, D. G. (1984) Myofascial pain: Relief by post-isometric relaxation. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **65,** 452

Lewit, K., Berger, M., Holzmüller, G., Lechner-Steinleitner, S. (1997) Breathing movements: the synkineses of respiration with looking up and down. *Journal of Muskuloskeletal Pain*, **5,** 57–69

Lewit, K., Knobloch, V. and Faktorová, Z. (1970) Vertebragene Störungen und Entbindungsschmerz. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 79

Licht, S., Ed. (1976) *Massage, Manipulation and Traction.* New York: Robert E. Krieger

Lieb, M. M. (1977) Oral orthopaedics. In *Clinical Management of Head, Neck and TMJ Pain and Dysfunction*, p. 32, Ed. Gelb, H. Philadelphia: W. B. Saunders.

Liebenson, C. S. (1988) Thoracic outlet syndrome. Diagnosis and conservative management. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **11,** 493

Liebenson, C. (1989) Active muscular relaxation techniques, Part I. Basic principles and methods. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12,** 446

Liebenson, C. S. (1990) Active muscular relaxation techniques, Part II, Clinical application. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 2

Liebenson, C. (1996) *Rehabilitation of the spine. A Manual of Active Care Procedures*. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

Lisý, L. (1983) Propriozeptive und exterozeptive Reflexe in den Nackenmuskeln. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 23

Lisý, L. (1996) Poruchy funkce paraverbrálnych svalov a možnosti ich elektrofyiologickej diagnostiky. (Paravertebral muscle dysfunction and its electrophysiological diagnosis.) *Rehabilitace a Fyzikální Lékařstvi*, **4,** 141–144

Littlejohn, G. O. (1995) Key issues in repetitive strain injury. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3,** 25–33

Livingston, M. C. P. (1971) Spinal manipulation causing injury. *Clinical Orthopaedics*, **81,** 82

Lobeck, G. (1982) Zur Wechselwirking zwischen Funktionsstörungen des Bewegungsapparates und Neurose. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 140

Locke, G. R., Gardner, G. I. and Van Epps, E. F. (1986) Atlas-dens interval in children. A survey based on 200 normal cervical spines. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **97,** 135

Logan, H. B. (1950) *Textbook of Logan Basic Methods*. St. Louis, Missouri: Logan, F. & Murray, F. M.

Lohse-Busch, H., Kraemer, R. and Reime, U. (1996) Möglichkeiten der Rehabilitation von zerebralparetisch bedingten Bewegungsstörungen bei Kindern mit den Mitteln der Manuellen Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 116–126

Lord, S. M. and Bogduk, N. (1996) The cervical synovial joints as sources of post-traumatic headache. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 81–94

Lord, S. M., Wallis, B. J. and Bogduk, N. (1994) Third occipital nerve headache: a prevalence study. *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery and Psychiatry*, **57,** 1187–1190

Lorenz, R. and Vogelsang, H.G. (1972) Thrombose der Arteria basilaris nach chiropraktischen Manipulationen an der Halswirbelsäule. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **97,** 36

Lörinz, S. T., Tilscher, H. and Hanna, M. (1988) Lumboischialgie – 10 Jahre danach. Vergleichende Untersuchung von operierten und nicht-operierten Patienten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 55

Loudon, J., Ruhl, M., Field, E. (1997) Cervical spine ability to reproduce head position after whiplash injury. *Spine*, **22,** 865–868

Lovett, R. W. (1905) The mechanism of the normal spine and its relation to scoliosis. *Boston Medical and Surgical Journal*, **13,** 349

Lovett, R. (1907) *Lateral Curvature of the Spine and Round Shoulders*. Philadelphia: Blakiston

McCouch, G. P., Deering, I. D. and Ling, T. H. (1951) Location of receptors for tonic neck reflexes. *Journal of Neurophysiology*, **14,** 191

Macdonald, A. J. R. (1980) Abnormally tender muscle regions and associated painful movements. *Pain*, **8,** 197

Macintosh, J. E. and Bogduk, N. (1990) Basic biomechanics pertinent to the study of the lumbar disc. *Manual Medicine*, **5,** 52

MacKenzie, J. (1921) The theory of disturbed reflexes in production of symptoms of disease. *British Medical Journal*, **1,** 147
McKenzie, R. A. (1981) *The Lumbar Spine – Mechanical Diagnosis and Therapy*. Upper Hutt, New Zealand: Spinal Publications
McKenzie, R. A. (1991) Physical therapy perspective in acute spinal disorders. In Meyer, T. G., Mooney, V. and Gatchell, R. I. (Eds). *Contemporary Conservative Care for Painful Spinal Disorders*, pp. 211–220. Philadelphia, London: Lea and Febiger
Macnab, I. (1964) Acceleration injury of the cervical spine. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **46A,** 1797
Macnab, I. (1972) The mechanism of spondylogenic pain. In *Cervical Pain*, p. 89. Eds Hirsch, C. and Zotterman, Y. Oxford: Pergamon Press
McPortland, J. M., Brodeur, R. R., Hallgren, R. C. (1997) Chronic neck pain, standing balance and suboccipital muscle atrophy. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 24–29
McRae, D. L. (1956) Asymptomatic intervertebral disc protrusion. *Acta Radiologica*, **46,** 9
McRae, D. L. (1960) The significance of abnormalities of the cervical spine. Caldwell lecture 1959. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **84,** 3
Maex, L. (1970) New factors in migraine, motion sickness and equilibrium. A cybernetic study of equilibrium. *Headache*, **10,** 24
Magnus, R. (1924) *Körperstellung*. Berlin: Springer
Magoun, H. I. (1966) *Osteopathy in the Cranial Field*, 2nd edn. Kirksville: Journal Printing Company
Maigne, R. (1957) Le traitement des épicondylites. *Rheumatologie*, **6,** 293
Maigne, R. (1964) L'algie interscapulo-vertébrale, forme fréquente de dorsalgie bénigne. Son origine cervicale. *Annales de Médicine Physicale*, **7,** 1
Maigne, R. (1966) Pubisschmerzen und Tendinitiden der Adduktoren vertebralen Ursprungs. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 109
Maigne, R. (1972) *Orthopedic Medicine*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas
Maigne, R. (1974) Die klinischen Zeichen der geringfügigen intervertebralen Störung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **12,** 102
Maigne, R. (1984) Das Syndrom der Übergangszonen der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 122
Maigne, R. (1996) *Diagnosis and Treatment of Pain of Vertebral Origin. A Manual Medicine Approach*. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins
Maigne, R. and Le Corre, F. (1969) Donnés nouvelles sur le méchanisme des dorsalgies communes de l'adulte. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7,** 73
Mainzer, F. (1960) Diagnostic differentiation of coexisting pseudoanginal root syndrome and angina pectoris. *American Heart Journal*, **59,** 191
Maitland, G. D. (1974) *Vertebral Manipulation*. London: Butterworths
Maitland, G. D. (1985) The importance of adding compression when examining and treating synovial joints. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, p. 109. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone
Malinský, J. (1959) Inervace meziobratlových disků u člověka během ontogenetického vývoje. Histíologie meziobratlových disků (The innervation of the intervertebral disk in man during onthogenesis. Histology of the intervertebral discs). *Acta Universitatis Palackyanae Olomoucensis*, **19,** 69–84
Mallinson, A. I., Longridge, N. S. and Peacock, C. (1996) Dizziness, imbalance, and whiplash. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 105–112
Malmivara, A. and Pokjola R. (1982) Cauda equina syndrome caused by chiropraxis on a patient previously free of lumbar spine symptoms. *Lancet* ii, 986–987
Manga, P., Angus, D. *et al.* (1993) *The Effectiveness and Cost-Effectiveness of Chiropractic Management of Low Back Pain*. University of Ottawa, Canada: Pran Manga and Associates
Manuello, D. M. (1993) Leg length inequality (review of the literature). *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 576–590
Marguery, O. (1988) Hochleistungs-Tennis-Pubalgie und Manuelle Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 100
Markuske, H. (1971) *Untersudhungen zur Statik und Dynamik der kindlichen Halswirbelsäule: Der Aussagewert seitlicher Röntgenaufnahmen. Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 50. Stuttgart: Hippokrates
Markuske, H. (1983) Röntgenologische Halswirbelsäulendiagnostik im Kindesalter. *Psychiatrie, Neurologie und medizinische Psychologie*, **35,** 257
Martin, P. R. (1985) Classification of headache: the need for radical revision. Editorial. *Cephalagia*, **5,** 1–4
Matthiasch, H. (1956) Arbeitshaltung und Bandscheibenbelastung. *Archiv für Orthopädie und Unfalls-Chirurgie*, **48,** 147
Mayoux, R., Girard, P. and Chippat, P. (1952) Les signes objectives dans le syndrome sympathique postérieure de Barré. *Revue Oto-neuro-ophthalmologique*, **24,** 51
Mazin, C. J. and Watson, P. J. (1996) Guarded movement: development of chronicity. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 163
Meade, T. W., Dyer, S., Brawne, W., Townsend, G. and Frank, A. O. (1990) Low back pain of mechanical origin: randomised comparison of chiropractic and hospital outpatient treatment. *British Medical Journal*, **300,** 1431–1437
Med, M. (1972) Articulations of the thoracic vertebrae and their variability. *Folia Morphologica*, **20,** 217
Med, M. (1973) Articulations of the cervical vertebrae and their variability. *Folia Morphologica*, **21,** 324
Med, M. (1982) Prenatal development of lumbar intervertebral articulation. *Folia morphologica*, **30,** 285–290
Meissner, J. (1996) Einflussnahme auf das Verhalten progredienter Skoliosen mit manuellen Techniken. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 148–170

Melzack, R. (1975) Prolonged relief of pain by brief intense transcutaneous somatic stimulation. *Pain*, **1**, 357

Melzack, R. and Wall, P. D. (1965) Pain mechanisms. *Science*, **150**, 971

Melzack, R., Stillwell, D. M. and Fox, E. J. (1977) Trigger points and acupuncture points for pain: correlations and implications. *Pain*, **3**, 3

Memorandum of the German Association of Manual Medicine (1979) Zur Verhütung von Zwischfällen bei gezielter Handriff-Therapie an der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17**, 53

Menegaz, A. and Fasoli, M. (1970) Die Innervation der vertebralen interapophysären Gelenke in verschiedenen Abschnitten der Wirbelsäule. In *Manuelle Medizin und Ihre Wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 69. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Mennell, J. (1952) *The Science and Art of Joint Manipulation*, vol. II. *The Spinal Column*. London: Churchill

Mennell, J. McM. (1964) *Joint Pain*. London: Churchill

Mennell, J. McM. (1979) Manipulation therapy for low back pain. In *Advances in Pain Research and Therapy*. Bonica, J. *et al.* (Eds), Vol. 1, New York: Raven Press

Mense, S. (1988) Nozizepive Mechanismen der oberen Halswirbelsäule. In: *Die Sonderstellung des Kopfgelenkbereichs*, pp. 71–82. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo: Springer

Mense, S. (1990) Physiology of nociception in muscles. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy Vol. 17*, p. 67. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Mense, S. (1991) Considerations concerning the neurobiological basis of muscle pain. *Canadian Journal of Physiology and Pharmacology*, **69**, 610–616

Mense, S. (1996) Biochemical pathogenesis of myofascial pain. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(1/2), 145–163

Mensor, M. D. (1955) Non-operative treatment, including manipulation, for lumbar intervertebral disc syndrome. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **37**, A(5), 925–936

Mensor, M. C. and Duval, G. (1959) Absence of motion at the fourth and fifth lumbar interspace in patients with and without low back pain. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **41A**, 1047

Mesdach, H. (1976) Morphological aspects and biomechanical properties of the vertebroaxial joint (C2–C3). *Acta Morphologica Neerlando Scandinavica*, **14**, 19

Metz, E. G. (1971) Die Manuelle Therapie, ihre Möglichkeiten und Grenzen des Einsatzes in der Sportmedizin. *Sport und Medizin*, **11**, 353

Metz, E. G. (1976) Manuelle Therapie in der inneren Medizin. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28**, 83

Metz, E. G. (1986) *Rücken und Kreuzschmerzen, Bewegungssystem oder Nieren*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Metz, E. G. and Badtke, G. (1980) *Manuelle Therapie. Tagunsbericht, Potsdam 28.1–31.1.1980, Wissenschaftlich-Technisches Zentrum der Pädagogischen Hochschule*. Potsdam: Karl Liebnecht

Metz, E. G., Knäblich, C., Frohling, P. and Lemke, E. (1980) Die Bedeutung vertebragener Funktionsstörungen für den Beschwerdekomplex bei Nephroptose. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **32**, 405

Meyer, T. G., Mooney, V. and Gatchell, R. I. Eds. (1991) *Conservative Care for Painful Spine Disorders*. Philadelphia, London: Lea & Febiger

Meyermann, R. (1982) Möglichkeiten einer Schädigung der Arteria vertebralis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20**, 105

Michels, A. A. (1962) *Iliopsoas*. Springfield: Charles C. Thomas

Mierau, D. and Cassidy, J. D. (1984) Sacroiliac dysfunction and low back pain in school age children. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **7**, 81–84

Mierau, D., Cassidy, J. D., Bowen, V., Dupuis, P. and Noftall, F. (1988) Manipulation and mobilization of the third metacarpophalangeal joint. A quantitative radiographic and range motion study. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **3**, 135

Mildenberger, F. (1979) Indikationen zur Röntgenuntersuchung der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17**, 99

Milne, R. J., Foreman, R. D., Giesler, G. J., Jr and Willis, W. D. (1981) Convergence of cutaneous and pelvic visceral nociceptive inputs onto primate spinothalamic neurons. *Pain*, **11**, 163

Mitchell, F. L. Jr. (1993) Elements of muscle energy technique. In: *Rational Manual Therapies*, Eds Basmajian, J. V. and Nyberg, R., pp. 284–332. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins.

Mitchell, F. L. Jr and Mitchell, P. K. G. (1995) *The Muscle Energy Manual*, vol. 1. East Lansing, Michigan: MET Press

Mitchell, B. S., Humphreys, D. C., O'Sullivan, E. (1998) Attachments of the ligamentum nuchae to cervical posterior dura and the lateral part of the occipital bone. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **21**, 145–148

Mitchell, F. L. Jr, Moran, P. S. and Pruzzo, N. A. (1979) *An Evaluation of Osteopathic Muscle Energy Procedures*. Valley Park: Pruzzo

Mohr, U. (1977) Kopfgelenksblockierungen beim Kleinkind. *Manuelle Medizin*, **15**, 45

Mohr, U. and Schimek, J. J. (1984) Fusionsstörungen des Auges als Folge vertebragener Funktionsstörugnen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22**, 2

Mojžíšová, L. (1988) Rehabilitační léčba některých druhů funkční ženské sterility (Rehabilitation medicine in some types of functional sterility in females). *Praktický Lékař*, **68**, 925

Moldofsky, H. (1990) The contribution of sleep–wake physiology to fibromyalgia. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy Vol. 17*, p. 67. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Montgomery, C. *et al.* (1976) Pre-employment back X-rays. (Review article) *Journal of Occupational Medicine*, **19**

Morris, C. E. (1993) Spinal manipulation under anaesthesia.

An overview. *California Workers Compensation Enquirer*, August, p. 9.
Morris, J. M. (1973) Biomechanics of the spine. *Archives of Surgery*, **107,** 418
Morris, J. M., Lucas, D. B. and Bressler, B. (1961) Role of the trunk in stability of the spine. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **43A,** 327
Morrison, M. C. T. (1975) Manipulation for backache. *Orthopaedics*, **8,** 19
Moser, M. (1974) Zervikalnystagmus und seine diagnostische Bedeutung. *HNO*, **22,** 350
Moser, M. and Simon, H. (1977) Der Cervikalnystagmus als objektiver Befund beim HWS-Syndrom und seine Beeinflussbarkeit durch Manualtherapie. *HNO*, **25,** 265
Moser, M., Conraux, C. and Greiner, G. F. (1972) Der Nystagmus zervikalen Ursprungs und seine statische Bewertung. *Ohrenheilkunde, Laringo-Rhinologie*, **106,** 259
Mottram, S., Comerford, M. (1998) Stability dysfunction and low back pain. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **20,** 13–18
Mühlemann, D. and Zahnd, F. (1993) Die lumbale segmentale Hypermobilität. Eine häufige Ursachee chronischer Rückenschmerzen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 47–54
Müller, D. (1960) Zur Frage der kompensatorischen Hypermobilität bei anatomschem und funktionellen Block der Wirbelsäule. *Radiologia Diagnostica*, **1,** 345
Müller, E. (1963) Commotio čerebri und Halswirbelsäule. *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis*, vol. 26, p. 36. Ed. Schuler, B. Stuttgart: Hippokrates
Mumenthaler, M. (1980) *Der Schulter-Arm-Schmerz*. Bern: Huber
Murphy, D. R. (1995) The sternocleidomastoid muscle: clinical considerations in the causation of pain. *Chiropractic Technique*, **7,** 12–17
Murphy, B. A. and Dawson, N. J. (1995) The assessment of intramuscular discrimination using signal detection theory: its potential contribution to chiropractic. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 572–576
Musiol, A. (1976) Vertebragene Beschwerden bei Bergleuten. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28,** 117
Nachemson, A. (1959) Measurements of intradiscal pressure. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*, **28,** 269
Nachemson, A. (1980) A critical look at conservative treatment of low back pain. In *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*, 2nd edn, p. 453. Ed. Jayson, M. I. V. London: Pitman Medical
Naegeli, O. (1979) *Nervenleiden und Nervenschmerzen*, 3rd edn. Ulm: Haug
Nansel, D. and Szlazak, M. (1995) Somatic dysfunction and the phenomenon of visceral disease simulation: a probable explanation for the apparent effectiveness of somatic therapy in patients presumed to be suffering from visceral disease. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 111–134
Nansel, D. D., Cremata, E., Carlson, J. and Szlazak, M. (1989) Effect of unilateral spinal adjustments on goniometrically-assessed cervical lateral-flexion end-range asymmetries in otherwise asymptomatic subjects. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12,** 220
Nansel, D. D., Peneff, D. G., Cremata, E. and Carlson, J. (1990) Time course consideration for the effects of unilateral lower cervical adjustment with respect to the amelioration of cervical lateral flexion passive end-range asymmetry. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 297
Nansel, D. D., Peneff, A. L., Jansen, R. D. and Cooperstein, R. (1989) Interexaminer concordance in detecting joint-play asymmetries in the cervical spine of otherwise asymptomatic subjects. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12,** 428
Nansel, D., Szlazak, M., and Nilsson, N. (1995) The prevalence of cervicogenic headache in a random population sample of 20–59 year olds. *Spine*, **20,** 1884–1888
Nansel, D. D., Waldorf, A. and Quitoriano, J. (1993) Effect of cervical spinal adjustment on lumbar paraspinal muscle tone: evidence of facilitation of intersegmental tonic neck reflexes. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 91–95
Nash, C. L. and Moe, J. E. (1969) A study of vertebral rotation. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **51A,** 233
Nause, E. (1987) Rationelle Epikonlitisbehandlung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 82
Nelson, M. A. (1973) Manual correction of sciatic scoliosis. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **55B,** 194
Nesit, V. and Horinová, M. (1975) Funktionsstörungen der Wirbelsäule in der ambulanten gynäkologischen Praxis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **13,** 31
Neumann, H. D. (1981) Die manualmedizinische Behandlung des akuten Schiefhalses. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **119,** 693
Neumann, H. D. (1985) Manuelle Diagnostik und Therapie von Blockierungen der Kreuzdarmbeingelenke nach F. Mitchell (Muskelenergietechnik). *Manuelle Medizin*, **23,** 116
Neumann, H. D. (1989) *Manuelle Medizin, eine Einführung in theorie, Diagnostik und Therapie*, 3rd edn. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer
Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D., Eds (1979) Theoretische Fortschritte und Praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin. 6. *Internationaler Kongress der FIMM, Baden-Baden*. Bühl: Konkordia
Niboyet, J. E. H. (1967) *La Pratique de la Médicine Manuelle*. Paris: Maisonneuve
Niemeyer, Th. and Penning, L. (1963) Functional roentgenographic examination in case of cervical spondylolisthesis. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **45A,** 1671
Nilsson, N. (1995) A randomized controlled trial of the effect of spinal manipulation in treatment of cervical headache. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 435–440
Nilsson, N. (1995) The prevalence of cervicogenic headache in a random population sample of 20–50 year olds. *Spine*, **20,** 1886–1888

Nilsson, N., Christensen, H. W. and Hartvigsen, J. (1996) Lasting changes in passive range of motion after spinal manipulation: a secondary analysis. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 165–168

Nilsson, N., Christiensen, H. W., Hartvigsen, J. (1997) The effect of spinal manipulation in the treatment of cervicogenic headache. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 326–330

Nilsson, N., Hartvigsen, J. *et al.* (1996) Normal ranges of passive cervical motion for women and men 20–60 years old. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics* **19,** 306–330

Nordemar, R. and Thorner, C. (1981) Treatment of acute cervical pain – a comparative group study. *Pain*, **10,** 93

Norden, S., Skovron, M. L., Hiebert, R. *et al.* (1997) Early predictor of delayed return to work in patients with low back pain. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **5,** 5–27

Norlander, S., Aste-Norlander, U., Nordgern, B., Sahlstedt, B. (1996) Mobility in the cervico-thoracic motion segment: an indicative factor of musculo-skeletal neck-shoulder pain. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, **28,** 183–192

Norré, M., Stevens, A. and Degeyter, P. (1976) Der Zervikal-Nystagmus und die Gelenksblockierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 45

Novotný, A. and Dvořák, V. (1972) Funktionsstörungen der Wirbelsäule in der Gynäkologischen Praxis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10,** 84

Nwuga, V. B. C. (1982) Relative therapeutic efficacy of vertebral manipulation and conventional treatment for back pain management. *American Journal of Physical Medicine*, **61,** 273–278

Nyberg, R. and Basmajian, J. V. (1993) Rationale for the use of spinal manipulation. In *Rational Manual Therapies*, Eds. Basmajian, J. V. and Nyberg, R., pp. 451–468. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

Obrda, K. and Beránková, M. (1964) Polyelektromyografické sledování poruch stoje u lumbálních diskopatif (Polyeletromyographic examination of disturbances in the standing patient in lumbar disc lesions). *Československá Neurologie*, **27,** 243

Oesch, R. (1995) Die Rolle der Zygapophysealgelenke in der Ätiologie lumbaler Rückenschmerzen mit und ohne Ausstrahlung. Eine Literaturrückschau. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 107–114

Onderka, W. and Müller-Stephan, H. (1973) Die manuelle Extension der Halswirbelsäule. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **25,** 461

Onel, D., Tuzlacu, M., Hidayer, S. and Demir, K. (1990) Computed tomographic investigation of the effect of traction on lumbar disc herniation. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **12,** 6

Osterbauer, P. J., Derickson, K. L., Peles, J. D. *et al.* (1992) Three dimensional head kinematics and clinical outcomes of patients with neck injury treated with spinal manipulative therapy. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 501–511

Osterbauer, P. J., Long, K. *et al.* (1996) Three-dimensional head kinematics and cervical range of motion in the diagnosis of patients with neck trauma. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 231–237

O'Sullivan, P., Twomey, L., Allison, G. *et al.* (1997) Altered patterns of abdominal muscle activation in patients with chronic low back pain. *Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, **43,** 91–97

Palmer, S. G. (1933) *The Subluxation Specific, the Adjusment Specific.* Davenport, Iowa

Pandya, S. K. (1972) Atlantoaxial dislocation (review). *Neurology (Bombay)*, **20,** 13

Panjabi, M. M. (1992) Neutral zone and instability hypothesis. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*, **5,** 390–397

Panjabi, M. M. (1992) The stabilizing system of the spine, Part I. Function, dysfunction, adaptation, and enhancement. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*, **51,** 383–389

Panjabi, M. M. (1992) The stabilizing system of the spine, Part II. Neutral zone and instability hypothesis. *Journal of Spinal Disorders*, **5,** 390–397

Parade, G. W. (1957) Halswirbelsäule und Herz. Die zenikalen Vertrebralsyndrome. Stuttgart: Thieme

Parker, G. P., Tupling, H. and Pryor, D. S. (1987) A controlled trial of cervical manipulation for migraine. *Australian and New Zealand Medical Journal*, **8,** 589

Parow, J. (1953) *Funktionelle Atmungstherapie.* Stuttgart: Thieme

Patijn, J. (1991) Complications in manual medicine: a review of the literature. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 89–92

Patijn, J. and Durinck, J. R. (1991) Effects of manual medicine on absenteeism. *Manual Medicine*, **6,** 49

Patijn, J., Kingma, H. *et al.* (1994). Der Zervikalnystagmus und die Manuelle Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 81–90

Patterson, J. (1976) A model mechanism for spinal segmental facilitation. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **76,** 62

Patterson, J. K. (1987) A survey of musculoskeletal problems in general practice. *Manual Medicine*, **3,** 40

Patterson, M. N. and Steinmetz, J. E. (1986) Long lasting alterations of spinal reflexes. A potential basis for somatic dysfunction. *Manual Medicine*, **2,** 38–43

Penning, L. (1968) *Functional Pathology of the Cervical Spine.* Amsterdam: Excerpta Medica

Penning, L. (1978) Normal movements of the cervical spine. *American Journal of Roentgenology*, **130,** 317

Penning, L. and Töndury, G. (1963) Bau und Funktion der meniskoiden Strukturen in der Halswirbelsäule. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete 98,* **98,** 1–14

Peper, W. (1953) *Technik der Chiropraktik.* Saulgau: Haug

Peper, W. (1978) *Der Chiropraktische Report.* Heidelberg: Haug

Perl, E. R. (1972) Mode of action of nociceptors. In *Cervical Pain*, p. 157. Eds Hirsch, C. and Zottermann, Y. Oxford: Pergamon Press

Phillips, R. B. (1980) The use of X-rays in spinal manipulative therapy. In *Modern Developments in the Principles and Practice of Chiropractic*, p. 189. Ed. Haldemann, S. New York: Appleton-Century-Crofts

Phillips, R. B., Frymoyer, J. W., McPherson, B. V. and Newburg, A. H. (1986) Low back pain – a radiographic enigma. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **9**, 183–187

Pickin, M. (1995) A discussion of whiplash injury to the cervical spine. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17**, 15–23

Piganiol, G. et collaborateurs (1987) *Les Manipulations vertébrales. Bases théoriques, cliniques et biomécaniques.* Dijon: GEMABFC

Piganiol, G., Trouilloud, P., Binnert, D. and Huguenin, F. (1994) Zur dreidimensionalen Rekonstruktion des Funktions-CT der subookzipitalen Region bei segmentaler Funktionsstörung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32**, 162–164

Pinder, H. E. (1970) Über den Beckenschiefstand im Sitzen. *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **17**, 220–229

Piťha, V. and Drobný, M. (1972) Kĺbové a periostálne reflexné zony krčnej chrbtice. (Articular and periosteal reflex zones of the cervical spine.) *Československá Neurologie*, **35**, 113–118

Plaugher, G., Cremata, E. F. and Phillips, R. B. (1991) A retrospective consecutive case analysis of pre-treatment and comparative static radiologic paramenters following chiropractic adjustment. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **14**, 498–506

Plaugher, G., Hendricks, A. H. *et al.* (1993) The reliability of patient positioning for evaluating static radiologic parameters of the human pelvis. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16**, 517–522

Pohl, D. (1974) Die manuelle Mobilisation des Akromioklavikulargelenkes beim Schulter-Arm-Syndrom. *Heilberufe*, **25**, 5

Ponge, T., Cottin, A., Ponge, A., Debet, J., Cioloca, C. and Sigaud, M. (1989) Accident vasculaire vertébrobasilaire apres manipulation du rachis cervical. *Revue du Rheumatisme*, **56**, 545–548

Pope, M. H., Phillips, R. B., Haugh, I. D., Hsieh, D. and Haldemann, S. (1994) A prospective randomized three-week trial of spinal manipulation, massage and corset treatment of subacute low back pain. *Spine*, **19**, 2571–2577

Popelyanski, Ya. Yu. (1966) *Sheyni Osteokhondroz.* (Cervical Osteochondrosis.) Moscow: Medicina

Popelyanski, Ya. Yu. (1974) Vertebralniye sindromi poyasnitshnovo osteokhondrosa. (Vertebrogenic syndromes in lumbar osteochrondrosis.) Izdatelstvo Kazanskovo Universiteta

Popelyanski, Ya. Yu (1983) *Vertebrogennye Zabolevanya Nervnoi Sistemy* (Vertebrogenic Affections of the Nervous System). Ioshkar-Ola: Mariiskoye knizhnoye izdatelstvo

Popelyanski, Ya. Yu. (1992) Nevrozi i osteokhondrozi – samye rozprostranenie multifaktornie bolezni cheloveka. (Neurosis and osteochondrosis – the most frequent diseases in man). *Vertebronevrologia*, **2**, 22–26

Popelysanski, Ya. Yu. and Podolskaya, M. A. (1990) Über zerebrale Faktoren vertebragener Erkrankungen. Die Rolle der Propriozeption und der Wahrscheinlichkeitsprognosierung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28**, 48

Popelyanski Ya. Yu. and Popelyanski, A. Ya. (1984) Lechenie neirodistroficheskikh porazhenil oporno-dvigatelnovo apparata (Treatment of neurodystrophic changes in the locomotor system). *Revmatologia*, **84**, 66–70

Popelyanski, Ya. Yu., Veselovski, V. P. *et al.* (1984) Miofixacia v pato- i sanogeneze poyasnichnovo osteokhondroza (Myofixation in patho- and "sanogenesis" of lumbar osteochondrosis). *Zhurnal Nevrologia i Psichiatria*, **84**, 502–507

Porter, R. W., Hibbert, C. and Wellman, P. (1980) Backache and the lumbar spinal canal. *Spine*, **5**, 99

Prantl, K. (1985) X-ray examination and functional analysis of the cervical spine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2**, 5–15

Priest, du (1993) Nonoperative management of lumbar spinal stenosis. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16**, 411–414

Provinciali, L., Baroni, M., Illuminati, L. and Ceravolo, M. G. (1996) Multimodal treatment to prevent late whiplash syndrome. *Scandinavian Journal of Rehabilitation Medicine*, **28**, 105–111

Putto, E. and Tallroth, K. (1990) Extensio-flexion radiographs for motion studies of the lumbar spine. A comparison of two methods. *Spine*, **15**, 107

Quon, J. A., Cassidy, J. D., O'Connor, S. M. and Kirkaldy-Willis, W. H. (1989) Lumbar intervertebral disc herniation: treatment by rotational manipulation. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **12**, 220

Radanov, B. P. and Sturzenegger, M. (1996) The effect of accident mechanisms and initial findings on the long-term outcome of whiplash injury. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4), 47–60

Radanov, B. P., Dvořák, J. and Valach, L. (1990) Folgezustände der Schleuderverletzung der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **28**, 28

Rahlmann, J. F. (1987) Mechanisms of intervertebral joint fixation. A literature review. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **10**, 177

Rash, P. J. and Burke, R. K. (1971) *Kinesiology and Applied Anatomy*. Philadelphia: Lea and Febiger

Rasmussen, G. G. (1979) Manipulation in treatment of low back pain – a randomized clinical trial. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17**, 8

Reed, W. R., Beavers, S., Reddy, S. K. and Kern, G. (1994) Chiropractic management of primary nocturnal enuresis. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **17**, 596–600

Reffshauge, K. M. (1994) Rotation: a valid premanipulative dizziness test? *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **17**, 15–19

Refior, H. and Zenker, H. (1970) Wirbelsäule und Leistungsturnen. *Münchener Medizinilsche Wochenschrift*, **112**, 463

Reich, C. and Dvořák, J. (1986) The functional evaluation of craniocervical ligaments in side-bending using X-rays. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **2**, 108

Reinert, O. C. (1988) An analytical survey of structural aberrations observed in static radiographic examinations among acute low back cases. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **11,** 24

Reitinger, A., Radner, H., Tiscdher, H., Windisch, A. *et al.* (1996) Morphologische Untersuchungen an Triggerpunkten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 256–262

Renoult, C. and De Winter, E. (1961) Technique des manipulations ostéoarticulaires du système lumbopelvien. *Vie Médicale*, **42,** 115

Retzlafff, E. W. and Mitchell, F. L. Jr. (1987) *The Cranium and its Sutures.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo: Springer

Reynolds, M. D. (1981) Myofascial trigger point syndromes in the practice of rheumatology. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **62,** 111

Reynolds, M. (1983) The development of the concept of fibrositis. *Journal of the History of Medicine and Allied Sciences*, **38,** 5

Ribbe, E. B., Lindgreen, S. S. and Norgren, L. E. H. (1986) Clinical diagnosis of thoracic outlet syndrome – evaluation of patients with cervicobrachial symptoms. *Manual Medicine*, **2,** 82

Richter, R. (1971) Die Bedeutung der 'entrapment neuropathy' für die Differentialdiagnose vertebragener Schmerzzustände. *Manuelle Medizin*, **9,** 101

Richter, T. and Lawall, J. (1993) Zur Zurverlässigkeit der manualtherapeutischen Befunde. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 1–11

Rinski, L. A. *et al.* (1976) A spinal cord injury following chiropractic manipulation. *Paraplegia*, **3,** 223–227

Roberts, G. M. *et al.* (1978) Lumbar spine manipulation on trial. *Rheumatology and Rehabilitation*, **17,** 54

Robertson, J. T. (1981) Neck manipulation as a cause of stroke. *Stroke*, **12,** 54–59

Roessler, H. *et al.* (1972) Beinlängendifferenz und Verkürzungsausgleich. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **110,** 623

Rogers, R. G. (1997) The effect of spinal manipulation on cervical kinesthesia in patients with chronic neck pain: a pilot study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 80–85

Rogers, J. T. and Rogers, J. G. (1976) The role of osteopathic manipulative therapy in the treatment of coronary artery disease. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **76,** 71

Rohde, J. (1975, 1976) Die Automobilisation der Extremitätengelenke. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **27,** 57; **28,** 51, 121

Ross, E. (1964) Verschiebungsphänomen und Wirbelblockierung an der Hals und Lendenwirbelsäule. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiet der Röntgenstrahlen*, **100,** 367

Rossi, F. (1978) Spondylosis, spondylolisthesis and sports. *Journal of Sports Medicine*, **18,** 317–340

Roston, J. B. and Wheeler-Heines, R. (1947) Cracking the metacarpophalangeal joints. *Journal of Anatomy*, **81,** 165–173

Rubin, D. (1981) Myofascial trigger point syndromes: an approach to management. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **62,** 107

Ruddy, T. J. (1961) Osteopathic rhythmic resistant duction therapy. *Academy of Applied Osteopathy Yearbook*, p. 58. Colorado Springs: AAO

Ruddy, T. J. (1962) Osteopathic rapid rhythmic resistive technique. *Academy of Applied Osteopathy Yearbook*, p. 23. Colorado Springs: AAO

Rude, J. (1984) Zur Morphologie der Okzipitalkondylen und Gelenkmechanik des oberen Kopfgelenkes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 101–107

Russel, I. J. (1995) Editorial. An experimental model for myofascial pain syndromes. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3,** 1–5

Ryan, G. M. S. (1955) Cervical vertigo. *Lancet*, **ii,** 1355

Rychlíková, E. (1974) Schmerzen im Gallenblasenbereich auf Grund vertebragener Störungen. *Deutsches Gesundheitswesen*, **29,** 2092

Rychlíková, E. (1975a) Vertebragene funktionelle Störungen bei chronischer ischämischer Herzkrankheit. *Münchener Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **117,** 127

Rychlíková, E. (1975b) *Vertebrokardiální Syndrom.* (The vertebrocardial syndrome.) Praha: Avicenum

Rychlíková, E. and Lewit, K. (1976) Vertebrogenní funkčnú poruchky a reflexní změny při oořèdové chorobé mladistrých. (Vertrebrogenic dysfunction and reflex changes in gastric and/or duodenal ulcer in adolescents.) *Vnitřní Lèkařstvi*, **22,** 326–335

Saal, J. A. (1989) Nonoperative treatment of herniated lumbar intervertebral disc with radiculopathy. An outcome study. *Spine*, **14,** 431–437

Saboe, L. A., Jr (1988) Possible clinical significance of intraarticular synovial protrusions: a review of the literature. *Manual Medicine*, **3,** 148

Sachse, J. (1969) Die Hypermobilität des Bewegungsapparates als potentieller Krankheitsfaktor. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7,** 77

Sachse, J. (1973) *Manuelle Mobilisationsbehandlung der Extremitätengelenke. Leitfaden der Untersuchungs-und Behandlungstechnik*, 2nd edn. Berlin: Volk und Gesundheit

Sachse, J. (1976) Neurologie und Bewegungsapparat – Aspekte der Manuellen Therapie. *Psychiatrie, Neurologie und Medizinische Psychologie*, **28,** 193

Sachse, J. (1984) Konstitutionelle Hypermobillität als Zeichen einer zentralen motorischen Koordinationsstörung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 116

Sachse, J. (1988) Diagnostische Erfassung von Störungen des M. tensor fasciae latae bei Schmerzsyndromen der Hüftregion. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **40,** 87–92

Sachse, J. (1995) Thoraxregion – reflektorische Phänomene und Spannungserhöhung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **33,** 163–172

Sachse, J. (1995) Zum Kapselmuster des Schaltergelenkes. *Manuelle Medizin*, **33**, 84–87

Sachse, J. and Berger, M. (1986) Mobilisationswirkung von Blickrichtungen im Zervikomotogramm. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **38,** 61

Sachse, J., Biedermann, H., Kanig, F. and Köberle, R. (1993) Malum suboccipitale (Rusti) als unspezifische Arthritis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 83–88

Sachse, J., Eckhardt, E., Liess, A. and Sachse, T. (1982) Reflextherapie bei Migränekranken. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 59

Sachse, J. and Schildt, K. (1989) *Manuelle Untersuchung und Mobilisationsbehandlung der Wirbelsäule. Praktische Neuroorthopädie.* Berlin: Volk and Gesundheit.

Sachse, J., Wiechmann, J. and Gomolka, U. (1976) Vorschlag für einen gestuften Test zur Beurteilung des Bewegungssystems. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28,** 95

Sachse, T. and Sachse, J. (1975) Muskelbefunde bei chronisch obstruktiven Atemwegserkrankungen. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia.* Suppl. 10–11, p. 98. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutman, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Sachse, T. and Sachse, J. (1976) Verspannungsbefunde am M. levator scapulae. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **28,** 149

Säker, G. (1955) Schädeltrauma und Halswirbelsäule. *Deutsche Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **79,** 547–550

Säker, G. (1957) Die Morbidität an Lumbago-Ischias. *Münchener Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **104**, 1151

Salter, R. B., Simmonds, D. F. *et al.* (1980). The biological effect of continuous passive motion on the healing of full-thickness defects of cartilage. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **62A**(8), 1232–1251

Salit, I.E. (1995) The chronic fatigue syndrome. An overview of the literature. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Medicine*, **3**, 17–24

Sandberg, L. B. (1955) *Atlas und Axis.* Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Sandoz, R. (1976) Some physical mechanisms and effects of spinal adjustments. *Annals of the Swiss Chiropractic Association*, **7**, 91

Sato, H. *et al.* (1993) Natural history of radiographic instability. *Spine*, **18,** 2075–2079

Sautier, P. (1979) Stellungnahme zum Memorandum zur Verhütung von Zwischenfällen bei gezielter Handgrifftherapie an der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 103

Schildt, K. (1975) Untersuchungen zum Entwicklungsstand der Motorik bei Kindergartenkindern. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia.* Suppl. 10–11, p. 166. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Schildt, K. (1982) Funktionelle Therapie von Sprunggelenkfrakturen unter manualtherapeutischen Gesichtspunkten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 137

Schildt, K. (1988) Funktionsstörungen der Muskulatur und der Wirbelsäule in Verlaufsuntersuchungen von Kinder im 1. und 2. Gestaltswechel. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **38,** 79–81

Schildt, K. (Ed.) (1994) *Thoraxschmerz.* Berlin: Ullstein and Mosby

Schildt, K. (1995) Manuelle Medizin und Krankengymnstik. *Manuelle Medizin*, **33,** 176–181

Schimek, J. J. (1988) Untersuchungen zum Spannungskopfschmerz. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 107

Schimek, J. J. (1988) Gesichtsschmerz und Triggerpunktsyndrome der Kaumuskulatur. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 38

Schmid, H. J. A. (1985) Iliosakrale Diagnose und Behandlung 1978–1982. *Manuelle Medizin*, **23,** 101

Schmidt, R. F. (1984) Physiologie und Pathophysiologie von Nozizeption und Schmerz im Wirbelsäulenbereich. In *Moderne Schmerzbehandlung*, p. 62. Eds Bergmann, H., Bischko, J., Gerstenbrand, F. *et al.* Wien, München, Bern: W. Maudrich

Schmorl, G. and Junghanns, H. (1953) *Die Gesunde und die Kranke Wirbelsäule in Röntgenbild und Klinik.* Stuttgart: Thieme

Schneider, W., Dvořák, J., Dvořák, V. and Tritschler, T. (1986) *Manuelle Medizin, Therapie.* Stuttgart, New York: Thieme

Schoenig, H. A. (1963) A radiological study of the changes of the cervical articular mass with age. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **44,** 303

Schofferman, J. and Wasserman, S. (1994) Successful treatment of low back and neck pain after motor vehicle accidents despite litigation. *Spine*, **19,** 1007–1010

Schön, D. (1956) Röntgenologische Untersuchungen über die Morbidität der Halswirbelsäule und deren klinische Wertigkeit. *Klinische Wochenschrift*, **897**

Schröter, G. (1971) Die Bedeutung von aussergewöhnlicher Haltung und Belastung für die Entstehung von Abnützungsschäden der Wirbelsäule. *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **18,** 250

Schulze, A. J. (1962) Über die Fehlanwendung chiropraktischer Behandlungs-massnahmen. *Medizinische Welt*, **45,** 2379

Schwarz, E. (1970) Internistische Indikationen der manipulativen Therapie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8**, 25

Schwarz, E. (1973) Herz und Wirbelsäule. *Schweizer Rundschau für Medizin Praxis*, **63,** 837

Schwarz, E. (1976) Manual-therapeutische Kasuistik aus einer internistischen Praxis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **14,** 52

Schwarz, E. (1978) Zur Frage des Epikondylitis-humeri-Syndroms. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16,** 17

Schwarz, E. (1992) Der zervikale spondylogene Kopfschmerz. *Therapiewohe Schweiz*, **8,** 69–74

Schwarz, E. (1996) Der Thoraxschmerz aus Sicht des Internisten. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 18–22

Schwarz, H. (1987) Zur konservativen Behandlung frischer Weichteilverletzungen der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 37

Schwarz, H. A. (1991) Schleudertrauma und Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **29,** 57–66

Schwerdtner, H. P. (1986) Klinische und röntgenologische Kriterien der segmentalen Instabilität und schmerzhaften Lockerung im lumbalen Bewegungssegment. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 35

Seidel, A. (1969) Beckenstellung, Wirbelsäulenstatik und Körpergewichtsverteilung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7**, 100

Seidel, K. (1976) Wert und Grenzen der funktionellen Röntgendiagnostik der Wirbelsäule. *Orthopäde*, **5**, 217

Seifert, I. (1975) Kopfgelenksblockierung bei Neugeborenen. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia.* Suppl. 10–11, p.53. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Seifert, I. (1981) Manualtherapeutische Aspekte bei der Hüftdysplasie. *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **28,** 161

Seifert, I. (1988) Ein Beitrag zur konservativen Therapie der Chondropathia Patellae. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **38,** 85

Seifert, I. (1996) Praktische Bemerkungen zur manuellen Behandlung der Schrägdeformitäten der Säuglinge *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 108–109

Seifert, K. (1981) Cervical-vertebragene Schluckschmerzen in der Hals-Nasen-Ohren-Heilkunde – Die Zungenbeintendopathie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 85

Seifert, K. (1988) Welche Bedeutung hat die funktionelle Kopfgelenksstörung bei peripher-vestibulärem Schwindel. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 89

Selecki, B. R. (1969) The effect of rotation of the atlas on the axis. *Medical Journal of Australia*, **1**, 1012–1015

Selfe, J. (1995) Abnormal illness behaviour in chronic low back pain: a practice guide. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **17,** 27–28

Sell, K. (1969) Spezielle manuelle Segment-Technik als Mittel zur Abklärung spondylogener Zusammenhangsfragen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7**, 99

Seyfarth, H. (1965) Überlastungskrankheiten im Skelettmuskelsystem. *Physikalisch-Diäterische Therapie*, **6**, 51

de Seze, S. (1955) Les manipulations vertébrates. *Semaine des Hopitaux de Paris*, **39,** 2313–2323

de Sèze, S. (1960, 1961) Étude sur l'épaule douloureuse I, II, III. *Revue du Rheumatisme*, **27,** 323, 443; **28,** 85

de Sèze, S. and Welfling, J. (1957) Interpretation et intéret du signe de Lasègue dans les sciatiques par hernie discale avec attitude antalgique latérale. *Semaine des Hôpitaux de Paris*, **33,** 1013

Shambaugh, P. (1987) Changes in electrical activity in muscles resulting from chiropractic adjustment. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **10,** 300–304

Shekelle, P. G., Adams A. H. *et al.* (1991) The appropriateness of spinal manipulation for low back pain: indications and ratings by a multidisciplinary expert panel. Santa Monica: RAND Monograph No. R 4025/2-CCR/FCER

Shin-ho Chung and Dickenson, A. (1980) Pain, enkephalin and acupuncture. *Nature (London)*, **283**, 243

Shoartsmann, P. and Abelson, A. (1988) Complication of chiropractic treatment for back pain. *Postgraduate Medicine*, **83,** 57–61

Silverstolpe, L. (1989) A pathological erector spinae reflex – a new sign of mechanical pelvis dysfunction. *Manual Medicine*, **4**, 28

Silverstolpe, L. and Hellsing, G. (1990) Cranial and visceral symptoms in mechanical pelvic dysfunction. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p.255. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Simon, H. and Moser, M. (1977) Der Zervikalnystagmus aus manual-medizinischer Sicht. *Manuelle Medizin*, **15,** 47

Simons, D. G. (1975, 1976) Muscle pain syndromes. *American Physical Medicine*. **54,** 289; **55,** 15

Simons, D. G. (1981) Myofascial trigger points: a need for understanding. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **62,** 97

Simons, D. G. (1990) Muscular pain syndromes. In *Myofascial Pain and Fribomyalgia. Advances in Pain Research and Therapy Vol. 17*, p. 1. Eds Fiction, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Simons, D. Editorial (1991). Myofascial pain and fibromyalgia. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 1–2

Simons, D. G. (1995) Invited editorial. Myofascial pain syndromes. One term but two conceptions. A new understanding. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3,** 7–13

Simons, D. G. (1995) Myofascial pain syndromes – trigger points (literature review). *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3,** 100–108

Simons, D. (1996) Clinical and etiological update of myofascial pain from trigger points. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(1), 93–122

Simons, D. G. (1997) Triggerpunkt und Myogelose. *Manuelle Medizin*, **35,** 290–294

Simons, D. G. and Hong, C. Z. (1995) Prevalence of spontaneous electrical activity at trigger spots and control sites. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **3,** 35–48

Simons, D. G. and Mense, S. (1998) Understanding and measurement of muscle tone as related to clinical muscle pain. Review Article. *Pain*, **75**, 1–17

Simons, D. G. and Simons, L. S. (1987) Chronic myofascial pain syndromes. Chapter 3. In *Handbook of Chronic Pain Management*, Ed. Tollinson, C. D. Baltimore, London: Williams and Wilkins

Simons, D. G. and Travell, J. (1981) Re: Myofascial trigger points, a possible explanation. (Letter to the editor.) *Pain*, **10,** 106

Simons, D. G. and Travell, J. G. (1983) Myofascial origin of low back pain. *Postgraduate Medicine*, **73,** 66

Sims-Williams, H. (1979) Controlled trial of mobilisation and manipulation for low back pain: hospital patients. *British Medical Journal*, **2,** 1318

Sims-Williams, H., Jayson, M. I. V., Young, S. M. S. *et al.* (1978) Controlled clinical trial of mobilisation and manipulation for patients with low back pain in general practice. *British Medical Journal*, **2,** 1338

Singer, K. P. and Giles, L. G. F. (1990) Manual therapy considerations at the thoracolumbar junction: an anatomical and functional perspective. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 83

Skládal, J., Škavran, K., Ruth, C. and Mikulenka, V. (1970) Posturální funkce bránice. (The postural function of the diaphragm.) *Československá Fysiologie*, **19,** 279

Skoglund, C. R. (1989) Neurophysiological aspects of the pathological erector spinae reflexes in cases of mechanical pelvic dysfunction. *Manual Medicine*, **4,** 29

Slosberg, M. (1988) Effects of altered articular input on sensation, proprioception, muscle tone and sympathetic reflex responses. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **11,** 400

Smith, R. A. and Estridge, M. V. (1962) Neurologic complications of head and neck manipulation. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **182,** 5

Smith, J. L., Hutton, R. S. and Eldred, E. (1974)

Postcontraction changes in sensitivity of muscle afferents to static and dynamic stretch. *Brain Research*, **78,** 193–202

Snijders, Ch.J. and Bonne, A.J. (1963) On the form of the human spine. *Biomechanics*, July 23

Snijders, Ch.J., Host van Duke, G. A. and Roosch, E. R. (1994) A biomechanical model for the analysis of the cervical spine in static posture. *Biomechanics,* **24,** 783

Snijders, Ch.J., Slaghterm, H. E., Strik, R. van, Vleeming, A., Stoeckart, R. and Stam, R. S. (1994) *Why leg crossing? The influence of common postures on abdominal muscle activity.* Rotterdam: Department of Biomechanical Physics and Technology, Faculty of Medicine, Erasmus University

Snijders, Ch.J., Vleeming, A., Stockart, R. (1993) Transfer of lumbosacral load to iliac bones and legs. Part 1. Biomechanics of self bracing of the sacroiliac joints and its significance for treatment and exercise. Part 2. Loading of the sacroiliac joints when lifting in a stooped posture. *Clinical Biomechanics*, **8,** 295–294, 295–301

Sobel, J. S., Winters, J. C., Groenier, K., Arendzen, J. H. *et al.* (1997) Physical examination of the cervical spine and shoulder girdle in patients with shoulder complaints. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **20,** 257–262

Sobotka, P. (1956) Vliv komprese zadních korenu na meziobratlové ploténky u králíka (The effect of posterior root compression on intervertebral discs in rabbits). *Acta Universitatis Carolinae Medicae* (*Praha*), Suppl. 9, 83–87

Sollmann A. H. and Breitenbach, H. (1961) Röntgenanalyse und Klinik von 1000 seitlichen Röntgen ganzaufnahmen. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **94,** 704

Solonen J. A. (1957) The sacroiliac joint in the light of anatomical, roentgenological and clinical studies. *Acta Orthopaedica Scandinavica*, Suppl. 27

Spišák, J. (1972) Bedeutung des Segments C2–3 im klassischen Bild des akuten Torticollis. *Manuelle Medizin*, **10,** 133

Spitzer, W. O., Skovron M. L. *et al.* (1995) Scientific monograph of the Quebec task force on whiplash-associated disorders: redefining whiplash and its management. *Spine*, **20,** 88

Squires, B., Gargan, M. F. and Bannister, G. C. (1996) Soft tissue injuries of the cervical spine: 15 year follow-up. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery* (Br) **787,** 955–957

Šráček, J. and Škrabal, J. (1975) Neurasthenie und Funktionsstörungen der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **13,** 106

Stano, M. (1993) A comparison of health care costs for chiropractic and medical patients. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **16,** 291

Starý, O. (1967) *Bolest a problémy její objektivizace* (*Pain and the problem of its objectivation*). Inaugural speech as Rector of Charles University, Prague

Starý, O. (1970) Die Reflexwirkingen nozizeptiver Reize im Bewegungsapparat. In *Manuelle Medizin und ihre Wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 84. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Starý, O., Figar, Š. and Lewit, K. (1958) Polyrheografické reakce u sensitivních radikotomií při diskogenní nemoci. (Polyrheographic reactions after sensory root section in discogenic disease.) *Acta Universitatis Carolinae Medica*, **1–3,** 236

Steinbrück, K. and Rompe, G. (1980) Hochleistungssport – planmässig erworbene Hypermobilität. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 62

Steinbrück, K. and Tilscher, H. (1983) Manuelle Medizin und Sport. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 38

Steindler, A. (1958) *Kinesiology*. Springfield: Thomas

Steinrücken, H., Sacher, I. and Betz, P. (1984) Untersuchungen über das Costovertebralsyndrom mit pseudoanginöser Symptomatik bei Patienten einer kardiologischen Spezialklinik. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 54

Stejskal, J. (1972) *Postural Reflexes in Theory and Motor Re-education.* Praha: Academia

Stejskal, L. (1967) L'influence facilitative et l'influence inhibitive de la respiration sur l'activité musculaire. *Europa Mediophysica*, **3,** 1

Stenwers, H. W. (1918) Un 'Stellreflex' du bassin chez l'homme. *Archives Néerlandais de Physiologie de L'homme et de L'animal*, **2,** 669

Stevens, A. (1990) Manipulation of the sacroiliac joints. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 105. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Stevens, A. and Gielen, E. (1975) Manual medicine and miners. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia*. Suppl. 10–11, p. 240. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Stevens, A. and Vyncke, G. (1988) Die Bewegungsfähigkeit des Sakrums in der Transversalebene. Die Iliosakralgoniometrie in der Praxis und Labor. *Manuelle Medizin*, **26,** 85

Stiles, E. G. (1985) Muskelenergietechnik (MET). Therapeutische Grundsetzte und praktische Anwendung. In *Manuelle Medizin heute*, p. 150. Ed. Frisch, H. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Stoddard, A. (1961) *Manual of Osteopathic Technique.* London: Hutchinson

Stoddard, A. (1969) *Manual of Osteopathic Practice.* New York: Harper and Row

Stodolny, J. and Chmielewski, H. (1989) Manual therapy in the treatment of patients with cervical migraine. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **4,** 49

Stofft, E. (1979) Bau und Funktion der Iliosakralgelenke. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und Praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 318. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Bühl: Konkordia

Streda, A. (1971) Participation of osteonecrosis in the development of severe coxarthrosis. Praha: Acta Universitatis Carolinae

Stude, D. E. and Sweere, J. J. (1996) A holostic approach to severe headache symptoms in a patient unresponsive to regional manipulative therapy. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 202–207

Sturesson, B., Selvic, G. and Uden, A. (1989) Movement of the sacroiliac joints. A roentgen stereophotogrammetric analysis. *Spine*, **14**, 162

Sunderland, S. (1978) Traumatized nerves, roots and ganglia; musculo-skeletal factors and neuropathological consequences. In *The Neurobiologic Mechanisms in Manipulative Therapy*, p. 137. Ed. Korr, I. M. New York and London: Plenum Press

Sutter, M. (1975) Wesen, Klinik und Bedeutung spondylogener Reflexsyndrome. *Schweizerische Rundschau für Medizin (Praxis)*, 64, 1351

Sutter, M. (1977) Rücken-Kreuz und Beinschmerzen beim funktionell instabilen Becken. *Thérapeutische Umschau (Revue Thérapeutique)*, **34,** 452

Sutter, M. (1983) Diagnostische Weichteilpalpation des Bewegungsapparates. *Manuelle Medizin*, **21,** 120

Svenson, H. O. and Andersson, G. B. J. (1989) The relationship of low back pain, work history, work environment and stress. A retrospective cross-sectional study of 38–61-year-old women. *Spine*, **14,** 162

Taylor, J. R. and Taylor, M. M. (1996) Cervical spinal injuries: an autopsy study of 109 blunt injuries. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(4): 61–80

Taylor, J. R. and Twomey, L. T. (1992) Structure and function of lumbar zygapophyseal (facet) joints: a review. *Journal of Orthopaedic Medicine*, **14,** 71–78

Tehan, P. G. (1985) Functional technique: A different perspective in manipulative therapy. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd edn, p. 94. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone

Tepe, H. J. (1956) Die Häufigkeit der Osteochondrose im Röntgenbild der Halswirbelsäule bei 400 beschwerdefreien Erwachsenen. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **85,** 659

Terenzi, T. J. and DeFabio, D. C. (1996) The role of Doppler sonography in the identification of patients at risk of cerebral amd brainstem ischemia. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **19,** 406–414

Terret, A. G. J. (1987) Vascular accidents from cervical manipulation. Report of 107 cases. *Australian Journal of the Chiropractic Association*, **17,** 15–24

Terrier, J. C. (1968) Indikationen und Kontraindikationen der Manipulativen Therapie. *Orthopädische Praxis*, **4,** 128

Tesařová, A. (1969) Diagnostik der Beweglichkeitsstörungen der Wirbelsäule durch Inspektion der Wirbelsäule während der Atmung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **7,** 29

Tesio, L., Lucurelli, G. and Fornari, M. (1991) Natchev's autotraction for lumbago-sciatica: effectiveness in lumbar disc herniation. *Archives of Physical Medicine*, **70,** 831–834

Thabe, H. (1982) Die Elektromyographie als Befunddokumentation bei der Therapie von Kopfgelenks und Kreuzdarmbeingelenksblockierungen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **20,** 131

Thalheim, W. (1975) Die Differentialdiagnose wichtiger Funtionsstörungen im Beckenbereich. *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **22,** 430

Tilscher, H. (1984) Indikationen und Erfolgsaussicht der Manualtherapie bei Funktionsstörung des Iliosakralgelenkes. In *Neuroorthopädie 2, Lendenwirbelsäulenerkrankungen mit Beteilgung des Nervensystems*, p. 573. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Schirmer, M. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Tilscher, H. and Bogner, G. (1975) Pain syndromes involving the locomotor apparatus – a possible manifestation of masked depression. In *Diagnostik und Therapie der Depression in der ambulaten Praxis*, p. 292. Ed. Kielholz, P. Bern: Huber

Tilscher, H. and Oblak, O. (1974) Untersuchungen von ehemaligen Jugendleistungssportlern. *Orthopädische Praxis*, **16,** 100

Tilscher, H. and Hanna, M. (1990) Causes of poor results of surgery in low back pain. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 110

Tilscher, H. and Steinbrük, K. (1980) Symptomatik und manualmedizinische Befunde bei der Hypermobilität. *Orthopädische Praxis*, **16,** 100

Tilscher, H. and Hanna, M. (1994) Klinische und Röntgenologische Befunde bei der Hypermobilität und der Instabilität im Lendenwirbelsäulenbereich. Funktionsuntersuchung mit Springing-Test, simultane Röntgen-Dokumentation, Entwicklung einer LWS-Stress-Aufnahmetechnik, Lordose-Kyphose-Test. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 1–7

Tilscher, H. and Steinbrück, K. (1980) Symptomatik und manualmedizinische Befunde bei der Hypermobilität. *Orthopädische Praxis*, **16,** 100

Tilscher, H., Bogner, G. and Landsiedl, F. (1977) Viszerale Erkrankungen als Ursache von Lumbalsyndromen. *Zeitschrift für Rheumatologie*, **36,** 161

Tilscher, H., Wessely, P., Eder, M., Porges, P. and Jenker, F. L., Eds (1988) *Kopfsrchmerzen. Zur Diagnostik und Therapie von Schmerzformen ausser Migräne*. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Tkačenko, S. S. (1973) O zakrytom odnomomentnom vpravlenii ostrovo vypadeniya mezpozvonotshnovo diska. (The bloodless single reposition of an acute disc prolapse.) *Ortopedia, travmatologia, protezirovanye*, **8,** 46

Tlustek, H. and Kuhnert, H. P. (1994) Zur Biomechanik des Lasegue'schen Phänomens. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 24–27

Tlustek, H. and Metz, E. G. (1980) Karpaltunnelsyndrom und Reflextherapie. In *Manuelle Medizin, Tagungsbericht, Potsdam 28–31.1.1980*, p. 187. Eds Metz, E. G. and Badtke, G. Potsdam: Wissenschaftlich-Technisches Zentrum der Pädagogischen Hochschule

Tomaschewski, R. (1986) Manuelle Therapie im Rahmen konservativer Skolioseehandlung. *Manuelle Medizin*, **24,** 54

Tomaschewski, R. (1993) Die Bedeutung der Wirbelsäulen-funktion in der Sagittalebene für die Pathogenese der idiopathischen Skoliose. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 39-42

Töndury, G. (1948) Beitrag zur Kenntnis der kleinen Wirbelgelenke. *Zeitschrift für Anatomische Entwicklungsgeschichte*, **110,** 568

Torklus, D. (1979) Zervikaler Kopfschmerz – Typenbildung I bis III. *Orthopädische Praxis*, **15,** 730

Torklus, D. and Gehlen, W. (1970) *Die obere Halswirbelsäule*. Stuttgart: Thieme

Torres, F. and Shapiro, S. E. (1961) EEG in whiplash injury. *Archives of Neurology*, **5,** 28

Townsend, E. H. (1952) Mobility in the upper cervical spine in health and disease. *Pediatrics*, **10,** 567

Tracey, D. (1978) Joint receptors – changing ideas. *Trends in Neurosciences*, **1,** 63

Travell, J. G. (1952) Ethyl chloride spray for painful muscle spasm. *Archives of Physical Medicine*, **33,** 291–298

Travell, J. (1976) Myofascial trigger points: clinical view. In *Advances in Pain Research and Therapy*, vol. 1, p. 919. Eds Bonica, J. J. and Albe-Fessard, D. New York: Raven Press

Travell, J. (1981) Identification of myofascial trigger point syndromes: a case of atypical facial neuralgia. *Archives of Physical Medicine and Rehabilitation*, **62,** 100

Travell, J. (1990) Chronic myofascial pain syndromes. Mysteries of history. In *Myofascial Pain and Fibromyalgia. Advances in Pain Research Vol.17*, p. 129. Eds Fricton, J. R. and Awad, E. A. New York: Raven Press

Travell, J. and Rinzler, S. H. (1952) Myofascial genesis of pain in the neck and shoulder girdle. *Postgraduate Medicine*, **11,** 425

Triano, J. J., McGregor, M. *et al.* (1995) Manipulation therapy versus education program in chronic low back pain. *Spine*, **20,** 948–955

van Tulder, M. V., Koes, B. W. and Bouter, L. M. (1997) Conservative treatment of acute and chronic nonspecific low back pain. A systematic review of randomized controlled trials of the most common interventions. *Spine*, **22,** 2128–2156

Turner, J. A. and Deyo, R. A. (1994) The importance of placebo effects in pain treatment and research. *Journal of the American Medical Association*, **271,** 1609–1614

Tütsch, S. and Ulrich, P. (1975) Wirbelsäule und Hochleistungssport bei Mädchen. Beobachtung der Entstehung einer Spondylolisthesis. *Sportarzt und Sportmedizin*, **1,** 7–11

Twomey, L. T. and Taylor, J. R. (1982) Flexion creep deformity and hysteresis in the lumbar vertebral column. *Spine*, **7,** 116

Twomey, L. T. and Taylor, J. R. (1990) Structural and mechanical disc changes with age. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 58

Uhlemann, C., Gramowski, K. H., Endres, U. and Callies, R. (1993) Manuelle Diagnostik und Therapie beim halsbedingten Schwindel. *Manuelle Medizin*, **31,** 77–81

Unterharnscheidt, F. (1956) Das synkopale cervicale. Vertebralsyndrome. *Nervenarzt*, **27,** 481

Unterharnschidt, F. (1975) Injuries due to boxing and other sports. *Handbook of Clinical Neurology*, Vol. 23 Eds Vinken, P. J. and Brown, B. W. pp. 527–593. North Holland Publishing Company

Unworth, A., Dawson, D. and Wright, W. (1971) Cracking joints, a bioengineering study of cavitation of metacarpophalangeal joints. *American Journal of Rheumatic Disease*, **30,** 348

Uptom, A. R. M. and McComas, A. J. (1973) The double crush in nerve entrapment syndromes. *Lancet*, **ii,** 359

Ushio, N., Hinoki, M., Hine, S. *et al.* (1973) Studies on ataxia of lumbar origin in cases of vertigo due to whiplash injury. *Agresologia* **6**(14)D; 73

Uttl, K. (1966) On the incidence of discogenic disease (vertebrogenic disorders) with regard to work capacity. *Review of Czechoslovak Medicine*, **12,** 116

Vadeboncoeur, R., Milette, P. C. and Perrault, C. (1994) Cervical myelopathy and disc herniations: a study of 58 cases with magnetic resonance imaging. Discussion on complications of cervical manipulation. *Manuelle Medizin*, **32,** 91–93

Valeanu, C. (1972) Contribution à l'étude de l'anatomie fonctionelle de la colonne vertébrale cervicale. *Timisoara Medicala*, **17,** 367

Vecan, T. and Lewit, K. (1980) Plurisegmentale Funktionsstörung der Wirbelsäule als pathogenetischer Faktor bei einem Fall von Überleitungsstörung mit stenokardischen Beschwerden. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 79

Véle, F. (1968) Wirbelgelenk und Bewegungssegment innerhalb des Steuerungssystems der Haltemuskulatur. *Manuelle Medizin*, **6,** 94

Véle, F. (1984) Muskelspannung und Schmerz. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 80. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Véle, F. (1995) *Kineziologie posturálního systému*. (Kinesiology of the postural system.) Praha: Universita Karlova

Véle, F. and Gutmann, G. (1971) Die Beeinflussung der Posturalreflexe über die Gelenke. *Zeitschrift für Physiotherapie*, **23,** 383

Verbiest, H. (1954) A radicular syndrome from developmental narrowing of the lumbar vertebral canal. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **36,** 230

Verbiest, H. (1955) Further experiences on the pathological influence of a developmental narrowness of the bony lumbar vertebral canal. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **37,** 576

Verbiest, H. (1984) Stenose des knöchernen lumbalen Wirbelkanals. In *Neuroorthopädie 2*, p. 231. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Liebig, K. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Vernon, H. T. (1995) The effectiveness of chiropractic manipulation in the treatment of headache: an exploration in the literature. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 611–617

Vernon, H. T. (Ed.) (1988) *Upper Cervical Syndrome. Chiropractic Diagnosis and Treatment*. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Sydney: Williams & Wilkins

Vernon, H. T. (1991) Spinal manipulation and headaches of cervical origin. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **6,** 73

Vernon, H. T., Aker, P., Burns, S. *et al.* (1990) Pressure pain threshold evaluation of the effect of spinal manipulation treatment of chronic neck pain. A pilot study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **13,** 5

Vernon, H. T., Steinman, I. and Hagono, C. (1992) Cervicogenic dysfunction in muscle contraction headache: a descriptive study. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 418–429

Videman, T. (1987) Experimental models of ostoarthritis. The role of immobilization. *Clinical Biomechanics*, **2,** 223

Vishnyevski, A. V. (1956) *Miestnoye Obezbolivanye po Metodu Polzushtshevo Infiltrata.* (Local anaesthesia in the form of surface infiltration.) Moscow: Medgiz

Vítek, J. (1970) Das zervikokraniale Syndrome des hinteren Halssympathicus und die Arteriosklerose des Gehirns. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8,** 13

Vleeming, R., Muzaffer, B., Stoeckart, R., Karamurse, F. and Snijders, C. J. (1992) An integrated therapy for peripartum pelvic instability: a study of the biomechanic effects of pelvic belts. *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, **166,** 1243–1246

Vleeming, R., Staeckhart, R., Snijder, Ch. *et al.* (1990) The sacroiliac joint – anatomical, biomechanical and radiological aspects. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **5,** 100

Vleeming, R. R., Volkers, M. C., Snijders, C. J. and Stoeckart, R. (1990) Relation between form and function of the sacroiliac joints. Part II. Biomechanical aspects. *Spine*, **15,** 133–136

Vleeming, R. R., Volkers, A. C. and Snijders, C. J. (1990) Relation between form and function of the sacroiliac joints. Part I. Clinical and anatomical aspects. *Spine*, **15,** 130–132

Vojta, V. and Peters, A. (1992) *Das Vojtaprinzip.* Heidelberg: Springer

Volejník, V., Nettl, S. *et. al.* (1984) Rentgenové nálezy na krční páteři u 14–17ti letých mladistvých (X-ray findings of the cervical spine in adolescents of 14–17). *Československá neurologie a neurochirurgie*, **47**(80), 169

Volejníková, H. (1992) Studie zur Objektivierung der Erfolgrate der Behandlungsmethode von L. Mojžísová bei weiblicher Sterilität infolge von Funktionsstörungen im Beckenbereich. *Manuelle Medizin*, **30,** 96–98

Volejníková, H. and Krupička, P. (1990) Zkusěnosti s rehabilitační léčbou některých druhů funkční ženskê sterility na rehabilitačním oddělení fakultní porodnice KUNZ Brno (Treatment of some types of female sterility due to disturbed function in the Rehabilitation Department of the Brno University Maternity Hospital). *Československá gynekologie*, **56,** 21

Volle, E., Kreisler, P., Wolff, H.0D. *et al.* (1996) Funktionelle Darstellung der Ligamenta alaria in der Kernspinntomographie. *Manuelle Medizin*, **34,** 9–13

Vortmann, B. J. (1984) Kinesiologie der Halswirbel säule vor und nach Manipulation. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 49

Voss, D. E. (1967) Proprioceptive neuromuscular facilitation. *American Journal of Physical Medicine*, **64,** 838

Waagen, G. N., Haldemann, S. *et al.* (1986) Short term trial of chiropractic adjustments for the relief of chronic low back pain. *Manual Medicine*, **2,** 63

Wackenheim, A. (1968) Céphalées, insertion orbito-oculaire asymmétrique et dislocation transversale de la charnière cervico-occipitale. *Semaine des Hôpitaux*, **44,** 1233

Wackenheim, A. (1974) *Roentgendiagnosis of the Cranio-vertebral Region.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York: Springer

Wackenheim, A. and Lopez, F. (1969) Étude radiographique des mouvements des CI et C2 lors de la flexion et de l'extension de la tête. *Journal Belge de Radiologie*, **52,** 117

Wackenheim, A., Babin, E., Thiébaut, M. S. D. and Lopez, F. (1969) Une nouvelle épreuve fonctionelle pour l'exploration de la dynamique cervico-occipitale. *Concours Médicale*, **11,** 7130

Wackenheim, A., Kamieth, H., Gutmann, G., Jirout, J. and Lewit, K. (1985) Stellungnahme und Diskussionsbeiträge zu Kamieth, H.: Röntgenbefunde von normalen Bewegungen in den Kopfgelenken. In *Wirbelsäule in Forschung und Praxis, Vol. 101.* Ed. Schultz, K. P. Stuttgart: Hippokrates; *Manuelle Medizin*

Wadell, G. (1980) Non-organic physical signs in low back pain. *Spine*, **5,** 117–125

Wadell, G. *et al.* (1984) Chronic low back pain, psychologic distress and illness behaviour. *Spine*, **9,** 219–223

Wadell, G. (1987) A new clinical model for treatment of low-back pain. *Spine*, **12,** 632–644

Wadell, G. (1993) Simple low back pain: rest or active exercise. *Annals of Rheumatic Diseases*, **52,** 315–319

Wadell, G. (1995) Modern management of spinal disorders. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **18,** 590–596

Waerland, A. (1950) *Die Chiropraktik und ihre Erfolge im Lichte der Menschheitsentwicklung.* Bern: Humana

Waghemaker, R., Dumoulinet, J. and Spy, E. (1963) Le facteur musculaire dans la coxarthrose. *Annales de Médicine Physique*, **6,** 263

Wall, P. D. (1972) The mechanism of pain associated with cervical vertebral disease. In *Cervical Pain*, p.201. Eds Hirsch, C. and Zottermann, Y. Oxford: Pergamon Press

Wall, P. D. (1988) The John Bonica Distinguished Lecture. Stability and instability of central pain mechanisms. In: *Proceedings of the 5th World Congress on Pain*, p. 12 Eds Dubner, R. and Gebhart, G. F. Amsterdam: Elsevier

Wall, P. D. and Melzack, R. (1983) *Textbook of Pain.* Edinburgh, Churchill Livingstone.

Walsh, E. G. (1992) *Muscles, Masses and Motion. The Physiology of Normality, Hypotonicity, Spasticity and Rigidity.* London: MacKeith Press

Walsh, F. G. and Wright, G. W. (1988) Postural thixotropy at the human hip. *Quarterly of Experimental Physiology*, **73,** 369–377

Walton, J., Ed. (1981) *Disorders of Voluntary Muscle.* Edinburgh: Churchill-Livingstone

Walther G. (1963) Zur Physiologie und Pathophysiologie der Rippenwirbelgelenke. *Ärztliche Praxis*, **15,** 1806

Walther, G. (1963) Halswirbelsäule und Herz. *Therapiewoche*, **13,** 469

Walther, G. (1971) Brustschmerzen und Brustkorbwandschmerzen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **9,** 56

Ward, R. C. (1993) Myofascial release concepts. In

Rational Manual Therapies, Eds Basmajian, J. V. and Nyberg, R. p. 223–242. Baltimore, Hong Kong, London, Munich, Philadelphia, Sydney, Tokyo: Williams & Wilkins

Ward, R. C. (1995) A cranial nerve and proprioception workshop for head, neck and shoulder pain patients. Vienna, April 27: Congress of the Fédération Internationale de Médicine Manuelle

Ward R. C., Ed. (1997) *Foundations for Osteopathic Medicine*, Glossary. Baltimore: Williams and Wilkins

Warner, J., Lephart, B. and Fu, F. (1996) The role of proprioception in the aetiopathology of shoulder instability. *Clinical Orthopaedics and Related Research*, **330,** 35

Weber, E. (1974) Die Anwendung der manuellen Extension bei der konservativen Koxarthrosebehandlung. *Beiträge zur Orthopädie und Traumatologie*, **21,** 351

Weh, L., Hörmann, K. and Fröhlke, O. (1989) Hörsturz und Beweglichkeit der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **27,** 29

Weh, L. and Torklus, D. (1984) Das Gleitrippensyndrom. *Manuelle Medizin*, **22,** 130–132

Weingart, R. J. and Bischoff, H. P. (1992) Dopplersonographische Untersuchungen der A. vertebralis unter Berücksichtigung chirotherapeutisch relevanter Kopfpositionen. *Manuelle Medizin*, **30,** 62–65

Weisl, H. (1954) The movements of the sacroiliac joint. *Acta Anatomica*, **23,** 80

Wells, K. F. and Luttgens, K. (1976) *Kinesiology*, 6th edn. Philadelphia, London, Toronto: W. B. Saunders

Werne, S. (1957) Studies in spontaneous atlas dislocation. *Acta Radiologica*, Suppl. 23

White, A. M. and Panjabi, M. (1978) *Clinical Biomechanics of the Spine*. Philadelphia: Lippincott

Wickström, G. (1974) Effect of work on degenerative back disease. *Scandinavian Journal of Work, Environment and Health*, **4,** Suppl. 1, 1

Wiesner, H. and Mumenthaler, M. (1975) Schleuderverletzungen der Halswirbelsäule. Eine katamnesitsche Studie. *Archiv für Orthopädie und Unfall-Chirurgie*, **81,** 13–36

Wilkinson, H. A., Le May, M. L. and Ferris, E. J. (1969) Clinical and radiographic correlation in cervical spondylosis. *Neurosurgery*, **30,** 213–218

Windhorst, Ch. B. and Steger, E. (1973) Beschwerden im Kopfbereich bei veränderter Bisshöhe. *Münchener Medizinische Wochenschrift*, **115,** 1385

Winer, C. E. R. (1985) A survey of controlled clinical trials of spinal manipulation. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd ed, p. 97. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Edinburgh, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone

Winter, E. De (1963) Manipulations lombo-pelviennes. II. Bases physio-pathologiques. *Vie Médicale*, **44,** M.T3, 117

Winter, E. De (1963) Manipulations lombo-pelviennes. III. Sémiologie. *Vie Médicale*, **44,** M.T6, 81

Winter, E. De (1963) Manipulations lombo-pelviennes. IV. Clinique. *Vie Médicale*, **44,** M.T7, 59

Winter, E. De and Renoult, C. (1961) Techniques des manipulations ostéoarticulaires du système lombo-pelvien. I. Anatomie physiologique. *Vie Médicale*, **42,** M.T3, 115

Winter, E. De and Renoult, C. (1963) Manipulations lombo-pelviennes. V. Technique. *Vie Médicale*, **44,** M.T8, 81

Winters, J. M. and Peles, J. D. (1990) Neck muscle activity and 3-dimensional head kinematics during quasi-static and dynamic tracking movements. In: Winters, M. J. and Woo, S. I. Eds. *Multiple muscle system biomechanics and movement organisation*. New York: Springer

Wisłowska, M. (1989) A study of the contribution of pain to rotation of vertebrae in the etiology and pathogenesis of lateral spinal curvature. *Journal of Manual Medicine*, **4,** 161

Witty, C. W. M. and Willison, R. G. (1958) Some aspects of referred pain. *Lancet*, 266–231

Wohlfahrt, J., Jull, G. and Richardson, C. (1993) The relationship between the dynamic and static function of abdominal muscles. *Australian Journal of Physiotherapy*, **39,** 9–13

Wolf, J. (1970) Die Chondrosynovialmembran als einheitliche Auskleidungshaut der Gelenkhöhle mit Gleit- und Barrierefunktion. In *Manuelle Medizin und Ihre Wissenschaftlichen Grundlagen*, p. 16. Ed. Wolff, H. D. Heidelberg: Physikalische Medizin

Wolf, J. (1975) The reversible deformation of the joint cartilage surface and its possible role in joint blockage. In *Functional Pathology of the Motor System, Rehabilitácia*. Suppl. 10–11, p. 30. Eds Lewit, K. and Gutmann, G. Bratislava: Obzor

Wolff, F. (1994) When to diagnose fibromyalgia. USA Fibromyositis Association. Education and research in Fibromyalgia, TMG. *Chronic Pain Syndrome*, **29,** 1–8

Wolff, H. D. (1968) Die Rotation des Wirbels. *Manuelle Medizin*, **6,** 37

Wolff, H. D. (1974) Wandlungen theoretischer Vorstellungen über die Manuelle Medizin. *Manuelle Medizin*, **12,** 121

Wolff, H. D. (1978) Komplikationen bei manueller Therapie der Halswirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **16,** 89

Wolff, H. D. (1980) Kontra-Indikationen gezielter Handgriffe an der Wirbelsäule. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 39

Wolff, H. D. (1983) *Neurophysiologische Aspekte der Manuellen Medizin*, 2nd edn. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Wolff, H. D. (1984) Die Stellung der manuellen Medizin in der Schmerztherapie. In *Schmerzstudien 6. Schmerz und Bewegungssystem*, p. 192. Eds Berger, M., Gerstenbrand, F. and Lewit, K. Stuttgart and New York: Gustav Fischer

Wolff, H. D. (1987) Anmerkungen zu den Begriffen 'degenerativ' und funktionell. *Manuelle Medizin*, **25,** 52

Wolff, H. D. (1988) Anmerkungen zur Entwicklungsgeschichte (Phylogenese) des zervikookzipitalen Übergangs. In *Neuroorthopädie 4*, p. 23. Eds Hohmann, D., Kügelgen, B. and Liebig, K. Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, Tokyo: Springer

Wolff, H. D. Ed. (1988) *Die Sonderstellung des Kopfgelenkbereichs.* Berlin, Heidelberg, New York, London, Paris, Tokyo: Springer

Wolff, H. D. (1990) Comments on the evolution of the sacroiliac joint. In *Back Pain, an International Review*, p. 175. Eds Paterson, J. K. and Burn, L. Dordrecht, Boston, London: Kluwer

Wolff, H. G. (1948) *Headache and Other Head Pain.* New York: University Press

Wong, A. and Nansel, D. (1992) Comparison between active and passive end range assessment in subjects exhibiting cervical range of motion asymetries. *Journal of Manipulative and Physiological Therapeutics*, **15,** 159–163

Wood, P. H. N. and Badley, E. M. (1980) Epidemiology of back pain. In *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*, 2nd edn, p. 29. Ed. Jayson, M. I. V. London: Pitman Medical

Worth, D. R. (1985) Kinematics of the cranio-vertebral joints. In *Aspects of Manipulative Therapy*, 2nd edn, p. 39. Eds Glasgow, E. F., Twomey, L. T., Scull, E. R. *et al.* Melbourne, Boston, London, New York: Churchill Livingstone

Worzman, G. and Dewar, F. P. (1968) Rotatory fixation of the atlantoaxial joint. *Radiology*, **90,** 479

Wright, H. M. (1962) Progress in osteopathic research. A review of investigation in the division of physiological sciences. *Journal of the American Osteopathic Association*, **61,** 347

Wright, H. M., Korr, I. M. and Thomas, P. E. (1960) Local and regional variations in cutaneous vasomotor tone of the human trunk. *Acta Neurovegetativa*, **22,** 33

Wright, V. (1981) Hypermobile states. *Manuelle Medizin*, **19,** 78

Wyke, B. D. (1972) Articular neurology. *Physiotherapy*, **58,** 94

Wyke, B. D. (1975) Morphological and functional features of the innervation of the costovertebral joints. *Folia Morphologica, Prague*, **23,** 296

Wyke, B. D. (1979) Neurology of the cervical spine joints. *Physiotherapy*, **65,** 72

Wyke, B. D. (1979) Reflexsysteme in der Brustwirbelsäule. In *Theoretische Fortschritte und Praktische Erfahrungen der Manuellen Medizin*, p. 99. Eds Neumann, H. D. and Wolff, H. D. Bühl: Konkordia

Wyke, B. D. (1980) The neurology of low back pain. In *The Lumbar Spine and Back Pain*, p. 265. Ed. Jayson, M. I. V. London: Pitman Medical

Wyke, B. D. and Poláček, P. (1975) Articular neurology – the present position. *Journal of Bone and Joint Surgery*, **57B,** 401

Yaksh, T. L. (1996) Pharmacology of facilitated nociceptive processing. *Journal of Musculoskeletal Pain*, **4**(1/2), 201

Yates, C. A. H. (1981) Spinal stenosis. *Journal of the Royal Society of Medicine*, **74,** 334

Yerusalemskii, A. P. (1983) *Teoreticheskie osnovy reabilitacii pri osteokhondroze pozvonochnika.* (Theoretical principles of rehabilitation in osteochondrosis of the spinal column.) Novokuznetsk: Izdatelstvo 'Nauka'

Zbojan, L. (1988) Antigravitáčna relaxácia, jej podstata a použitie. (Gravity induced relaxation, its principles and practical application.) *Praktický lékař*, **68,** 147

Zeitler, E. (1963) Röntgenologische Differenzierung kompensierter und dekompensierter Bewegungseinschränkungen. *Zeitschrift für Orthopädie und ihre Grenzgebiete*, **97,** 218

Zeitler, E. and Markuske, P. (1962) Röntgenologische Bewegungsanalysen der Halswirbelsäule bei gesunden Kindern und Jugendlichen. *Fortschritte auf dem Gebiete der Röntgenstrahlen*, **96,** 87

Zettenberg, C., Anderson, G. B. J. and Scultz, A. B. (1987) The activity of individual trunk muscles during heavy physical loading. *Spine*, **12,** 1035–1040

Zettenberg, C., Anderson, G. G. J., Schultz, A. B. (1987) The activity of individual trunk muscles during heavy physical loading. *Spine*, **12,** 1035–1040

Zhang Chanjiang and Wang Yici (1984) Study on cervical visual disturbance and its manipulative treatment. *Journal of Traditional Chinese Medicine*, **4,** 205

Zicha, K. (1970) Manuelle Therapie bei der Spondylitis ankylopoetica. *Manuelle Medizin*, **8,** 97; **9,** 117

Zicha, K. and Ruhrmann, W. (1980) Erfahrungen mit isometrischen Übungen bei lumbosakralem Insuffizienzund Schmerzsyndrom. *Manuelle Medizin*, **18,** 110

Zicha, K. and Zabel, M. (1979) Proliferationstherapie bei Enthesopathien. *Manuelle Medizin*, **17,** 101

Zuckschwerdt, L., Biedermann, F., Emminger, E. and Zettel, H. (1960) *Wirbelgelenk und Bandscheibe*, 2nd edn. Stuttgart: Hippokrates

Index